







28.12/
H.F. 5148-a

~~angl 46~~

W. L.
5148. a

Brit 46[£]



Pub. May 12. 1786 by J. Hooper.

N. C. Goodnight sc.

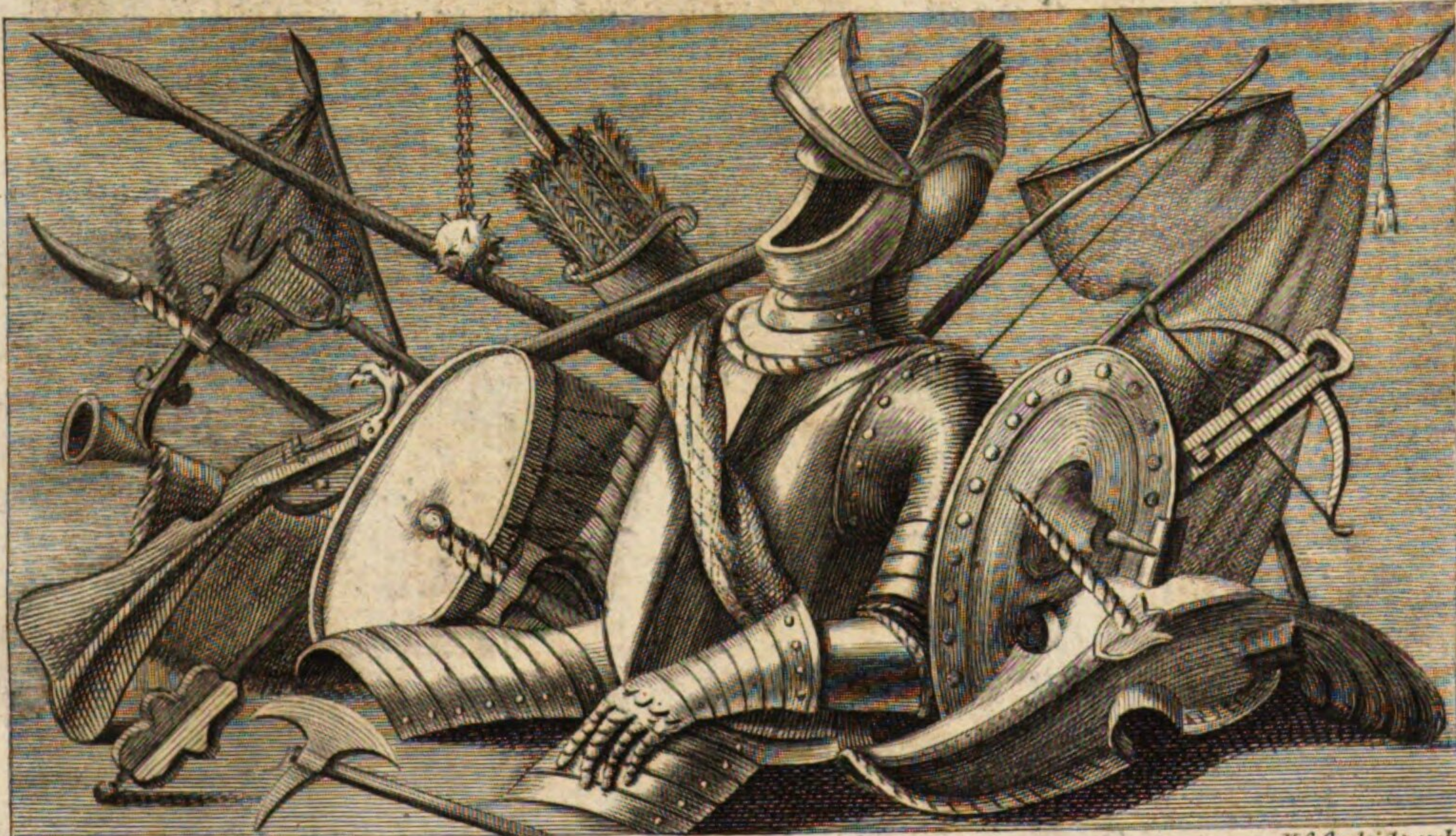
*A Man at Arms in Plate Armour mounted on a Barded Horse, and an Archer,
with his Bow, Arrows, & Leaden Mallet.*

MILITARY
ANTIQUE
RESPECTING
A HISTORY

OF
THE ENGLISH ARMY,
FROM
THE CONQUEST TO THE PRESENT TIME.

VOL: I.

By Francis Grose Esq^r. F. A. S.



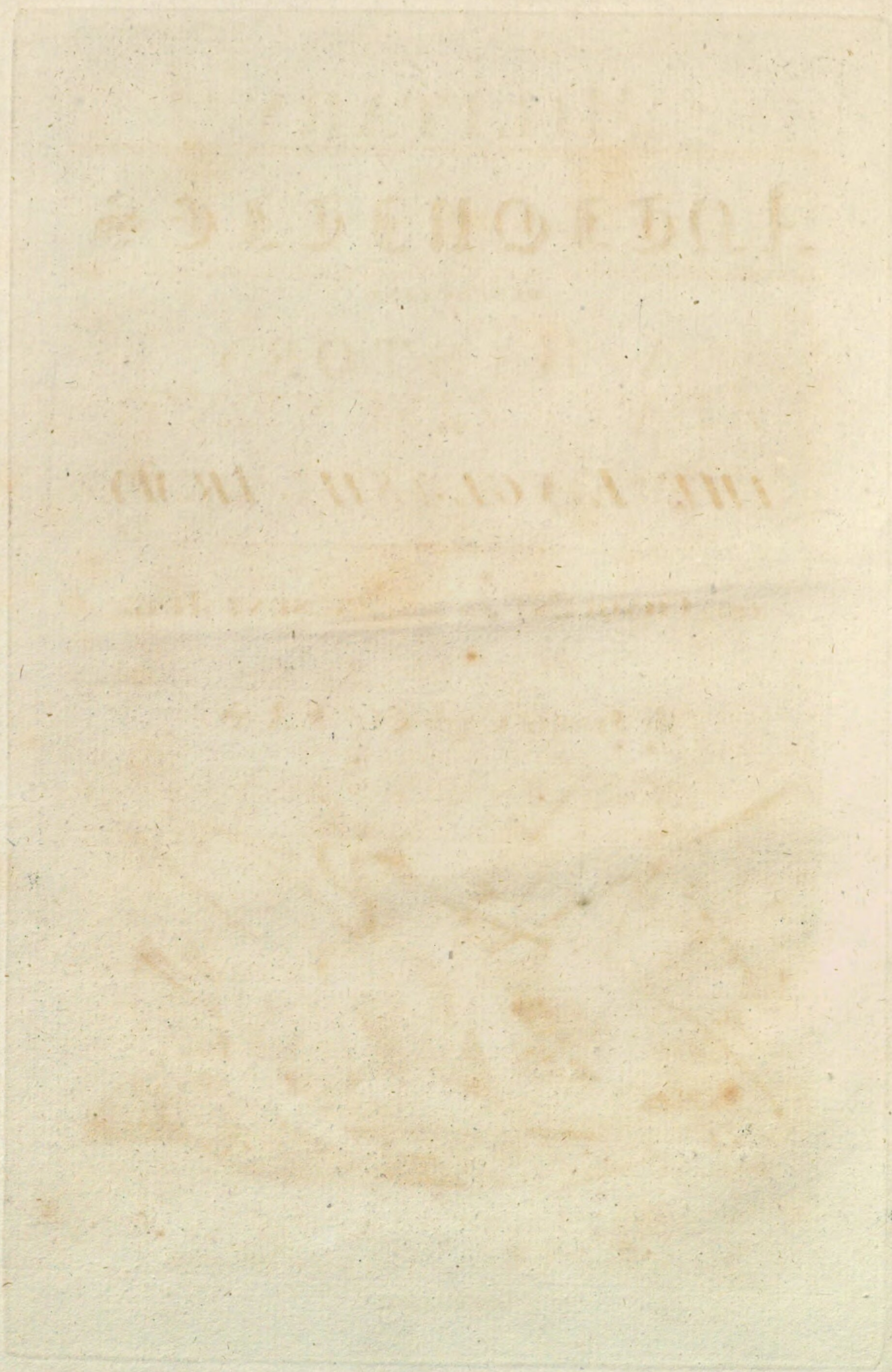
Pubd April 1786

N.C. Goodright sculp.

L O N D O N

PRINTED FOR S. HOOPER N^o 212 HIGH HOLBORN.

MDCCLXXXVI.



ADVERTISEMENT.

THE design of this work being to give an historical and chronological detail of the different constituent parts of the English army, from the conquest to the present time, with the various changes they have successively undergone; for the sake of method, they will be arranged, and considered under the following heads.

A BRIEF account of the Anglo Saxon army before the battle of Hastings. The general outlines of that part of the feudal system which respects military service, instituted by William I. The constitutional force of this kingdom shortly after the Norman invasion, with the subsequent regulations relative thereto. Of stipendiary, or mercenary troops. Of troops, provision, and munition, levied by the Royal Prerogative.

THE modes of summoning the military tenants. The forms of assembling the posse comitatus. Of embodying, and arming the clergy. Commissions of array. Methods of engaging for troops by indenture, and other occasional expedients practised for levying soldiers in cases of emergency.

THE different kinds of troops of which our armies have from time to time been composed. Their arms offensive and defensive, the division of the ancient forces into troops and companies, the number and denomination of their officers, with the successive alterations to the present time.

THE general field and staff officers of different ranks. The ancient manner of mustering the troops, and appreciating the horses of the cavalry, with the prices allowed for them.

THE pay of the officers and soldiers at different periods. Cloathing, quarters, castrametation, colours, standards, and military music, exercise, evolutions and manœuvres.

ADMINISTRATION of justice, and the various manners of trying military delinquents. The military laws and ordinances of different reigns. Observations on the present articles of war. Military rewards and punishments.

ARTILLERY. The ancient machines used for projecting darts and stones, their construction, power, and ranges. The machines impelled by human force. Those contrived for covering troops employed in a siege. The Greek fire, and other artificial fireworks. Gunpowder, with an investigation of
of

A D V E R T I S E M E N T.

of the time when and by whom it was invented. Proportions observed at different times in the materials of which it is compounded. The invention of cannons and mortars, with their improvements. The introduction of hand guns of different sorts and denominations.

FORTIFICATION. The ancient manner of attack and defence of towns, forts and castles before the use of gunpowder; alterations and improvements since that invention. Mines, and infernals.

THE laws and customs respecting prisoners of war, their parole, and ranfome.

THESE are the different articles under which the author proposes to conduct his enquiry; an undertaking it must be confessed of no small magnitude; but as the due execution of it will depend more on industry than genius, he flatters himself a degree of patience and application, a great liking for the subject, and many years practical experience in diverse branches of it, will enable him to complete his undertaking, if not in a manner equal to his wishes, at least so as to escape the accusation of temerity for the attempt, and he farther hopes, that his endeavours may excite some more able writer to take up the subject.

It may be necessary to observe, that altho' the number of references to customs and usages observed in France, brought as proofs of like practices in England, may at first sight be deemed incompetent evidence; yet when it is considered, that

that the Conqueror would undoubtedly, with the feudal system, introduce all the other Norman customs into his English army; and when we recollect the intimate connection that long subsisted between the two nations, and that most of our great barons were formerly possessed of estates and seigneuries in both countries, with the number of French troops that served in the English armies, this objection will vanish, and the propriety of the introduction become apparent. Indeed the similitude of military usages was not confined to France and England; the number of different nations assembled by the crusades could not fail of making the military customs, arms, machines and discipline pretty much alike throughout Europe.

As many records and other authorities are cited in support of assertions, in which the mere word of the author ought not to be taken as sufficient proof, such of them as cannot be conveniently inserted in the notes, will be placed at the end of each volume, under the title of Appendix.



HISTORY

HISTORY

OF THE

ENGLISH ARMY.

ALTHOUGH in the following work I propose to commence my investigations from the period immediately succeeding the Norman invasion, it will throw some light on the subject, briefly to describe the military establishment of the Anglo-Saxons, at, and about the time of that event.

By the Saxon laws, every freeman of an age capable of bearing arms, and not incapacitated by any bodily infirmity, was, in case of a foreign invasion, internal insurrection, or other emergency, obliged to join the army, that being one of the three services comprised under the title of the *trinoda necessitas*; these were attending personally in war for the defence of the nation, working at, and contributing

tributing to the building of the public castles and fortresses, and repairing bridges and highways.

IN forming their armies the following regulations were observed: all such as were qualified to bear arms in one family, were led to the field by the head of that family. Every ten families made a tithing, which was commanded by the borsholder, in his military capacity styled conductor. Ten tithings constituted an hundred; the foldiers of each hundred were led by the chief magistrate of the hundred, sometimes called the hundredary. Several hundreds formed a trything, (a) which was commanded by the officer, called a trything-man; and the force of the country or shire, was commanded by the hertoch, dux or duke, and he by the king, or an officer called the kynings hold, *i. e.* the king's lieutenant or general, which office lasted only during the war. In times of peace, or when the king did not think it necessary to have a general, the militia remained under the command of the dukes of each county.

EVERY landholder was obliged to keep armour and weapons according to his rank and possessions; these he might neither sell, lend, nor pledge, nor even alienate from his heirs. In order to instruct them in the use of arms, they had their stated times for performing their military exercise; and once in a year, usually in the spring, there was a general review of arms, throughout each county.

THE clergy were exempted from personal military services, not only as being contrary to their profession, but likewise that they might the better attend to their religious duties. Their estates, though

(a) CORRUPTLY in Yorkshire called a ryding, from the similarity of sound; the east, north, and west ridings, really meaning the east, north and west trythings.

THIS officer was elected by the hundred, at their public court, where they met armed, and every member as a token of his obedience, touched the weapon of the hundredary, whence these courts were called *wapentakes*, a name still kept up in Yorkshire.

though held in franc almoigne, were however chargeable to the trinoda necessitas, the only imposition to which they were liable.

THE greater part of the Anglo-Saxon forces consisted of infantry; the cavalry was chiefly composed of the Thanes, and such men of property as kept horses.

THE Saxon cavalry are frequently delineated in ancient illuminations as riding without stirrups, with no other defensive armour than a helmet; their weapon a spear. It is nevertheless certain, that defensive armour was worn by their officers and great men about the time of the Norman conquest.

THEIR infantry seem to have been of two sorts, the heavy and light armed. The first are represented with helmets made of the skins of beasts, the hair outwards, large oval convex shields, with spikes projecting from the bosses, long and very broad swords, and spears. The light infantry with spears only, and some no other weapon than a sword, besides which, different histories relate that they also used clubs, battle-axes, or bills, and javelins; the latter they darted with great dexterity, and then instantly came to close fight. The dress of both horse and foot, was a tunic with sleeves, the skirts reaching down to the knees; the horsemen wore spurs with only one point.

THE kings commonly wore their crowns in battle, which also in some measure answered the purpose of a helmet.

THE Anglo-Saxon mode of drawing up their armies, was in one large dense body, surrounding their standard, and placing their foot with their heavy battle-axes in the front.

By the laws of King Edward the confessor, any man who from cowardice abandoned his lord, or fellow-soldiers, whilst under the command of the hertoch, in any expedition by land or sea, forfeited both his life and property, and his lord might resume any lands he had formerly granted him. He who was slain in war-fighting before his lord, either at home or abroad, all payments due for reliefs on his estates were remitted to his heirs, who were to enjoy his lands and

money without any diminution, and might divide it among them. (b)

THE introduction of the feudal system, which took place in this kingdom about the year 1086, gave a very considerable change to the military establishment of the nation. This alteration in the constitution, was not, it is said, effected by the sole power of King William, but was adopted with the consent of the great council of the realm, assembled at Sarum, where all the principal land-holders subjected their possessions to military services, became the king's vassals, and did homage, and swore fealty to his person for the lands held of him as superior lord and original proprietor. (c) But when it is considered, that the great land-holders at that meeting were most of them Normans, the friends and followers of the king on whom he had bestowed the estates taken from the English; the suffrage of such an assembly, though freely obtained, will scarce justify the measure being deemed a national choice.

By this system all the lands of the realm were considered as divided into certain portions, each producing an annual revenue, styled a knight's fee. Our ancient lawyers are not agreed to the quantity of land, or sum of money of which it consisted; it indeed seems to have varied at different periods: however in the reigns of Henry II. and Edward II. a knight's fee was stated at 20l. per annum, the number of knight's fees in this kingdom was estimated at sixty thousand.

By the feudal law, every tenant in capite, that is, every person holding immediately from the king, the quantity of land amounting to

(b) LAMBARD, Arch. fol. 135, de heretochiis.

(c) REX tenuit magnum concilium, & graves sermones habuit cum suis proceribus de hac terra, quo modo incoletetur et a quibus hominibus. Chron. Sax. an. 1085.—
Omnes predia tenentes, quotquot essent notæ melioris per totam Angliam, ejus homines acti sunt, et omnes se illi subdidere, ejusque facti sunt vasalli ac ei fidelitatis juramenta præstitirent, se contra alios quoscunque illi fidos futuros. Ibid. A. D. 1086.

to a knight's fee, was bound to hold himself in readiness, with horse and arms to serve the king in his wars, either at home or abroad, at his own expence, for a stated time, generally forty days in a year (d), to be reckoned from the time of joining the army. Persons holding more or less, were bound to do duty in proportion to their tenures; thus one possessed of but half a fee, was to perform service for twenty days only. (e) The lands of the church were not exempt, but ecclesiastics were generally indulged with performing their service by deputies. Although sometimes their personal appearance was insisted on, possibly from a supposition that their presence with the army, would give a confidence to the soldiers, and a sanction to the cause, effects not unlikely in those days of superstition; or perhaps the instance here particularly alluded to, was occasioned by some new contrivance of the clergy, to avoid the performance of their military services, by calling a convocation. (f)

THE

(d) OMNES comites et barones, et milites, et servientes, et universi liberi homines totius regni nostri prædicti, habeant & teneant se semper bene in armis et in equis, ut decet et oportet; et sint semper prompti et bene parati ad servitium suum integrum nobis explendum et peragendum cum opus fuerit; secundum quod nobis debent de fœdis et tenementis suis de jure facere; et sicut illis statuimus per commune concilium totius regni nostri prædicti. Cap. 58. Wilk. 228.

(e) KNIGHTS' fees were often divided into many parts, some tenants in chief holding only a fourth, or an eighth part; and an instance occurs of a tenant in capite, enfeoffed after the death of Henry I. who had only one twentieth. These small tenancies are supposed to have arisen, from the desire of holding in chief of the crown, though by ever so small a fief, on account of the honour and superior protection annexed to that tenure.

(f) An instance of this happened in the 41st of Hen. III. as appears by the following writ, printed in Rymer's Fœdera, which, as it seems extremely singular, is here given at length. Rex H. Linc. Episcopo salutem. Cum pro exercitu nostro, cum quo tendimus ad partes Cestrie contra Wallensis inimicos nostros, vos et omnes alios prælatos & magnates regni nostri fecerimus summoneri, ad eundem nobiscum eum toto servitio suo, nobis debito, pro defensione terræ nostræ contra prædictos Wallenses. Et archiepiscopos Cantuariensis quondam convocationem episcoporum fieri fecit London, in octabri assumptionis Beate

THE service being accomplished, the tenant was at liberty to return home; if he, or his followers afterwards continued to serve with the army, they were paid by the king: certificates from the constable or marshall were sometimes required, in proof that a knight had duly performed his service.

IF a tenant in capite, or knight, could not perform his service in person, through sickness, being a minor, or any other cause, he obtained leave to send some able person in his stead, an indulgence for which it was often necessary to fine to the king; a fine being the language of those days, not only an amercement for an offence, but also the price of a favour. Our records afford several instances, wherein feudal tenants unable to bear arms, were by proclamation directed to find unexceptionable persons to perform their services for them, (g)

As
Beatae Mariæ ut audivimus; quæ quidem convocatio, aut alii tractatus vel concilia, nobis existentibus & agentibus in exercitu nostro, fieri non debent, eo quo singuli, *tam prælati quam alii in propriis personis venire debeant* ad defensionem coronæ et regni nostri, & per absentiam eorundem grave nobis & terræ nostræ periculæ posset imminire; inhibuimus districte præfato archiepiscopo, ne dictam convocationem faciat, sed convocationem illam, dum fuerimus in exercitu nostro, revocat & suspendat.

UNDE sub debiti fidelitatis qua nobis tenemini & forisfactura terrarum & tenamentorum, quæ in regno nostro tenetis, vobis districte prohibemus ne ad convocationem hujusmodi, dum fuerimus in exercitu nostro, accedere præsumatis, sed ad nos versus Walliam pro defensionem nostra et terræ nostræ contra prædictos Wallenses sine moræ dispendie veniatis, servitium vestrum nobis debitum *personaliter* impensuri, ne pro defectu vestri, exheredationem perpetuam patiamur. Teste meipso apud Wodest. 19 die Julii.

EODUM modo mandatum est aliis episcopis Cantuar. provinciæ in Anglia existentibus.

ET mandatum est officialibus episcoporum ejusdem provinciæ agentium in partibus transmarinis, quod ad convocationem prædictam non accedant, sed sub amissione omnium terrarum dominorum suorum mittent regia servitia, quæ domino suo regi debent.

(g) A. D. 1294, 22d Ed. I. that king granted a commission to the bishop of Bath and Wells, appointing him, with the barons of the exchequer, to receive fines to his use, according to their direction, from archbishops, bishops, abbots, priors, and other religious and ecclesiastical persons, ladies, widows, and other women, in lieu of military service

As a tenant who held several knights' fees, could not do the service of more than one in his person, he might discharge the others, by able substitutes being knights, or by two esquires, sometimes styled servientes, in lieu of each knight. (h)

SOMETIMES the king compounded with his tenants for particular services, and sometimes for those of the whole year, accepting in lieu thereof pecuniary payments, with which he hired stipendiary troops; this is generally supposed to have introduced the practice of levying scutages, first begun by King Henry II. (i). The punishment for

service in the present expedition to Gascony. Rymer. And anno 1303, 31st of the same reign, that king having summoned his feudal tenants to assemble at Berwick, in order to go against the Scots, commanded the sheriffs to proclaim publicly, that such prelates, or women, as were willing to pay fines in lieu of personal service, should come before the barons of the exchequer, the morrow of the Ascension of our Lord next ensuing, or sooner if possible, at York, or send some one for them, in order to fine for their said services, there to pay at the rate of 20l. for one knight's fee, otherwise to attend and perform their services. See Rymer in anno.

(h) IN the reign of Edward I. the bishop of Hereford did his service for five knights' fees, by two knights, and six esquires, each knight being estimated equal to two esquires, *Madox Baron.* l. 1, c. 5, p. 9.

(i) THE other ancient levies were in the nature of a modern land-tax, for we may trace the original of that charge, as high as the introduction of our military tenures; when every tenant of a knight's fee was bound, if called upon, to attend the king in his army for forty days in every year. But this personal attendance growing troublesome in many respects, the tenants found means of compounding for it, by first sending others in their stead, and in process of time, by making a pecuniary satisfaction to the crown in lieu of it. This pecuniary satisfaction at last came to be levied by assessments, at so much every knight's fee, under the name of scutages; which appear to have been levied for the first time, in the fifth year of Henry II. on account of his expedition to Thoulouse, and were then (I apprehend) mere arbitrary compositions, as the king and the subject could agree; but this precedent being afterwards abused into a means of oppression, by levying scutages on the landholders by the royal authority only, whenever our kings went to war, in order to hire mercenary troops, and pay their contingent expences; it became therefore a matter of national complaint, and King John was obliged to promise in his magna charta, that no scutage should be imposed without the consent of the common council of the realm. This clause was indeed omitted in the charters of Henry III. where

for non-attendance, when duly summoned, was a heavy fine (k) or forfeiture of the tenure. (l)

THE tenants in capite, in order to find substitutes for those fees, for which they could not serve themselves, made under-grants to their favorites and dependents, liable to the same conditions as those on which they held them from the crown, namely fealty and homage, and that their tenant should attend them to the wars, when they should be called upon by the king, there to serve for a stated time at their own expence, properly armed and mounted: these again had their under-tenants and vassals. Men at arms, or knights, were generally attended by their tenants and vassals, both on horseback, and on foot; these served in the infantry either as archers or bill-men.

THE constitutional military force of England, soon after the conquest, consisted of the feudal troops and the posse comitatus.

THE feudal troops were either the persons who held lands in capite, (m) that is, immediately of the crown, or their vassals and under-

we only find it stipulated, that scutages shall be taken as they were used to be in the time of King Henry II. yet afterwards by a variety of statutes under Edward I. and his grandson, it was provided, that the king shall not take any aids or tasks, any talliage or tax, but by the common assent of the great men, and commons in parliament. *Blackstone's Commentaries*, vol. 1, p. 299, octavo.

(k) AN hundred marks was the fine imposed on two defaulters of this kind. William de Hastings, and William bishop of Winchester, the first in the reign of Richard I. the second in the 30th of Henry III. See *Madox's History of the Exchequer*.

(l) MATHEW TURPIN was disseised of his land and serjeanty in Wanterlow, because he was not in the king's service beyond sea. Mag. Rot. 1st of John, Rot. 13, f. Wilts. And Duncan de Locals was disseised of three knights' fees and a half, for non-attendance in Scotland, Mag. Rot. 12, John 2. b. Many other instances occur in our records.

(m) BY the statute of the 11th of Henry VIII. every person bearing an office, fee, or annuity of the king's grant, was bound to attend him personally whenever he went himself to the wars, (except certain privileged persons mentioned in the act, or such as had the king's licence, or were prevented by some just cause) on pain to forfeit such office, fee, and annuity.

under-tenants, both of whom were, as has before been observed, obliged by their tenures to attend the king and their lords to the wars, at home or abroad, completely armed and mounted, for forty days in a year, or according to the value of the fees held by them.

THE posse comitatus, or power of the county, included every free man above the age of fifteen, and under that of fixty, and although the chief destination of this establishment was to preserve the peace under the command of the sheriff, they were also, in case of hostile invasions, called out to defend the country, and repel the enemy. (n) The posse comitatus differed from the feudal troops in this; they were only liable to be called out in case of internal commotions, or actual invasions, on which occasions only they could legally be marched out of their respective counties, and in no case out of the kingdom; (o) whereas the feudal troops were subject to foreign service at the king's pleasure. That this body of men might be ready to take the field, the following law was enacted by Henry II. A. D. 1181, in the 27th year of his reign; which was in substance similar to that mentioned in treating of the military establishment before the battle of Hastings.

WHOSOEVER holds one knight's fee shall have a coat of mail, a helmet, a shield, and a lance, and every knight to have as many

(n) HE (the sheriff) is also to defend his county against any of the king's enemies, when they come into the land, and for that purpose, as well as for the keeping of the peace and pursuing of felons, he may command all the people of his county to attend him; which is called the posse comitatus, or power of the county, which summons every person above fifteen years old, and under the degree of a peer, is bound to attend upon warning, under pain of fine and imprisonment. *Blackstone's Commentaries*, Vol. I. p. 332. 8vo.

(o) ITEM le Roy voet deormes nul soit charge de soi armer, autrement quil ne soleit en temps de ces auncestres Roys d'Engleterre. Et que nul soient distreintz daler hors de leur countez, si non par cause de necessite de sodeyne venue des estraunges enemys en roialme et adonques soit fait come ad este fait avant ces heures par defens du roialme. Stat. 1. Ed. 3d, cap. 5.

coats of mail, (p) helmets, shields, and lances, as he shall have knights fees in his domain.

EVERY free layman having in chattels or rent to the value of sixteen marks, shall keep a coat of mail, a helmet, a shield, and a lance.

EVERY free layman who shall have in chattels or rent ten marks, shall have a habergeon, (q) a chapelet of iron, and a lance.

ALSO all burgeses and the whole community of freemen shall have a wambais, (r) a chapelet of iron, and a lance.

EVERY one of these (before-mentioned) shall swear that he will have these arms before the feast of St. Hilary, and will bear fealty to King Henry, to wit, the son of the Empress Matilda; and that he will keep these arms for his service according to his command, and with fidelity to our lord the king and his realm: and no man having these arms shall sell, pledge, nor lend them, nor alienate them in any other manner; nor shall the lord take them from his vassal by forfeiture, gift, pledge, or any other manner.

ON the death of any one having these arms, they shall remain to his heir; and if the said heir is not of such age as to be able to use arms, they shall, if necessary, be put into the custody of him who has the guardianship of his person, who shall provide a man to use them in the service of our lord the king, if required, until the heir shall be of a proper age to bear arms, and then they shall be delivered to him.

ANY burgeses having more arms than he is by this assize required

(p) LORICA. A coat of mail either composed of ringlets of iron or small plates like scales, sewed on leather, so as to lap over each other.

(q) HALBERGELLUM et capelet ferri. The halbergellum or haubergeon was a small coat, composed either of plate or chain mail, without sleeves, the chaplet an iron scull cap, commonly without visor or bever.

(r) WAMBAIS, &c. Doublets composed of many folds of linen, stuffed with cotton, wool, or hair, and commonly covered with leather.

to

to have, shall sell or give them, or so alienate them, that they may be retained for the service of our lord the king of England; and none of them shall keep more arms than he is by this assize bound to have.

No Jew shall have in his custody a coat of mail or habergeon, but shall sell or give it away, or in some other manner so dispose of it, that it shall remain in the king's service.

Also, no man shall carry arms out of the kingdom, unless by the command of our lord the king, nor shall any man sell arms to another, who means to carry them out of the kingdom.

By other parts of this law it was directed, that juries should be appointed in the hundreds and boroughs of every county, to discover who had chattels or rent to the value expressed therein; on which inquest no person who had not chattels to the value of sixteen marks, or ten at least, was to serve. The king's justices in their circuits were required to enroll the names of the jurors, and of those who should be found to have chattels or rents to the value above mentioned, after which they were to cause this assize to be publicly read, and all the persons concerned were to be sworn to observe it in all points.

And if it happened that any one of those who ought to have these arms was not in his county at the time the justices were there, they were directed to appoint another time and county for his appearance; and if he did not come to them in any of the counties through which they passed, they were in that case to appoint him a time at Westminster, at the octaves of St. Michael, then to attend and take his oath, as he loved himself and all that belonged to him; and he was likewise to be commanded to have, before the feast of St. Hilary, arms such as he was by law bound to possess.

Also the justices were enjoined to cause it to be notified over all the counties through which they were to pass, that those who had not

not these arms as aforesaid, the king would punish corporally in their limbs, and not in their goods, their lands, or chattels.

Also none might act as jurors respecting legal and free men, who hath not sixteen marcs in land, or ten marcs in chattels.

Also the justices to command in all the counties by which they should pass, that no one as he loved himself, and all that belonged to him, should buy or sell any ship, to be taken out of England; and the king commanded that none but a freeman should be admitted to take the oath of arms.

THIS regulation, or assize, received a farther corroboration, by the statute of the 13th of King Edward I. called the statute of Winchester, by which every man was bound to provide and keep armour and weapons, according to his estate or goods.

THE armour and weapons directed by the statute of Winchester, to be kept by persons of different possessions, were thus allotted: every one possessed of lands to the yearly value of fifteen pounds, and forty marks in goods, to keep a haubergeon, an iron headpiece, a sword, knife, and horse. Those having from ten, and under fifteen pounds in lands and chattels, or the value of forty marks, the same as the preceding class, the horse excepted. Persons having an hundred shillings per annum in land, and upwards, were to keep a doublet, a headpiece of iron, a sword, and a knife. And from forty shillings annual rent in land, and upwards, to one hundred, a sword, bow and arrows, and a knife. He that had under forty shillings in land, was sworn to keep faulchions, gisarmes, daggers, and other small arms. Persons possessing less than twenty marks in chattels, to have swords, daggers, and other inferior weapons, and all others authorised to keep bows and arrows, might have them out of the forests. A review of these arms was to be made twice a year, by two constables out of every hundred, who were to report defaulters to the justices, and they to present them to the king in parliament. This statute was repealed in the first of Philip
and

and Mary, and another enacted, wherein armour and weapons of more modern date were inserted.

By that act it was provided that all temporal persons, having estates of a thousand pounds or upwards, should from the 1st of May, 1588, keep six horses or geldings fit for mounting demi-launces, three of them at least to have sufficient harness, steele saddles, (s) and weapons requisite and appertaining to the said demi-launces, horses or geldings; and ten light horses or geldings, with the weapons and harness requisite for light-horseman; also forty corselets furnished, (t) forty almaine rivetts, (u) or instead of the said forty almaine rivetts, forty coates of plate, (x) corselets or brigandines (y) furnished; forty pikes, thirty long bowes, thirty sheaf of arrowes, (z) thirty steele cappes or sculles, (a) twenty black bills.

(s) SADDLES whose burrs or bowe were covered with steel.

(t) THE corselet was a species of armour chiefly worn by pikemen, who were thence often denominated corselets; strictly speaking, the word corselet meant only that part which covered the body, but was generally used to express the whole suit, under the term of a corselet furnished or complete; this included the head-piece and gorget, the back and breast, with skirts of iron called tasses or tassets, covering the thighs.

(u) ALMAINE rivetts were probably coats of armour made flexible by means of rivetts, invented in or imported from Germany. || (x) COATS of plate were made of thin plates of iron.

(y) BRIGANDINES took their name from the troops by whom they were first worn, these were called Brigans; they were a kind of light armed irregular foot, much addicted to plunder, frequently mentioned by Froissart: from their irregularities, the appellation of brigands was used in common to signify all sorts of freebooters. The brigandine was composed of a number of small plates of iron sewed upon quilted linen or leather through a small hole in the center of each plate, their edges laid over each other, like tiles or the scales of a fish. These scales were covered over with leather or cloth, so as to have the appearance of common coats; they were proof against the stroke of a sword, or push of a pike, and yet extremely pliable to every motion of the body.

(z) A SHEAF contained twenty-four arrows. || (a) THE scull was a head-piece resembling a bowl or a bason.

bills (b) or halberts, twenty haquebuts, (c) and twenty morians (d) or fallets. (e)

TEMPORAL persons having estates to the value of 1000 marks and upwards, and under the clear yearly value of 1000l. to maintain four horses or geldings for demi-launces, whereof two, at the least, to be horses; with sufficient weapons, saddles, meete and requisite to the said demi-launces; six light horses, with furniture, &c. necessary for the same, thirty corcelets furnished, thirty almaine rivetts, or in lieu thereof thirty coats of plate, corcelets, or brigandines furnished; thirty pikes, twenty long bowes, twenty sheaf of arrowes, twenty steel caps or sculls, ten black bills or halberts, ten haquebuts and ten morians or fallets.

EVERY temporal person having 400l. per annum, and under the clear yearly value of 1000 marks, to keep two horses, or one horse and one gelding, for light horses, twenty corcelets furnished, twenty almaine rivetts furnished, or instead thereof, twenty coats of plate, corcelets, or brigandines furnished; twenty pikes, fifteen long bowes, fifteen sheaves of arrowes, fifteen steel caps, or sculls, six haquebuts, and six morians, or fallets.

TEMPORAL persons having clear 200l. per annum, and under 400l. per annum, one great horse or gelding fit for a demi-launce, with sufficient furniture and harness, steeled saddle, &c. two geldings for light horse, with harness and weapons as aforesaid: ten corcelets

(b) A BLACK bill was a species of halbert, not commonly kept bright, whence they were called black and sometimes brown bills.

(c) HAQUEBUT, a hand gun, called haque or hook-but, from its stock being hooked or bent.

(d) A MORION was commonly an open helmet without visor or bever, worn by the harquebusiers and musketteers; Guillim says it took its name of morion from being commonly worn by the Moors.

(e) SALLETS or celates were head-pieces without crests, sometimes having a visor, and sometimes without one.

lets furnished, ten almaine rivetts, or in instead thereof, ten coats of plate, corcelets, or brigandines furnished, ten pikes, eight long bows, eight sheafs of arrows, eight steel caps or sculls, three haquebuts, and three morians or fallets.

EVERY temporal person, &c. having 100l. or under 200l. per annum, two geldings and furniture, &c. for light horsemen, three corcelets furnished, three almaine rivetts, corcelets or brigandines furnished, three long pikes, three bowes, three sheaves of arrowes, three steel caps or sculls, two haquebuts, and two morians or fallets.

TEMPORAL persons having 100 marks and under 100l. per annum, one gelding and furniture for a light horseman, two corcelets furnished, two almaine rivetts, coats of plate or brigandines furnished, two pikes, two long bowes, two sheafs of arrows, two steel caps, or sculls, one haquebut, one morian or fallet.

TEMPORAL persons having 40l. or under 100 marks per annum, two corcelets furnished, two almaine rivetts, corcelets or brigandines furnished; two pikes, one long bowe, one sheaf of arrows, one steel cap or scull, two haquebuts, two morians or fallets.

PERSONS having 20l. and under 40l. per annum, one corcelet furnished, one pike, one haquebut, one morian or fallet, one long bowe, one sheaf of arrows, and one steel cap or scull.

TEMPORAL persons having 10l. and under 20l. per annum, one almaine rivett, a coat of plate or brigandine furnished, one haquebut, one morian or fallet, and one long bowe, one sheaf of arrows, and one steel cap or scull.

TEMPORAL persons having 5l. and under 10l. per annum, one coat of plate furnished, one black bill or halbert, one long bowe, and one sheaf of arrows, steel cap or scull.

TEMPORAL persons having goods and chattels to the amount of 1000 marks, one horse or gelding furnished for a demi-launce, once gelding furnished for a light horseman, or eighteen corcelets furnished, instead of the said horse and gelding, and furniture of the

same, at their choice; two corcelets furnished, two almaine rivetts, or instead thereof two corcelets or two brigandines furnished, two pikes, four long bowes, four sheafs of arrowes, four steel caps, or sculls, and three haquebuts, with three morians or fallets.

TEMPORAL persons having goods, &c. to the amount of 400l. and above, and under 1000 marks, one gelding for a light horseman, properly furnished, or instead thereof nine corcelets furnished at his choice, and one other corcelet furnished; one pike, two almaine rivetts, or plate coates, or brigandines furnished, one haquebut, two longes bowes, two sheafs of arrowes, and two steel caps or sculls.

GOODS, &c. to the amount of 200l. and upwards, and under 400l. one corcelet furnished, one pike, two almaine rivetts, plate coats, or brigandines furnished; one haquebut, one morian or fallet, two long bowes, two sheafs of arrows, and two scull or steel caps.

GOODS, &c. to the amount of 100l. or above, and under 200l. one corcelet furnished, one pike, one pair of almaine rivets, one plate coat, or pair of brigandines furnished, two long bowes, and two sheafs of arrows and two sculls.

GOODS, &c. to the amount of 40l. and under 100l. two pair of almaine rivetts, or two coats of plate or brigandines furnished, one long bowe, one sheaf of arrowes, one steel cap or one scull, and one black bill or halbert.

GOODS, &c. to the amount of 20l. and upwards, and under 40l. one pair of almaine rivetts, or one coat of plate, or one pair of brigandines, two long bowes, two sheafs of arrowes, two sculls or steel caps, and one black bill or halbert.

GOODS, &c. to the amount of 10l. and above, and under 20l. one long bowe, one sheaf of arrowes, with one steel cap or scull, and one black bill or halbert.

TEMPORAL persons not charged by this act, having annuities, copyholds, or estate of inheritance to the clear yearly value of 30l. or upwards, to be chargeable with furniture of war, according to the proportion appointed for goods and chattels.

AND

AND every person who by the act of the 33d of King Hen. VIII. cap. 5. was bound by reason, that his wife should wear such kind of apparell, or other thing, as in the same statute is mentioned and declared, to keepe or find one great stoned trotting horse, viz. Every person temporall, whose wife (not being divorced nor willingly absenting herself from him) doth weare any gowne of filke, French hood, or bonet of velvet, with any habiliment, past, or edge of golde, pearle, or stone, or any chaine of golde about her necke, or in her partlet, or in any apparell of her body, except the sonnes and heires apparent of dukes, marqueses, earles, viconts, and barons, and others having heriditaments to the yearly value of 600 marks or above, during the life of their fathers; and wardes having heriditaments of the yearly value of 200l. and who are not by this act before charged, to have, maintaine, and keep any horse or gelding; shall from the said 1st of May, have, keep, and maintain, one gelding, able and meete for a light horseman, with sufficient harness and weapon for the same, in such manner and forme, as every person having lordships, houses, lands, &c. to the clear yearly value of 100 marks is appointed to have.

ANY person chargeable by this act, who for three whole months from the 1st of May, shall lack or want the horses or armour, with which he is charged, shall forfeit for every horse or gelding in which he is deficient, ten pounds: for every demi launce and furniture, three pounds; for every corselet and furniture of the same, forty shillings, and for every almaine rivet, coat of plate, or brigandine and furniture of the same, twenty shillings; and for every bow and sheaf of arrows, bill, halbert, hacquebut, steel cap, scull, morian and fallet, ten shillings, one half of these forfeitures to the king and queen, the other half to the parties suing for the same.

THE inhabitants of all cities, burroughs, towns, parishes, &c. other than such as are specially charged before in this act, shall keep and maintain at their common charges, such harneis and weapons as shall be appointed by the commissioners of the king and

queen, to be kept in such places as shall by the said commissioners be appointed.

INDENTURES to be made of the numbers and kinds thereof between two or more of the said commissioners, and twelve, eight, or four, of the principal inhabitants of every such city, borough, &c. &c. one part to remain with the chief officer of the said city, &c. and the other part with the clerk of the peace of the county.

AND if any of the inhabitants shall be deficient for three months in any of the articles directed to be found, they shall forfeit for every article according to the proportion before mentioned, to be applied and levied as there directed.

THE lord chancellor for the time being shall have full power to grant commissions under the great seal of England, to as many justices of every shire or county as he shall deem necessary for making this appointment of horses and armour. This act not to invalidate any covenant between a landlord and his tenant for finding of horses, armour, or weapons.

THE justices of every county are hereby authorised to make search and view from time to time of and for the horses, armour, &c. to be kept by persons possessed of 200l. per ann. and not above 400l. per ann. or to be found by persons chargeable on account of their goods, chattels, &c. as aforesaid, and to hear and determine at their quarter sessions every default committed or done, contrary to this act, within the county, and to level the penalties.

ANY soldier making sale of his horse, harness, or weapon, or any of them, contrary to the form of the statute made in the said 2d and 3d year of the late king, i. e. the 2d and 3d of King Edw. VI. (which see in Captains) shall incur the penalty of the said statute, and the sale shall be void, the purchaser knowing him to be a soldier.

ALL presentments and prosecutions to be within one year after the commission of the offence.

PERSONS prosecuted for deficiencies of armour may plead their
inability

inability to procure it, on account of the want of it within the realm, which plea, if true, shall be a sufficient justification; if denied, issue to be joined, and the trial of such issue, only had by the certificate of the lord chancellor, lord treasurer, the lord president of the council, the lord steward of the king's and queen's most honourable household, the lord privie seal, the lord admiral, and the lord chamberlain of the said household, or by three of them, under their hands and seals, &c. &c. this act or any usage to the contrary notwithstanding. No persons to be charged both for lands and goods. This act not to repeal the act of the 33d Henry VIII. for having long bowes, and exercising archery.

PROVIDED any horses shall die, or be killed, or armour be lost or expended in the defence of the realm, the owner shall not be prosecuted for the deficiency within one year after such loss.

THE want of a gantlet or gantlets shall not be reckoned a deficiency for a corcelet.

THE servants of such persons as are bound to find a haquebut, may exercise themselves in shooting at such marks as are limited and appointed by the 33d of Henry VIII. (which see in cross bows) so that they do not use such haquebut in any highway. This act not to extend to Wales, Lancaster or Chester, nor to oblige any one to have or to find a haquebut, but that they may, at their will and pleasure, have and keep, instead of every haquebut charged in this act, one long bowe, and one sheaf of arrowes, over and above such other armour and munition, as is by the laws of the realm appointed. (i)

D 2

THE

(i) THIS clause plainly shews that the rulers of those times were not very solicitous to introduce the use of fire-arms into the nation, but considered the long bowe as equal to a haquebut.

IN a set of instructions for executing the commission for mustering and training all manner of persons, 15 Eliz. 1572, subscribed by the privy council, No. 6844, Harleian MSS.

THE lord chancellor or lord keeper of the great seal may from time to time by virtue of the king's commission, appoint commissioners in every city, borough, &c. &c. as well in England as Wales, consisting of justices, with other persons joined with them, as he shall think meet, to take a view of armour, and to assign what harneis, &c. they shall be bound to provide and keep.

IN the reigns of Richard II. Henry VII. and Henry VIII. four military bodies were instituted, which are still existing; the serjeants at arms, the yeomen of the guard, the gentlemen pensioners, and the artillery company; the first are entirely degenerated into a civil employment, and several of the others have retained very little of their ancient military character. An account of their establishments shall be given under the head of the different species of troops, of which the English armies have at various times been composed.

DURING the troubles under King Charles I. the royal army consisted chiefly of regiments, raised by the nobility and gentry who adhered to the royal cause, from among their tenants and dependants. Most of the militia, and particularly the trained bands of London, having sided with the parliamentarians, who likewise employed the publick money in levying and paying their armies.

AFTER the restoration of King Charles II. feudal tenures being abolished by act of parliament, a national militia was established, wherein housekeepers, and other substantial persons, were bound to find men and horses, arms, ammunition and pay, each according to their real or personal estates; which militia was declared by an act of parliament, to be under the immediate orders of the king; a matter that had in the preceding reign been strongly contested by the commons, and which had in a great measure contributed to that

MSS. in every hundred footmen, forty are directed to be harquebusiers, twenty archers, if so many can be procured, the remainder to be bill-men, halberdiers, or morris-pykes.

unhappy

unhappy rupture, which so long deluged this country with blood. By this regulation the king was authorised to appoint lieutenants to the several counties, cities, and places, who with his approbation might appoint deputies, liable to be dismissed at the royal pleasure; these deputies were bound to obey all such orders as they should receive from their principals, the lieutenants.

No peer was capable of acting as a lieutenant, or deputy lieutenant, unless he had first taken the oaths of allegiance and supremacy, before six of the privy council, or such other persons as should be authorised by the king.

No person under the degree of a peer, could be capable of acting as a lieutenant, or deputy lieutenant, till he had taken the above-mentioned oaths before a justice of the peace. A lieutenant of a county might administer them to his deputies.

THE lieutenants of counties were authorised to grant commissions of colonels, majors, captains, and other commission officers, to such persons as they thought proper, who, before they acted, were obliged to take the oaths prescribed, to be administered by the lieutenants, or two of their deputies. It is to be always understood, that the king had power to confirm, or displace such officers at his pleasure.

THE lieutenants and deputies, or the major part of them then present, or in the absence of the lieutenant, the major part of the deputy lieutenants then present, such majority not being less in number than three, had power to charge any person, in the county, city, or town corporate, wherein his estate was situated, having respect to, and not exceeding, the following proportions.

No person could be charged with finding a horse, horseman, and arms, unless he had a real estate of 500*l.* per annum in possession, or a personal estate of 6000*l.* in goods and money, exclusive of the furniture of his house, and so in proportion for a greater or less estate. No person was liable to be charged with finding a foot soldier and arms, that had not a yearly revenue of 50*l.* in possession, or
a per-

a personal estate of 600l. in goods and money, other than stock upon the ground; and after the said rate, proportionally for a greater or lesser revenue or estate.

BUT the deputy lieutenants might require the constables to furnish, at a reasonable time, and place, to be appointed, on a penalty not exceeding 40s. so many sufficient arms, with wages and other incidental charges, as they should assess, according to the said proportions, upon revenue under 50l. a year, or on personal estates less than 600l. And in order thereunto, if any person on demand refused, or neglected to provide a foot soldier, or soldiers, according to the proportions aforesaid, or to pay any sums of money, whereat he was assessed by a pound rate, according to a list signed by the lieutenants and deputies, or three of them, towards the defraying the necessary charge in providing such arms as aforesaid; the constable by warrant might levy such sum by distress and sale, rendering the overplus, (the charge of distraining being first deducted) and the tenant was bound to pay the same, and deduct it out of his next rent, and in default thereof, his goods also were liable to be distrained and sold.

No person having an estate of 200l. a year, or personal estate of 2,400l. was liable to be charged with finding a foot soldier, or soldiers.

ANY one possessed of an estate of 100l. per annum, or under 200l. or having a personal estate of 1,200l. and under 2,400l. might be charged towards the finding of foot or horse, as by the lieutenant shall be deemed most expedient, but no one could be charged to find both horse and foot in the same county.

Two, three, or more persons, might be joined in the charge of finding an horseman and arms, but no person who had not 100l. a year in possession, in lands, leasehold, or copyhold, or 1,200l. personal estates, was compellable to contribute towards the finding an horse or horseman.

No person chargeable to find a horse and horseman, or to be contributory

tributary thereunto, could for the same estate be charged with finding a foot soldier with arms, or be liable to pay towards the cost thereof.

WHEN two, or more, were charged to find any horse or foot soldier and arms, three deputy lieutenants might appoint, who should find the same, and who should be contributors, and settle the sums to be paid by each contributor, in cases where the contribution was not ascertained by the agreement of the parties.

AND for the better discovery of the abilities of persons to be assessed and charged, and likewise of all misdemeanors tending to the hindrance of the service, the deputy lieutenants were authorised to examine upon oath, such persons as they should think necessary or convenient, or as should be produced by the party charged or accused, other than the persons themselves who were accused, or to be assessed; and they might likewise hear complaints, and give redress, according to the merits of the cause.

No peers might be charged otherwise than as follows, viz. The king might issue out commissions under the great seal, to so many peers (not fewer than twelve) as he thought fit, who, or any five of them, had power to assess all, or any peers, according to the proportions mentioned in the act, (except the monthly taxes, hereafter following) and to execute all the powers of the act, as well for laying assessments, as imposing of penalties, (imprisonment only excepted) which assessment, or charge so made, and penalties imposed, were to be certified to the lieutenants. And in case of default in performance of any thing to be done, or paid by any peer, the lieutenant and deputies, or any three of them, might cause distresses to be taken on the lands of such defaulter; and if satisfaction was not made in one week after such distress was taken, then the same to be sold: and if a tenant was distrained, he might deduct the sum so levied out of his next rent.

EVERY commissioned foot officer was exempted from finding, or contributing to find, any horse or foot soldier, for his whole estate,

estate, if it was but charged with one horse, or less charge, or for such part of his estate as was charged with one horse; if his whole estate was charged with a greater charge than one horse, in the county or lieutenantcy where he served as a foot officer, in respect of the expence necessarily incurred by the said employment.

ANY papist, reputed papist, or other person refusing to take the oaths, who was chargeable in respect of his estate, the lieutenant, or his deputies, or three of them, might appoint such persons as they judged meet, to furnish the same, and might charge the estate, with the payment of the yearly sum of 8l. for every horse, horseman, and arms, and of 3os. for a foot soldier and his arms, and if he did not pay the same on demand, they might, by their warrant, levy the same by distress and sale of the goods of such person, or of his tenants, rendering them the overplus, all necessary charges in levying thereof being first deducted; and such tenant might deduct the same out of his rent.

WHEN any person was charged in the county, city, or place wherein he did not reside, the deputy lieutenants were to send him notice of the charge, if he had any land in his own occupation, to such person as he employed as his servant in managing the same, and if all his estate was let to farm, then to one or two of the most sufficient tenants; who were forthwith, with all convenient speed, to convey the same to their master or landlord, and within a time appointed, to bring an account of his answer; and on neglect, or refusal of the landlord, to provide such horse or foot, as was duly charged upon him for the yearly rent, reserved upon every demise, or other grant, and not otherwise, within the time limited; then the tenant to provide, and do as the landlord in that behalf ought to have done; and if the tenant refused, or neglected within the time limited, the lieutenants, or in their absence, or by their directions, the deputies, or two of them, might levy by their warrant, all such penalties as are appointed by this act, by distress and sale of the offenders goods.

AND

AND the tenant might stop out of his next rent, all such money as he had necessarily laid out in providing the same, or as had been levied on him by distress for any default; unless the landlord could make it appear in two months after such levying, before the lieutenant, or by his direction, the deputies, or any two of them, that the default and penalty was occasioned by the wilful neglect of the tenant. But this was not to make void any covenant between landlord and tenant, but all charges were to be borne by such tenant, according to the agreement.

IF any person refused, or neglected, by a reasonable appointed time, to provide such horse, horseman, arms, and other furniture, or to pay such sums as were directed towards providing the same, the lieutenants and deputies, or three of them, might inflict a penalty on such person, not exceeding 20*l.* and by their warrant might levy such sum, or the value of such horse, arms, and furniture, and such penalty inflicted by distress and sale, rendering the overplus, all necessary charges in levying thereof being first deducted: the same to be employed to the uses, in default whereof the same was imposed.

AND if any person refused, or neglected, in a reasonable time to be appointed, to provide and furnish such foot soldier and arms, as was charged upon him, the lieutenants and deputies, or three of them, might inflict a penalty not exceeding 5*l.* to be employed to the uses, in default whereof it was imposed. And the constable, by warrant for that purpose, might levy such sum by distress and sale, rendering the overplus, charges of distraining first deducted, and the tenant might deduct the same out of his next rent.

BUT no person charged with the finding horse or foot, or with contributing thereunto, was compellable to serve in person, but might find one to serve for him, to be approved by the captain, subject nevertheless to be altered upon appeal to the lieutenant, or in his absence to two deputy lieutenants.

EVERY man who served in his own person, or such person as was

accepted in his stead, was at the next muster of his troop or company, to give in his name and place of abode, unto such person as the lieutenant, or in his absence, or by his direction, any two deputy lieutenants should appoint, to the end that the same might be listed, that is, written on the list. No one was capable of acting as a soldier, unless he had first taken the oaths of allegiance and supremacy before-mentioned, to be administered by the lieutenant, the deputy lieutenants, or any two of them.

THE lieutenants had power to call together the militia, to arm and array them, to form them into companies, troops, and regiments, and in cases of insurrection, rebellion, or invasion, to lead, conduct, or employ them, or cause them to be led, conducted, or employed, as well within the several counties, cities, and places for which they were commissioned respectively, as also into any other counties and places, for the suppressing of all such insurrections and rebellions, and repelling of invasions, as might happen to be, according as they should receive directions from his majesty.

THE lieutenants, and in their absence, or by their directions, the deputy lieutenants, or two of them, had power to lead, train, and exercise, or by warrant under their hands and seals, to cause to be led, trained, and exercised, the persons so raised, arrayed, and weaponed. But nothing in these acts might extend to the giving any power for marching any subjects out of the realm, otherwise than by the laws of England ought to be done.

THE ordinary times for training, exercising, and mustering, were these: the general muster and exercise of regiments, not above once a year; the training and exercising of single companies, not above four times a year, unless special directions were given by the king, or his privy council, and such single companies and troops, might not at any time be continued in exercise above the space of two days; and at a general muster and exercise of regiments, no officer, nor soldier, could be constrained to stay above four days together from their habitations.

At every such muster and exercise, every musketeer was to bring with him half a pound of powder, and half a pound of bullets, and every musketeer, serving with a match lock, to bring with him three yards of match; every horseman to bring with him a quarter of a pound of powder, and a quarter of a pound of bullets, all which were to be at the charge of him who provided the said soldier and arms, on pain of five shillings for every omission.

The arms offensive and defensive of a trooper, with the furniture for his horse, were as follows: the defensive armour, a breast, back, and pot, (a) pistol proof; the offensive arms, a sword, and a case of pistols, the barrels not under fourteen inches in length; the furniture for the horse, a great saddle, or pad, with burs and straps for affixing the holsters, a bit and bridle, with a pectoral and crupper: for the foot, a musketeer had a musket, the barrel not under three feet in length, and the gauge of the bore for twelve bullets to the pound, a collar of bandileers, with a sword. A pikeman was

armed with a pike of ash, not under sixteen feet in length, (head and foot included) with a back, breast, headpiece, and sword. It was enacted, that the muster master should be an inhabitant of the county, and that once a year each soldier should pay to him, such sum, not exceeding one shilling for a horseman, and sixpence for a footman, as the lieutenants, and their deputies, or any three of them, should, under their hands and seals direct: who had power

to levy the same, by distress and sale of the goods of the person charged to find such horseman, or foot soldier, unless the default was caused by the neglect of such soldier, who in that case was to be

accountable for it. If any person charged, refused, or neglected to send in, or deliver his horse, arms, or other furniture, at the beat of the drum, found

not at any time be continued in exercise above the space of two days; and at a general muster and exercise of regiments, no officer,

(a) A cuirass consisting of a breast plate, joined to a back piece, with a pot or scull cap without vizor or beaver. Some of them have brims round them like a flapped hat.

of the trumpet, or other summons; the lieutenants and deputies, or three of them, might inflict a penalty not exceeding 5l. to be levied by distress and sale, rendering the overplus, after deducting the necessary charges incurred in levying it.

It was provided, that no officer, or soldier of the militia, belonging to any city, borough or town corporate, being a county of itself, or to any other corporation or port town, who had used to be mustered only within their own precincts, should be compellable to appear out of any such precincts at any muster, or exercise only.

For the furnishing ammunition and other necessaries, the lieutenants and deputies, or any three of them, were empowered to lay rates on the respective counties and places, not exceeding in the whole in any one year, the proportion of a fourth part of one month's assessment in each county, after the rate of 70,000l. a month, charged by the act of the 12th of Charles II. c. 29. to be assessed, collected, and paid by such persons, and according to such directions as should be given by the lieutenants and deputies, or three of them, under the like penalties, and by the like way and means, as were prescribed in the said act.

Which said act of the 12th of Charles II. c. 29. directs the sum of 70,000l. a month, to be raised in the same manner as by the act of the 12th of Charles II. c. 21. which act did direct the same to be raised, according to the proportions, and in such manner as by an ordinance of both houses, made in his majesty's absence: which ordinance was as followeth, that is to say, there shall be raised an assessment of 70,000l. a month, in these proportions.

Oxon - 1127 12 6 Berwick - 2 16 8

And the commissioners were to cause the proportions to be equally assessed; and to appoint persons in each parish, who were to assess the same by a pound rate, according to all estates, both real and personal, within the limits of their parishes.

Bedford

AND

	f.	s.	d.		f.	s.	d.
Bedford	933	6	8	Oxon City	107	6	8
Berks	1088	17	10	Rutland	272	4	6
Buckingham	1283	6	8	Salop	1322	4	4
Cambridge	1102	10	0	Stafford	919	6	8
Isle of Ely	367	10	0	Litchfield	914	0	0
Chester County	1770	0	0	Somerset	2722	4	6
City	85	11	2	Bristol	171	2	2
Cornwall	1633	6	8	Southampton	2022	4	4
Cumberland	108	0	0	Suffolk	3655	11	12
Derby	933	6	8	Surrey	1565	5	6
Devon	3003	15	6	Southwark	184	14	6
Dorset	1311	10	6	Suffex	1905	11	2
Town of Pool	10	4	0	Warwick	1244	8	10
Durham	153	14	4	Westmoreland	73	19	4
Essex	3509	9	0	Wilts	1944	8	10
Gloucester	1626	6	8	Worcester	1182	4	4
City	162	11	6	City	162	4	6
Hereford	1166	13	4	York	3043	8	10
Hertford	1400	0	0	Kingston	67	13	4
Huntingdon	622	4	6	Anglesea	135	14	4
Kent	3655	11	2	Brecknock	361	13	4
Lancaster	933	6	8	Cardigan	213	10	0
Leicester	1088	17	8	Carmarthen	352	6	8
Lincoln	2722	4	10	Carnarvon	262	4	4
Middlesex	1788	17	10	Denbigh	272	4	6
London	4666	13	4	Flint	135	14	6
Northampton	1400	0	0	Glamorgan	458	17	8
Nottingham	903	4	4	Merioneth	124	8	10
Town	30	2	4	Monmouth	466	13	4
Norfolk	3624	8	10	Montgomery	295	11	0
Norwich	186	13	4	Pembroke	406	0	0
Northumber-	179	19	10	Radnor	254	6	8
land				Haverford	14	11	8
Newcastle	35	11	8	West			
Oxon	1127	15	6	Berwick	5	16	8

And the commissioners were to cause the proportions to be equally assessed; and to appoint assessors in each parish, who were to assess the same by a pound rate, according to all estates, both real and personal, within the limits of their parishes.

Bedford

AND

of the trumpet, or other summons; the lieutenants and deputies, or three of them, might inflict a penalty not exceeding 5*l.* to be levied by distress and sale, rendering the overplus, after deducting the necessary charges incurred in levying it.

It was provided, that no officer, or soldier of the militia, belonging to any city, borough or town corporate, being a county of itself, or to any other corporation or port town, who had used to be mustered only within their own precincts, should be compellable to appear out of any such precincts at any muster, or exercise only.

For the furnishing ammunition and other necessaries, the lieutenants and deputies, or any three of them, were empowered to lay rates on the respective counties and places, not exceeding in the whole in any one year, the proportion of a fourth part of one month's assessment in each county, after the rate of 70,000*l.* a month, charged by the act of the 12th of Charles II. c. 29. to be assessed, collected, and paid by such persons, and according to such directions as should be given by the lieutenants and deputies, or three of them, under the like penalties, and by the like way and means, as were prescribed in the said act.

Which said act of the 12th of Charles II. c. 29. directs the sum of 70,000*l.* a month, to be raised in the same manner as by the act of the 12th of Charles II. c. 21. which act did direct the same to be raised, according to the proportions, and in such manner as by an ordinance of both houses, made in his majesty's absence: which ordinance was as followeth, that is to say, there shall be raised an assessment of 70,000*l.* a month, in these proportions.

Oxon	1127	15	6	Berwick	2	16	8
------	------	----	---	---------	---	----	---

And the commissioners were to cause the proportions to be equally assessed; and to appoint persons in each parish, who were to assess the same by a pound rate, according to all estates, both real and personal, within the limits of their parishes.

Bedford

And

	£.	s.	d.		£.	s.	d.
Bedford	933	6	8	Oxon City	107	6	8
Berks	1088	17	10	Rutland	272	4	6
Buckingham	1283	6	8	Salop	1322	4	4
Cambridge	1102	10	0	Stafford	919	6	8
Isle of Ely	367	10	0	Litchfield	174	0	0
Chester County	1770	0	0	Somerſet	2722	4	6
City	85	11	2	Bristol	171	2	2
Cornwall	1633	6	8	Southampton	2022	4	4
Cumberland	108	0	0	Suffolk	3655	11	2
Derby	933	6	8	Surrey	1565	5	6
Devon	3003	15	6	Southwark	184	14	6
Dorſet	1311	10	0	Suffex	1905	11	2
Town of Poole	10	4	0	Warwick	1244	8	10
Durham	153	14	4	Westmoreland	73	19	4
Esſex	3500	0	0	Wilts	1944	8	10
Glouceſter	1626	6	8	Worceſter	1182	4	4
City	162	11	6	City	162	4	6
Hereford	1166	13	4	York	3043	8	10
Hertford	1400	0	0	Kingſton	67	13	4
Huntingdon	622	4	6	Angleſea	135	14	4
Kent	3655	11	2	Brecknock	361	13	4
Lancaster	933	6	8	Cardigan	213	10	0
Leiceſter	1088	17	8	Carmarthen	352	6	8
Lincoln	2722	4	10	Carnarvon	202	4	4
Middleſex	1788	17	10	Denbigh	272	4	6
London	4666	13	4	Flint	135	14	6
Northampton	1400	0	0	Glamorgan	458	17	8
Nottingham	903	4	4	Merioneth	124	8	10
Town	30	2	4	Monmouth	466	13	4
Norfolk	3624	8	10	Montgomery	295	11	0
Norwich	186	13	4	Pembroke	406	0	0
Northumber- land	179	19	10	Radnor	254	6	8
Newcaſtle	35	11	8	Haverford	14	11	8
Oxon	1127	15	6	West	14	11	8
				Berwick	5	16	8

And the commiſſioners were to cauſe the proportions to be equally aſſeſſed ; and to appoint aſſeſſors in each pariſh, who were to aſſeſs the ſame by a pound rate, according to all eſtates, both real and perſonal, within the limits of their pariſhes.

Bedford

AND

AND in case the way of assessing by a pound rate, was found obstructive to the speedy bringing in of the assessment; the commissioners were authorized to direct the assessors to assess the same, according to the most just and usual way of rates practised in such places: provided that the appointment of the assessment should not be drawn into precedent. No privileged place was to be exempted from the assessment. But nothing contained in this ordinance, could charge any master, fellow, or scholar of any college, in either of the universities, or of Winchester, Eaton, or Westminster, or in any other free schools; or any reader, officer, or minister of the same, or of any hospitals, or alms-houses, in respect of any profit arising from the said places; nor charge any houses or lands belonging to Christ Hospital, Bartholomew, Bridewell, Thomas, and Bethlehem. But their tenants were to pay for so much as their leases were yearly worth, over and above the rents reserved.

PERSONS in London were to be assessed in the parishes wherein they dwelt, and persons out of London, having offices in that town, to be assessed where they resided.

THE assessors were obliged to deliver one copy of the assessment to the commissioners, who were to sign and seal two duplicates, one of which was to be delivered to the sub-collectors, with warrant to collect, the other to the receiver general.

IF any difference arose between the landlord and tenant concerning the rates, the commissioners might settle the same, and persons aggrieved by being over-rated, on complaint made to the commissioners, within six days after the said assessment was demanded, might be by them relieved. If any controversy arose, in which any one of the commissioners was concerned, that commissioner was bound to withdraw.

IN case of non-payment, the collectors might distrain, and in the day time, taking with them the constable, might break open any house, chest, or box, wherein any goods were deposited. And if any question arose upon the taking of such distress, the same might be

THE ENGLISH ARMY.

31

be determined by the commissioners. If any persons conveyed away their goods, the commissioners might imprison them, (they not being peers) till payment, and tenants might deduct the same out of their rent.

And if the proportions were not fully paid, nor could be levied, the commissioners might re-assess.

If any person wilfully neglected to perform his duty in the execution of this ordinance, the commissioners might fine him in any sum not exceeding 20l. to be levied by distress, and paid to the receiver general, who had for his fees one penny in the pound; the same poundage was allowed to the sub-collectors, the head-collectors, and the commissioners clerks. Nothing herein was to be drawn into example, to the prejudice of the ancient rights belonging to the peers. The same power which the commissioners had by this ordinance (which is much in the manner of the ancient subsidies, and of the present land tax) the lieutenants and deputy lieutenants seem to have had by the act of the 13th and 14th of Charles II.

The lieutenants and deputy-lieutenants, or the chief officers upon the place in the respective counties and places, might charge carts, waggons, wains, and horses, for the carrying of powder, match, bullet, and other ammunition or accoutrements, allowing sixpence a mile outward only, to every such cart, waggon and wain with five horses, or six oxen, and so proportionably, and for every horse employed out of waggon or cart one penny, upon the marching of any regiment, company, or troop, on occasion of invasion, insurrection, or rebellion.

The lieutenants were authorized to appoint one or more treasurers, or clerks, for receiving and paying such monies as were levied; of all which receipts and disbursements thereof, they were, every six months, to give in written accounts upon oath, to the lieutenants and deputies, or three of them, which accounts were forthwith to be

be certified to the privy council, and duplicates thereof to be certified by the justices at the next sessions.

It was provided that the lieutenants or their deputies should not issue warrants for raising any trophy money, (b) till the justices in sessions should have examined, stated and allowed the accounts of the trophy money, collected for any preceding year, and certified such examination.

THE lieutenants, or two of their deputies, might, by warrant under their hands and seals, employ such persons as they thought fit (of which a commissioned officer, and the constable or his deputy, or in his absence some other person bearing office in the parish where the search was to be made, were always to be two) to search for and seize all arms in the custody of any person whom the lieutenants or two of their deputies judged dangerous to the peace of the kingdom, and to secure the same, and thereof to give an account to the lieutenants; and in their absence, or by their direction, to the deputies, or two of them; provided that no search was made in any house between sun-setting and sun-rising, other than in cities or their suburbs, and towns corporate, market towns, and houses within the bills of mortality, where they might search in the night time, if the warrant so directed; and in case of resistance, might enter by force: but no dwelling house of a peer might be searched, but by immediate warrant from the king, or in presence of the lieutenant or a deputy lieutenant: and in all places and houses whatsoever, where search was to be made, it was lawful, in case of resistance, to enter by force. And the arms so seized might be restored to the owners, if the lieutenants, or in their absence as aforesaid, their deputies, or two of them so thought fit.

If any militia man did not appear and serve, completely fur-

(b) TROPHY Money originally meant a fund for providing ammunition, drums, colours, music, and other contingent expences.

nished with horse, arms and other furniture, at the beat of the drum, sound of the trumpet, or other summons: the deputies or two of them, if the default was in that person, might imprison him for five days; or might inflict a penalty, if a horseman, not exceeding twenty shillings, and if a footman, not exceeding ten shillings: and the lieutenants or deputies, or chief officers upon the place might imprison mutineers and such soldiers as did not do their duty at the days of muster and training: and might inflict for punishment for every such offence any pecuniary mulct, not exceeding five shillings, or imprisonment, not exceeding twenty days.

No militia man duly enlisted, could be exchanged, discharged, or leave his colours, but by the leave of the lieutenants, or two deputies, or his captain, upon reasonable cause, first obtained under his hand and seal, on pain of forfeiture of 20*l.* to be levied as other penalties; and for non-payment, or want of distress, he was to be committed to the common gaol of the county, for any time not exceeding three months.

If any person detained, or embezzled his horse, arms, or furniture, the lieutenants, and in their absence, or by their directions, the deputies, or two of them, if the default was in such person, might imprison him till he had made satisfaction.

THE pay of the officers, during such time as they were with their soldiers, not exceeding one month in actual service, was to be provided for by the king, out of the treasury. And the lieutenants and deputies, or three of them, were authorised to dispose of so much of the fourth part of the 70,000*l.* a month, to the inferior officers, for their pains and encouragement, as to them should seem expedient.

EVERY person charged, was on pain of 5*s.* to pay on demand, 2*s.* 6*d.* a day to each trooper; and on pain of 2*s.* on demand, 1*s.* a day to each foot soldier, for so many days as they were absent from their dwellings, or callings, by occasion of muster or exercise,

unless some certain agreement had been made to the contrary, before good witness, and the said penalty was to be paid to such soldier, to whom his pay was denied: the respective penalties to be demanded in six weeks after default, or at, or before the next muster, or exercise, and not afterwards.

AND in case of invasions, insurrections, or rebellions, whereby occasions happened for drawing out such soldiers into actual service; the persons so charged, were to provide each their soldier, with pay in hand, not exceeding one month's pay, as should be directed by the lieutenants, and in their absence, or by their directions, by the deputies, or any two of them, for the payment whereof provision was to be made by the king, out of the treasury.

AND in case a month's pay had been provided, and advanced as aforesaid, no person who had advanced his proportion thereof, could be charged with any other like month's payment, untill he had been reimbursed the said month's pay, and so from time to time the month's pay by him last before provided and advanced.

ALL forfeitures, penalties, and payments, by the 15th of Ch. II. c. 4. not otherwise directed by this act, might be recovered by warrant under the hands and seals of the lieutenants and deputies, or three of them, by distress and sale; and if sufficient distress could not be found, then the party to be imprisoned till satisfaction should be made. And all high and petty constables, and other officers and ministers, were directed to be aiding and assisting to the lieutenants and their deputies, or any of them.

THESE ordinances were for a while executed, and the militia occasionally mustered and exercised, but being found expensive and troublesome to the country, it was by degrees neglected, insomuch, that the city of London excepted, the name of a militia muster was almost forgotten: but about the year 1756, the nation being so much alarmed by the apprehension of an invasion, that a body of Hanoverians and Hessians were called in for its defence; many leading persons resumed the idea of instituting a well disciplined militia

militia, which after some opposition, was at length carried into a law (c).

By which it was enacted, that a body of thirty thousand seven hundred and forty men, should be forthwith raised in the different counties of England and Wales, in the proportions specified in the note below. (d) These, in case of actual invasion or rebellion, might be

(c) THE new militia laws were at first set on foot in the 30th of George II. which in a few years time received so many alterations, that in the 2d of George III. it was thought necessary to repeal the whole, and reduce the substance thereof into one act of parliament. Since which time so many other alterations have been made, that a new revival thereof seems very desirable, and this the rather as the leading statute, 2d of George III. c. 20. to which all the subsequent statutes refer, was founded on the principles of the original statute, of the 30th of George II. c. 25. being before any militia were then raised, and consequently proceeds all along upon that supposition, giving directions concerning the first raising of the militia in the several places, which directions, when the militia are now already on foot, are in some instances superfluous, or otherwise inapplicable. *Burn's Digest of the Militia Laws, 1779.*

(d) NUMBER of men to be raised in the several counties.

Bedford - - - - -	400	Huntingdon - - - - -	320
Berks - - - - -	560	Kent, with the city and county of	
Bucks - - - - -	560	the city of Canterbury - - -	960
Cambridge - - - - -	480	Lancaster - - - - -	800
Chester, with the city and county of		Leicester - - - - -	560
the city of Chester - - - - -	560	Lincoln, with the city and county	
Cornwall - - - - -	640	of the city of Lincoln - - -	1200
Cumberland - - - - -	320	Middlesex, (exclusive of the Tower	
Derby - - - - -	560	Hamlets) - - - - -	1600
Devon, with the city and county of		Monmouth - - - - -	240
the city of Exeter - - - - -	1600	Norfolk, with the city and county	
Dorset, with the Island of Purbeck,		of the city of Norwich - - -	960
and the town and county of the		Northampton - - - - -	640
town of Pool - - - - -	640	Northumberland, with the town	
Durham - - - - -	400	and county of the town of New-	
Essex - - - - -	960	castle, and town of Berwick -	560
Gloucester, with the city and county		Nottingham, with the town and	
of the city of Bristol - - -	960	county of the town of Notting-	
Hereford - - - - -	480	ham - - - - -	480
Hertford - - - - -	560	Oxford - - - - -	560

be called forth, embodied, and put under the command of general officers, who might march them to any part of the kingdom; but they might not on any account be transported out of the realm. The general out-lines of the chief regulations of this act, stood in the year 1779, as follows:

IN order to put this law into execution, the lords lieutenants of counties were authorised, with the king's approbation, to appoint twenty, or more gentlemen, in each county, all having a freehold estate of 200l. per annum, in actual possession, being heirs apparent to double that sum, (e) or possessed of an estate for life, or lease determinable on one or more lives. A certain number of these, might, in case of the vacancy of a lieutenant, or in his absence, by

Rutland - - - - -	120	York, West Riding, with the city and county of the city of York -	1240
Salop - - - - -	640	North Riding - - - - -	720
Somerfet - - - - -	840	York, East Riding, with the town and county of the town of Kingston	400
Southampton, with the town and county of the town of Southamp- ton - - - - -	960	Anglesea - - - - -	80
Stafford, with the city and county of the city of Litchfield - - -	560	Brecknock - - - - -	160
Suffolk - - - - -	960	Cardigan - - - - -	120
Surry - - - - -	800	Caermarthen - - - - -	200
Suffex - - - - -	800	Caernarvon - - - - -	80
Warwick, with the city and county of the city of Coventry - - -	640	Denbigh - - - - -	280
Westmorland - - - - -	240	Flint - - - - -	120
Worcester, with the city and county of the city of Worcester - - -	560	Glamorgan - - - - -	360
Wilts - - - - -	800	Merioneth - - - - -	80
		Montgomery - - - - -	240
		Pembroke - - - - -	160
		Radnor - - - - -	120
		Total	30,740

(e) THE qualifications for deputy lieutenants and officers. The counties of Cumberland, Huntingdon, Monmouth, Westmorland, and Rutland, were for a deputy lieutenant 150, colonel 600, lieutenant colonel, or major commandant 400, major, or captain 150, lieutenant 30, and ensign 20, or the proportionable reversions, &c. In the Isle of Ely, the qualification of a deputy lieutenant was 150l. per ann. a captain 100l. lieutenant 30l. and ensign 20l.

the

the king's appointment, act for him. They were likewise to proportion the numbers of men, to be raised in the different divisions, or parishes, and at their meetings to ballot for the men to complete the establishment, and fill up occasional vacancies.

THE commission officers to be appointed by the lord lieutenant, the king's approbation first obtained, he having a right to disapprove, or dismiss any deputy lieutenant, or officer, at his pleasure. That the command of the militia might be in the hands of persons interested in the defence of the kingdom, it was required that every commission officer should be possessed of a certain estate, according to the rank in which he served. The qualification of a colonel was 1000l. a year, in possession, or double that sum in expectancy, as heir apparent. A lieutenant colonel 600l. a year, or being heir apparent to some person possessed of 1,200l. a year. Major, or captain, an estate of the yearly value of 200l. heir apparent to some person possessed of an estate of the yearly value of double that sum, or the younger son of some person, who at his death was possessed of an estate of the yearly value of 600l. A lieutenant an estate of 50l. per annum, personal estate alone of the value of 1000l. real and personal estate together, amounting to 2000l. or being the son of a person who died possessed of an estate of the yearly value of 600l. An ensign, an estate of 20l. a year, personal alone to the value of 500l. real and personal together, to the value of 1000l. or being the son of some person, who at the time of his death was possessed of an estate of the annual value of 50l. personal estate alone, to the amount of 1000l. or real and personal estates together, of the value of 1000l. a moiety of all these estates to be situated in the counties for which the officers served. On receiving their commissions, the different officers were obliged to lodge a description of their qualifications with the clerk of the peace, and to take the proper oaths, and sign the declaration. The penalty of acting, not being qualified, or neglecting to deliver in their qualifications, and taking the oaths, &c. was for a colonel, lieutenant colonel, or major, 200l. captain

captain, lieutenant, or ensign, 100l. half to the person who sued for it. The acceptance of a commission in the militia, did not vacate a seat in parliament, or prevent the party, if a reduced officer, from receiving his half pay, and exempted him from serving the office of high sheriff.

THE pay of the militia officers, when called out for their annual exercise, was the same as the subsistence of the officers of the army, (f) but the field officers received no other subsistence than as captains.

WHEN the militia were embodied, and called out into actual service, the officers were to rank with those of the army of equal degree, but as the youngest of that rank, and during such time as they remained embodied, they were to be subject to all the penalties in the mutiny act, and articles of war, unless where specially otherwise provided by the militia act. (g) Officers might be promoted on account of military merit, in time of actual rebellion, or invasion, notwithstanding they had not the necessary qualifications, but this was not to exceed the rank of lieutenant colonel, nor could any person, not having the qualification for a captain, be promoted higher than that rank.

IN order to circulate the knowledge of military discipline among the country gentlemen, the lord lieutenant, together with three deputy lieutenants, or on his death, or removal, any five deputy lieutenants, might at the end of four years, at their annual meeting, the militia not being then embodied, discharge one field officer, and a number of other officers, equal to the number of qualified

(f) THE pay of the officers of the army is divided into subsistence and arrears, the former is issued every two months, the latter at uncertain periods. Thus the pay of a captain, is 10s. his subsistence only 7s. 6d. a lieutenant's pay 4s. 8d. subsistence 3s. 6d. an ensign's pay 4s. subsistence 3s.

(g) BOTH officers and private militia men, were likewise subject to these articles at the time of their annual exercise, but not to extend to life, or limb.

persons, giving notice in writing to the lieutenant, one month at least before such meeting, that they are willing to serve. But to prevent a corps being left destitute of a sufficient number of experienced officers, it was provided that the number so discharged, should not exceed one third of those who had served for four years. Any commission officer having served four years, was not compellable to serve in person as a private man in any militia, nor to find a substitute.

No officer of the army could sit as a member of a court martial, for the trial of any officer, or private militia man; nor might an officer of the militia sit on the trial of an officer, or soldier of the army.

For the due instruction of the militia men in the use of arms, the king was authorised to appoint to each regiment, battalion, or independant company, a proper person then serving, or who had served as a commissioned officer in his regular forces. This qualification, after the militia had been some time raised and embodied, was changed for that of having served in an embodied corps of militia. The adjutant, if appointed out of the army, retained his rank therein, during his service in the militia, and if on half pay, was entitled to receive it, notwithstanding his commission of adjutant, which was signed by the king. The lord lieutenant might also grant him an ensigncy, or lieutenancy, although he had not a legal qualification for either of these appointments; his pay was 6s. a day, without deduction, or arrears: it was commonly paid two months in advance. A provision of half pay was likewise made for him, in several annual acts, for the payment and clothing of the militia. The adjutant, besides the duty of instructing, and drilling the officers and private men at their annual exercise, had the particular care of the serjeants and drummers, when not assembled, and the charge of the arms.

The serjeants, that they might be properly qualified to instruct the private men in their exercise, were at the first raising of
the

captain, lieutenant, or ensign, 100l. half to the person who sued for it. The acceptance of a commission in the militia, did not vacate a seat in parliament, or prevent the party, if a reduced officer, from receiving his half pay, and exempted him from serving the office of high sheriff.

THE pay of the militia officers, when called out for their annual exercise, was the same as the subsistence of the officers of the army, (f) but the field officers received no other subsistence than as captains.

WHEN the militia were embodied, and called out into actual service, the officers were to rank with those of the army of equal degree, but as the youngest of that rank, and during such time as they remained embodied, they were to be subject to all the penalties in the mutiny act, and articles of war, unless where specially otherwise provided by the militia act. (g) Officers might be promoted on account of military merit, in time of actual rebellion, or invasion, notwithstanding they had not the necessary qualifications, but this was not to exceed the rank of lieutenant colonel, nor could any person, not having the qualification for a captain, be promoted higher than that rank.

IN order to circulate the knowledge of military discipline among the country gentlemen, the lord lieutenant, together with three deputy lieutenants, or on his death, or removal, any five deputy lieutenants, might at the end of four years, at their annual meeting, the militia not being then embodied, discharge one field officer, and a number of other officers, equal to the number of qualified

(f) THE pay of the officers of the army is divided into subsistence and arrears, the former is issued every two months, the latter at uncertain periods. Thus the pay of a captain, is 10s. his subsistence only 7s. 6d. a lieutenant's pay 4s. 8d. subsistence 3s. 6d. an ensign's pay 4s. subsistence 3s.

(g) BOTH officers and private militia men, were likewise subject to these articles at the time of their annual exercise, but not to extend to life, or limb.

persons, giving notice in writing to the lieutenant, one month at least before such meeting, that they are willing to serve. But to prevent a corps being left destitute of a sufficient number of experienced officers, it was provided that the number so discharged, should not exceed one third of those who had served for four years. Any commission officer having served four years, was not compellable to serve in person as a private man in any militia, nor to find a substitute.

No officer of the army could sit as a member of a court martial, for the trial of any officer, or private militia man; nor might an officer of the militia sit on the trial of an officer, or soldier of the army.

FOR the due instruction of the militia men in the use of arms, the king was authorised to appoint to each regiment, battalion, or independant company, a proper person then serving, or who had served as a commissioned officer in his regular forces. This qualification, after the militia had been some time raised and embodied, was changed for that of having served in an embodied corps of militia. The adjutant, if appointed out of the army, retained his rank therein, during his service in the militia, and if on half pay, was entitled to receive it, notwithstanding his commission of adjutant, which was signed by the king. The lord lieutenant might also grant him an ensigncy, or lieutenancy, although he had not a legal qualification for either of these appointments; his pay was 6s. a day, without deduction, or arrears: it was commonly paid two months in advance. A provision of half pay was likewise made for him, in several annual acts, for the payment and clothing of the militia. The adjutant, besides the duty of instructing, and drilling the officers and private men at their annual exercise, had the particular care of the serjeants and drummers, when not assembled, and the charge of the arms.

THE serjeants, that they might be properly qualified to instruct the private men in their exercise, were at the first raising of
the

the militia, to be appointed by the king out of his regular forces, from persons who had served therein for one year. This qualification, like that of the adjutant, was afterwards changed, and the having served in an embodied militia, was deemed sufficient.

THE proportion of serjeants to be one to every twenty men. The service in the militia of persons so appointed out of the regular forces, intitled them to the benefit of Chelsea Hospital, in the same manner as if they had continued in the army. Serjeants taken from among the invalids or pensioners of that hospital, upon their discharge from the militia, provided they produced certificates of their good behaviour from the commanding officer, were to be put again upon that establishment. A serjeant on the Chelsea list at an allowance of 12d. per day, being appointed to serve in the militia, might receive that allowance together with his militia pay. A serjeant who had served as such fifteen years in the militia, and was discharged on account of age and infirmities, on a recommendation to the Chelsea board, from the commanding officer of the corps in which he served, and the lord lieutenant or deputy lieutenants of the county, was capable of being placed on the pension of 5d. a day. No serjeant, during his service in the militia was liable to statute work, or to serve as a peace or parish officer.

To prevent their enticing the private men to spend their money in liquor, no person selling liquors by retail, could be appointed a serjeant.

THE daily pay of a serjeant was a shilling, without deduction, with an annual allowance of 3l. 10s. for a suit of clothes, besides a billet on a public house in the district to which his company belonged, but this entitled him to lodgings only. The commanding officer of a corps, being a field officer, might on the application of the captain, displace a serjeant.

A SERJEANT convicted of misbehaviour, might by a court martial be reduced to the ranks, in which case, if he had been made from a private militia man, he was to serve till he had completed his

his three years service as such. If taken from the regular forces, he was within one month after such reduction, if not restored, to be sent back to the corps from whence he was taken. And it was afterwards added, that any serjeant by the commanding officer, or the sentence of a court martial, reduced to the ranks for misbehaviour, besides the punishment inflicted on him by the court, should be obliged to serve as a private militia man for one year, notwithstanding he might have already served three years, before his being appointed to the halbert, but this seems only to respect those promoted from militia men.

THE vacancy of a serjeant happening in any corps, might be filled up by the captain of the company, with the approbation of the commanding officer. A serjeant on being appointed, was to swear allegiance to the king and his successors, that he was a protestant, and would faithfully serve as a serjeant in the militia, within the kingdom of Great Britain, for the defence of the same, untill he should be legally discharged.

THE duty of the serjeant, besides assisting in the drilling of the private men, was to attend the courts of lieutenancy for recruits, to take care of, and clean the arms, and air the clothes when deposited in store, to deliver them out at the annual meetings, and to collect them in from the militia men, previous to their dismissal; they were when disembodied, to take their orders from the adjutant.

THE commanding officer of the regiment, might out of these serjeants appoint one serjeant major, to whom there was an additional allowance of 2s. 6d. per week, over and above his pay as a serjeant, and of 1l. in his annual clothing.

THESE were the chief clauses and regulations respecting the serjeants, a body of men who even in regular regiments are of the utmost use and importance, but in the militia constitute the muscles and sinews of the corps, and although by the above establishment they bear a greater proportion to the private men, than is allowed in the army, an encrease of them would highly benefit the militia service,

vice, although purchased by the diminution of some of the higher commissioned officers; if this observation is true, how false and destructive is that œconomy which tends to diminish their number.

THE captain of a company was by this act authorised to appoint two drummers or fifiers to his company, whom he might also for misbehavior discharge, and appoint others in their places. Their daily pay when unembodied was 6d. they were annually clothed, for which 2l. was allowed for each suit, and they as well as the serjeants were entitled to quarters. Having received pay, they were compellable to serve in the regiment or battalion, untill legally discharged. If any drummer deserted at the time the militia was not assembled, he was when taken to be committed to gaol, there to remain till the assembling of the militia, when he was to be tried by a court martial; negligence, or disobedience to the adjutant, or any other superior officer, when the militia were not assembled, being proved on oath before a justice of the peace, was punishable by a fine of 40s. which if not immediately paid, the captain of the company was authorised to stop out of his pay, to be applied to the common stock of the corps; and by a subsequent act, over and above this punishment, such offender might be committed to the common gaol of the county for which he served, for any time not exceeding six months. In these clauses, serjeant majors, drum majors, and serjeants were included. Persons harbouring such deserters forfeited 5l. If any militia serjeant, drummer, or fifer, enlisted into any of his majesty's other forces, such enlisting was declared void. The commanding officer of the regiment, might appoint a drum major out of the drummers, he like the serjeant major, had an additional allowance for pay and clothing, the first was 6d. a day, the latter 20s. for the suit.

ALL persons not labouring under bodily incapacity, were liable to be chosen for private militia men, and obliged either to serve in person, or find a proper substitute, except such persons as were specifically excepted in the act. These were peers of the realm, commissioned,

missioned, and non-commissioned officers, and private men serving in his majesty's regular forces, or in any of his castles or forts, commissioned officers serving, or who had served four years in the militia, members of the two universities, clergymen, and licensed teachers of separate congregations, constables, and other such peace officers, articed clerks, apprentices, seamen, or seafaring men, persons mustered and trained, and doing duty in the royal docks, freemen of the company of watermen on the river Thames, poor men having three children born in wedlock, and persons of more than forty-five years of age.

THE mode of making out the lists of persons liable to serve in the militia, with diverse regulations respecting the balloting for, and swearing in of the persons chosen, were as follows :

A GENERAL meeting being held on the day appointed, consisting of the lord lieutenant, and two of his deputies, or in his absence, of three deputy lieutenants ; the times and places for holding the sub-division meetings, were to be fixed. These to consist of three deputy lieutenants, two deputy lieutenants, and one justice, or one deputy lieutenant, and two justices, except in counties where the militia was on actual service, where the business might be transacted by two deputy lieutenants, or one deputy lieutenant, and one justice. At this general meeting also, precepts were to be issued to the chief constables, or principal peace officers of the several hundreds, rapes, or other great divisions of the county, requiring the constables, or other such officers of each parish, or place, to return to the deputy lieutenants within the sub-divisions on a day appointed, lists in writing of the names of all persons, usually, and at that time, dwelling within their several parishes, &c. between the ages of eighteen and forty-five, distinguishing their ranks and occupations, and which of the persons so returned, laboured under any infirmities incapacitating them from serving, having first affixed a copy thereof on the door of the church or chapel. Any chief, or other constable, or officer, neglecting to return such list, or making a fraudulent, or

G 2

partial

partial return, was punishable by a fine not exceeding 5l. nor under 40s. or a month's imprisonment in the common gaol, at the discretion of the deputy lieutenants, and justices on the bench. Persons endeavouring by threats or bribes, to prevail on a constable to make a false return, forfeited 50l. to any one that would sue for it, and any person refusing to tell his christian and sur-name to the officer authorised to demand it, for the purpose of making out the lists, forfeited 10l.

ON the day, and at the place appointed for the first sub-division meeting, and the return of the lists, the constables were to attend and to deliver in their lists, which they were to verify upon oath.

AT this meeting, persons who thought themselves aggrieved, either by being inserted on the lists, or by any of their neighbours being omitted, might appeal, and the names of all such as were exempted by the act, or any other cause, were to be struck out, and the lists so corrected, to be returned to the next general meeting, where the number of men to be found by each hundred, rape, and other of the larger divisions of the county were allotted: and these were again divided, and proportioned at the next sub-division meeting, for each parish, tithing, or place. Where notice was given of the time of balloting, when the church wardens might, with the consent of the parish, offer volunteers, provided they were men able and fit for service, and at the least five feet four inches in height. The money for hiring these volunteers to be collected by a parish rate, to which all were bound to contribute.

IF no such volunteers were offered, the deputy lieutenants at the third sub-division meeting, proceeded to ballot, which being publicly done, notice was to be sent to the persons chosen, directing them to appear at a meeting to be held within three weeks, there to be sworn in, or to bring with them a proper substitute to serve in their stead. At this meeting the petty constables were to attend, and make a return upon oath, of the time when such notices were served. Here the ballotted men were either to be sworn in themselves,

selves, or to produce a substitute, such as was approved on by the court, and not being of a less height than five feet four inches. Sometimes, in particular cases, further time was given for procuring a substitute. The oath to be taken was this, "I, A. B. do sincerely promise and swear, that I will be faithfull, and bear true allegiance to his majesty King George, his heirs and successors: and I do swear, that I am a protestant, and that I will faithfully serve in the militia, within the kingdom of Great Britain, for the defence of the same, during the time which I am so certified for, unless I shall be sooner discharged, so help me God:" his name was then to be entered on the roll.

ANY person chosen by lot, quakers excepted, refusing to take the oaths, or find a substitute, if the regiment was not embodied, forfeited 10l. to be levied by distress, and at the expiration of three years, was liable to serve again, or provide a substitute. The penalty to be applied by the deputy lieutenants for hiring a substitute, and the remainder, if any, was to be paid to the commanding officer of the regiment, for the use of the stock purse. If the offender had not goods sufficient to produce that sum, he was to be committed to the common gaol, for any time not exceeding three months, but in case the regiment was embodied, he was to be delivered over to the commanding officer of the regiment, and his name enrolled. In case of desertion, he was subject to the same punishment, as if he had taken the oaths.

IN order to alleviate the distress, that being drawn for the militia might occasion to a poor man, the church wardens were, when a regiment was embodied, obliged to pay such person chosen by lot, within one month after he was sworn and enrolled, or had provided a fit substitute, such sum, not exceeding 5l. as should be adjudged by the deputy lieutenants, and justices, one half of the current price of a substitute.

No person having served personally, or by a substitute, three years in the militia, could be obliged to serve again, until it came to his
turn

turn by rotation ; but having served as a substitute for another, did not excuse such substitute from serving for himself, if chosen by lot.

THE men being thus sworn in, and enrolled, copies of the rolls were to be transmitted to the lord lieutenant, and within one month after they were so returned, a general meeting was to be held, at which, the militia was formed into companies and battalions, or regiments. A regiment was to consist of twelve, and in no case of less than eight companies, of eighty men at the most, and sixty men at the least. To these they were to post the following commissioned and non-commissioned officers : a colonel, lieutenant colonel, and major, who were likewise captains of companies ; also as many captains as there were companies, exclusive of those of the field officers. A captain lieutenant to the colonel's company, with a lieutenant to every other, and an ensign to each company, except the grenadiers and light infantry, to both of which an additional lieutenant was allowed. The adjutant, serjeant major, drum major, serjeants and drummers, with corporals, made from the militia men, completed the regiment ; a quarter master, surgeon and mate, were added when a regiment was embodied.

WHERE the numbers of men were not sufficient to make a regiment, but were from five to under eight companies, such militia was to be formed into a battalion, with only two field officers, a lieutenant colonel, and a major ; and where the number of private men amounted to only three companies, or any number under five, likewise into a battalion, but with only one field officer, a lieutenant colonel, or major. The captains, lieutenants, and ensigns, and non-commissioned officers, the same as in the regiments. Where a lieutenant colonel had commanded a battalion for five years, or longer, the lord lieutenant might, with the consent of his majesty, give such lieutenant colonel commandant, a commission of colonel ; and in all counties where the militia amounted to four companies only, the lord lieutenant might appoint two persons, legally qualified,

fied, to serve without pay as field officers, with the same rank as if the number had been sufficient to form a regiment.

WHERE the number of companies were not sufficient to form a regiment, or battalion, they were to be formed into independant companies, each company to consist of eighty men, at the most, and sixty men at the least, with one captain, one lieutenant, and one ensign, to each. And his majesty might join together any number of such independant companies, as would form a battalion, or incorporate them with any regiment, or battalion; but so as the number of companies in such corps did not exceed, or fall short of the number of companies by this act allowed for a regiment, or battalion. This clause was however afterwards virtually repealed, by the act for raising volunteer companies, by which some regiments had fourteen companies. When there were two companies only, as in some of the smaller Welch counties, the eldest captain ranked as a major.

HAVING thus raised our regiments, their pay and clothing comes next under consideration; whence it is necessary to begin, by mentioning the regimental, or battalion clerk, or in other words, the paymaster of the unembodied militia: the nomination of this officer was in the commanding officer of the regiment: his salary 50l. a year. To him the receiver general of the county, was by annual acts directed to issue the pay of the unembodied militia, four calendar months in advance: that of the adjutant, regimental clerk, serjeant major, drum major, serjeants, and drummers, at the rates before mentioned, and also 6d. per month for each private man, and drummer, for defraying contingent expences, 1d. whereof to be applied to the hospital expences, when the corps was assembled for the annual exercise; and for half a year's salary for the clerk of the regiment, or battalion. The annual clothing for the non-commissioned officers, was also paid to him.

THE time being settled by the deputy lieutenants for the annual exercise, and a certificate thereof being sent by them to the receiver general, specifying

specifying the number of men, and the days they were to be absent from home, allowing them sufficient time for their coming to, and returning from the place of exercise; he within fourteen days after the receipt of such certificate, was to issue out the amount to the clerk of the regiment, at the rates for the commissioned officers, serjeants, and drummers, as has been before mentioned, and for the corporals, at the rate of 1s. 6d. and private men 1s. per day each, this to be paid by him to the commanding officers of companies, who were to account for it, according to a form prescribed by the act.

IN order to provide necessaries, such as shirts, shoes, and stockings, for those militia men who should be deficient in those articles, the commanding officers of companies, were authorised to stop any sum not exceeding 6d. per diem, out of the daily subsistence, accounting with them for the balance, at their dismissal.

THE private militia men and corporals, were by the act of parliament to be clothed every three years: the sum allowed for that purpose was 1l. 10s. this was to be paid by the receiver general, so soon as he should receive a warrant under the hand of the colonel, or commanding officer, certifying the receipt of the clothing, and an order for the same, payable to the clothier. This clothing, with their arms, was to be delivered out to the militia men, on their assembling for their annual exercise, and to be by them returned back into the stores, previous to their dismissal. Any militia man selling, pawning, or losing any of his arms, clothes, or accoutrements, on conviction before a justice, forfeited a sum not exceeding 3l. and if he did not immediately pay the same, might be committed to the house of correction for one month, and untill the same was paid, and if he was not of ability to pay it, then for the space of three months. Any man neglecting to return his arms, clothes, and accoutrements, in good order to his captain, or the person appointed to receive them, whenever demanded, on conviction before a justice, forfeited 10s. and on default of immediate payment, might

might be committed to the house of correction, for any time not exceeding fourteen days. Any persons knowingly buying, taking in exchange, concealing, or otherwise receiving any arms, clothes, or accoutrements, belonging to the militia, upon any pretence whatsoever, on conviction before one justice, forfeited 5*l.* to be levied by distress, and for want of sufficient goods for such distress, was to be committed to the common gaol for three months, or to be publickly whipped, at the discretion of the justice.

At the end of three years, every militia man was entitled to his clothes.

THE regulations respecting the training and exercise of the militia, were these: the militia to be trained and exercised by regiment or battalion, twice in a year, fourteen days at each time, or once in a year, for twenty-eight days together, as should be directed by the lord lieutenant, and two of his deputies, or by three deputy lieutenants, at such time and place as should be least inconvenient to the public, to be by the said deputy lieutenants appointed at a general meeting; and during such time, all the provisions in any act for punishing mutiny and desertion, and the better payment of the army, and their quarters, was to extend and take place, in respect of the officers and private men of every regiment, or battalion, but not to extend to life or limb.

NOTICE of the time and place appointed, was to be sent by the clerk of the general meeting, to the chief constables, with directions to forward the same to the petty constables, or other officers of the several parishes, or places within the county, who were to cause such notices to be fixed on the doors of their churches, or chapels, respectively; or if any place being extra parochial, should have no church, or chapels, belonging to it, on the door of the church, or chapel, of some place, or parish, thereto adjoining. At this place all militia men, not incapacitated by sickness, or other legal impediment, were directed to attend, under penalty, if convicted before a justice, of forfeiting 20*l.* or being committed to the common gaol.

of the county, or place where taken and convicted, there to remain without bail, or mainprize, for six months, or untill they had paid that sum. And any militia man, who having joined the corps, deserted, during the time of the annual exercise, was liable to the same penalty, or punishment, or if taken before the dismissal of the corps, might be punished by the sentence of a court martial.

DESERTERS taken after the expiration of the term for which they were enrolled, might be punished for their crime, and be also obliged to complete the remainder of their three years service, which was unexpired at the time of their desertion. And to prevent the too frequent practice of persons taking money to serve as substitutes, and deserting, who not having goods whereon to levy the pecuniary penalty, and the alternative of imprisonment tending only to corrupt their morals; it was enacted, that every substitute who should desert, whenever taken, over and above any military punishment that should be inflicted upon him, should serve for three years, to be computed from the day on which he was apprehended, and that the commanding officer should order notice to be given to the clerk of the sub-division, in which he was engaged to serve, of his desertion, and the time of his apprehension, in order that he might make a fresh entry of his name in the roll, to serve for three years from that time.

ON the application made by the lord lieutenant, or the commanding officer of the regiment, assembled for exercise, to the mayors, bailiffs, or chief magistrates of the different places; they were to billet the officers, serjeant drummers, and private men, on such houses as soldiers were usually quartered. And on the same application, constables of those places through which they marched, were obliged to find them carriages, at the same rates as paid by his majesty's other forces.

THE commanding officers of corps of militia, as often as they were called out to exercise, were to return to the lord lieutenant, a true state of their regiment, or battalion; and also within thirty days

days after the exercise was finished, to transmit to one of the secretaries of state, a return signed by him, of the several officers, non-commissioned officers, and private men, present at the said exercise, with the number of days on which each commissioned officer was present. A similar return, was at the same time to be sent by him, to the auditor of the exchequer.

A MILITIA man falling sick, at, or in going to, or returning from the annual exercise, was to be taken care of by the parish in which it happened, who were to be reimbursed their expences from the county stock.

IN case of actual invasion, or upon imminent danger thereof, or in case of rebellion in the kingdom, or any of the territories, or dominions thereunto belonging, it was lawful for the king, (the occasion being first communicated to parliament, if then sitting, or if not sitting, declared in council, and notified by proclamation,) to order his lieutenants, or three of the deputy lieutenants in each county, with all convenient speed, to draw out and embody their respective regiments, or battalions of militia, or as many of them as should be deemed necessary. And in such case, his majesty might direct the said forces to be put under the command of such general officers as he should appoint, and order them to be led by their respective officers into any parts of this kingdom, for the repelling, and suppression of such invasion, or rebellion; provided that neither the militia of this kingdom, nor any corps, detachment, or draught thereof, should on any account be transported out of the island of Great Britain.

AND the officers of the militia and private militia men, from the time of their being drawn out and embodied, and untill they returned again to their respective parishes, or places of abode, were to remain under the command of such general officers, and to be entitled to the same pay as was received by the officers and private men of the king's other regiments of foot, and no other; and the officers of the militia were, during such time, to rank with the

officers of the king's other forces, of equal degree with them, as the youngest of their rank. (h) And during such time, as aforesaid, all the provisions contained in any act of parliament, then in force for punishing mutiny and desertion, and for the better payment of the

(h) DURING the time the militia were last embodied, a notion was propagated, that they were not liable to be commanded by any regular officer under the rank of a general : this seems to have been a mistake ; the clause which empowers the king to put the militia under the command of general officers, by no means implies, they are to be commanded by general officers only ; the right of command, as far as the rank of colonel, had been settled by that clause in the act which provided, that militia officers when embodied, shall rank with those of the army, as youngest of each degree ; but as there were no militia generals, that rule did not extend to generals of the army, a declaratory clause therefore became necessary to settle that point, and authorise their command.

RANK in the military acceptance, always implies command, a proof of which is shewn in the regulations of rank between the officers of the navy and army, wherein it was thought necessary to except the right of either to command out of their proper element, which would otherwise have followed of course.

THE brevets of army rank, granted at that time to the militia colonels of a certain standing, shew that the officers of the army, occasionally might command those of the militia ; these brevets being given, to prevent a very old colonel of militia from being commanded by a very young colonel of the army, the multitude of new levies having then given that rank to many young foldiers.

THAT the army and militia were meant to serve together, is clearly expressed by the act of the 18th of George III. cap. 59, where treating of fencible men, and corps whose officers after reduction were not entitled to rank or half pay, it is said, that during the time that the officers of such corps and the militia shall serve together, they shall rank according to the date of their respective commissions ; several new raised regular regiments were then under that predicament.

SHOULD an actual invasion take place, the militia regiments would certainly be mixed, and brigaded with those of the army, in which case there would arise an indispensable necessity, that the officers of both denominations should roll together, and consequently the elder of the different ranks command. If the militia regiments are not bound to obey any other officers of the army but a general, they cannot be admitted into several of our garrisons and castles, where the lieutenant governors are mostly under that rank, as in that case, such lieutenant governor would have a garrison he did not command.

By a clause in the articles of war, the officers and foldiers of the foot guards can be tried only by their own officers, except in particular cases, where one half the members of the court

the army, and their quarters, were to extend to the officers, and private militia men, (except only such particulars as were, or should be, otherwise specially provided for by any act, or acts of parliament for regulating the militia forces); on being disembodied, they were to return to the same regulations they were under before they were called forth.

THE lieutenant of the county, on receiving his majesty's orders for embodying the militia, or in his absence, three deputy lieutenants, were immediately to issue their precepts to the chief constables, with directions to them to forward the same to the petty constables, or other officers of the parishes, and places within the county, and such constables were on the receipt thereof, forthwith to give, or leave in writing at their abodes, notices to the several militia men, to attend at the time and place mentioned in such order.

IF any militia man, so ordered to be drawn out and embodied, (not labouring under any infirmities incapacitating him to serve) did not appear, and march in pursuance thereof, on conviction before two justices, he forfeited 40l. which if he did not immediately pay, he was to be by them committed to the common gaol for twelve months, or untill he had paid the same. Any person har-

court may be officers of the line; they likewise commonly do separate duty, yet I believe no instance can be shewn, where any officer or soldier of that corps, refused to obey any superior officer, though of a marching regiment.

Soon after the militia was first embodied, Captain Linch of the Suffolk regiment, was tried for disobeying the orders of Lieutenant Governor Thickness, of Land-guard-fort. As was Captain Lewis of the Surry, for disobedience of those of Lieutenant Colonel Strode of the invalids, both under the rank of generals; had not the militia been subject to their orders, such disobedience could not have been deemed criminal, nor would warrants to try them have been granted, the right of Mr. Thickness and Lieutenant Colonel Strode, to issue orders to the militia being thereby admitted.

It is to be hoped, that this, and several other doubtful points, will be clearly settled in some future act.

bouring,

bouring, or concealing a militia man, not attending when ordered into actual service, knowing him to be such, on conviction thereof before one justice, forfeited 5*l.* to be levied by distress, and for want of sufficient distress, such justice to commit him to the house of correction for two months, or to cause him to be publicly whipped.

IN order to enable the militia men, ordered out on actual service, to provide themselves with necessaries, it was enacted, that when the militia was so ordered out, the receiver general of the land tax for the respective county, or place, should pay to the captain, or other commanding officer of each company so ordered, one guinea for each private militia man belonging to his company, to be by him paid to such militia man, on, or before the day appointed for their marching; and the same for every militia man, who should afterwards be enrolled and ordered out, to be paid when he joined his company. But this mode being found productive of great irregularities, the man spending it in liquor, instead of applying it to the purpose intended, that clause was afterwards altered; and the commanding officer of the company was authorised to lay out that guinea, in a manner most advantageous for each militia man, giving him an account within three months, or as soon as desired, how such money had been expended.

IN case any militia man chosen by lot to serve in a corps that was embodied and called into actual service, left a family unable to support themselves, one justice might order the overseers of the poor of the parish, where such family dwelt, to pay them a weekly allowance according to the following rule: for any child under ten years of age, a sum not exceeding the price of one day's labour; for two children under that age, a sum not exceeding two days labour; for three or four children under the age aforesaid, any sum not exceeding the price of three days labour; and for five or more children, under the age before named, any sum not exceeding four days labour; and for the wife of such militia man, any sum not exceeding the price of one day's labour: the same was to be forthwith reimbursed

reimbursed to such overseer by the treasurer of the county, out of the county stock. The families of substitutes, hired men, or volunteers were likewise to be taken care of by the parish wherein they dwelt, without such allowance making them removeable.

ANY person having served in the militia when called into actual service, and being a married man, might set up and exercise such trade as he was apt and able for, in any town or place within great Britain or Ireland without molestation, the same as any foldier or mariner.

THE clothes of an embodied militia man were to be applied at the end of every year as the commanding officer should judge best for the use of such militia man.

ABOUT the year 1780, it being thought expedient to increase the militia, persons duly qualified according to the militia act then in force, were authorised to raise one or more volunteer companies, to be added to the regiment or battalion of any county; and the lord lieutenant was, with the king's approbation, to grant commissions to a sufficient number of officers for the same, and on a certificate from the commanding officer of the regiment of these companies being complete, they were entitled to the allowance of bounty, subsistence money, arms and clothing, and to be subject to the same regulations in every respect as the rest of the militia forces. By a former clause, captains were authorised when embodied, to augment their companies with volunteers, but then it was required they should be already trained, armed and clothed.

THESE are some of the most important clauses in the militia act, a more particular account would have exceeded the limits allowed for that part of the work, a general outline of it being all that is meant to be delineated. (i)

(i) SUCH persons as wish to see an entire code of the Militia Laws, will meet with ample information from a digest of them, both old and new, drawn up by the Reverend Doctor Burne, from which most of these extracts have been taken.

BESIDES these constitutional forces, there were in the English armies and garrisons, at all times, from the conquest downwards, stipendiary troops, both national and foreigners, the first hired by our kings, with the money paid by persons commuting for their feudal services, and employed in castle guards, foreign garrisons, and protecting the marches or borders of the kingdom, next Wales and Scotland. The foreigners were paid out of the privy purse, or suffered to live upon free quarters. They were known by the various names of *ruptarii*, *routers*, and *ryters*, the last from a German word, signifying a horseman, or knight; they were also stiled *brabancons*, *provencales*, *coterelli*, and *Flemmings*; and were really a set of freebooters of all nations, ready to embrace any side for hire; these were chiefly called in by our kings, in their disputes with their great barons. They were employed by the Kings William Rufus, Stephen, Henry II. and John. Henry I. it is said, hired no foreigners to serve him in England, but this is contradicted by several deeds preserved in Rymer's *Fœdera*, wherein there are agreements between that king and the earl of Flanders, and others; one wherein that earl, for the consideration of four hundred marks of silver per annum, engages to furnish five hundred soldiers for the king's service, either in England or Normandy, each soldier having three horses. (k) The garrisons in Ireland were at first chiefly kept up by the persons who held lands there by grants from the crown; there were afterwards, besides these, a small number of the king's troops, these gradually encreased, as may be seen in the note below. (1)

KING

(k) Vol. I. p. 1, 2, 3. || (1) THE first established force in Ireland, was the 14th of Edward IV. when one hundred and twenty archers on horseback, forty horsemen, and forty pages were established by parliament there, these were six years afterwards reduced to eighty archers, and twenty spearmen on horseback. In the reign of Henry VIII. anno 1535, the army in Ireland consisted of three hundred men, and in 1543, was increased to three hundred and eighty horse, and one hundred and sixty foot, which was then the peace establishment.

KING EDWARD I. employed mercenary soldiers in his French wars. In Rymer there is an order from his son Edward II. A. D. 1308, to the constable of Burgundy, to pay the arrears due to diverse officers, particularly to Elias de Ponte, and William Alarde, for their wages, and those of their followers.

A. D. 1310, an allowance is directed to be made to Walter de Scudamore, sheriff of Dorset, for 25l. 5s. paid by the king's order to four men at arms, four cross bows, and four archers, of the guard of the castle of Shireburn, for one hundred and one days wages. (m)

A. D. 1322, the seneschal of Gascony, was directed to raise two hundred cross bow men, and two hundred lancemen, both foot, and to bring them over, so that they might be at Newcastle upon Tyne in October, to go against the Scots. Raymunde de Mille Saetis was made chief leader. (n)

FROM the time of King Edward III. when it became customary for our kings to engage with their subjects, and other persons by indenture, to furnish soldiers at certain wages, most of our armies consisted of stipendiary troops; such was the army raised and commanded by the bishop of Norwich, A. D. 1382, the 6th of Richard II. and in the army of the 16th of Henry V. In France

establishment. When the Irish were in rebellion, which frequently happened, the armies were considerably increased.

In the reign of Queen Mary, the standing forces in Ireland amounted to about one thousand two hundred men. During the greatest part of the reign of Queen Elizabeth, the Irish were in open rebellion, but when that was suppressed, the force kept up was between one thousand five hundred and two thousand men, at which number they continued till the army raised by Lord Stafford, the 15th of King Charles I.

ANNO 1680, the establishment in Ireland was seven thousand eight hundred men, officers included. And in King William's reign, anno 1698, twenty-four thousand eight hundred and ninety-one. *Trenchard's Short History of Standing Armies, London, 1698.*

(m) SEE Rymer in anno. || (n) IBID.

there were so many stipendiaries, that in his orders to the captain of Rouen, they, and the soldiers are separately mentioned, and that in several articles, (o) the particulars of these contracts, both as to form and substance, will be elsewhere fully explained: but as the agreement with the bishop of Norwich, respecting the army here alluded to, gave cause to a very extraordinary military trial, the substance of it, as extracted from the rolls of parliament, is here laid before the readers. The bishop of Norwich, who had before made an offer for guarding the seas, now came before the king and parliament, and offered, if he would grant him the whole fifteenth, lately voted by the commons for carrying on the war, he would serve him in France for one whole year, with two thousand five hundred men at arms, and two thousand five hundred archers, all well arrayed and mounted, of whom one thousand men at arms, and the same number of archers, should (God willing) be at the sea side, within twenty days from the payment of the money, properly equipped, and ready to embark for the succour of the city of Gaunt, and the county of Flanders; he likewise undertook to pay the expence of transporting this army, and all other incidental charges, for the due performance of which, he offered to enter into sufficient obligations. This proposal appeared to the king and his parliament, fair and advantageous; but before it was accepted, the king desired he, and his council, might be acquainted what leaders the bishop intended to procure for commanding these troops, their numbers, and names, as it was well known, that unless an army had good officers at its head, it would soon fall to anarchy and ruin. To this the bishop answered, that if it pleased the king to accept of

(o) THE words soldier and stipendiary are etymologically the same; soldier is derived from *solde* pay, and stipendiary from *stipendium*, wages or hire. Custom perhaps made the difference; the first signifying one of the constitutional military and stipendiary of the indented troops. See the orders above-mentioned in Rymer.

his propofals, he would employ fome of the beft captains in the land, his majesty and the blood royal excepted, but that he would not give their names, till he was fure of having a grant of the expedition; on this it was asked him, what lord he defired to have with him, to act as the king's lieutenant, as one was abfolutely neceffary in fo high and weighty a bufinefs, who fhould have power to take cognizance of crimes, and to do other things neceffary, which office never was to this time granted to a prelate, or any man of holy church. The bifhop then offered to give the king in writing, the names of a certain number of lords, out of whom he might felect any one he thought beft qualified for that office, who on his appointment, fhould have orders to obey him, (the bifhop) in all things appertaining to the crusade, (p) and he on his part, would engage to obey the lieutenant in all things relative to his lieutenantcy, and moreover, if within the faid year it fhould happen, that the kingdom of France fubmitted to Urban the true pope, he would furl and withdraw the banner of the crusade, and ferve the king the remainder of the year with his ftipulated number of men, under his own proper banner. This being approved of by the king and parliament, the king granted his licence to all fuch perfons as chofe to accompany the bifhop in this expedition, the royal retinue, and thofe of the great lords excepted, to leave the realm without moleftation. The bifhop then delivered to the king, the names of four perfons of his kingdom, from among whom he might chufe his lieutenant, this he did not do, for what reason is unknown; but granted, that if the bifhop could not agree with any of the lords by him named, or fome other fufficient perfon, worthy to bear fo high an office, he might in that cafe have the government and difpofition of the army in all things.

(p) A CRUSADE was at that time on foot againft Clement, the anti-pope, of which the bifhop of Norwich was by Pope Urban appointed general.

THESE stipendiary forces were, the garrisons and castle guards excepted, kept up only in time of war, and tho' mercenary, were not standing armies. Their subsistence was drawn from the grants made by parliament, in which their specific numbers were sometimes stipulated.

THE first standing forces employed by our kings, were their immediate body guards, such as the serjeants at arms, the yeomen of the guards, and gentlemen pensioners, yet these were rather calculated for the splendour of a court, than the operations of the field.

DURING the troubles under Charles I. a number of troops were levied by both parties, without any attention to law or custom, their institution does not therefore come within the scope of this work. Many of the regiments raised by the parliament were on the restoration of Charles II. disbanded, and the same day relieved for that king's service. (q) Two regiments of guards raised by him

(q) MERCURIUS POLITICUS, Westminster, Feb. 20, 1661.—And on Thursday, 14th of this instant February, they (the commissioners) disbanded the lord generall's regiment of foot and life guard of horse, on Tower Hill (being the only remaining land forces of the army) with more than ordinary solemnity. Sir William Doyley, William Prynne, Esq; Colonel Edward King, and Colonel John Birch (four of the commissioners for Westminster) went in a coach to Tower Hill, about ten of the clock, on Thursday, 14th of this instant (being Valentine's Day) when the lord generall's regiment of foot and life-guard appearing with their arms before them, they ordered five companies of the foot to draw up in a ring about Mr. Prynne, and the other five about Colonel Birch, who made two short speeches to them to this effect: "That God had highly honoured them in the eyes and hearts of the king and kingdome, yea, and made them renowned throughout the world, and to all posterity, in stirring them up to be eminently instrumental in the happy restoration of his majesty to his royal throne, the parliament to their privileges, and our whole three kingdoms to their antient laws, liberties and government, without any battle or bloodshed: for which signal services his majesty and the whole kingdome returned them not only their verbal, but real thanks; the king having given them one week's pay, by way of gratuity, over and above their wages, and the parliament and kingdome provided monies for their just arrears stated on their respective accounts, which upon their disbanding should be forthwith paid for their use, into their officer's hands. That this regiment,

him in 1660, one of horse, and one of foot, formed the two first corps of our present army: these were afterwards considerably increased. In 1661, the first regiment, or royal Scotch, were brought back from France, (r) where they had served from the time of King

regiment, as it was the first of the army who promoted his majesty's glorious restitution to his crown, so it hath this signal badge of honour now put upon them, to be his last regiment disbanded; and although they were ordered and declared to be disbanded in relation to the kingdom's pay, yet they were immediately to be advanced to his majesty's service, as an extraordinary guard to his royal person, whom God long preserve in health and happiness." Which speeches being ended, they all cried out, with reiterated shouts and acclamations, God save King Charles the Second! waving and throwing up their hats, displaying their ensigns, beating their drums, and discharging their muskets, over and over, till commanded to draw off to their respective colours, when they were called over and disbanded by Mr. Prynne, Colonel King, and Colonel Birch; Mr. Prynne causing all those four companies he disbanded to lay down their arms at his feet, in testimony of their disbanding, and then to take them up again, as entertained by his majesty in service. In the mean time Sir William Dooley made a speech to the life guard of horse, whom he called over and disbanded; after which, between twelve and one, the regiment marched back with their arms, in a regimental order, to their quarters, by the lord mayor's house, who having notice thereof, came forth to the door, on whom the soldiers bestowed several volleys of shot, as they passed by him, most of the officers dined with him, desiring him further to provide monies for payment of their arrears out of the city's three months present assessment, designed to them by the commissioners order. Their stated arrears amounting to 13038l. 16s. 3d. besides 3800l. advanced to them to defray their quarters, in all 16338l. 16s. 3d. whereas if the city's and other monies had come in as was expected, when their arrears were first stated, 10,200l. would have paid them all off. The life guards arrears, for want of monies to pay them off when first stated, increased from 5000l. to 8121l. 16s. 11d. — 7000l. whereof they sent a party to receive at Northampton, on Thursday last; the residue was paid them by the treasurers at war, in London: most of them are since entertained by his majesty for his horse guards.

(r) THIS regiment is from its antiquity jocularly stiled Pontius Pilate's guards.

FATHER DANIEL gives the following history of it, under the title of the Scotch Regiment of Douglas. "This regiment served several years in France, and distinguished itself very greatly. I find in the ordonance of Louis XIV. of the year 1670, for the rank of regiments, that it was one of the first, it came from Scotland to France in the time of James VI.

THE chevalier Hepburne was the colonel, he was a man of distinguished merit, and beloved

King James I. There were also, about the same time, an English corps of cavalry in the French service. (s) AMONG

loved by Henry IV. and Louis XIII. he was called in France Colonel Hebron, the name of Hepburne being difficult to pronounce. Altho' he was killed (anno 1636) during the reign of Louis XIII. his memory was so dear in France, that King Louis XIV. caused a magnificent monument to be erected for him in the cathedral of Toul. After the death of Hepburne, the Lord James Douglas was appointed colonel of the regiment, which from that time began to be called the regiment of Douglas. This colonel was killed between Douay and Arras, commanding a flying camp. He was a lieutenant general, and highly esteemed in France for his bravery and conduct.

His brother, the Lord George Douglas, who had afterwards the title of Lord Dumbarton, was appointed colonel of this regiment, and did not yield in merit to his predecessors.

THIS regiment of Douglas being in garrison at Avennes in 1661, had orders to pass over to England, where it rendered very considerable services to King Charles II.

It consisted but of eight companies when it left France, but on its return a year afterwards, had thirty-three companies, which were composed at the least of an hundred men each. Lord George Douglas always commanded it in France. It is to be observed, that there was at the same time in France another regiment of Douglas, the colonel of which was brother to the two lords before mentioned; he was also called the Lord James Douglas. This regiment, which consisted of but one battalion, was incorporated with that of his brother. The regiment of my Lord George Douglas was recalled to England about the year 1678.

AFTER the last revolution, the colonel who had then the title of Lord Dumbarton, lieutenant general in France and England, and a great number of officers, followed the late King James into France. Many soldiers imitated the example of their officers. This regiment still subsists, and is incontestibly the finest corps in England. It is commanded by the Lord Orkney, a lieutenant general, and brother to the late duke of Hamilton, and nephew to the Lord Dumbarton. It is called the royal regiment, or Orkney's regiment. This regiment has furnished a number of excellent officers, many of whom are still serving in France. What I have here related was taken from the memoirs of a Scotch officer who was well informed on this subject.

THERE were besides this regiment, another of seventeen hundred men, commanded by Collonel Rutherford, which ranked as guards in France, they came over from Scotland in 1643, and were at the battle of Lens, in 1648. When King Charles was restored to the crown, he appointed Rutherford governor of Dunkirk, who quitted the French service without paying the proper compliments to the king of France, by whom he had been loved and entrusted. On his quitting France the regiment was reduced, and the subalterns and such soldiers as chose to serve in France, incorporated in Douglas's regiment.

(s) THE English company of gens d'armes which is the second, was brought into France, in

AMONG other unconstitutional innovations made by the ill-advised James II. that of dismissing the protestant officers from his army, and introducing Irish papists in their room, was the most impolitic, and lost him the affection and support of his troops, which towards the latter end of his reign were increased to upwards of twenty thousand men in England, and eight thousand seven hundred in Ireland. (t) A list of the military establishment for the year 1684, is given in the appendix.

THE

in 1667, by the Count George Hamilton lord of the branch of Hamilton Albercome, long established in Ireland; this company came into France on the following occasion. Charles II. having remounted on the throne in 1660, caused some catholick officers and soldiers, who had served in Flanders under him and his two brothers, to come to England, these he incorporated into his guards; some time after the parliament being at variance with the court obliged that prince to dismiss all these catholick officers and soldiers of his guards. On this occasion George Hamilton had permission from the king his master to enroll these officers and soldiers, and to take them over to France. There were in this company English, Scotch, and Irish. On Hamilton's arrival, the king of France, finding they were good and well made men, formed them into a company of gens d'armes, under the title of the English gens d'armes, excepting that he draughted out the Scotch, and incorporated them in the Scotch gens d'armes; he declared himself captain of this new company, and appointed George Hamilton captain lieutenant, who was killed at the head of the regiment bearing his name, in an engagement near Severne, in 1675. *P. Daniel* tom. 2, p. 249.

(t) THESE all, except the royal regiment, consisted of independent companies or troops, till April 1683, when they were regimented by King Charles II. and formed into three regiments of horse, and eight of foot. The 18th was one of these regiments, the earl of Granard was the first colonel, he resigned it to his son. A singular circumstance happened to this corps, in the year 1689, on the disbanding of the Irish regiments on the arrival of K. Will. III. which is thus related by one, then a soldier in it: "A most unaccountable rumour prevailed throughout the kingdom, that all the Irish soldiers had got together, burning and destroying all before them, and this alarm had so wonderful an effect, that not a town or village but had an account, that the very next town or village was in flames: in short it had prevailed so far, that the trained bands of London were all under arms, guarding the streets and avenues leading to the city.

UPON this alarm the country people came down in great numbers, to be revenged on the Irish regiment at Brentford, for the depredations their countrymen were making all over the kingdom; Sir John Edgworth, our major, was commanding officer (for Lord Brittas,

THE revolution, which shortly after succeeded, caused the military part of the constitution to be new modelled, and the army to be voted from year to year only, by an act stiled the mutiny bill, which is prefaced by a declaratory clause, that it is unlawful to raise or keep a standing army in time of peace, without the permission of parliament. In this act, the numbers of which the army is to consist are specified, and divers laws and regulations for their government are laid down, from these the king is authorised to frame such other articles as he shall deem expedient and necessary. This act has of late been regularly passed every year, whence an opinion has arisen, that should it be suffered to expire, the army would of course be disbanded, and that the soldiers might quit their colours without being liable to any punishment; this is however not universally

Brittas, our lieutenant colonel, being a papist, had fled) he ordered the regiment to their arms immediately, and drew them with all dispatch he could, within the walls of Lord Ossinton's court yard. From thence he expostulated with the populace, but all to no purpose; they would have revenge. At last, perceiving two gentlemen among the croud, he called them to him, and assured them that his men were not Irish papists, as they imagined, but protestants, and descended from Englishmen, though born in Ireland; and to convince them they were all true church of England men, he desired they would send for the parson of the parish to read prayers to them; the parson was sent for, and to prayers they went.

THE soldiers had most of them their common prayer books about them, and (whether it was out of fear or devotion) they answered the responsals of the church so distinctly, and behaved with so much decency, that it surprized both the parson and the gentlemen; whereupon they returned to the crowd who gave us a huzza; cried, the prince of Orange for ever! and went away.

THIS regiment going to Flanders, a dispute arose respecting its rank in the army, which a board of general officers was appointed to settle; but being all colonels of regiments interested in the decision, they would allow it rank only from the time it came on English pay, by which it lost precedency of eleven regiments. It obtained the title of a royal regiment for its gallant behaviour in mounting the breach at Namur, in 1695. See Captain Robert Parker's Memoirs. The list of the army published by Milan, and Kane in his Campaigns, date the raising of this regiment April 1, 1684.

verfally allowed, (u) and cannot in time of war be legal. The declaratory clause abovementioned being reſtricted to the time of peace only; and it being declared felony by the acts of the 7th of Henry VII. cap. 1, and 3d Henry VIII. cap. 5, for any foldier to depart from the army without the king's licence, which acts were, in the reign of Queen Elizabeth, pronounced by all the judges (x) perpetual; and Blackſtone in his Commentaries, vol. 4, p. 101, ſays, deſertion from the king's armies in time of war, whether by land or ſea, in England or in parts beyond the ſeas, is by the ſtanding laws of the land (excluſive of the annual acts of parliament to puniſh mutiny and deſertion) and particularly by ſtatute 18th Hen. VI. c. 19, and 5th Eliz. c. 5. made felony, but not without benefit of clergy: but by the ſtatute of 2d and 3d Edward VI. c. 2, clergy is taken away from ſuch deſerters, and the offence is made triable by the juſtices of every ſhire. The ſame ſtatutes puniſh other inferior military offences, with fines, imprisonment and other penalties.

THE regular modes of aſſembling the national forces were anciently as follows: the great barons, biſhops, abbots, and other tenants

(u) NOTWITHSTANDING this opinion, the mutiny act has expired, and been ſuffered to remain for ſome time unrenewed, more than once, ſince its institution; the firſt time was A. D. 1689, when the mutiny bill having expired the 10th of November, the new bill, which originated with the lords, was not ſent to the commons, till the 14th, four days after the former act had expired; and tho' it did not receive the royal aſſent, till the 23d of December, it was directed to take place on the 20th. In the year 1691, the mutiny bill, which expired on the 20th of December, was not renewed till March 14th, 1692-3, but ordered to be in force from the 10th.

IN the year 1694, the new mutiny bill was not paſſed till the 16th of April, altho' it ceaſed on the 10th of the preceding month of March; and in the ſucceeding year it did not receive the royal aſſent till the 22d of April, fix days after its expiration.

AFTER the bill which was paſſed in the 1ſt of April, 1697, *for one year longer*, had expired, no other bill was paſſed or ordered till January 31ſt, 1701, when one was offered which received the royal aſſent, 2d of March, 1701-2. See the Journals of the houſes of lords and commons.

(x) SEE Coke's Reports, p. 520, caſe of ſoldiers. Trinit. 43 Eliz.

holding immediately from the king, were, when circumstances permitted, warned to assemble by both a special and general summons; the first was by the royal mandate particularly directed to each baron, bishop, or abbot, sent to the sheriffs of the counties wherein they resided, to be by them or their officers personally served on the parties to whom they were addressed. (y) In these notices they were positively enjoined on their fidelity, as they regarded the king's honour and the lands they held of him, to be at a certain time and place, with their due service of men and horses, properly equipped, to set out with the king or his general on the intended expedition; this was peculiar to the tenants in capite or great barons; they likewise partook with the inferior feudal tenants, in being summoned by publick proclamation, made by the sheriffs and their officers in all market towns and boroughs within their counties, commanding all persons bound to perform military service, to assemble at a time and place therein named, duly mounted and armed, under penalty of forfeiting their fees, or being severely amerced. These proclamations were made in consequence of the king's writ to the sheriff, many specimens of which are to be found in Rymer and other publick records. (z) See the form of one in the note below.

(y) SEE a summons of this nature to William de Fortibus, A. D. 1257, 41 Hen. III. Rymer, vol. I, p. 635. The summonses for such persons as resided at the king's court, were sent by the treasurer to the exchequer, and thence to the keepers of the king's wardrobe, who delivered them. *Madox Hist. Excheq.*

(z) VICECOMITI Kancie salutem. Præcipimus tibi quod sine delatione summoneri facias per totam ballivam tuam archiepiscopos, episcopos, abbates, priores, comites, barones, milites & libere tenentes, & omnes alios qui servitiam nobis debent, five servitiam militare vel serjeantiæ: quodque similiter clamari facias per totam baillivam tuam, quod sint apud Wigorniam in crastino St. Trinitatis, anno regni nostri septimo, omni dilatione & occasione postpositis, cum toto hujusmodi servitio quod nobis debent, paratis cum equis et armis, ad eundem in servitium nostrum, quo eis præceperimus. T. H. &c. apud Westmon. 25 die Maii, eodem modo scribitur omnibus vicecomitibus Angliæ. Cl. 7. H. 3. m. 10. dorso.

If

If it was found necessary to alter or postpone the time or place of meeting, it was done by like proclamation.

IN cases of popular insurrection, rebellion, or the apprehension of a foreign invasion, where it was deemed necessary to collect a greater force than the feudal troops, the king issued his writ to the sheriffs of those counties, whose forces it was thought expedient to array and embody, directing them to ride night and day through their districts, causing it to be proclaimed wherever they came, that all persons between the ages of sixteen and sixty, not labouring under bodily disability, called defensible men, were commanded to join the king's army, with all possible speed, at a place appointed, competently armed, according to their possessions, under pain of forfeiture of life, limb, and every other thing they could forfeit.

It was also customary, whilst the statute of Winchester, or that of Philip and Mary continued in force, for the king to issue commissions of array, appointing certain experienced officers, in whom they could confide, to assemble, muster, array, and try, or exercise the inhabitants of certain districts, with an intent to see they had their proper armour and weapons; and also in some measure to instruct them in the use of arms. Diverse commissions of array occur in Rymer's *Fœdera*, two will be given in the appendix. The form of these commissions was settled in parliament the 5th of Henry IV.

UNDER the article of summoning the defensible men of the realm, may be placed some very extraordinary writs, issued in the reigns of King Edward III. and Richard II. directed to the archbishops and bishops, directing them to arm, array, and regiment all the abbots, priors, monks, and other ecclesiastical persons, of what diocese soever, between the ages of sixteen and sixty. As this appears a matter of great curiosity a literal translation of one of these writs is here given.

“ THE King to the Venerable Father in Christ, William, by the said grace Archbishop of Canterbury, Primate of all England, greeting. As in our last parliament, by your assent, and that of the

other prelates, nobles, and commons of our realm, it hath been ordered that all the men of our said kingdom of England, as well clergy as laity, to wit, every one of them according to their state, possessions, and abilities, should be armed and arrayed, to go forth, for the safety of holy church and the said kingdom, against our enemies, if any shall presume to enter the said kingdom.

WHEREFORE, by diverse of our commissions, we have assigned certain of our trusty persons in every county of our kingdom, for arraying, and causing to be arrayed and armed, all defensible men there found, between the ages of sixteen and sixty years, and to cause them to be divided into thousands, hundreds and twenties, so that the said men, so armed and arrayed, and well furnished with competent arms, may be ready and prepared to resist the said enemy, for the safety and defence of the said church and kingdom.

AND because our enemies the French, having broken the peace between France and England, last entered into at Calais, have in an hostile manner taken our cities, castles, towns, and many other places, slaying our faithful subjects residing therein, and taking them into their own hands, thus detaining and occupying them. And not content with this alone, they have assembled and are diligently preparing with the utmost expedition, in diverse parts of the sea coasts, a large fleet of ships, with a multitude of forces and armed men, in order shortly to invade our said kingdom, and us, our said kingdom and people, to conquer by force, and to subvert our realm and the church of England.

WE willing in the most convenient manner, to provide for the safety and defence of the church and our said kingdom with all our power. And adverting that you and all the other prelates, and all the clergy of the said kingdom, with our other faithful subjects, are bound to lend an assisting hand to resist our said enemies, for the safety of holy church and the said kingdom.

WE therefore firmly enjoin and command you by the fealty and love by which you are bound unto us, and considering the imminent

nent perils and heavy damages threatened by the invasion of our aforefaid enemies, that you caufe all abbots, priors, religious, and other ecclefiastical perfons (every delay being laid afide) to be armed, arrayed, and furnifhed with competent arms (to wit) every one between the faid ages, according to their faid ftate, poffeffions, and abilities, and thefe to be arranged into thoufands, hundreds, and twenties, fo that they may be ready and prepared to fet forth together with our other faithful fubjects, againft our faid enemies, within our kingdom, in order with God's affiftance, to conquer, repel, and deftroy them, and to punifh their audacity.

AND this, as you efteem us and our honour, your own and the fafety of holy church and our kingdom, you will by no manner omit.

WITNESS the King at Weftminfter, the 6th day of July,
A. D. 1369, clauf. 43, Ed. III. M. 13.

LIKE writs were fent directed to the archbifhop of York, and every other bifhop in England. (a)

NOTWITHSTANDING thefe writs were at leaft three or four times iffued, hiftory does not inform us that thefe reverend battalions were ever actually called forth under arms. Indeed many feemingly infuperable obftacles militated againft it. Firft, the immunities of the church, which would have been highly violated by making private foldiers of its members; next, many councils and canons, as well as the determinations of different popes, all concurred in prohibiting ecclefiastics to ufe any other fword than that of the fpirit, or by any means to fpill human blood. Befides, the very order directed an impoffibility: how could a monk, who had no private property, purchafe armour or weapons, had it even been

(a) Two other writs of this kind, and in the fame reign, occur in Rymer, the 1ft in the 46th year, and the other in the 47th; another the 1ft of Richard II.

lawful for him to make use of them. Besides supposing them assembled, armed and regimented, it would have required a much greater time to render them in any degree fit for service, than the exigency of the cause for which they were assembled would admit. Perhaps after all, these summonses were issued rather with an intent to draw a commutation from their treasury, than to call them to the field.

It seems extremely difficult to reconcile the practice of the ecclesiastics of ancient times with their principles and laws. We everywhere read of bishops serving in, and sometimes commanding armies; and frequently of their fighting, like private troopers, in the ranks of a squadron, and that not in crusades or religious wars: at the same time canons, councils, and popes unanimously forbid ecclesiastics of all degrees to use the sword, or engage in any military operations. An instance of this is shewn in the case of Philip de Dreux, bishop of Beavais; who, as Mathew Paris relates, being taken prisoner by King Richard I. in complete armour, was confined in prison; the pope, interfering in his behalf, solicited his release, under the title of his son and the son of the church: in answer to which, the king sent him the coat of mail, wherein the bishop was taken, with the following question, "Is this thy son's coat or not?" to which the pope ingenuously answered, it was neither his son's coat, nor the coat of the son of the church; thereby disavowing him, and declining to interest himself for an ecclesiastic so improperly employed.

THIS bishop in order to avoid offending the letter of the canon and other regulations, did not use a sword, but fought with a mace, of which he made so powerful an use, that at the battle of Bovines, he beat down Long Sword earl of Salisbury; how he contrived to avoid the spilling of blood, is not so evident, since it would be next to impossible, to beat out a man's brains, without causing the prohibited effusion.

In the ancient poem of the siege of Caerlaverok, Anthony Beck,
bishop

bishop of Durham, is complimented on his courage, and is there said to be the most valliant clerk in the kingdom or indeed in Christendome, but absent from that service, on account of a wound he had received. Henry Spencer bishop of Norwich, in the reign of King Richard II. not only raised, but also commanded, an army in France. And at Ickingham near Newmarket, leaped his horse over some barricados and a trench, with which some rebels had fortified themselves, and Godwin says, "rode into the very midst of them, and bestirred himself so manfully, as, if it had been an action agreeable to his calling, had deserved great commendations." Among the persons indenting to raise soldiers for King Henry V. are several bishops: and at the battle of Floddon Field, there were slain of the Scots, one archbishop, two bishops and four abbots.

FATHER DANIEL suggests a motive, which perhaps, besides the love of glory, caused the bishops and other great ecclesiastics to follow the armies, which was, that by their being accustomed to the use of arms, they were the better able to defend themselves against the encroachments of the great barons, who frequently, particularly in France, seized on their revenues, under pretence of reimbursing themselves the expences they had been at, in fighting for the defence of the church and state.

IN France the abbots frequently impoverished their abbies, by fitting out their equipages for war, although forbidden by the council of Soissons, an. 774. (b) Perhaps likewise, they were by some clause unknown to us, obliged by their tenures, on certain occasions, to attend personally. Indeed, one instance has already been quoted in this work, wherein it is commanded, (c) but at the same time it is probable, the prelates and great abbots did not entirely dislike it, otherwise considering the many arguments to

(b) PERE DANIEL, tom. I, p. 15. || (c) NOTE, (f) page 5.

be adduced against it, and the high power of the church, it would easily have been over-ruled.

THE methods of raising the stipendiary, or mercenary troops, were either by commissions, in substance much like our present beating orders, authorising persons to enlist volunteers; or by indenture, a practice that began about the latter end of the reign of King Edward III. (d) and in that of Henry V. became general. By these indentures, different persons engaged themselves to provide a certain number of able men, properly armed, to serve the king for a stated time, at a stipulated pay and bounty, then stiled wages and regards; both the wages and regards were calculated according to the nature of the service, and place in which it was to be performed: besides settling the quantum of the pay and bounty, with the time and manner of payment, these indentures contained diverse covenants, respecting the sharing of prisoners of war, or booty that might happen to be taken by the contractor or his men, ransome being at that time one of the principal emoluments arising from military service, and considered by the soldiers of those days as an expectancy, similar to that of prize money in our present navy. Not only soldiers of fortune indented for this service, but also bishops and other ecclesiastical and civil persons. Specimens of these indentures (e) are given in the notes and appendix: the originals are still

(d) ALTHOUGH indentures with the king's subjects were not common before this period, Rymer contains several records of agreements with foreigners to find soldiers for our earlier kings.

(e) INDENTURE of war. John Haytely, Esquire, Dame Beatrice Shirley, Bundel 8. This indenture made between the king our sovereign lord of the one part, and John Haytely, Esquire, of the other part, witnesseth, that the said John is bound to our said lord the king to do him service of war, in the parts beyond sea, for three quarters of a year, and the said John to have continually remaining with him during the said time, three archers mounted and arrayed as appertains to their estate, and the said John shall take for wages for himself twelve pence a day, with accustomed regards, and for each of his said archers

still extant at the Paper Office, Whitehall. In these agreements it was usual for the king to advance part of the pay before hand, afterwards called imprest money, and also to give security for the regular payment of the remainder; for this purpose King Henry V. pledged all his jewels, which were not redeemed till after his death.

archers sixpence the day, during the time above mentioned, which wages and regards shall be paid to him for himself and his said archers, immediately in hand for two months, and for the third month at his muster; and for the second and third quarter abovementioned, the said John shall be paid from month to month, at the beginning of each month, in English gold, or in some other money then current in France, of the value of the said gold in England abovesaid, by the hands of the treasurer of war of the king our said sovereign lord, for the time being. And the said John shall be bound to be with the people of his said retinue at the port of Southampton, the 1st day of April next coming, to make a full muster of himself and his said retinue, and the said term shall commence on the day of the said muster; and our said lord the king shall have as well the third part of the gains of war of the aforesaid John, as the third part of the thirds for which the people of his retinue shall be answerable to him out of their gains of war, be they prisoners, booty or other things taken and all the other accustomed droits; for which thirds of thirds and droits the said John shall be bound to answer to our said sovereign lord the king, at his exchequer, in England, upon oath, to be taken by the said John or the executor or executors of his will, in his name and not otherwise, and the said John shall have all the prisoners during the said time by him or any of his said people taken, except kings and princes, and the sons of kings, and in particular Charles called the Dauphin of Vienne and other great captains of the blood royal, also chieftains and lieutenants having power from the said Charles, and excepting also those who killed and slew John late Duke of Burgundy, or were knowing and consenting, or counselling and aiding thereunto, of whom all and every one shall remain the prisoners of our said lord the king, for whom he shall make a reasonable agreement to him or them who shall have taken them; and the said John shall perform watch and ward, and also muster himself and his retinue when and as often as it shall be by our said lord the king duly warned and required during the time aforesaid; and the said John shall have the transportation of himself, his men and horses to France and back at the expence of our lord the king before named. In witness whereof the said John has affixed his seal to part of this indenture, before our said lord the king. Given at Westminster the 7th day of February, in the 9th year of the reign of our said sovereign lord.

ON the back—The indenture of John Hayteley, Esquire, for and in the name of Dame Beatrice Shirley.

AN expedient sometimes practised by our kings to procure troops for foreign service, was to pardon criminals, on condition of their serving in the king's army abroad, and finding security to answer any prosecution if called upon at their return. (f) Some of the king's justices were occasionally empowered to issue these pardons, and to receive the obligations of the criminals, (g) after which they were allowed a small time to prepare for their voyage, they were then assembled by writs issued to the sheriffs of the different counties of England, directing them to cause it to be cried throughout their districts, that all such as had charters of pardon, should repair towards the sea, to enter into the pay and service of the king; those in the west at Dartmouth; those in the counties of Kent, Surry and Suffex at Winchelsea; in Cambridge, Huntingdon, Norfolk, Suffolk, Lincoln, Northampton, or Rutland, and the neighbouring counties at Yarmouth and St. Botolf's, so that they were there by a stated time under penalty of losing their charters of pardon. (h)

THESE were the regular and constitutional modes of assembling our armies in former times, besides which several of our sovereigns under the authority of the royal prerogative, obliged districts, cities, towns, corporations, and even particular persons, to find men, horses, and arms, or to pay contributions for that purpose, not always according to any regular proportion or assessment, but allotted solely by their will and pleasure. This being contrary to the statute of the 1st of King Edward I. was complained of by the commons in the reign of King Edward III. when although a more strict observation was promised, and also directed by a statute, yet both in that and the succeeding reigns, particularly those of Henry VIII. and Elizabeth, the same was frequently practised.

(f) SEE Hal. Pl. Cr. vol. ii. p. 145, and Barrington on the Statutes. || (g) Rot. Vascn, anno Ed. M. 8. N. 11. MS. Yelvert. || (h) Rot. Parl. anno 13 Ed. III.

THE following curious abstract of the different kings who have exercised this prerogative, was drawn up by Sir Robert Cotton, as it appears, by the order of the king, and laid before the lords of the privy council, it is now in the Cotton library, in the British Museum. Julius, F. 6.

Raising Forces at the Counties Charge.

KING John ordered in council, that every nine men should find the tenth at their own chardges.—Pat. 6 Johs.

HENRY III. of every two ploughlands commanded one man to attende his service for 40 daies, at the publique chardge of the villadge. Dorf. Claus. 14. Hen. III. Scutage he assessed several times, for his services, and for such service unto Gascoigne, William de Umfreville made fine 100 marks, many others at the same time. Rot. Fin. 26 H. III. & claus. 15 H. III.

IN the 14th he caused his subjects, jurare ad arma, proportionable from a knite fee to 20s. to be ready at the Whitsuntide following. (i) These men the year following were reminded to furnish themselves at the country's chardge with munition and victuals for 40 days, (k) making fine of such as held in capite, and attended not, and levied victualls upon his people for supplie of his army. And 27 the like services were commanded in Gascoigne, the names of the attendants entered upon the roll. (l)

THE nobles by Ed. I. were enjoined services into Gascoigne in the 22d, and their names entered upon the roll. (m) The like the same year to go against Wales. (n)

EDWARD II. imposed sea service twelve several times upon the

(i) THIS was only ad defensionem nri & sua regni. Dorf. claus. 14 H. 3. m. 6.

(k) DORS. claus. 15 H. 3. m. 8. || (l) Rot. Vasc. 27 H. 3. || (m) Rot. Vasc. 22 Ed. I. in dorf. || (n) Rot. Wall. 22 E. 1. dorf.

porte towns at their owne coste, sometimes for a month, as 1 rmo. some for four, as 12mo. sometimes for seven as 4to. (o)

IN his 17th year Southampton is charged with sixteen shippes, and one hundred and eighteen sea townes more ratably. And he caused some of them to build gallies at their own charges, as he did Southampton of one hundred and twenty oares, in the 23d of his reign.

By Ed. II. in his first yeare, men at armes, the countrey victuals and the port towns shippes. The charges of men and munition for them for seven weeks, in his 4th yeare, and one out of every towne for sixty dayes and to seize their goods, and imprison their persons that refused. (p)

THE D. of Lancaster is commanded out of his land to leavy two thousand foot, and bring them to Newcastle; the like to other noblemen. The cities and villadges to find for forty daies men and furniture at their coste; the number in this roll is expressed, and there an ordinance of the K. and Cls. to furnish the armes of every degree is entered. Five hundred men are assessed on London sumptibus proprijs in his 12th year. (q)

In the 13th those of 40s. land that attended not upon the king's summons, were fined for the first default, at a third of their goodes, and the reste for their second, and their bodies to be at the king's pleasure for the third; and of every knight's fee twenty pounds were taken of him that fayled. (r) In the 15th one of every town sumptibus proprijs for 40 daies and the shire of Bucks redeemed their service of their men with 600 marks fine, all that had 40l. land, were commanded at their own chardges to serve the king, at the forfeiture of their lande and chattels. (s) The nobility with horse

(n) Rot. Cl. et Pat. de Ans. infra. || (o) Rot. Scac. I. Ed. 2 Dors.

(p) Claus et Pat. 12. Ed. II. || (q) Claus. et Pat. in 13. Ed. II.

(r) Rot Claus. 15. Ed. II.

and armes are commanded in the 18th year, and their numbers entered on the roll. (t)

EDWARD III. in his first yeare charged upon the sea towns, all their shipps from 60 tonne upwards, and the year following 76 poort townes, are commanded to furnish all their barks above 40 tonn. (u) The nobility are summoned in his eighth year to attend att Rokef-burgh with armed men. (x)

THE like in the 10th, upon the citie of London he imposed a leavy of men, (y) and assessed upon the shires of England, certaine horseman, as eighty out of Suffolke, he dispenseth with their service, so they send him money after the rate they should be at, (z) and the see towns are enjoined to build barges to attend the king's fleete at their own chardge. (a)

IN the 11th yeare the towns and borrowghs are commanded to furnish men. (b) All men enjoined to find men according to their tenures. The clergie furnish the king with armed men and all from sixteen to sixty, to be ready to serve, the impotente and aged to contribute to the chardge, and power given to arrest goods of such as should refuse, *tanquam de inimicis*. (c) The cinque ports maintained thirty shipps, during the time of war, and when the subjects complained in parliament of these chardges, they received no farther answer than this, "it shall be as before." (d)

IN the 16th diverse men expressed by name in the record, do furnishe the king with men at armes, and archers; (e) and pardon is granted to all felons, that shall be ready to serve the king in his warres, (f) the year following at the chardge of the nobility, divers

(t) Vasc. 18. Ed. II. || (u) Pat. and Claus. de ann. 1. and 2. Ed. III.

(x) Rot. Scoc. 8. Ed. III. || (y) Rot. Scoc. 10. Ed. III. Dor. || (z) Rot. Scoc. 10. Ed. III. 10 Aug. || (a) Claus. 10 Ed. III. || (b) Vasc. 11. Ed. III.

(c) Rot. 13. Ed. III. || (d) Claus. et Pat. 13. Ed. III. || (e) Rot. Franc. 16. Ed. III. || (f) Rot. Franc. 17. Ed. III.

armed men are fet forth. Every man that had lande to the value of five pound, was ordered to find the king one archer for his warres : in the 20th yeare, (g) the cities and towns find the king for his warres armed men ; in anno 24th, and the yeare followinge, the citie of London furnished three hundred archers for the king's chardge. And that these chardges were legally assessed though not by parliament, it appeareth, because diverse men procure themselves patents of dischardge out of speciall favour. (h)

AFTER this year, these forms and courses were changed totally, and this king and so all following for the most parte furnished their occasions of warre, by contracting with their nobility and gentrie, to finde them a proportion of men at certain wages : the indentures from this king, unto Edward IV. remaine for the most part with the clerk of the Pells at Westminster, and the kings had less reason to chardge their people, in this kings time and followinge, because they were supplied by parliament that was annuall.

RICHARD II. in anno 22d, levied horses, and cartes, and victuallers of his people, for their voyage into Ireland. (i)

HENRY VI. in his 20th year enjoned the persons to attend him in his warrs, and dispenseth with as many as would contribute to his occasions. The chardge of two daies expence if they served in person. (k)

HENRY VII. mustered his army, partly by benevolence, and partly at his subjects chardge, the distinction is entered on the list. (l)

HENRY VIII. imposed on his people, the finding of archers for his warres assessing some one knight at forty pound as Sir Adrian Fortescue, and the like in the 16th, but at a higher cefs, some one

(g) ROT. Franc. 20. Ed. III. || (h) ROT. Franc. 21. Ed. III. || (i) CHRON. Walsingham. || (k) ORIGINAL Instructions A. 20. Hen. VI. ap. Rob. Cotton.

(l) FRAGMENT Instruction ap. Rob. Cotton.

knight finding a hundred men, (m) the lords and chief men of every county, commanded to attend the king in his warres, some one with fifty men for the defence of Calais in the 14th yeare, (n) a leavy of six hundred archers fessed upon the nobility, clergie, and good townes; in the 20th, every knight furnishinge ten foot at the least. A like leavy of men in the 25th, some one person being charged with fifty foot, and three launces. A proportion I have, at that time drawn (whether acted or not uncertaine) for an army royall to attend Henry VIII. into Fraunce, in which, on all his subjects from 4000l. land or fees, to 20l. in goodes, a proportion is set to find for the king's service, proportions of men. (o)

THE late queen to withstand the Spanish invasion in Ireland, imposed a chardge of horse and furniture, upon the nobilty, gentry, and her ablest subjects, which was willingly performed accordingly by all. (p)

HAVING thus far in obedience to his majesty's command, with a light touch presented to your honour the many chardges, occasions of state have lead the foregoing princes, to lay upon their people by supreme power, and not by parliament; in all humility I offer up unto your lordships these two considerations. First, that many of these though entered upon record, may never be produced to effect; the rolls of the said receipts, perused to see what levies of men and money have been retourned, in pursuite of any of these intentes, will relieve that doubt; the other, that the successe of these may be examined by searck of stories of those times, wherein they were soe put in practice, of which I have most remayning with me.

THE smooth and usual cure of all defects and maladyes of state, hath beene by parliament, except some few in Hen. III. Ed. II. Rich. II. and Hen. VI. tymes when such remedy proved more dan-

(m) LITTERA Orig. manu Regis. 13 Hen. VIII. ap. Rob. Cotton. || (n) ORIG. ap. Rob. Cotton. || (o) ORIG. ap. Robtun Cotton. || (p) LETTERS of Councill.

gerous than the disease, malignant spirits wearinge more power, than well composed tempers.

IN the year 1585, by the queen's order, a letter was written, from the privy council, to William Chalderton, bishop of Chester, signifying her intent of sending a thousand launces, well mounted and furnished, to the assistance of the Hollanders, but to prevent her kingdom being drained of war horses, she thought it best to purchase them abroad, estimating each horse and furniture, at twenty-five pounds. She therefore required him and his clergy to pay for so many horses, as were settled in an annexed schedule.

The Bishop,	3	Edward Fleetwood, Parson of Wigan,	1
The Dean,	1	John Caldwell, Parson of Wynwicke,	2
The Chapter,	2	Edward Ashton, Parson of Middleton.	1
John Nutter, Prebendary, Parson of Sesson, of Anghton and Babbington			2
Richard Gerrard, Prebendary in Southwell, and Parson of Stopport in Cheshire.			2

THIS money to be paid to Robert Freak, Esq. teller of the Exchequer. (q)

ABOUT the reign of King Henry VIII. lieutenants were appointed to the different countries throughout the realm, as standing repre-

(p) PECK'S *Desiderata Curiosa*, Vol. 1. During the reign of this queen, the livings of the clergy were assessed for providing armour, according to the act of Philip and Mary. Any clergymen possessing one, or more benefices, of 30l. per annum or upwards, was charged according to such proportion as the temporality were charged by that statute, on account of their moveable goods; clergymen having temporal lands and spiritual preferment might be charged according to the greatest rate for either, but not for both. The bishops, deans and prebendaries were rated among the temporality, the bishops for lands, the deans and prebendaries for good, from 30l. and upwards. Contributions were also levied on them by order of the privy council, to provide horse for quelling the rebellion in Ireland. The bishop of London was charged sixty pounds, the dean of St. Paul's, 30l. See Wilkins, *Concil.* Vol. 4, p. 256, 341, and 358.

sentatives

representatives of the crown, and to them, and their deputies all military arrangements within their respective districts were entrusted.

A CONSTANT apprehension of an invasion from Spain, during the first part of the reign of Queen Elizabeth, caused that queen to be very attentive to her internal forces, and was the cause of the following commission, and the regulations therein contained, enacted solely by her own authority, with the advice of her privy council: the original is preserved in the Harleian library, No. 6,844.

“INSTRUCTIONS for the executyon of the commission directed to all the justices of the peace in the countie of for generall musters, and trayning, of all manner of persons, hable for the warrs, to serve as well on horseback as on foote.

THE principal intent of the queen's majestie, as may appear by the expresse wordes of her majestie's commission, is to have perfect knowledge of the numbers, qualities, habilities and sufficiencie of all her subjects in that countie, as by the like commission sent into all other shires of the realme; the like is intended from the age of sixteen yeares upwarde, that may be founde hable to beare armoure, or to use weapon on horsebacke, or on foote, and out of that totall and universall number being viewed, mustered and registered to have a convenient and sufficient number of the most hable, to be chosen and collected, to be by the reasonable charge of the inhabitants in everie shire tryed, armed and weaponed, and so consequentially taughte and trayned, for to use, handle and exercise their horses, armure, shott and other weapons, both on horsebacke, and on foote, for the service and defence of her majestie, her crown and realme, against all attempts, both inward and outward: for which purpose althoughe her majestie doubte not, but that according to the speciall trust reposed in you, and for that the kynde of service at this tyme, tendeth onlie for contynuaunce of the publick peace, whiche by Godd's goodness, the realme now enjoyethe more than any other in Christendome dothe; you will carefullie and spedilie ymploye your whole understandings, labours and powers, without any re-

spect of chardges, or paynes, to execute the commission in all poyntes tending universally to so good an ende. Yet to thentent you may the more redeley, effectually and uniformly proceed herein, her majestie hath, with th'advise of us, of her counsaill, ordeyned that these articles followinge should be conceived in writing, and sent unto you, and others authorized by like commission, in other partes of the realme, as instructyons or memorialls to direct you the more orderly in the executyon of the said commission; not thereby secludinge you from suche other manner of proceedings as maye beste tende also to the more spedie or more effectuell execution of the saide commission, so as the same be not manifestly repugnant to these instructyons. And furdernore considering that this kind of service requireth the attendance and labour of verie manie persons according to the quantitie of the sheire, and as the usual divisions of the same mai seme to require severall assemblies, in sonderie places, and yet the direction of the whole service to be uniformly ordered, oughte properly for avoiding of confusion to apperteyne to the care of some fewer in number, beinge partlie for their degrees and callinge of more reputacyon, and partlie for their knowledge in suche kynde of marshall services most hable to direct the same, therefore

A choise of speciall men to take the chief care of the commission.

her majestie hath ordeyned A, B, C, D, E, &c. shoulde take the principall care of the executyon of this commission, and of the contents of these instructyons; and that you and the rest of the justices of the peace of that sheire doe, notwithstanding your best endeavours as nede shall require, and as you shalbe appoynted to farder the sayde service in your severall divisions, and be in all reasonable thinges ayinge and assistinge the rest, to whome this speciall care is comyted. And for that you, that be afore speciallye named to have this speciall care, may, perchance not be resident within that countie at all times requisite, for the executyon of this commission; therefore it is our intent, (notwithstanding the absence of some few of you, so the most parte be not absent out of the sheire, that you the rest beinge within the sheire shall proceede in the sayde commission according to these instructyons,

*The greatest part of
the special commission
to proceed in absence
of others.*

structyons, in like case as if you were all there present as you are named. And in case the more parte of you, so above speciallie named, shall be absent out of that sheire, at the tymes requisite to execute this commissi- on, then you the reste, shall so certifie us with your opynions who were mete to supplie the rooms of the persons absent, whereupon directions shalbe given accordingle, for supplie of those defects. And considering it may seme inconvenient, to call men to suche generall musters, before the season of the yeare shallbe more apte thereto, for fayreness of weather, and yet the benefit of this service requireth all good expedition, consideringe the state of matters in other countries, neare to this realme; therefore it is left to the

*Beginning the musters,
referred to the commis-
sioners direction.*

discrecyon of you the commissioners, speciallie nam- ed to begyn with these musters, at suche tyme as you shall finde mete, and to contynewe your travells therein as you shall finde mete, for seasonableness of weather and ease of the people to be mustered; and yet nevertheless you maie assemble your selves and consider your commission and these instructyons, and devise upon the manner of the execution, and by your precepte cause all persons to be warned to prepare themselves, and their armour and weapons in readyness to be mustered, whenso- ever theie shalbe called; and generallie to cause all things to be done that maie convenientlie be don without any notable trouble to the people, by reason of the season of the yeare; so as when tyme shall come to mete for the musters to be made openlie in the fieldes, you may finde all thinges in the better redyness to hasten the service.

*To assemble and pre-
pare things ready for
the muster.*

The Articles of the Instructyons.

*Precepts of summons
to all persons to appere.*

It is necessarie that by your precepte to the con- stable of the hundreds, or other officers there- to requisite and usuall, all hable persons from sixteen upwards,

which are within the lymetts of this your commission in any parish, hamlett or village, be summoned to appere at daies and places, certain and mete for the musters, so none beinge hable of any degree be forborne, to be warned and called to the same general musters, otherwise than in some speciall cases hereafter shalbe remembred. And therefore, it shalbe well don, to commande in your precepte that the names and furnames of all persons in everie parishe, apte hable to bear armour or to use weapons, as above is saide, be ymmediatelie collected and put in writing, by the saide constables of the hundreds or other like officers, used in such cases; namyne in the saide writinge or note, everie householder by himself, with his sonnes, servants, prentices, journeymen or any other sojourners or indwellers remayninge in their houses, being hable to wear armure or use weapons mete for the warres. And that the saide householders be charged to bringe all the saide persons by name, with their armour and weapons at suche severall tymes and places, as shalbe thereto lymeted. And so after the returne to the commissioners of the saide writinge, conteyning their names, the said commissioners shall call for the persons, and proceed to the musters of them, and register the names of such as shall appear, with notes of their armour and weapons; and when some shall not have armour or weapons mete there, it shalbe noted to what kinde of service for the warres, everie of the saide persons shall seme mete, wherein is meant, not to omytte to note what number of them maie serve for laborers or pioners, and who are also carpenters, smythes, or such like artificers, so as there maye be some use had of their habilities for service of their countrie, as cause shall require, though theie shall nott have armor. And of suche as shall not appere, having ben warned, to make a speciall note and cheke, and to examyne dylie the causes of their absence, and according to reason to allowe or punyssh, and redresse the defaultes, that no forberinge be had of any without verie evident necessarie and lawfull cause, but that the parties being absent at one tyme, upon reasonable cause maie yet at some other

other tyme appere, to be viewed, mustered, and registered as others of the like condycion shalbe; and because it maie seme mete, that the householders in all places shoulde not be compelled to bring all their servants, or indwellers and hable persons, at one tyme from their dwelling houses, it shalbe well therefore, that in the warrants to the aforesaid constables or other officers, it maie be expressed, that theie conferre with the househoulders, upon the makinge of theire first bookes of names, to bringe as manye as maie reasonable be spared at the first daie, and thereafter to appoint theire appearance; wherein the commissioners maie also, as theie see cause, direct the order how many shall come at the first tyme, and howe manye at other tyme; and yet that the writing contayne trulie the names and furnames bothe of them that shall appeared at the first daie, and of them that shall remayne at home, and the householders to be charged by the commissioners or otherwise to bring or sende the rest of the persons at some other daie, to be by them lymited, to be viewed, mustered and used, as hereafter shall appere theie oughte to be, so as all the numbers of the parsons hable maie at severall tymes be viewed and mustered; or if contynuanee of sickness shall deteyne any parson from access to the musters, during this commission, yet the name of suche person shalbe certified and registered with a note of his habilitie to serve, when his sicknesse shall cease, and of his furnytüre to serve according to his degree.

ITEM, it is to be understood, that no householder of any degree, except the prelates and lordes of parliament, and others of the privie counsaile, (the certain number whereof is already well knowen) shalbe forborne, if he be hable for helthe or strengthe to come himself to those musters; and as for all other inferior persons ecclesiasticall, beinge not lordes of parliament, whose vocation is to attend personallie upon their ministerie and cures, and for the justices of the one bench or other, or such other hed officers of any of her majesties courtes of record.

Prelates, lords of parliament, privie counsellors exempted from personal appearance.

record, occupieng judiciall places; it is ment that as well the saide ecclesiasticall persons, as the saide justices and other judiciall officers, shall not be compelled to appere at those musters, but shall send *Household servants ecclesiasticall persons and judges,* them hable servants and household men, at some convenient and severall tymes and places, to be viewed, mustered and registered as others are or shalbe, with their armour and weapons, so as there maie be nevertheless a severall muster book made of all the householde servants of the saide clergie aparte. And as for the servants of the saide judges and judiciall officers, with all their furnytur of armour and weapons to be added to the musters of the layitie, according to their severall dwellinge places. And as for any househould servants of any of the prelates and lordes of parliament, or of any of the privie counsaill, because the said prelates for their persons are to be spared, and the personal services of the saide lordes temporall, or counsaillors are to be directed by speciall commandment of her majestie, about her person, or otherwise accordinge to their callinges; there is another speciall order appoynted aparte from her majestie to the said prelates, lordes and counsaillors, to certifie in writinge to her majestie, the numbers and names of their household servants mete to serve with them, being their lordes and masters, with the furnytur also of their horses, geldinges, armour and weapons, which theie have or oughte to have in readynes, or will encrease for her majesties service, and for all others that are not household servauntes, or dalie attendauntes, to anie of the saide temporall lordes of parliament or counsaillors, and yet havinge their dwellinge and proper householdes in that shire, pretending that theie doe belonge to any of the saide lordes temporall or counsaillors as retaynors, suche shalbe summoned in like case as others shalbe at their dwelling houses to appeare, and shalbe mustered and charged accordinge to their habilites to be furnished with armour and weapons, and shalbe chargeable

*Servants retayned by
lords of parliament
and counsaillors.*

able to repair therewith to all musters, and to resort to any service within the shire, as any other of the same shire shalbe charged, upon calling for to the defence of the sea coaste or invasion of the realme. And yet there shalbe a particular note and register kept of the persons beinge so retayned, and their dwellinge places, and in what sorte theie do pretend to be retayned by their lordes and masters. And the commissions shall forbear to make entrie of anie suche, so knowen to be lawfullye reteyned by their lordes and masters, into any speciall companyes and bands of the rest of the soldiers to be appoynted for that country. But to be chargeable as is abovesaid onlie to resort with the rest of their neighbours and parishioners in warlike manner to the defence of their cuntrye at all tymes, when theie shall not be called out of the saide cuntrye by commandment of theyre lorde or masters; in which case in respect of the services to be done personallie to their lordes and masters as cause shall requier, the saide persons, so lawfullye reteyned, shalbe excused duringe the tyme that theie shalbe absent upon the commandement of the lordes and masters.

ITEM, the commissioners shall upon the first musters consider particularlie all the imperfeccyons in the persons appearing, and in the armures, weapons and such like, and shall give particular instructions and charge how to remedie the same by some tymes therunto to be specialie lymitted, and shall appointe certaine persons in the mean tyme within everie hundred or other division, to see to, and give order for the reformacyon thereof against the tyme of the nexte musters.

*Imperfeccions of men
and their furniture to
be reformed in the first
musters.*

ITEM, where alwaies of verie auncient tyme there hath been and still are a number certain of soldiers furnished of armure and weapons, to be founde of the comon charge of everie towne or parishe, over and besides suche particular persons as are by the late statutes chargeable, by reason of their own private possessions or goods to finde soldyers, armure and weapons.

THE

THE commissioners shall do well upon the registring of the saide generall musters to cause speciall entries to be made aparte of the saide numbers found by the parishes in the muster books distincte from the others, that therebie it maie appeare how manye are of one sorte, and howe many of the other. And for the more encrease of hable men to be furnished with armour and weapon, the commissioners shall cause the meaner sorte of freeholders, franklyns, fermors or merchants, beinge not of sufficient valewe of freeholde or of goods to have one whole furniture of armour or weapons, to be treated withall by good perswasion, and for the love of their countrie to be induced to joyne together by two or three or more, in the provision of a furniture, either of a pikeman, archer, or harquebusier, to serve as occasion shall requier. And furdernore they shall perswade all manner of riche ffarmours and freeholders to keep in their house persons mete for archerie and shott, lest when the said farmours and freeholders shall for their owne expense offer to finde other to serve in their steade as soldiers, by hiringe them against the daie of musters, theie doe nott seeke for suche persons dwellinge out of their houses, for suche borrowinge of men to sarve must not suffered, but that either these kepe suche hable men in their houses to be alwaies ready, or els that theie be compelled to serve in their owne proper persons when necessitie shall requier.

ITEM, that after the commissioners shall have don their uttermoste in procuringe of these generall musters in suche sorte as none be suffered to be absent, that is hable to carrie armure or weapon, otherwise than afore is lymitted; and that the full numbers shalbe knowen of all hable persons and their qualities, and that the quantities of armure and weapons shalbe also seene and considered in everie division; the saide commissioners with good deliberacyon shall make choice of persons metest to be captaynes and petty-captaynes, not forbearinge any under the degree of a lorde of parliament, to tacke chardge of certaine numbers according to their qualities, so as concyderacyon
be

be had, that persons of moſte worſhippe, credit and valewe, be appointed to take charge of more or leſſe numbere, accordinge to their degrees, that is to ſaie, ſome of the beſt worſhipp to have charge of 200 or 300, and that others of meaner degrees and values in livinge, doe take charge under them, of everie of the ſaide hundrede aparte; and that there be alſo, with conſent of the captaynes, a charge made of the ſkilfull and experte persons, to be lieutenants of everie hundred, and neceſſarie officers to governe and lead the ſaide bandes. In choiſe whereof, ſpeciall regarde alſo ſhalbe had, that no persons being knowne, or havinge given manifeſt cauſe to be ſuſpected as unwillinge to ſerve the queen's majeſtie and the realme, have any truſt of charge or leadinge of men comytted to them.

ITEM, becauſe the trayninge and exerciſe of a multitude of people, in their armour and weapons, and namely archers and harquebuſiers, may ſeme coſtlye and chargeable, and that it ſhall not ſeme neceſſarie in many places, to have the whole numbers of the hable people, to be armed and weaponed. Therefore the ſaid A, B, C, D, &c. with the aſſiſtance aforeſaid, ſhall therein uſe their diſcrecyons, after they ſhall have made a generall muſter of the numbers of the whole ſheire, and ſhall conſider and determyne, what were, or maie be a convenient number in everie parte of the ſheire, to be collected out of the totall number, mete to be ſorted in bandes, and to be trayned and exerciſed in ſuch ſorte, as maye reaſonable be borne by a common charge of the whole countrie, and thereof, and alſo of the reſt of the whole nombre, they ſhall ſpedilie certifie the queens majeſtie's privie counſail in a brieſe manner, notinge holie the nombres, wherebie to have their opynions concerninge the lymitation of the ſaid numbers to be ſelected, ſo as the ſame beinge ſo allowed, or otherwiſe altered, there may thereupon be a direction to the commiſſioners to putt the ſame in execucion, and the charges alſo, for the trayninge of the ſaid number, ys to be conſidered, that being reaſonable allotted by the diviſions of the

VOL. I. N ſchire,

schire through all the parishes, it may be as easie a chardge as reasonable maie be borne, and yet so necessarie a thinge it is to be procured, as without that helpe, the rest will serve to small purpose; wherein it is to be remembered, that it is not ment to have a continuance of any such chardge, but now at the beginning, some reasonable allotment wolde be made to beare the chardges of them that shalbe occupied under the commissioners in the mustering and trayninge of the saide bandes of soldiers that shalbe so selected out of the toatal number mustered, and also to paye for the powder that necessarilie shalbe spent in the saide exercise, beside other necessarie chardges, to be imploied by some allowance upon the soldiers themselves, that shalbe trayned, for some helpe and reliefe to them, in respect of the tyme theie shall spende, in resortinge to their musters, attendinge upon their exercises, to be used; and in taxatyon of any such somes of money regarde woulde be had to spare as much as maie be, the poor husbandman, the cotager and artisan, and to chardge such chieflie as be riche and not mete to serve in their own persons, and where any strangers shalbe resident, beinge not naturall borne subjects, it shalbe reasonable to chardge them accordinge to their powers, consideringe theie are nott personallie to be used in service as others are.

ITEM, there shalbe regarde had howe to divide and distribute the use of the weapons, in the sortinge of the bands, that there maie be in everie hundred footmen, at the least, fortye harquebusiers and twenty archers, if so it mai be convenientlie procured; and to that end, the said commissioners shall use all good perswasions, and shall give some good example in the countrie, by exercise in games and matches, to encrease those two weapons, foreseyenge, that the archers maie be men of strengthe, and so the more hable to shoote in the longe bowes; and because it is not lafull for any parson, but such as by the statute are thereto licensed, to shoot in any handgonne, or harquebus, her majestie is pleased, that all such as shalbe appoynted by the commissioners to be harquebusiers, to use

use their saide weapons without daunger of the lawes, so as theie do nott use the same otherwise than others may do that are by the statute licensed; and for the manner of the trayninge and exercise of the saide selected number, the said commissioners also shall use their discrecyone, for choice of tyme and places mete and convenient for such assemblies, in everie severall division of the shire, for the more ease of the people, and that the assemblies be nott greater, in any one place and tyme, than is convenient; and speciallie to foresee that no publique assemblies, nor exercise of weapons be had for this purpose, but that there be at the saide place and tyme, two justices of the peace, at the least, lymitted to be present, or else one of the speciall commissioners here before named, so as bothe good order may be used for the said exercise, and that no other unnecessarie numbers of people resorte thereto, but such as are to be exercised and trayned, or other necessarilie attendinge upon them, or thereto licensed by the commissioners; and speciallie to see that the peace be duly kept, or otherwise that the sharp-

*Peace to be kept in the
assemblies.*

est and speediest punishment be used without delaye, that can lesfullie be upon the breakers of the peace at any such assemblies; and it be also ordered that no soldier do come to any such assemblie, but such as shalbe appoynted by their captayns or officers, or with the knowledge and permission of the commissioners.

Everie band to be mustered.

ITEM, when the numbers of the selected hable men shall be knowen, and howe many shall be furnyshed with armur and weapon, and the same distributed to the captaynes and leaders, everie captayne shall have a speciall roll made in writinge, of the names and surnames of the parsons, and their dwellinge place, lymitted to his chardge and leading, subscribed by the speciall commissioners, or one of them; and as any of the soldiers or officers shall either dye, or shall upon just cause, remove to some other dwellinge, out of the shire or the lymitt of the division where his muster place ys appoynted, which he shall nott

do before knowledge given to the captayne; than the captaine shall give notice thereof, to his superior captayne, if he have any, or else to one of the speciall commissioners, so as the roome may, by warrant from one of the commissioners, be speedilie supplied, and an hable man armed and weaponed may be provided, and his name entered into the place of the former roll.

Preservation of armour and weapons.

ITEM, the commissioners shall also appoynte some good order, how the armour and weapons lytted to serve, shalbe kept to contynue serviceable, and shall appoynte speciall men in every hundred or wapentake, to be named surveiors of the armour and weapons that shall belonge in commune to the parishes and towneshippes, both for the safe keepinge of the same, in the custodie of honest parsons, and for the keepinge thereof alwaies furnyshed, cleane and readie for service; and it may also be appoynted, that the same surveior in everie hundred, may from tyme to tyme in good reasonable sorte repayer to the houses of all other persons chargeable to have armour and weapons, to see that the same be duly and clean kept, so as at the tyme of the musters, theie maie be perfectlie redie and without defecte: and if the said surveiors shall herein fynde any default, theie shall from tyme to tyme advertise some of the speciall commissioners to provide remedie for the same.

The rest beinge not selected to be perfectlie trayned.

ITEM, the rest of the totall numbers, not being, as above ys saide selected, and putt into such bands to be trayned, shall nevertheless be reduced into certen bandes of hundreds, under mete captaynes and officers, so as they maie be in readines also for a generall service, when of necessitie theie shalbe called, with armour and weapon for defence of the countrie, and to be also mustered and arrayed before their captaynes, in presence of two of the justices of peace at the least, fower severall tymes in the yeare, at places thereto appoynted, without any chardge to be bourne of any common collection, for the exercising of them, otherwise then voluntarilie themselves or their captaynes shall assent unto, or shall procure. And because in the choice of the numbers to be trayned
and

and exercised, diverse of the soldiers inhabiting in many townes, shalbe forborne and not appoynted to be of the trayned number, and yet the service of the persons chosen and trayned doth appertayne to the weale of the hole shier, there shalbe consideracion had in the collection of the chardges, to mayntayne the said trayninge and exercise; that everye towne and parishe of the sheire, and inhabitants thereof be ratablye chardged, without bourdonynge some more than other, otherwise than their abilities shall requier. And thus farre ys sufficient for so much as concernethe the musteringe, trayninge and exercisinge of the footmen, within that countie. And if there shalbe any towne corporate, or other place priviledged, that shall pretend to have by especiall grante, avaylable in law, exemption from appearaunce to muster before any other commissioners, then suche as be justices or officers of the saide townes or places; in such cases upon the shewing to you the speciall commissioners of such grauntes, and of the usage thereof, if it shall appere that their claymes of such exemptions are good and reasonable, you shall forbere to entermeddle with the inhabitants thereof, and shall chardge them that spedilie theie do make suite to the lords of the privie counsaill, for a speciall commission to take the like musters of the said inhabitants as of others, within the bodie of the countie; and if you shall understand, that theie shall make delaye so to do, you, the speciall commissioners, shall thereto certifie her majesties counsaill, that in such case you shall enter and take musters of them.

FINALLYE, where in the beginninge of these instruccyons it is ordeyned, that you A, B, C, D, E, F, shall take especiall care of the executynge of the commission; yet for your more ease in devydinge of yourselves accordinge to the places of your residence, you shall do well to order, that in everie such division, the rest of the justices of peace, accordinge to their abilities and understandings, maie be so appoynted to assist you, and, as cause shall requier, to join with you, and in meaner poyntes of services, to supplie also your roomes;
for.

for otherwise the burden of the service will prove too greate and troublesome.

Articles for Furniture of Horsemen.

ITEM, because one of the best strengthes to be required for defence of the realme, and that which is thoughte to be moſte decayed and ymperſecte, and moſt neceſſarilie to be increaſed, is the furniture of horſes and horſemen within the realme, it ſhalbe well conſidered by the ſaide A, B, C, D, &c. preſentlie upon the receipte of the commiſſion, and without delay, by good and adviſed conferences amongſt themſelves upon their firſt metynge, howe manye perſons within the ſhire, in every hundred and diviſion, in reſpect of their true, juſt, and reaſonable clere yerelie valours of their landes and poſſeſſions or fees, or of the clere value of their goods, are by the lawes and ſtatutes of the realme, chargeable to fynde and have in readynes, horſes or geldinges bothe for launces and for light horſemen, with armour and weapons mete for the ſame; wherein is to be remembered, that the lawes do expreſſlie preſcribe the chardge and number of the ſaide horſes, or geldinges to be accordinge to the juſt value of everie perſons landes and fees, and of their goodes; and nott (as a common ſuppoſition is made) that the ſaid values of landes, fees and goods, ſhould be accompted accordinge to the common and eaſy taxacyons uſed for the payment of ſubſidies. And therefore, thoughe the ſaid taxationſ for the payment of ſubſidies, it is ſene by experience of her majeſtie's clemencye and goodneſſe, that their hath not byn uſed any better inquiſycion of the furder values of any perſons for their landes or goods, to encreaſe her majeſties ſubſidie, as in reaſon might be, ſpeciallie where there appeareth great partialities in the ſaid taxacyons; yet, in this ſpeciall caſe, wherein conſiſteth a matter of ſuche weighte for the ſervice, ſuretie and defence of the whole realme, yea, the particular defence of every ſpeciall perſon, her maieſtye fyndeth it moſt neceſſarie and juſte, to
have

have a furder regarde, and not to suffer the intencyons of so necessarie and reasonable lawes to be in that wise frustrated, to the weaknes and danger of the realme, as it is like it shoulde be, if everie person chargeable to fynde horses servisable shoulde be no furder charged, then accordinge to the common easie values assessed by the sessions of the subsidies, whiche her majestie verilie supposeth, no good subjects being hereof duly warned will thinke reasonable, where these are in dede well known otherwise more hable by their landes, fees and goods to answer a greater number of horses and geldinges; for so also by experience of former musters of horsemen in sondrie partes of the realme it hath bin well sene, that a great number of worshipfull and honest well disposed gentlemen, for love of their country have had in readines more horses or geldinges for service furnished, than the rate of the valews of their lands or goods certified for subsidies, have prescribed, and yet none of them have thereby byn the more charged towards the payment of any subsidies, neither in reason oughte to be, but doe rather deserve to be favored in all other manner of charges, and to be esteemed the better and more naturall subjects. And therefore the saide A, B, C, D, &c. &c. after that they have amongst themselves considered, and well perused the number and state of the possessioners resident within that shire, whom they shall thinke to be in dede hable in land, fees or goods, accordinge to the rates as by the laws ys ordeyned, shall make a book thereof, and consequentlie shall send particular precepts to every of them, to prepare and put in readyness, such number of horses and geldinges for service, as they oughte to have by the statutes and lawes of the realme; with speciall request in the saide precept, to increase the saide number as farre forth, as their habilites may reasonable extend, without regarde to their values as theie be assessed in any subsidie books; and of the number that willinglie they will offer to find and have in readyness, to commande them to make answer by a day to be lymitted, which woulde be spedie as may be; and upon receipte of the same answers, if the saide

*Precepts to warn all
men chargeable to fynde
horses.*

saide A, B, C, D, &c. shall thinke that any of the saide parties have not yelded to such a number as they shall thinke reasonable they oughte to do, they shall commande them to appeare before them, and there shall use all the best perswasions that they can, to induce them to increase the number and furniture, where-
Certificates of those un- unto if thei shall not agree, they shall immediatelie
willinge to finde horses. certifie their names with their own offers, and the numbers whiche the saide commissioners shall have lymited to them, with a note of their values in subsidies, and what the commissioners shall conceive them to be more in value.

AND as to the rest that shalbe conformable to the mocyons of the commissioners, it shalbe ordered, that they may be lymited a reasonable tyme to have the saide horses and geldinges in readynes to be sene and mustered. And the saide commissioners shall at some convenient place and tyme, as soon as the same maye be, take the musters of all the saide horses and geldinges, and of such mete persons as shalbe appoynted to serve uppon them, with their whole furniture of armour and weapons, accordinge to their severall degrees and habilities: and in treatinge with any parsons for increase of the numbers of horses and their furniture, the said commissioners shall let them knowe, that their shalbe a severall register booke made of the horses or geldinges, which theie shall kepe, accordinge to their values taxed in the subsidie bookes, and another book aparte contaynyng the rest, which theie shalbe content to furnishe as an encrease of their good will which theie beare to the service of their countrie, speciallie as this tyme nowe requireth; and for the further probacyon of them to this encrease, they maie be perswaded, that it shalbe ordered, that the numbers of horses and geldinges so encreased above the value rated by the subsidie books, shall not be used or sent abroad to service, but when the owners thereof themselves shalbe sent to serve, or any other by their consent and agreement, upon great, urgent and generall cause for the necessarie defence of the whole realme. And of the conformities of such as shall in this sorte agree to an increase,
the

*Certificates of persons
conformable to finde
horses.*

the same shalbe certified to her majestie and her counsaill, to the intent theire good disposytions may be knowen and thankfully allowed. And as to the recusants, besides that certificates shalbe made as above is expressed, it shalbe declared to them, that thereupon the quenes majestie must be forced to cause a due inquisition and extent to be made, accordinge to the order of her lawes, of theire full values both of landes and goods; and thereupon if their trewe valews shalbe found by inquisityon, it is likely that their burden shalbe far greater by order of the lawes, than by the commissioners ys lymitted, besides the forfeiture of the penalties incurred for the tyme passed, and beside the evill accompte and estymacyon to be made of their backwardnes; and if uppon such motion theie shall not be made conformable to suche reasonable conditions as the commissioners shall thinke mete, then the said commissioners shall in dede without delaye make certificate as is above said, whereupon present order shalbe taken to proceed to due inquisition accordinge to thorder of the law, without any other favour than lawe shall permytte.

*Inquisition shall be
made of the values of
the recusants.*

AND because there is no one thinge at this tyme more necessarie to be regarded than the increase to the strength of the realm by havinge of horses and geldinges mete for service, the saide commissioners shall furdere more cause an inquisityon to be dylie made throughe that sheire of the statute made in the 27th yeare of the reigne of King Henrie theighthe for breeding and encrease of horses, geldinges and mares; and that after these have don their endeavours in this service by increasing the numbers, and in musterynge and remedyng the defects of furnitures, they shall there of aparte make a full certificate in writinge, contayninge the particular name of everie person, with their dwellinge place, that shalbe lymeted, and shall assent to keepe any horse or geldinge, with the number of the saide horses and geldinges, and with the kinde of weapons, be it launce, or lighthorsemens staffe, or cases of dagges, accordinge to the qualities of the persons, and how manye of the same are already in readynes, and have ben viewed and

mustered, and by what tyme the rest shall or may be so, as her majesty maye understand the strengthe of her good subjects in this kynd of service, and theie therefore receive thancks accordinge to their good willes for the same; and likewise theie shall make certificate of the numbers of mares that are, or ought to be kept by the saide
*27th Hen. VIII. for
 encrease of horses.* statute of the 27th of Hen. VIII. and what tyme ys lymited for the supplie of those that do want.

And confiderynge it is likely that many shalbe found willinge either of themselves, or by perswasion, to finde and kepe horses and geldinges for the service of the realme, and yet cannot presentlie provide the same for any reasonable pryce, or that many shalbe both willing and hable to kepe, or have in convenient readynes, more horses or geldinges in the somer tyme, than theie can in the wynter, the commissioners shall use theire discretions to lymitte reasonable tymes for them, whiche can not presentlie provide horses or geldinges, to provide the same; and also shall lymett, as cause shall requier, a diversitie of numbers to be in readynes, in respect of the tymes of somer and wynter, so as by all good meanes, the number of the horses and geldinges serviceable, maie be made as greate in both tymes as
Reasonable tyme to provide horses. reasonably may be; and that in the registeringe of the saide numbers, it maie appeare how many of increase to be had in the somer, with the qualities of the horses or geldinges, how the same shalbe serviceable.

AND where percase it may be, that sondrie merchaunts and others of greate wealthe in goods, dwellinge in corporate, or markett townes, beinge of suche values, as in good reason, theie oughte to be chardgeable with findinge of horses or geldings, and yet by reason of theire dwellinge in such corporate or markett townes, and havinge nott lands in other places, wherebye to susteine the chardges of the saide horses, theie can nott without greater chardge than shalbe by them reasonable borne, fyndye the same in the saide towne, the saide commissioners shall confer with them into what other reasonable chardge, the
 same

same may be converted, that is, either to have in readynes, some harquebusiers, or to contrybute reasonable some porcyons of money towards the chardges of the musters in the saide towne, or near the same; and yet before these shall conclude so with the saide marchantes or townsmen, for the alteracyon or conversion thereof, theie shall certifie their opynions to the counsaill, to thend the same may be either allowed or altered.

W. Burghley,	E. Lyncoln,	T. Suffex.
R. Leycester,	W. Mildmay,	
F. Knollys,	T. Smith.	

N. B. This was subscribed by the council the last day of February, 15th of Eliz. 1572, the returns and musters in consequence thereof are given in the appendix.

THE present mode of recruiting our armies, is by engaging volunteers, who are enlisted to serve for an indefinite time, that is, till they shall be discharged. Sometimes, particularly towards the end of a war, soldiers are engaged for a certain time, commonly three years, to which is frequently annexed the additional clause of, "or during the war." Much might be said for inlisting soldiers for a stated time, (r) but then it should be at least, six or seven years. This mode of inlisting men for a limited time, was practised at a period when the British army was in the zenith of its glory, under the command of the victorious duke of Marlborough, and was authorised by several of the mutiny acts passed in the reign of Queen

(r) THE idea of engaging in a profession for life, has prevented many young men from inlisting, who would have ventured an essay of five or even seven years, and there is little danger of a good soldier requiring his discharge at the expiration of that time; the charms of a fresh bounty on one hand, and an unwillingness to leave his old comrades and connections on the other, would scarcely fail to procure a fresh engagement, particularly if some little douceur or honorary distinction was granted to soldiers on their second engagement.

Anne, the clause from one of them, whereby this mode of inlifting is directed, see in the note below. (s)

PRESSING for soldiers was practised much in its present form in the time of Queen Elizabeth, as we may learn from the admirable portrait of its abuses exhibited by Shakespear: it has since been several times occasionally authorised by acts of parliament; but is in itself but a bad expedient, and in general timidly, partially and improperly executed. (t)

(s) PROVIDED always and it is hereby enacted, that every person now being in her majesty's service in the land forces, and who has been so for the space of three years, shall be at liberty, if he think fit, to demand his discharge from the colonel of the regiment to which he shall belong; as also, that every person who shall enter himself as a volunteer, or be lifted in her majesty's service, after he shall have continued therein during the space of three years, shall be at liberty, if he think fit, to demand his discharge, in the like manner, such soldier giving to such colonel three months notice at the least of his desiring such discharge, and such discharge shall be granted, gratis, in writing, under the hand of such colonel, who is impowered and required to give the same accordingly. Any thing herein contained to the contrary notwithstanding. Mutiny act, 12 Anne, 1714.

(t) AN act for impressing soldiers took place in 1779, when all the thieves, pickpockets and vagabonds in the environs of London, too lame to run away, or too poor to bribe the parish officers, were apprehended and delivered over as soldiers to the regiments quartered in the very townes and villages where these banditti had lived and been taken; these men being thus set at large in the midst of their old companions and connections, immediately deserted, whereby the whole expence, by no means an inconsiderable one, was thrown away: nor did the soldiers of the regiments on which they were imposed, take the least pains to prevent their escape, or to retake them; as they justly considered being thus made the companions of thieves and robbers, a most grievous and cruel insult, and loudly complained of it as such, to their officers. Indeed it seems to have been a very ill judged measure, tending to destroy that professional pride, that esprit de corps which ought most assiduously to be cultivated in every regiment. The profession of a soldier has long ceased to be lucrative, if it ever was so. If it is likewise made dishonorable, where shall we get soldiers on whom we may depend? when the exigencies of the times make it necessary to take such men into the service, they should at least be sent to regiments quartered in a distant part of the kingdom, where they and their characters are equally unknown, or divided among the regiments on foreign service.



Pub. 3 April 1786 by S. Hooper

N. C. Goodnight sculp.

NORMAN SOLDIERS.



by J. Rogers

H. C. Gooding sculp.

NORMAN SOLDIERS.

THE cavalry of our antient English armies soon after the conquest, consisted of the knights, or men at arms, and hobilers; the infantry of spear and bill-men, cross-bow men and archers. (u)

THE men at arms derived that appellation from being completely armed, *de cap-a-pied*, or from head to foot; they were chiefly composed of the tenants in capite, holding by military service, or their substitutes, sometimes called *servientes*.

THE defensive armour of a man at arms, was a hauberk of double mail, composed of ringlets of iron linked together like a net, (x) this covered the body, and to it were joined a hood, breeches, stockings and sabatons or shoes of the same construction, the hands and arms were also defended by gauntlets and sleeves of mail.

IN France the hauberk was armour peculiarly appropriated to persons possessed of certain estates or seigneuries called *fiefs d'haubert*, and might not be worn by persons of an inferior degree. (y)

COMMONLY under the hauberk, though sometimes over it, was worn a loose garment called a gambeson, which descended as low as the knees, it was stuffed with wool or cotton, and quilted; the use of it was to deaden the strokes of the sword or lance, which, though they did not divide the mail, might without the interposition of the gambeson, severely bruise the body; under or between the hauberk and gambeson, a breast plate of forged iron called a *plastron*, was occasionally put on; over all men of family wore fur coats of satin, velvet

(u) IN garrisons the men at arms occasionally served on foot. Anno 1442, Thomas Hoo was retained by K. Hen. VI. for the defence of the city of Mante, for which purpose he was to keep constantly fifty men at arms on horseback, twenty men at arms on foot, and two hundred and ten archers sufficiently armed, mounted, arrayed and cloathed. P. Daniel, Tom. I. p. 226.

(x) SOMETIMES but not commonly, men at arms wore habergeons made of plate mail, formed of small round plates of iron, laid one over the other like scales of fish.

(y) THE hauberk was the proper armour of a knight; an esquire might wear a shirt of mail over his gambeson, but might not use the hood, breeches, hose, nor sleeves of mail.

See

velvet or cloth of gold or silver, richly embroidered with their armorial bearings. (z)

By a strap, hung over the neck, the men at arms carried a shield made of wood, covered with leather, bound or strengthened with iron or brass, having handles on the inside for bracing it, which was the term then in use, to express the putting it over the left arm. (a) These shields were for at least a century after the conquest of a triangular form, pointed at the bottom, and a little convex in the direction of their breadth.

THE helmets worn by the men at arms, were of different forms (b) some conical or pyramidical with a small projection called a nasal, to defend the face from a transverse stroke; some cylindrical, covering the whole head down below the chin, with apertures for sight and breath; and others in which the face was totally uncovered. Helmets with bevers and vizors do not seem to have been in use, till the middle of the 14th century, about which time, the hawberk was

See Father Daniel's Hist. de la Mil. Franc. tom. i. p. 393 and 394. An extract from an old regulation for tournaments, quoted by Du Cange in his seventh dissertation on the history of St. Louis, thus describes the armour of an esquire, Item, the harness of an esquire shall be similar to that of a knight, except that he shall not have the hose of mail, nor coif of mail over his bacinet, but a hat of Mont Alban, nor ought he to have sleeves of mail, in all other points he may arm himself like a knight.

(z) ONE may judge by all this how our knights were loaded, when they had all their arms, for they had besides their ordinary clothes, the gambeson, which of itself must in summer have been very hot being stuffed with wool or cotton, above this was their coat of double mail, and consequently of an extraordinary weight. Princes and certain great lords had over all their coats of arms, which held the place of the paludamentum of the antient Roman captains, and was in figure like a Dalmatick without sleeves, and descending to the knees, it was charged with the escutcheons, or armorial bearings of the wearer, and often was of cloth of gold or silver, rich furrs, or cut velvet. But Fauchet has forgot in his description, another species of defensive armour which was worn under the gambeson, this was a plastron of iron. P. Daniel, tom. i. p. 388.

(a) FROM the French word Bras. Arm. || (b) SPECIMENS of every sort here mentioned may be seen in the great seals of our kings and antient barons.

exchanged

exchanged by many of our men at arms, for plate armour, so called from being formed of plates of iron. (c)

ON the crests of their helmets, kings (d) frequently wore their crowns, earls and dukes their coronets, generals or other officers of rank either their armorial cognisances, or any other device they thought proper; this was done to make them look larger and more terrible to their enemies, and to render themselves conspicuous to their officers and soldiers.

To this list of defensive armour may also be added the war saddle, whose arcon or bows of steel, covered the rider as high as the navel.

THE knights of the three or four reigns, next succeeding the conquest, commonly wore the pryck spur, which had only a single point, afterwhich the rouelle, or wheel spur came in fashion, some of these rouelles were near six inches in diameter.

THUS enveloped and loaded with such a number of weighty incumbrances, it is by no means wonderful, that in the midst of summer, in the heat, dust and press of an engagement, men at arms should be suffocated in their armour, an event which we learn from history has sometimes happened; besides the inconveniency arising from the heat; a man thus swathed up like an Ægyptian mummey could have but small powers of action. Indeed in a charge of cavalry very little exertion is required on the part of the rider, the suc-

(c) P. Daniel, vol. i. p. 396.

(d) IN Bab. Cott. Tiberius, E. VIII. is a manuscript, written about the time of Hen. VIII. wherein among diverse military arrangements, is one entitled the Order of a Kynge, if he entered to fyghte. The kynge arrayed in his own coat of armes, must be on horseback, on a good horse, covered also with his armes: the kynge must also wear a crown upon his headpiece." Henry V. wore his crown at the battle of Agincourt, part of it was cut off by the duke of Alencon, with a stroke of his sword. King Richard III. wore his crown at the battle of Bosworth, which was, according to Rapin and others, after his death, found in the field of battle by a soldier, who brought it to the lord Stanley.

cess chiefly depending on the strength of the horse. All that the antient knights had to do, was to keep their seats, and direct their lances; but how they were able to use the sword or mace to any effect, seems incomprehensible, (e) though indeed, this in some measure accounts, for the small number of knights slain in many engagements between cavalry only, in some of which we read not one knight was killed; probably, as ransom was so great an object with soldiers of those days, they rather wished to capture than to kill their adversaries, for this purpose therefore they endeavoured to unhorse them, as a knight when overthrown was immovable, and lay on the spot till remounted by his friends, or seized by his enemies.

THE offensive arms of a horseman, or man at arms, were a sword, or swords, (f) a lance and a small dagger, called a misericorde, either from its being mercifully used in putting out of their misery persons desperately wounded, or from the sight of it, being apt to cause those against whom it was drawn (commonly knights unhorsed and lying on the ground) to cry, misericorde, mercy or quarter. Men at arms also frequently carried iron maces, suspended at their saddle bowe.

THE horses of the men at arms, were scarcely less encumbered with armour than their riders; their faces, heads and ears were covered over with a sort of mask, so contrived as to prevent their seeing right before them, in order that they might not be terrified from

(e) KING James I. observed in praise of armour, that it not only protected the wearer, but also prevented him from injuring any other person.

(f) THE ancient knights frequently carried two swords, one in a belt by their side and the other fixed to their saddle bowe. In the *Speculum Regale* written about the 12th century, among other directions for the arming of a horseman, are those, "let him have two swords, one in his belt and the other hanging to his saddle bowe, with a war knife." P. 406. In a military treatise attributed to Guillaume de Bellay, it is said, men at arms should have their sword of arms at their side, the *estoc* (a long sharp pointed sword) at one bowe of their saddle, and a mace at the other.

charging or shoving with vigour; this mask was called a chafron, or shafroet. Frequently from the center of the forehead, projected an iron spike, resembling the horn given to that fabulous animal the unicorn; their necks were defended by a number of small plates connected together, called a criniere, or manefaire; they had poi-trinals for their breasts, croupieres and flancois for covering their buttocks and flanks, reaching down to the hocks; all these pieces were generally of iron or brass, though sometimes of cuir-bouillié, i. e. jacked leather. Occasionally they were covered all over with mail, or linen stuffed and quilted like the gambeson and adorned with rich embroidery. Horses thus covered, were called barded, and corruptly barbed horses, they were also frequently stiled covered horses. (g)

To prevent their horses from being fatigued under all their own incumbrances, and the enormous weight of their riders, and to preserve their vigour for the charge, the men at arms had commonly hackneys for riding on a march, and did not mount their war horses till they were certain of coming to action; a circumstance which has frequently occasioned them to be surprised and defeated, before they could mount their chargers and form. Barded horses were in use in our armies, at the time of King Edward VI.

WHEN plate armour came into general use, which as has been before observed, was about the middle of the fourteenth century, (h) the different pieces for a man at arms, were these; a close helmet, having a visor to lift up and let down, or one with a visor and beaver, both revolving on the same pivots. (i) When these were closed the

(g) BARDE, in old French, signifies covered.

(h) IT is not to be supposed that before that time, plate armour was unknown, history affords us plenty of instances to the contrary, but probably, it was in the earlier periods too dear to be generally worn; there are still many specimens of Roman plate armour in the museums of the curious.

(i) THE visor was opened to obtain a less obstructed sight, and the beaver, to enable the wearer to converse more freely, and to eat or drink; their use is pointed out by their names.

air was admitted through apertures made also for sight, and other smaller perforations opposite the mouth and nostrils. The neck and throat were defended by a gorget, or hallercet; the body by a cuirass, formed of two pieces hooked together, denominated backs and breast pieces, from the parts they covered; to the back was joined, a garde reines, or culet; the arms were covered with brassarts, called also avant bras, and corruptly vambraces, the hands by gauntlets, the shoulders by pouldrons, the thighs by cuissarts, and the legs by iron boots, called greaves, and sometimes by boots of jacked leather. Under all these, was worn a jacket of thick fustian or buff leather; shields seem to have been left off by the cavalry, before this alteration.

PLATE armour was some time after its introduction, made of a prodigious thickness; Monsieur de la Noue, in his fifth military discourse, says, that to guard against the violence of harquebusses and pikes, the men at arms loaded themselves with anvils, instead of covering themselves with armour; it was also so closely fitted as to make it difficult to penetrate the joints with the misericorde, or dagger. Father Daniel, quotes from Philip de Comines, an instance of this at the battle of Fornoue, under Charles VIII. where a number of Italian knights who were overthrown, could not be slain on account of the strength of their armour, till broke up like huge lobsters by the servants and followers of the army, with large wood cutters axes; each man at arms having three or four men employed about him. (k)

ABOUT the time of Queen Mary, the appellation of men at arms, signifying the heavy armed cavalry, seems to have been changed to that of spears and lances, and afterwards to cuirassiers.

THE armour of a lancier was much the same as last described; their offensive weapons, were a lance of sixteen or eighteen feet

(k) Hist. de la Mil. Fr. vol. i. p. 396.



HOBILERS, were a species of light horsemen, who were employed for the purposes of reconnoitering, carrying a light horse, and fighting on a march, intercepting convoys, and generally a combat upon

(1) This president Faucher, the French one, who died at the siege of Valenciennes and died in the reign of Henry IV. says, within these twenty or thirty years, the name of pistol has been given to a weapon between the harquebus and pike, being a stronger and more sudden weapon; it is thought this weapon was the invention of the hand-doublers of the French mountains. Bionet, who was his contemporary, in his dictionary thus described the pistol; it is, says he, a sort of harquebus, shorter than the harquebus, but of a greater caliber; which, in respect of its weight, is more than the harquebus, and when fired, it strikes on the breast of the person who discharges it, as the harquebus strikes on the pectoral, or pectoral. The pistol was of much antient date, it derives its name from having been made at Pistoia in Spain; Sir James Fausset says, the pistol was invented first by Camillo Vitelli, an Italian, when Ferdinand de Aragon reigned in Spain, Charles VIII. and Lewis XII. in France, Henry VIII. in England, and James V. in Scotland, not above one hundred and fifty years ago, and consequently must have been made long after the German monk had found out gunpowder. The harquebus is of this date. The bore of the pistol long ago was made for twenty bullets in one pound of lead, but they found that the ball entered not easily, generally they call the pound of lead, but not for twenty pistol ball; the half of the weight of the powder serves, if it is good, but they take two thirds; as for one pound and a half of lead, the pound of powder, but if it is fine, half will serve, as for two pounds of lead, the pound of powder is sufficient. The barrel of the pistol may be two foot for the longest, sixteen inches for the shortest. The French set locks with half bends; and so do for the most part the English and the Germans, and the Germans, roré or wheel works; the Hollander makes use of both. If the chamber of a pistol be laden three times the diameter of her bore with powder, (which is the usual charge by her rammer) she hath her due charge, but all horsemen have always in their charges of their pistols ready in patrons, the powder made up compactly in paper, with the ball tied to it with a piece of packthread.



The Left Pauldron & Humbrace

The Breast

The guard de reins

The Pistol

Pistol with the appurtenances

long, a sword and petrenels, (1) the last were somewhat longer than the pistols then in use.

THE cuirassier was also armed cap-a-pie, and had under his armour a good buff coat; his offensive arms were a spit sword, with a sharp point, pistols, or petrenels, his saddle and bit strong, and the reins of his bridle strengthened with an iron chain to prevent their being cut.

HOBILERS, were a species of light horsemen chiefly calculated for the purposes of reconnoitering, carrying intelligence, harassing troops on a march, intercepting convoys, and pursuing a routed army;

(1) THE president Fauchet, the French antiquary, who lived at the time of Francis I. and died in the reign of Henry IV. says, within these twenty or thirty years, the name of petrinel has been given to a weapon between the harquebuse and pistols, having a stronger and more sudden wheel; it is thought this weapon was the invention of the bandouliers of the Pyrenean mountains. Nicot, who was his contemporary, in his dictionary thus described the petrinel; it is, says he, a sort of harquebuse, shorter than the musquet, but of a greater caliber; which, on account of its weight, is carried in a large shoulder belt, and when fired, is rested on the breast of the person who discharges it; whence it is called the petrinel, or poitrinal. The pistol was of more antient date, it derives its name from having been made at Pistoya in Spain; Sir James Turner says, the pistol was invented first by Camillo Vitelli, an Italian, when Ferdinand of Arragon reigned in Spain, Charles VIII. and Lewis XII. in France, Henry VIII. in England, and James V. in Scotland, not above one hundred and fifty years ago, and consequently more than two hundred years after the German monk had found out gunpowder. The harquebuse is of older date. The bore of the pistol long ago was made for twenty bullets in one pound of lead, but it being found that the ball entered not easily, generally they cast one pound of lead, into four and twenty pistol ball; the half of the weight of the powder serves, if it be good, if not, they take two thirds; as for one pound and a half of lead, one pound of powder; but if it be fine, half will serve, as for two pounds of lead, one pound of powder: the barrel of the pistol may be two foot for the longest, sixteen inches for the shortest. The French use locks with half bends; and so do for the most part the English and the Scots; the Germans, rore or wheel works; the Hollander makes use of both. If the chamber of a pistol be loaden three times the diameter of her bore with powder, (which is easily measured by her rammer) she hath her due charge, but all horsemen should always have the charges of their pistols ready in patrons, the powder made up compactly in paper, and the ball tied to it with a piece of packthread.

the smallness of their horses rendering them unfit to stand the shock of a charge; they seem also to have been occasionally like the original dragoons of the French, (from whom we borrowed both the name and establishment of those troops), who, Father Daniel says, were rather considered as infantry mounted on horseback for the sake of moving with celerity, than cavalry fit to charge in the line.

SOME, among whom is Bailey (m) derive the term *hobiler* from a Danish word, signifying a mare, not considering that any considerable number of mares, could not have been suffered in an army where the men at arms, were chiefly mounted on stoned horses, and that besides in the days of chivalry it was considered as a degradation for any knight, or man at arms, to be seen mounted on a mare, (n) most

(m) SEE his dictionary, *hoblers*, or *hobilers* (*hobelarii*) *erant milites gregarii levi armatura & mediocri equo, ad omnem motum agili.* Sub Edwardo III. in Gallia moventes dicti (ut reor) vel ab istius modi equo, an hobby appellato, vel potius a Gal. *hobille tunica*. Tabulæ classes describentes in exercitu ejusdem Edwardi Caletam obsidentes, anno 1350, sic habent. Sub Comite Kildaræ banerets 1, knights 1, esquires 28, *hobilers* 27, &c. These were light horsemen, or certain tenants, who by their tenure were bound to maintain a little light nag, for certifying an invasion, or such like peril, towards the sea side, as Portsmouth, &c. of which you may read, 18th Ed. III. stat. 1. c. 7 and 25. ejusdem stat. 5. cap. 8. and Camden's Brit. fol. 272. Duravit vocabulum usque ad ætatem Hen. VIII. says Spelman, *Gentz d'armes & hobelours*. See Prin's Animadv. on the 4th inst. f. 307. *Hobeleries*. Rot. Parl. 21. Ed. III. Sometimes the word signifies those who used bows and arrows, viz. pro warda maris tempore guerræ pro hoberariis sagittariis inveniendis, &c. Thorn, anno 1364. So in the Monasticon. Pro munitione & apparatibus hominum ad arma, *hobeliorum sagittariorum*, Cowel edit. 127. Cunningham's Law Dictionary. Camden says, in the passage above quoted, p. 273, "In old times there were set horsemen at parts, in many places, whom our ancestors called, *hobelers*, who, in the day should give notice of the enemies approach.

(n) IN a writ to the bishop of Durham, A. D. 1324, 18. Ed. II. directing him to raise within his diocese, the greatest number, and most valiant men at arms, *hobilers* and footmen he can possibly, there is the following exception to mares. *Des hobelours convenablement apparaillez montez a chivaux autre qe jumentz.* Rymer.

COLEMBIERE

most probably they borrowed their name from the hobbies, or small horses on which they rode; hobbies are defined by Johnson and others to be small Irish horses.

It commonly supposed that the establishment of hobilers did not take place, till the reign of Edward III. this is evidently a mistake, for they are mentioned as part of the British army that attended King Edward II. into Scotland, in the year 1322: (o) the name seems totally lost, the latter end of the reign of Henry VIII. or Queen Mary, these troops being then distinguished by the appellation of Demy launces and light horse.

THE arms and appointments of a hobiler as directed by King Edward III. were, a horse, a haqueton, or armour of plate, a bacinnet, iron gauntlets, a sword, knife and a lance. (p) Sometimes archers were mounted on light horses, whence they were stiled hobiler archers; these frequently occur in history.

THE arms both offensive and defensive, of a demi launce or light horseman, are thus described by Markham. (q)

“THE second troop of horse were launciers, or demy launciers, they were armed at all pieces, from the head to the knee, like the gentlemen at armes, and their offensive weapons were a launce, a case

COLEMBIERE says, if any one presented himself at a tournament; under false proofs of nobility, he was then condemned to ride upon the rail of the barrier bare headed, his shield and casque were reversed and trodden under feet, his horse confiscated and given to the officers of arms, and he was sent back upon a mare, which was deemed a great shame, for a true knight would anciently have been equally dishonoured by mounting a mare, whether in time of war or peace; even geldings, so much esteemed at present, were banished from among them.

(o) *TITULUS de Denariis solutis diversis comitibus, baronibus et aliis pro vadiis suis & hominum suorum ad arma & hobelariorum tam in guerra Scotie quam in munitionibus castrorum in marchia Scotie & Anglie a primo die Maii, anno quintodecimo, usque septimum diem Julii anno Regni ejusdem sexto, decimo finiente tempore Rogeri de Waltham tunc custodis et Roberti de Baldok tunc contrarotulatoris garderobe MS. in Bib. Tho. Astle Ar.*

(p) *YELVERTON MS. in the same library. || (q) P. 34. in the Souldiers accidence, published A. D. 1645.*

of short pistols, a battle axe, sword and dagger, strong horses, well ridden for the field, armed with a steel saddle, headstall, raines, bit, breastplate, crooper, trappings, girtes, stirrops and leathers.

THE third sort of ancient horsemen, were called light-horse, and they were armed for defence with burgenets or steel caps, gorgets, curats, or plate coats, gauntlets or gloves of mail: for offensive arms they had a slender chafing staffe, a single pistol, and sometimes a case, a sword and dagger. Their horses were nimble light geldings, fair trotting and well ridden: the furniture for the horse was a headstall and raines, a bitt, a morocco saddle, pettrel, crooper, light trappings and other necessities fuitable, the men to be handsome yeomen or serving men, light timbred and of a comely shape, where it skills not much for the tallnesse or greatnesse of body, but for the height of spirit, and the goodnesse of the inclination; in which little David (many times) puts downe the greatest Goliath."

THE same author then proceeds to describe the cavalry of his time, "thus (says he) for your knowledge, not your example, I have shewed you the severall compositions and armings of horsemen, according to the ancient times, when the bow and the hargobus had the first place, and the musket, and other fiery weapons lay obscured. But to come to these our present times, wherein the uttermost strength of the fire is found out and explained, and to shew you that which you must only imitate and follow, you shall know that all our horse-troopes are reduced to one of these three formes.

THE first and principall troop of horsemen, for the generality, are now called cuirassiers, or pistoliers, and these men ought to be of the best degree, because, the meanest in one of those troops, is ever by his place a gentleman, and so esteemed. They have for defensive armes, gorgets, curats, cutases, which some call culets, others the guard de reine, because it armeth the hinder parts, from the waste to the saddle crotch, then pouldrons, vambraces, a left-hand gauntlet, taces, cuisses, a caske, a sword, girdle and hangers. For offensive armes, they shall have a case of long pistols, firelocks (if

(if it may be) but snaphaunces where they are wanting; the barrels of the pistols would be twenty-six inches long, and the bore of thirty-six bullets in the pound, flask, priming box, key and mouldes; their horses should be stoned and of the best races, faire trotting and well ridden for the wars, that is to say, being able to passe a strong and swift carriere, to stop close, to retire at pleasure, and to turne readily on both hands, either in large rings or in strayt, especially the turn called terra, terra; the horse shall have a saddle, bridle, bitt, petrell, crooper, with leathers to fasten his pistols and his necessary sacke of carriage, with other necessary things according to the forme of good horfemanship; the second sort (of which many troopes of horse are compounded) are called hargobusiers or carbines, these men ought to be the best of the first inferior degree, that is to say, of the best yeomen or best serving men, having active and nimble bodies, joyned with good spirits, and ripe understandings; these men shall have for defensive armes, gorgets, curats, cutases, pouldrons, vambraces, and a light head-piece, wide fight-ed, and the bevers to let downe upon bars of iron; for offensive armes, he shall have an hargobus of three foote three inches long, and the bore of twenty bullets in the pound, with flaske, priming box and moulds, or instead of these, cartalages, which will serve either for this, or any other piece on horsebacke; also a good sword, and other accoutrements according to his place. His horse shall be either a faire stoned trotting horse, or a lusty strong guelding well ridden, he shall be armed with a morocco saddle, bridle, bit, petrell, and crooper, with the rest before shewed necessary to his place.

THE last sort of which our horse troops are composed are called dragons, (r) which are a kind of footmen on horsebacke, and do
now.

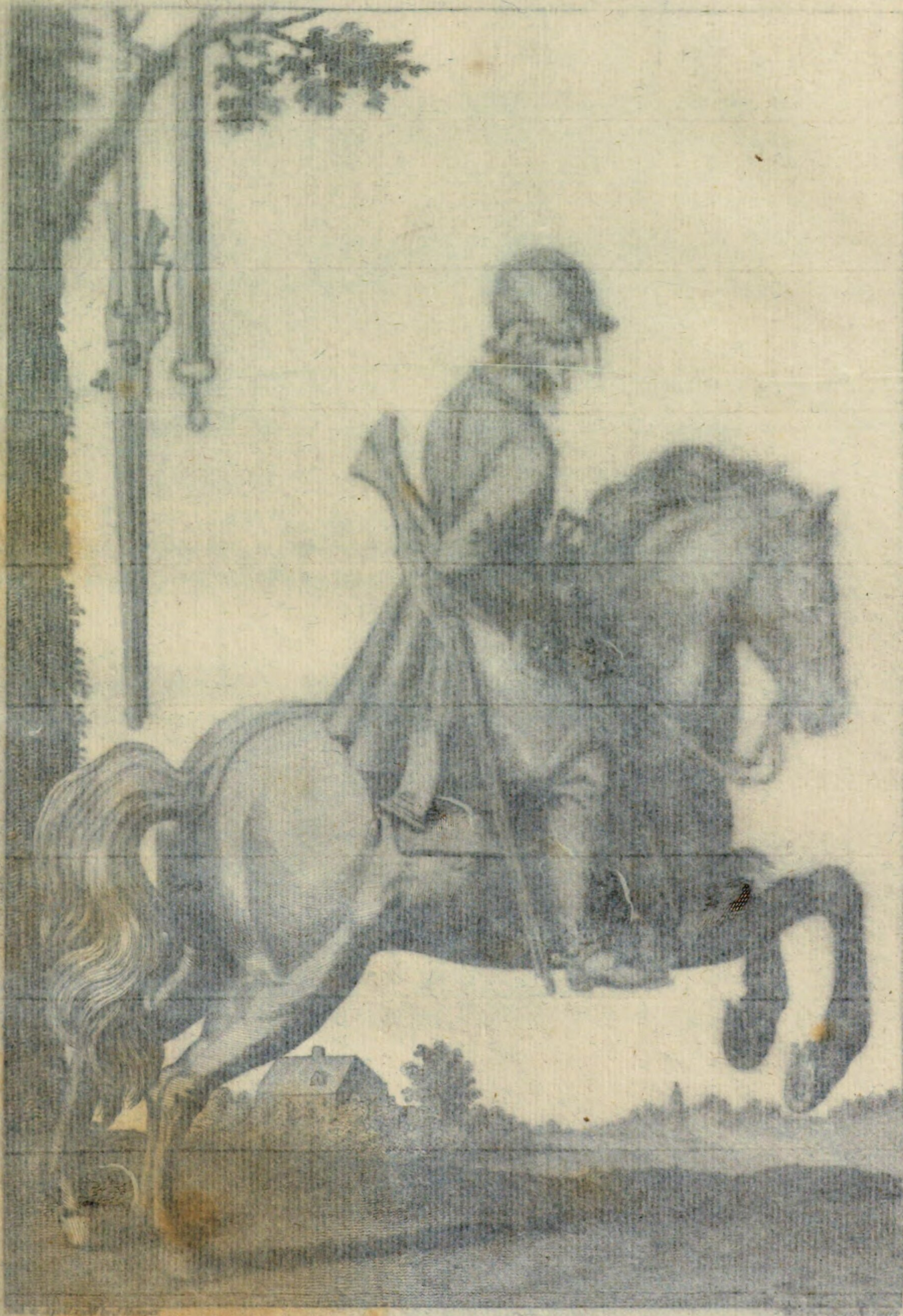
(r) ACCORDING to P. Daniel, tom. 2. p. 498, dragons are of French origin, and were
invented

now indeed succeed the light horsemen, and are of singular use in all actions of warre, their armes defensive, are an open head-piece with cheeks, and a good buffe coat, with deepe skirts; and for offensive armes, they have a faire dragon, fitted with an iron worke to be caryed in a belt of leather, which is buckled over the right shoulder, and under the left arme, having a turnill of iron with a ring, through which the piece runnes up and downe; and these dragons are short pieces of sixteen inches the barrell, and full musquet bore, with firelocks or snaphaunces; (s) also a belt, with a flaske, prying box, key and bullet bag, and a good sword: the

invented by Charles de Cossé, Marechall de Brisac, when he commanded the army of that nation, in Piedmont, sometime about the year 1600: he supposes they were called dragons, from the celerity of their motions, and the rapidity with which they ravaged a country, thereby resembling the fabulous monster of that denomination. Sir James Turner seems much of the same opinion "For what they got the denomination of dragoons, (says he), is not so easy to be told, but because in all languages they are called so, we may suppose, they may borrow their name from dragon, because a musketeer on horseback with his burning match, riding a gallop as many times he doth, may something resemble that beast, which naturalists call a fiery dragon. The eldest regiment of dragoons in the English army, is the Scotch greys, who were raised 19th Nov. 1683.

CAPT. CRUSO, in his Military Instructions for the Cavalry, published A. D. 1632, says there are two sorts of dragons, the pikeman and the musketeers, the pikeman is to have a thong of leather about the middle of his pike, for the more commodious carrying it. The musketeer is to have a strap or belt fastened to the stock of his musket almost from one end to the other, by which (being on horseback) he hangeth it at his back, his burning match and the bridle in the left hand.

(s) THE piece here mentioned seems to have been a kind of carabine, or blunderbuss, which is thus described by Sir James Turner, p. 137. "The carabiners carry their carabines in bandileers of leather about their neck, a far easier way than long ago, when they hung them at their saddles, some instead of carabines carry blunderbusses, which are short hand guns of a great bore, wherein they may put several pistol or carabine balls, or small flugs of iron. I do believe the word is corrupted, for I guess it is a German term, and should be *donnerbucks*, and that is thundering guns; *donner* signifying thunder, and *bucks* a gun." Lord Orrery in his Treatise on the Art of War, proposes that every regiment of cavalry should consist of seven troops, six of heavy armed horse, and one of dragoons; an idea that has since been adopted, by the attaching a light troop to every regiment of dragoons.
horse



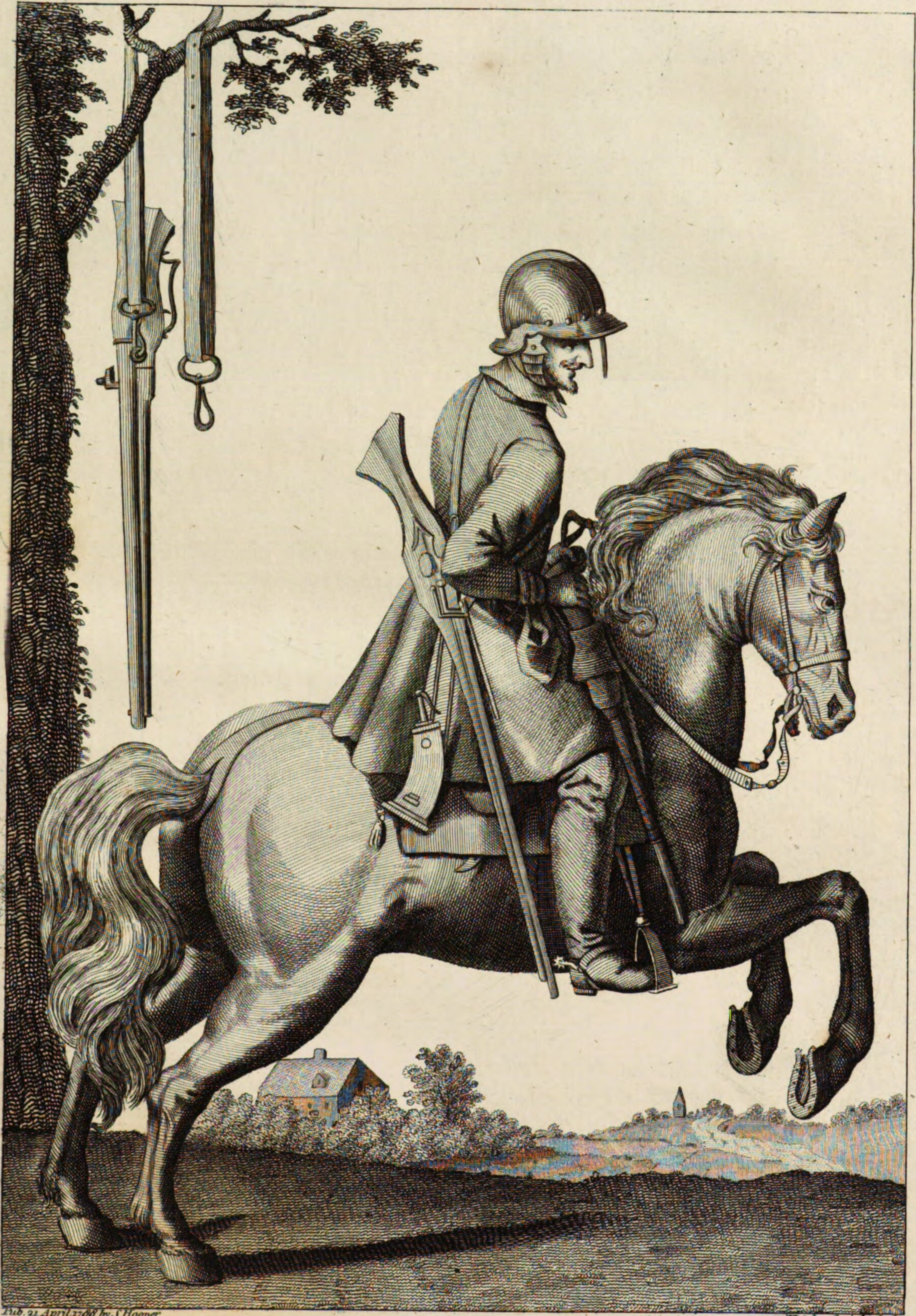
ANCIENT DRAGOON.

... of singular use in ... an open head-piece ... deepe skirts; and for ... with an iron worke ... buckled over the right ... of iron with a ... up and downe; and these ... the barrell, and full ... also a belt, with a ... and a good sword: the

... commanded the army of that ... supposes they were called dragons, ... which they ravaged a country ... Sir James Turner seems ... of dragoons, (says he), is ... they are called so, we may suppose, they ... on horseback with his burning ... something resemble that beast, ... of dragoons in the English ... 1683.

... the Cavalry, published A. D. 1632, says ... the pikeman is to have a ... for the more commodious carrying it. ... to the stock of his musket almost from ... (being on horseback) he hangeth it at his back, his hand ... in the left hand.

... a kind of carabine, or blunderbuss, ... "The carabiners carry their cars- ... a far easier way than long ago, when they hung ... carry blunderbusses, which are short hand ... they may put severall pistol or carabine balls, or small flugs of ... is corrupted, for I guess it is a German terms, and should be ... signifying thunder, and *buck*, a gun." ... on the Art of War, proposes that every regiment of cavalry ... of heavy armed horse, and one of dragoons; an idea ... adopted, by the attaching a light troop to every regiment of dragoons, horse



Pub. 21 April 1766 by J. Hooper

N.C. Goodright sculp

ANCIENT DRAGOON.

horse shall be armed with a saddle, bridle, bit, peterell, crooper, with straps for his sack of necessaries; and the horse himself shall be either a good lusty gelding, or a nimble stoned horse. These dragons in their marches are allowed to be eleaven in a rank or file, because when they serve, it is many times on foote, for the maintenance or surprizing of strait wayes, bridges or foords, so that when ten men alight to serve, the eleventh man holdeth their horses: so that to every troope of an hundred, there is an hundred and ten men allowed.

A MANUSCRIPT in the Harleian library, marked No. 6008, and entitled, A Brief Treatise of War, &c. &c. by W. T. in the year of our redemption 1649, on the subject of dragoons, has the following passages: As for dragoniers they are to be as lightly armed as may be, and therefore they are onlie to have as followeth, calivers and powder flasks. I would also have each dragonier constantly to carrie at his girdle, two swyn feathers, or foot pallisados, of four feet length and a half, headed with sharp forked iron heads of six inches length, and a sharp iron foot, to stick into the ground for their defence, whereas they may come to be forced to make resistance against horse."

WHEN the bayonet was first introduced, the use of it was chiefly confined to the dragoons and grenadiers. (t)

AFTER the revolution and disbanding of the army in 1698,

(t) THE bayonet is much of the same length as the poniard; it hath neither guard nor handle, but only the haft of wood eight or nine inches long, the blade is sharp pointed and two edged, a foot in length, and a large inch in breadth. The bayonet is very useful to dragoons, fusileers and souldiers, that are often commanded out on parties; because that when they have fired their discharges, and want powder and shot, they put the haft of it into the mouth of the barrel of their pieces, and defend themselves therewith as well as with a partizan. English Military Discipline, &c. printed for Robert Harford, 1680, p. 13. As late as the year 1750, dragoons were armed with iron scull caps, which they carried at their saddle bow.

the English cavalry consisted of the life guards, horse grenadier guards, (u) horse, and dragoons, till the year 1746, when a regiment of light dragoons was raised, chiefly in the county of Nottingham, and the duke of Cumberland appointed colonel of it; (x) the same year the third and fourth troops of horse guards were disbanded, and three regiments of horse reduced to the pay and service of dragoons, but as some compensation they were gratified with the honorary title of dragoon guards, and precedence of all other dragoons.

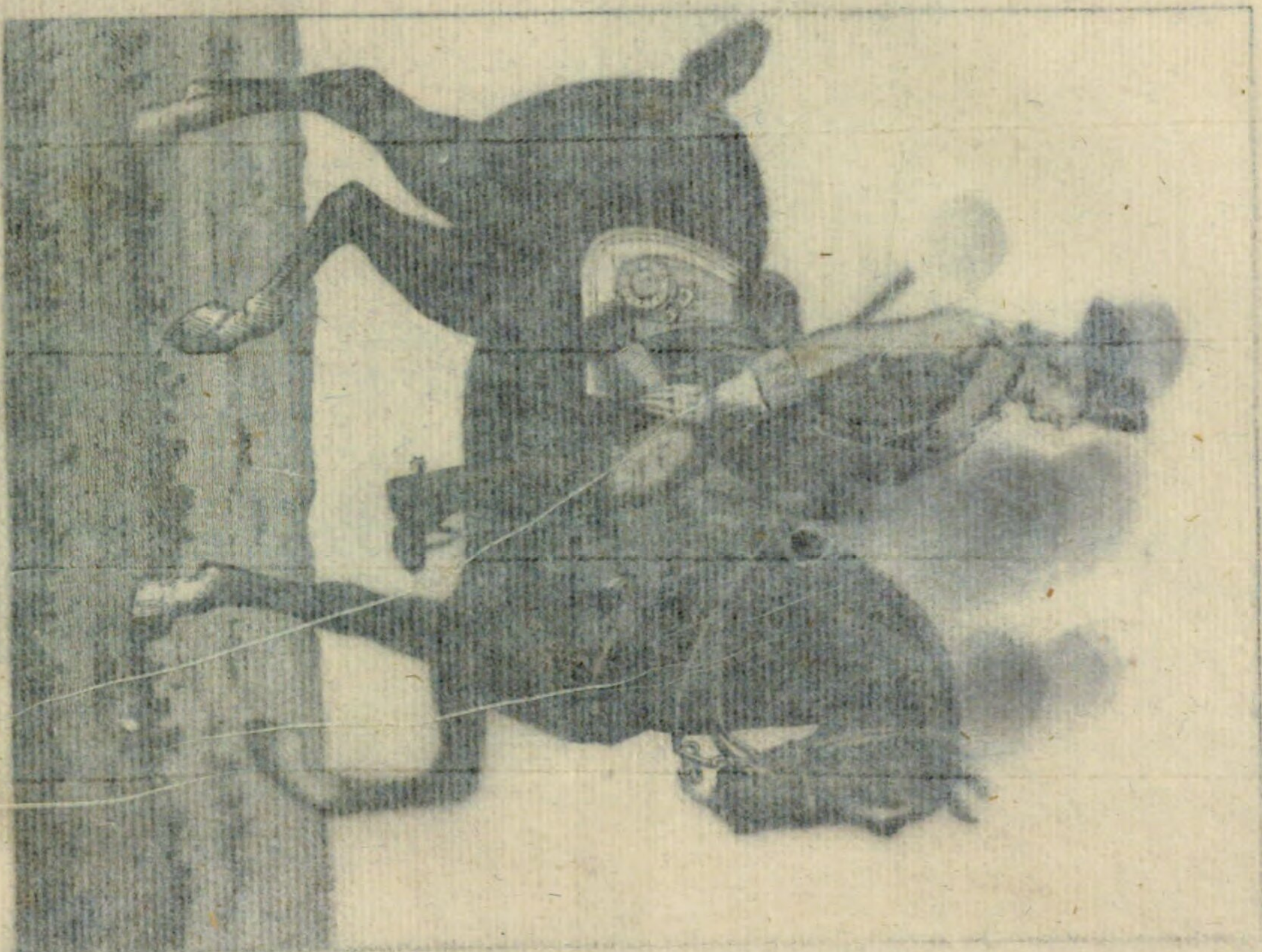
In the year 1755 a light troop was added to each regiment of dragoons, and several regiments of light dragoons have been since raised. The gallant behaviour of one of them in Germany, (y) their general utility, and the smartness of their appearance, has of late brought them into such estimation, that several old regiments of dragoons have obtained leave to change their heavy black horses, for others of a lighter breed, not considering that as they now occupy the place of cavalry, there being but one regiment of horse on the English establishment, they should not risque that superiority the strength, size and weight of their horses have hitherto given them over the cavalry of every other nation. Light troops

(u) THE grenadier guards were first raised as grenadiers to the troops of horse guards, in imitation of the grenadier companies annexed to the regiments of infantry.

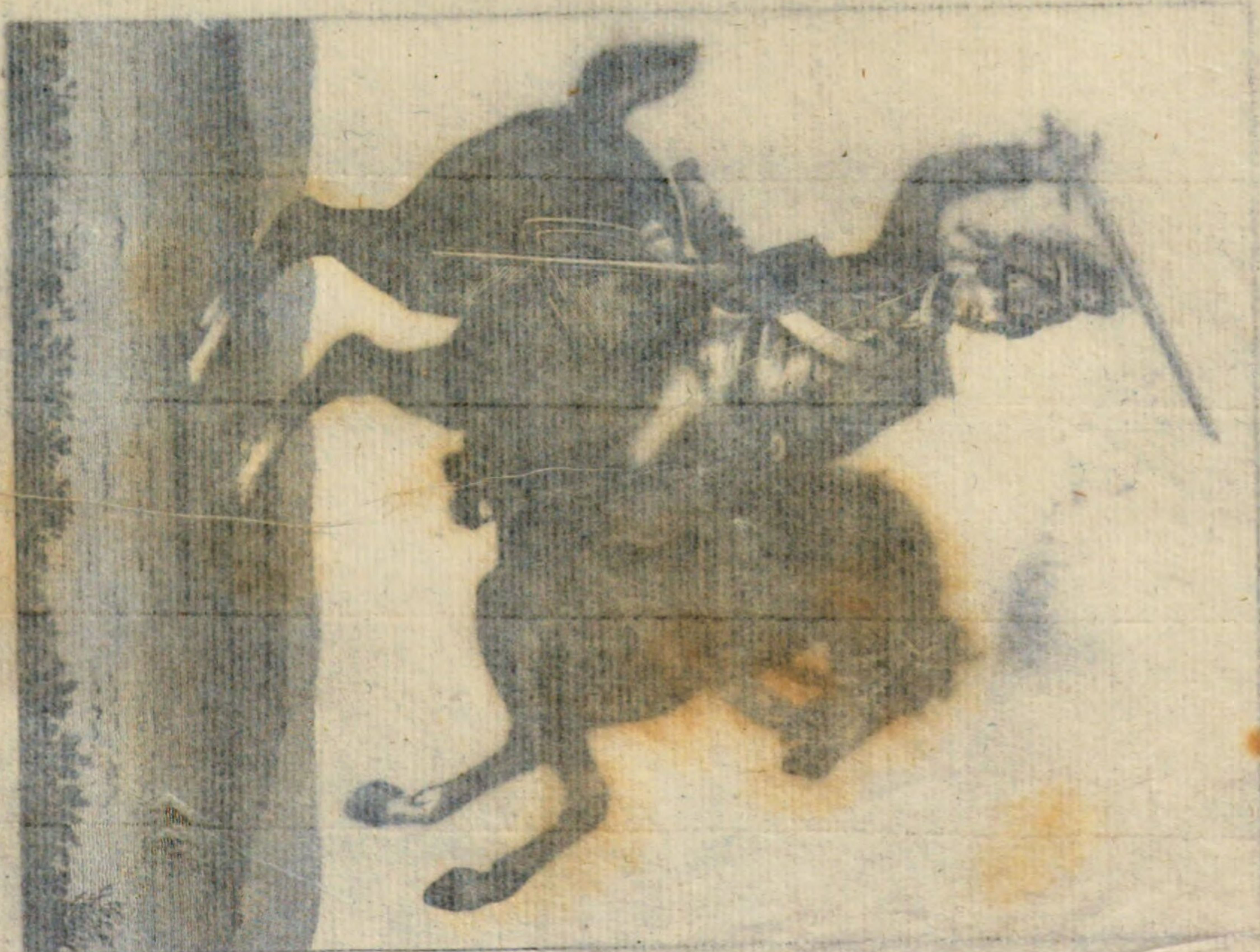
(x) THE warrant for raising this regiment was dated 8th Sept. 1746; it was disbanded in 1748 or 1749. Upon the raising of this regiment, the printer of the London Evening Post observed, that formerly our cavalry resembled giants mounted on elephants, but this regiment was like monkeys upon lean cats. For this and some other unhandsome reflections on the corps, they deputed one of their officers to give him some proper correction, which he most faithfully and ably administered: the expences of the prosecution were paid by a regimental contribution.

(y) THE 15th regiment of light dragoons. This corps when first completed, is said to have consisted chiefly of taylor's; if so, they demonstrated that Sir John Hawkwood was not the only instance in which the vulgar joke on their profession has proved a falsity.

are



HORSE GUARD.



LIGHT DRAGOON.

HISTORY OF

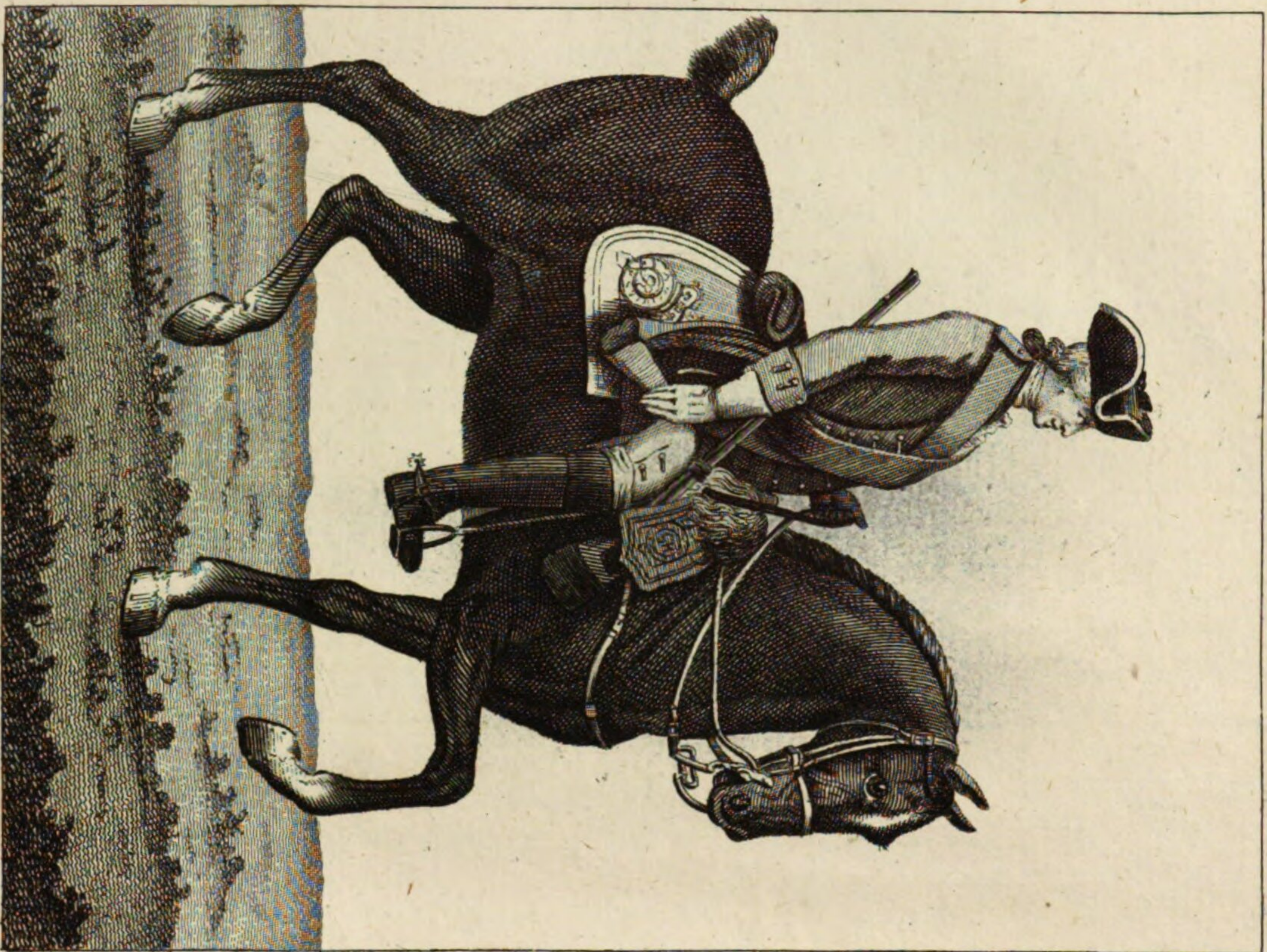
the British cavalry consisted of the life guards, horse grenadier guards, (a) horse, and dragons, till the year 1746, when a regiment of light dragons was raised, chiefly in the county of Nottingham, and the duke of Cumberland appointed colonel of it; (x) the same year the third and fourth troops of horse guards were disbanded, and the remainder of horse reduced to the pay and service of dragons, but as some compensation they were gratified with the name of dragons guards, and precedence of all other

regiments of dragons, and a light troop was added to each regiment of dragons, and several regiments of light dragons have been since raised. (y) The custom of sending one of them in Germany, (y) has of late years been discontinued, and the appearance, has of late years been more improved, that several old regiments of dragons have obtained leave to change their heavy black horses, for others of a lighter breed, not considering that as they now occupy the place of cavalry, there being but one regiment of horse in the English establishment, they should not risque that superiority the strength, size and weight of their horses have hitherto given them over the cavalry of every other nation. Light troops

(a) The grenadier guards were first raised as grenadiers to the troops of horse guards, in imitation of the grenadier companies annexed to the regiments of infantry.

(x) The warrant for raising this regiment was issued 28th Sept. 1746; it was disbanded in 1748 or 1749. Upon the raising of this regiment, the printer of the London Evening Post observed, that formerly our cavalry consisted of giants mounted on elephants, but this regiment was like monkeys upon asses. For this and some other unhandsome reflections on the corps, they deputed one of their officers to give him some proper correction, which he most dutifully and ably administered: the expences of the prosecution were paid by a regimental subscription.

(y) The custom of sending one of them in Germany. This corps when first completed, is said to have been sent to Germany, where they demonstrated that Sir John Hawkwood was not the only instance in which the vulgar joke on their profession has proved a falsity.



HORSE GUARD.



LIGHT DRAGOON.

are extremely useful on diverse occasions, but it is the heavy horse only that are fit to charge in the line.

THE band of gentlemen pensioners was a corps of cavalry instituted by King Henry VIII. for an honourable body guard, and to form a nursery for officers of his army and governors of his castles and fortified places. The following orders and regulations for raising and governing it, approved of, and signed by that king, will best describe what he intended it should be. (z)

Certain ordinances and statutes devised and signed by the king's majestie for a retinewe of speres or men of arms, to be chosen of gentlemen that be comen and extraкте of noble blood. With a forme of their othe.

HENRY R.

FORASMOCHE as the king oure souveraine lorde, of his greatt noblenesse, wisdom and prudence, confidreth that in this his reame of England be many yong gentlemen of noble blod, whiche have non exercise in the feate of armes, in handling and renying the spere and other faits of werre on horsebacke, like as in other reames and cuntreys be dailey practised and used, to the greate honor and laude of them that soo dothe, his highnes hath ordeyned and appointed to have a retynue daily of certaine speres called men of armes, to be chosen of gentlemen that be comen and extraкте of noble blod, to thentent that they shall exercise the said feate of armes, and be the more mete and able to serve their prince, as well in tyme of werre as otherwise, and to have good wages to leve upon accordingly.

(z) THIS curious manuscript is preserved in the Cottonian library, it is written on five small quarto leaves of indented vellum, marked Titus, A xiii. N. 24.

AND to thentent alfoo, that every of them shall knowe howe to order and demeane themselves, his highnes hath made, ordeyned and establisshed certaine ordenances and statutes followinge.

FURST, evry of the said gentlemen shall have his harneys complete and all other habiliments mete and necessary for him, with twoo double horses at the leeste for himself and his page, convenient and necessarye for a man of arms; also his coustrell, (a) with a javelyn or demy-launce, well armed and horsed as it apperteyneth. And they shall obeye, in everye condicon, the captaine that shall be ordeyned and deputed by the king's highnes, or his deputie lieutenante, to have the rule, conduite, and gov'nance of themm, in all things that thei shall be commanded to doo on the king's behalf.

ITM. That they shall make their abode in suche places as the king's grace shall appoint theim, or the said captaine, or the deputy lieutenante in the king's name, whedder it be in places nigh his person, or elsewhere, upon pain for every such defaulte to lose six days wages.

ITM. Evry of the said speres and coustrellys shall, at every time, cary with them thire horses, harnys, and other habiliments of werre as thei have, and shall muster with, not lacking, at any time, pece or parcel of theire said habilyments of werre, nor horses, upon payne of losing six dayes wages for every suche daye and tyme as he shall be founden in defaulte, being afore commaunded by the king, captaine, or lieutenante.

ITM. In likewise that non of the said speres nor coustrells shall in no wise departe oute of the place, where they be assigned to make theire said abode, withoute the special licence of the king our

(a) COUSTRELL, corruptly written for coustrell, derived from the French word *coustiller*, which Pere Daniel supposes to have been a soldier armed with a species of sword called *coutille*, or *cultellus*, longer than the sword then in common use, and sharp from the guard to the point, very slender, and having three edges. *Hist. de France*, tom. iv. p. 162, edit. Amst. 1720. Cotgrave renders it "the servant of a man at arms."

fouvraine lorde, or of their said captaine, or deputie lieutenante: and to suche as license shall be granted unto by the king's grace, or the said captaine or lieutenante, and the daye appointed them for their returne not to faile, withoute lawfull excuse of sicknesse or otherwise duely proved, upon paine of the losse of double their wages for every daye, as thei shall faile in comyng after the said daye to them lymited and assigned.

ITM. That evry of the foresaid men of armes shall furnyshe and make redy twoo good archers, well horsed and harnessed, and to bring them to muster before the king's grace, or suche persones as his grace shall appointe, within a moneth at the farthest after the daye that they shall be commanded soo to doo by the king's grace, or their captaine or lieutenante, and not to faile soo to doo, upon paine of losing their romes, and their bodies to be ponyshed atte the king's pleasure.

ITM. If any of the said archers after they be admitted, fortune to dye, the said speres shall not admitte any other in their place, but shall name oon mete person for thatrome of archer unto the king's highnes, and bring him to his presens, to be admitted at his pleasure, or els to the said captaine or lieutenante.

ITM. For the wages and ent'teyning of the said speres and archers, the king's highnes hath ordeyned and appointed, that every spere shall have and receive for himself, his coustrell, his page, and his two archers, thre shillings and foure pens strlings by the daye, to be paid by hands of the treasourer of the king's chambre, whiche is appointed by the king's highnes to paye them the same. And furthermore the said speres shall receive their said wages for them and for their archers at thend of every moneth.

ITM. The king's pleasure is, that the said lieutenante shall have for the wages and entertaining of himself, his custrell, page, and six archers, six shillings by the daye, to be payed in like manner as the said speres shall be.

ITM.

ITM. The king's grace woll that the saide captaine or lieutenant, with suche other psones as his grace shall appointe, shall evry quarter of the yere, as it shal be the king's pleasure, see the musters of the said men of armes and their company, if any of them lakke horse, harneys, or if any of their said horses and harneys be not sufficient as they should be: if thei be not, that they be commanded by the foresaid captaine or lieutenant, to provide for suche as shal be good and sufficient, upon raisonable daye, by the said captaine or lieutenant to be appointed. And suche as soo be founden in defaulte, that the saide captaine or lieutenant, shall restrain his wages in the hands of the said treasourer of the chambre, till he be sufficiently apparelled of suche thinges as he soo shall lakke, and thus the said captaine or lieutenant to doo upon payne of the king's displeasure, and losing of his rome.

ITM. To thentent that the said speres shall alwayes be in the more arredynes, (b) with their retynue, and suche horse and harneys, and other things as shal be necessarye in that behalf, the king's pleasure is, that the said speres shal be redy always to muster befor the said captaine or lieutenant at suche tyme or tymes as they shal be by them commaunded soo to doo.

ITM. It is the king's commaundement, that the said speres and their companie shall observe and kepe good rule and gov'nance, and nothyng attempte againste the king's subjects, contrarye to his lawes; and that thei duely and truely content and paye in redy money for vittals and all other necessities, that thei shal take for themselves, their said servants and horses, upon payne to be punished after the king's pleasure. And if any of them shall be founde three times culpable in any such defaults, then he or thei to be deprived of his rome, and his body to be punished at the king's pleasure.

(b) READINESS.

ITM.

ITM. It is the king's pleasure and commaundement, that none of the said speres shall presume to take his lodging by his owne auctoritie, but be ordered therein, and take such lodging, as by the king's herbergiers (c) for that purpose deputed, shall be appointed unto them, upon ponyshement aforaid.

ITM. It is the king's pleasure and commaundement, that non of the said speres shall geve wages unto any archer, coustrell, or page of any other spere, nor to reteigne him as his frvante, excepte he be put to him by his own master, being oon of the said speres.

The O T H E.

I SHAL be true and faithfull subiecte and servante unto oure Soverine Lord King Henry VIII. and to his heirs, kings of England, and diligently and truely give myn attendance in the room of one of his speres ; and I shall be reteyned to no man, pfone, ne pfones of what degree or condicon soever he be, by othe, lyvree, bagge, [badge] promise or otherwise, but oonly to his grace, without his especiall licence. And I shall not hereafter knowe or here of any thing that shal be hurtefull or prejudiciall to his most royal pson, specially in treason, but I shal withstand it to th' utermost of my power, and the same, with all diligence to me possible, disclose to the king's highnes, or to the captaine of the said speres, or his deputie lieutenante, or such others of his counsaile as I shall know woll discover the same unto his grace. I shall not leye to pledge, ne putte away suche horse and harneys, as I now have mustered with before the king, to any pfone or pfones, ne put oute of service any archer, custrell or page, that I have nowe with me, onles I have before shewed cause reasonable soo to doo, to the king, or the said captaine or his deputie lieutenante in his absence : nor I shall knowe of any of my company in likewise to leye to pledge or put

(c) HARBINGERS.

away any horſe, harneys, or archers, but that I ſhall ſhowe the ſame to the king's grace, his ſaid captaine, or deputie lieutenant, in as brief tyme as I conveniently maye. I ſhall alſo truely and faithfully to my power obſerve and kepe from this daye forwards, all and evry article comprized in a booke aſſigned with the king's hand, and all manner of ſtatutes and ordinances in the ſame and in evry of them conteined. On this I ſhall be obeyſaunte unto my captaine or deputie lieutenant, and the commaundements I ſhall obſerve and kepe at all tymes, ſoo the ſame be or concerne the ſervice of the king's grace. And all ſuch cauſes ſecrete as ſhall be ſhewed unto me by the king's grace, the ſaide captaine, or deputie lieutenant, I ſhall keep counſaill, without diſcov'ring of the ſame to any pſone or pſones till I be commaunded. I ſhall diligently give my attendaunce with my retynue upon the king's grace, in ſuch wiſe as I ſhall be commaunded and appointed by the ſaid captaine, or his ſaid deputie lieutenant; and not abſente or departe from the courte without licence of the king or of the ſaid captaine or his deputie lieutenant, in his abſence, by the ſpace of foure dayes. And alſo all ſuche horſe, harneys, and other habiliments of werre, as I nowe have muſtered with before the king's grace, the ſaid captaine or deputie lieutenant, be my own proper goods and non other man's : nor alſo I ſhall not muſter at any tyme before the king's grace, the ſaid captaine or deputie lieutenant, with any archer, couſtrell or page, but oonly with ſuche as I have reteyned with me to ſerve the king's highnes for the ſame entent. And thus I ſhall well and truly obſerve and kepe, and ſerve the king in the ſaid ſervice of oon of his ſperes : ſo help me God and theis holy Evangelies.

As **there** is no date to theſe regulations, it is uncertain when they **were** made, but from diſverſe concurrent circumſtances, there are **good** reaſons to ſuppoſe they were compiled, and the corps **formed** in the year 1509, the firſt of that king's reign; what was the

the original number is not there mentioned, most of the chronicles fix it at fifty.

THIS establishment being, it is said, found too expensive, the corps was disbanded, a short time after its institution, and before the year 1526 revived on a smaller pay; it is mentioned that year in the household statutes made at Eltham, under the description of the band of gentlemen pensioners, their present title, when the corps stood thus

A captain with the salary of	- - -	200 marks
A lieutenant	- - - - -	100 pounds
A standard bearer (d)	- - - - -	100 marks
Fifty gentlemen pensioners, each (e)	-	46l. 13s. 4d.
A clerk of the cheque	- - - - -	40 pounds
A harbinger (f)	- - - - -	18 pounds

About this time they appear to have done duty on foot in the court, probably armed with their battle-axes. Towards the latter end of his reign, King Henry indulged them with permission to do their duty by quarterly attendance, half the band waiting at one time; for which favour each of them was to furnish an additional great horse; (g) they were nevertheless all obliged to attend at the four

(d) ACCORDING to Doctor Chamberlayne's *Angliæ Notitia* of the year 1672, the band had two standards, one St. George's cross, the other, four bends; but in the latter the colours of the field and charge are not mentioned.

(e) THIS seems a singular sum; but as it is the amount of 70 marks, the common mode of reckoning at that time when wages did not often run per diem, probably on account of this diminution in their wages, a less retinue might be required of them. Hollingshead says, fol. 1574, they were only bound to supply two horses, or optionally, one horse and a gelding of service.

(f) NEITHER the standard bearer, clerk of the cheque, nor harbinger, are mentioned in the original ordinance.

(g) ITEM, in consideracon whereof, whereas now they are bounden to the findinge of two greate horses only, they shall each one from henceforthe, keepe three horses furnished

four principal feasts of the year, Christmas, Easter, Whitsuntide, and Allhallowtide. King Henry VIII. was attended by the band at the siege of Boulogne, and after its surrender, they made part of the cavalcade at his triumphal entry into that place. In the succeeding reigns of Edward VI. Mary and Elizabeth, (h) they were occasionally mustered with the other forces of the kingdom, and frequently performed their military exercises before the court.

DURING Cromwell's protectorship, this corps was suspended, but was embodied again soon after the restoration.

KING JAMES II. in the first year of his reign gave a new set of orders to the band, differing much from those of Queen Elizabeth and King Charles I. some of the most remarkable are here transcribed: the band at that time consisted of forty gentlemen in ordinary, and eighty extraordinary.

ART. 3. If we or the captain of the said band shall think fit to remove any or all of the forty gentlemen pensioners in ordinary now of the band, those who have bought their places, that shall be so removed, shall receive half pay during their lives respectively, and those that succeed in their places the other half, and after their death the whole.

ART. 11. The said gentlemen pensioners in ordinary being required by their institution every of them to be well and sufficiently provided and furnished with three great horses for himself and his servants, with arms and all other habiliments to the same appertaining, the performance whereof our late brother King Charles II.

accordingly. These orders were issued, when Sir Anthony Brown was captain of the band. See *Curialia*, No. 2, p. 25.

(h) FROM some articles made for the government of the band, it appears, that in this reign there was a table allowed to the gentlemen in waiting, as well as to the officers; this was relinquished in the reign of King Charles II. on their pay being raised to its present sum, which took place, A. D. 1670, part of the fund for that augmentation arose from the reduction of the band from fifty to forty.

was

was pleased to dispense with till he should think fit to require the same; it is our pleasure, that from henceforth the forty gentlemen pensioners in ordinary, and the eighty gentlemen pensioners extraordinary, shall each of them be sufficiently furnished with a case of pistols, a broad sword, an iron back, breast, and head piece, with proper furniture and accoutrements to the same appertaining, to be ready therewith, within two days warning, to be given to them by their captain, lieutenant or standard bearer, on failure whereof the gentlemen pensioners in ordinary to forfeit ten days wages, for the first default, and for the second default to forfeit a month's wages, and for the third default to be clearly expelled and put out of the room of a gentleman pensioner in ordinary, and to lose his whole quarter's wages. And every gentleman pensioner extraordinary, who shall fail to be furnished and provided with horse and arms as aforesaid, and to be ready therewith, within two days notice, to be given him by his captain, lieutenant, or standard bearer, shall be clearly expelled, and put out of the room of a gentleman pensioner extraordinary.

ART. 12. Every gentleman pensioner in ordinary shall also sufficiently furnish and provide himself with three great horses, with pistols, swords, iron backs, breasts, and head-pieces, with proper furniture and accoutrements to the same appertaining, for himself and two servants, whenever we shall think fit to require the same, to be ready therewith within fourteen days notice, to be given unto them by their captain, lieutenant, or standard bearer, under the penalty for every default to be chequed, or expelled clearly, and put out of the room of a gentleman pensioner as aforementioned.

ART. 15. The captain of the band shall have a due regard that such gentlemen pensioners in ordinary, and gentlemen pensioners extraordinary, whom he shall appoint to do the duty of corporals, sub-corporals, file-leaders, and adjutants to the band, shall henceforth always be such of the gentlemen as shall have the most know-

ledge and experience in military discipline, without having regard to the seniority of admission into the band.

ART. 16. The habits, arms and cloathing of the gentlemen pensioners in ordinary, and of the gentlemen at arms, or pensioners extraordinary, shall be such as we or their captain shall appoint.

ART. 18. The trumpeters of our household attending on the said band, when they are under arms, shall, on every such attendance, henceforth be mounted upon white horses.

ART. 21. The gentlemen pensioners in ordinary, and the gentlemen at arms, or pensioners extraordinary of the said band, shall be advanced to be commissioned officers in our army, preferably to all other persons whatsoever. (i)

DURING the rebellion in 1745, when the king signified his intention of setting up his standard on Finchley common, the gentlemen of the band had notice to hold themselves in readiness to take the field, with their servants, horses, and arms.

THE captain of this corps carries an ebony staff, with a gold head, which, on his appointment, he receives from the king, without any other commission, but is sworn into his post by the lord chamberlain in person, by virtue of the king's warrant, the lieutenant and standard bearer have similar staves of ebony with silver heads, which they likewise receive from the king, as investitures in office, after which they are sworn by the clerk of the cheque, who, since the year 1737, has also carried an ebony staff, with a head partly silver and partly ivory, but less ornamented than those of the other officers. The uniform of this corps is scarlet, richly laced; the clerk of the cheque wears an officer's uniform. The

(i) THE idea of providing for the gentlemen pensioners in the army was resumed by the earl of Lichfield, when captain of the band, in the present reign; he proposed giving companies to a certain number of them, but some difficulties arising concerning rank, the matter dropped. An idea was lately suggested of filling up the vacancies in the band, from the half pay of the army and navy.

gentlemen carry pole-axes, an elongated kind of battle-ax. Five of them, who are on the quarterly rota, now appear every levé day and drawing-room day, in the presence chamber, and stand to their arms when any of the royal family pass through. When the king goes to chapel and other like times of ceremony, the whole quarterly guard of twenty, appear under arms. By a petition presented to the house of commons in the year 1782, it appears that the office of gentleman pensioner has been generally purchased at the price of a thousand guineas, in confidence of being permitted to sell it again with the approbation of the captain. The salary, after the various deductions to which it is subjected, with the purchase of the uniform, is reduced to about seventy-six pounds per annum. These are the general outlines of the establishment of this corps, considered in their military capacity; a very particular account of them in every respect is given by Mr. Pegge in the second number of his curious and useful work, stiled *Curialia*, from which the preceding account is chiefly collected. (k)

THE infantry of this country, at and sometime after the conquest, not being the *posse comitatus*, were formed of the yeomanry, vassals, dependants of the feudal tenants, and afterwards of indented soldiers; most of these in the earlier periods were defensively armed, with a kind of iron scull cap, named a *bacinet* from its similarity to a bason, and a coarse leathern or linen doublet, stuffed with cotton or wool, called an *acketon*, or *hoqueton*, and sometimes a *jack*; (l) from the verses quoted below, it seems as if

English

(k) THE militia cavalry have been described under the article of the *posse comitatus*.

(l) IN the wardrobe account of the wages paid the army raised to go against the Scots, A. D. 1322, 15 Ed. II. the original of which is in the library of Thomas Astle, Esq; are the following entries. De Com. Norf. Ricardo Warin, Johanni Dacre, Henrico de Norton, & Johanni Plaice centenariis pro vadiis suis, 436 pedites, cum aketon & bacinet, &c.

English jacks were not famous for the elegance of their make. (m) Such men as wanted these appointments, were returned under the denomination of NAKED foot, (n) and received an inferior pay. The weapons chiefly used by the infantry were the lance, sword, and dagger, the gisarme, battle-ax, pole-ax, black or brown bill, mallet, morris-pike, halbert and pike. The archers had the long and cross bow, which after the introduction of fire arms were gradually superseded by the hand gun, harquebuss, musket, caliver, and firelock, as was the pike by the bayonet. Of these the lance was the most ancient, it was used by the Anglo-Saxons, both horse and foot; those used by the latter, and by the English after the conquest, were shorter and stronger in the staff than those borne by the cavalry; indeed, Father Daniel tells us, that when the men of arms dismounted to fight on foot, they cut off part of the staves of their lances, to make them more manageable; if any dependance may be placed on illuminated manuscripts, the lances of the infantry were, according to their representations, about nine feet long. Sometimes the lance-men carried targets or bucklers.

THE gisarme is so variously described, that its form remains doubtful, it is, however, most probable, that it was somewhat of

&c. — De Com. Suff. Witto de Ryhall & Henrico Poer centenariis pro vadiis suis, & 240 peditum cum akton & bacinet, &c. This frequently occurs.

(m) Cetoit un purpoint de Chamois
Farci de Boure sus et fous
Un grand vilain Jaque d'Anglois
Qui lui pendoit jusqu' aux genous.

Coquillart, dans son livre des droits nouveaux, quoted by P. Daniel, tom. 1. p. 240, &c.

(n) Com. Lincoln, Jordano de Blakeneye ductori peditum de Kesteven, in Comitatu Lincoln pro vadiis 100 peditum nudorum, &c. De Com. Norhpt. Edmundo de Leke-nore, Stephano Scott, Thome de la Hufse, & Johanni Jewel, centenariis pro vadiis suis & 440 peditum nudorum de comitatu Northampt. &c. *Wardrobe Acct.* 1322.

the

the bill kind. (o) It is directed by the statute of Winchester to be provided and kept by persons possessed of less than forty shillings land, and is described among the inferior weapons.

OF the battle-ax there are various sorts and forms, some calculated for being used with one hand, and some with both; the latter were chiefly carried by the foot, and were commonly put into the hands of strong and active men.

THE battle-ax was also considered as a royal weapon, and was borne as such, at the funerals of Henry VII. and Queen Mary, and solemnly offered up at the altar, with the helmet, gauntlets and crest.

THIS weapon is by the French called *hache d'arms*. Richelet, in his Dictionary, thus describes it: "an offensive arm, sometimes

(o) THIS weapon is also called *gifaring* and by *Fleta* *gisarmes*. Du Cange in his Glossary renders it by *securis*, and derives it from the *geesum* of the Gauls; La Combe in the Supplement to his Dictionary of old French, defines the term *gisarme*, to signify a sort of lance or pike; Bailey calls it a military weapon with two points or pikes; Strutt, I know not from what authority, has, in his *Horda Angel-cynnan*, represented the *gisarme* as a battle-ax on a long staff, with a spike projecting from the back of the ax. This weapon is mentioned in the ancient poem of the battle of Floddon Field.

Some made a mell of massy lead,
Which iron all about did bind,
Some made strong helmets for the head,
And some their *grisly gifarings* grind.

THE Reverend Mr. Lamb, editor of that poem, has the following note on this passage: *Gifarings*, halberts, derived from the French *guisarme*, a kind of offensive long handled and long headed weapon; or, as the Spanish, *visarma*, a staff that hath within it two long pikes, which, with a shoot or thrust forward, come forth. An ancient statute of William King of Scotland, "de venientibus ad guerram," ch. 23, saith, "Et qui minus quam quadraginta solidos terræ, habeat *gyfarum*, quod dicitur hand-bill, arcum et sagittam." And a statute of Edward I. "Et qui miens a de quarante sols de terre, soit jure a fauchions, *gisarmes*, &c."

Every knight
Two javelins spears, or than *gisarm* staves. *Gavin Douglas*.

made

made like a common ax, except that it has a longer handle, and that the blade is broader, stronger and sharper, it had formerly a great handle like that of a pertuisan, with a large iron at the end, in form like the cutting knife of a shoemaker, well sharpened, but much bigger and broader. The horse guards of the king's household have a scymeter, a battle-ax, a fusil, and a pouch filled with grenades. Battle-axes are used in forties, and in breaches to prevent an escalde."

IN a manuscript account of the armour and weapons in the different arsenals and armouries of this kingdom, taken in the first of Edward VI. (p) among those in the armoury at Westminster, are four battle-axes parcel gilt, with long small staves of brassell, garnished with velvet white and green and filke; these probably were intended for the king, or some great officer. Battle-axes are, as has been before observed, still carried by the gentlemen pensioners, the guards of the lord lieutenant of Ireland.

THE pole-ax differs very little from the battle-ax, except in name, some derive its appellation from that kind of ax being much used in Poland, and say, that its true name is the Polish-ax; some again deduce it from its supposed use, which was to strike at the head or poll; and others say it is called a pole-ax, from being fixed on a long pole or handle. In the manuscript just now quoted we meet with a variety of pole-axes, as shewn in the note. (q)

It seems likely, that both battle-axes and pole-axes were latterly more used for the state guards of princes and generals, than for the common purposes of war.

(p) THIS curious manuscript is the property of Gustavus Brander, Esq; of Christ Church, Hants.

(q) POLEAXES with gonnes in th'endes XXVI. Poleaxes without gonnes, II. Short poleaxes playne C. Two hand poleaxes IV. Hand poleaxes with a gonne and a case for the same oone. Poleaxes gilte, the staves covered with cremysyne velvet, fringed with filke of golde IV.

THE black or, as it is some times called, the brown bill was a kind of halbert, the cutting part hooked like a woodman's bill, from the back of which projected a spike, and another at the head. The denomination of black or brown arose from its colour; the one from a black varnish, with which this weapon was frequently covered, the other, from its being often brown with rust. Bills were not only borne by foldiers, but also by sheriffs officers attending executions, and watchmen; with these it was no uncommon practice to chalk the edges, which gave them the appearance of having been newly ground.

IN a manuscript written during the reign of Queen Elizabeth, (r) the duty of captaines of halbartes or bill men is thus defined: "Captaines of halbarts or blacke billes, cheifleye those halbartes bearinge corseletts gardinge the ensignes, wearinge swordes and daggers, meryteth more wages then others bearinge blacke bills, usuallye called the slaughter or execution of the battaile, alwaies readie and attentive to their ensignes, as well by secrett commandements as by founde of the dromme, never to departe from the same till it bee broughte into y^e place of good safetie."

IN the armies of King Henry VIII. Mary and Elizabeth, there were a great number of bill-men, as may be seen in different accounts of the musters of those times. In an extract from the certificate of musters for the county of Stafford, made A. D. 1569, 11 Eliz. (s) the parish of Yoxhall was thus divided: "Pikemen 3. bilmen 5, harquebuz 9, unable men 29." And of two hundred men raised in Lancashire, 1584, for the Irish service, eighty are, by the queen's letter to the sheriff, directed to be furnished with calivers, forty with corslets, forty with bows, and forty with halberts, or

(r) TREATISE of martial Discipline by Ralphe Smithe, dedicated to the Lord Burrowes and Sir Christopher Hatton, in my possession.

(s) IN the Lib. Tho. Astle, Esq.

good black bills: (t) besides the arms here specified, it was ordered that all the foldiers should be furnished with fwords and daggers. (u) Bills were also much used at sea, as is shewn by the account of the navy of that reign, where, under the article of furniture, the different kinds of arms and weapons are specified. (x)

THE

(t) PECK's Desiderata Curiosa, vol. i. || (u) IBID.

(x) *The Names of her Majestie's Shippes, with the Number of Men and Furniture requisite for the setting forth of the same.*

E. Codice Antiq. MS. Penes Sam. Knight, S. T. P.

I. TRYUMPH.

1. MENN 780; whereof

Marriners	450
Gunners	50
Soldiars	200

2. FURNITURE:

Harquebuls	250
Bowes	50
Arrowes, sheeves of,	100
Pikes	200
Corflets	100
Marriners	200

3. BURTHEN 1000

II. ELIZABETH.

1. MENN 600: whereof

Marriners	300
Gonners	50
Soldiars	200

2. FURNITURE:

Harquebus	200
Bowes	50
Arrowes, sheeves of,	100
Pikes	280

Bills 170

Marriners 200

3. BURTHEN 900

III. WHITE BEAR.

1. Men, Furniture, and Burthen,
as the last.

IV. VICTORY.

1. MENN 500: whereof

Marriners	330
Gonners	40
Souldiers	160

2. FURNITURE:

Harquebus	200
Bowes	40
Arrowes, sheeves of,	80
Corflets	80
Marriners	160

3. BURTHEN 800

V. PRIMROSE.

Men, Furniture, and Burthen, as
the last.

VI. MA-

THE mell, maule, or mallet of arms, was a weapon formerly used by both the English and Scots. In the memorable combat fought

VI. MARY ROSE.

1. MEN, 350: whereof

Marriners	200
Gonners	50
Soldiars	120

2. FURNITURE:

Harquebus	125
Bowes	30
Arrowes, sheeves of	60
Pikes	100
Bills	120
Corflets	50
Marriners	160

3. BURTHEN 600

VII. H O P E.

Menn, Furniture, and Burthen, as the last.

VIII. BONAVENTURE.

1. MENN 300: whereof

Marriners	160
Gonners	30
Souldiers	110

2. FURNITURE:

Harquebus	110
Bowes	30
Arrowes, sheeves of,	60
Pikes	90
Bills	100
Corflets	50
Marriners	100

3. BURTHEN 600

IX. PHILIP and MARYE:

Men, Furniture, and Burthen, as the last.

X. L Y O N.

1. MEN 290: whereof

Marriners	150
Gonners	30
Soldiers	110

2. Furniture and Burthen as the two last.

XI. DREADNOUGHT.

1. MENN 250: whereof

Marriners	140
Gonners	20
Souldiars	80

2. FURNITURE:

Harquebus	80
Bowes	25
Arrowes, sheeves of,	50
Pikes	50
Bills	60
Corflets	40
Marriners	80

3. BURTHEN 400

XII. SWIFTSURE.

Menn, Furniture and Burthen as the last.

XIII. SWALLOWE.

1. MENN 200: whereof

Marriners	120
-----------------	-----

Gonners

fought in Bretagne, in the year 1315, between thirty champions on the part of the English and the like number on that of the French,

Gonners	20
Souldiars	60

2. FURNITURE:

Harquebus	75
Bowes	25
Arrowes, sheeves of,	50
Bills	60
Corflets	30
Marriners	70

3. BURTHEN 350

XIV. ANTHLOPE.

Menn, Furniture, and Burthen, as the last.

XV. JENNETT.

Menn, Furniture, and Burthen, as the two last.

XVI. FORESIGHT.

Men and Furniture as the three last.

BURTHEN 300

XVII. AIDE.

1. MENN 160: whereof

Marriners	90
Gonners	20
Souldiers	50

2. FURNITURE.

Harquebus	50
Bowes	20

Arrowes, sheeves of, 40

Pikes 40

Bills 50

Corflets 20

Marriners 50

3. BURTHEN 240

XVIII. BULL.

1. MENN 120: whereof

Marriners 10

Gonners 10

Souldiars 40

2. FURNITURE.

Harquebus 35

Bowes 15

Arrowes, sheeves of, 30

Pikes 30

Bills 40

Corselets 20

Marriners 40

BURTHEN 160

XIX. TIGER.

Menn, Furniture, and Burthen, as the last.

XX. FAULCON.

1. MENN 80: whereof

Marriners 60

Gonnes 10

Soldiers 20

2. FURNITURE:

Harquebus 24

Bowes

French, one of the English champions, named Billefort, was armed with a leaden mallet weighing twenty-five pounds. (y) Father

Bowes	10
Arrowes, sheeves of,	20
Pikes	20
Bills	30
Corselets	12
Marriners	24

3. BURTHEN:

XXI. AIBATES.

1. MENN 60: whereof

Marriners	30
Gonners	10
Soldiars	10

2. FURNITURE:

Harquebus	16
Bowes	10
Arrowes, sheeves of,	20
Pikes	20
Bills	30
Corselets	12
Marriners	24

3. BURTHEN 80

XXII. HANDMAYD.

Menn, Furniture, and Burthen, as the last.

XXIII. BARKE of BULLEN.

MEN 50: whereof

Marriners	30
Gonners	10
Soldiars	none

1. FURNITURE:

Harquebus	12
-----------------	----

Bowes	10
Arrowes, sheeves of,	20
Pikes	15
Bills	20
Marriners	30
3. BURTHEN	60

XXIV. GEORGE.

1. MENN 50: whereof

Marriners	40
Gonners	10
Soldiars	none

2. FURNITURE:

Harquebus	12
Bowes	10
Arrowes, sheeves of,	20
Pikes	15
Bills	20
Marriners	30

THE sum of all others, as well merchant shippes as others, in all places of England of an hundred tunns and upwards 135

THE sum of all barkes and shippes of 40 tunne and upwards to an 100 tunne 656

THERE are besides, by estimation, 100 fail of hoyes: also of small barkes and fishermen, an infinite number of through the realme cannot be lesse than 600 besides London.

Peck's Desiderata Curiosa, lib. ii. p. 224

(y) HIST. de Bretagne par Dargentré, Liv. vi. p. 393.

Daniel

Daniel, in his History of the French Army, quotes the manuscript Memoirs of the Marquis de Fleurange, in the library of the King of France, to prove that the English archers still used mallets in the time of Louis XII. who began his reign in the year 1515, and died in 1524. In the ancient poem of the Battle of Floddon, leaden mallets are several times mentioned ; from the following description there given, it seems as if the head of the mell was entirely of lead, hooped round at the ends with iron :

Some made a mell of maffey lead,
Which iron all about did bind.

RALPH SMITH, in his directions for equipping an archer, gives him a mawle of lead, of five feet long, and a pike with the same, hanging by a girdle with a hook : this description, though somewhat obscure, seems as if he meant that the handle of the mell should be five feet long, the end armed with a pike or spike ; but how such a weapon could be worn hanging at a girdle, is not easily conceived, as, if carried obliquely, it would be likely to wound the legs of the soldiers in the rear of it ; probably it was worn at the back, hung by a hook fixed in the center of its handle, with a loop or some other contrivance to keep it nearly perpendicular.

FATHER DANIEL has engraved one of these mallets, which, in form, exactly resembles the present wooden instrument of that name, except that its handle is somewhat longer. In Mr. Brander's MSS. among the different store-houses at Calais, there named, one of them is called the malle chamber ; in it were then, eight hundred and eighty leaden malles. There is also an entry of two hundred malles in a store-house at Berwick. This weapon seems to have been of French extraction : it was once in such esteem in that kingdom, that in an insurrection which happened in Paris, on account of some new taxes in the beginning of the reign of Charles VI. when the populace forced open the arsenal, they armed themselves chiefly with mallets, whence they were stiled mailliotins.

Perhaps

Perhaps their choice was guided by the consideration, that the use of the mallet requires very little more than strength and resolution, not considering that in the *melée* which sometimes attended the ancient method of fighting hand to hand, an awkward man would be as like to knock down his friend as his enemy.

MALLETS were however tremendous weapons in the hands of strong active men, such as are described in this poem to have wielded them:

Two Scotch earls of an ancient race,
One Crawford called, the other Montros,
Who led twelve thousand Scotchmen strong,
Who manfully met with their foes
With leaden mells and lances long. (z)

THE mells seem at this battle to have been mixed with the bill and morris pike men, for so these lines import:

Then on the English part with speed
The bills stept forth, and bows went back;
The Moorish pikes and mells of lead
Did deal there many a dreadful thwack.

THE morris or Moorish pike was a weapon much in use in the sixteenth century, both by sea and land: some derive its name from Maurice, Prince of Nassau, whom they suppose the inventor of it; but this is certainly an error, as that weapon frequently occurs in descriptions of battles fought in the reign of King Henry VIII. particularly that of Floddon, which happened in the year 1513, fifty-four years before Prince Maurice was born. Indeed in the poem on that engagement, it is called the Moorish pike, which seems to be its true name.

IT is besides mentioned by Sir Ralph Smith, in his Military Treatise before quoted; he says, the men bearing it should be completely armed, their situation and service being peculiarly dangerous, wherefore, as well as on account of the extraordinary price of their armour, they ought to have extraordinary pay.

THE halbert differs very little from the bill, being like it constructed both for cutting and thrusting. The blade of a halbert consists of the three parts, the spear, the hatchet and the flook or hook. The first is intended for thrusting or charging in battle; the second for cutting; and the third for pulling down works made of fascines, in an attack on trenches, or other temporary fortifications. Some halberts are called sword-blade halberts, from the part designed for pushing, being formed like the blade of a sword. This weapon is said to have been invented by the Switzers; the pope's guard of that country still carry it. Monsieur de Belay, a French military writer, speaks of it as a very late invention. I have been told by a Switzer, that the ancient manner of using this weapon was to tell off the front rank of halberdiers alternately into pushers and strikers; so that while one half charged with their spears, the others struck and cut with the hatchets of their halberts.

HALBERTS were commonly borne by the guards of the great officers of the army, and also by a set of chosen men, appointed to protect the colours; at present they are only carried by serjeants of the battalion companies in the infantry. (a)

(a) YOUR halberdier should be armed in all points like your pike, onely instead of the pike, he shall carry a faire halberd, that is, strong, sharpe, and well armed with plates of iron, from the blade at the least two foot downeward upon the staffe, and fringed or adorned according to pleasure; and these halberds doe properly belong unto serjeants of companies, who by reason of their much employment are excused from armes: otherwise in the day of battaile, or in the battaile, they are for guard of the ensigne, or matter of execution; and then to be armed as aforesaid. *Markham's Soldiers Accidence*, p. 4.

THE pike was a species of spear or lance, solely appropriated to the infantry. In the form as last used it was of no great antiquity. Father Daniel says, that pikes are not mentioned in the histories of France before the reign of Louis XI. Pikes were introduced into France by the Switzers. (b) MARK-

(b) IN a military treatise, translated by Paule Ive, gent. and published A. D. 1589, from the French of Monsieur William de Bellay; there is, p. 26, this account of the pike: "But let us passe further to speake of the pike, of which although the Switzers have not been the inventors, yet have they at the least brought it again into use, for that they being poore, and desirous to live at libertie, were constrained to fight against the princes of Germany, who being rich, and of great power, did maintaine many horssmen, which the said Switzers could not do; and therefore making their warres afoote, they were constrained to runne unto the ancient manner, and out of it to choose some armes, wherewith they might defend themselves from the enemies horssmen, which necessitie had made them either to maintaine, or to find out againe the orders of times past, without which pikes, footmen are wholly unprofitable; they tooke therefore pikes as weapons not only fit for to withstand horssmen, but also to vanquish them: by the help of which weapon, and through the trust they have in their own good order, they have taken such a boldnesse, that fiftene or twenty thousand of their men dare enterprize upon a whole world of horssmen, as they have made prooffe at Navare and at Marignan, although the one battaile fell out better on their side then the other. The examples of the vertue that these people have shewed to be in them for their feates of arms afoote, have caused since the voyage of King Charles VIII. other nations to imitate them, specially the Germaines and Spanyards, who are mounted unto the reputation that we do hould them of at this day, by imitating the orders that the sayd Switzers do keepe, and the manner of armes they do carry. The Italians afterward have given themselves unto it, and we lastly: but we are so farre off, that we shall never be like unto them for order, except we do make the use of these weapons to be of more estimation amongst us, then it hath bin hitherto, so much there is also, that they can learne us no other point; we must therefore take paines to get this order, or if it be possible, to find or frame a more sure, by the meanes whereof we might defend ourselves, and excell other nations. And to do this, we must arm our soldiers well, to the intent that they may be lesse in daunger of blowes, and the harder to be overthrowne: principally those that should serve in the first fronts of the battailes; and also all others, if it were possible, every man according unto the weapon that he doth carry. The armes that we must carry must be these: first of all, the corslet complete with the tassels downe to the knee, hose of male, a codpeece of yron, good vambraces, and gauntlets or gloves of male, and a good head peece, with the sight almost covered. The other harnessse for the body must be a shirt or jerkin, with sleeves and gloves of male,

MARKHAM, in the Souldier's Accidence, gives a description of the manner in which a pikeman should be armed : " Next (says he) he (the captain) shall see that every man be well and sufficiently armed, with good and allowable armes ; that is to say, all his pikemen shall have good combe-caps for their heads, well lined with quilted caps, curaces for their bodies of nimble and good mould, being high pike proof ; large and well compact gordgetts for their neckes, fayre and close joyned taches, to arme to the mid-thigh ; as for the pouldron or the vantbrace, they may be spared, because they are but cumbersome. All this armour is to be rather of russet, sanguine, or blacke colour, then white or milled, for it will keepe the longer from rust.

THESE shall have strong, straight, yet nimble pikes of ash wood, well headed with steel, and armed with plates downward from the head, at least foure foote, and the full size or length of every pike shalbe fifteene foote besides the head.

THESE pikemen shall also have good, sharpe, and broade swords (of which the Turkie and Bilboe are best) strong scabbards, chapt with iron, girdle, hangers, or bautricke of strong leather ; and lastly, if to the pikeman's head piece be fastened a small ring of iron, and to the right side of his back peece (below his girdle) an iron hooke, to hang his steele cap upon, it will be a great ease to the souldier, and a nimble carriage in the time of long marches.

By the regulations in the act of the 13th of Charles II. a pikeman was to be armed with a pike of ash, not under sixteen feet in

and a head peece with the face uncovered. The weapons must be these : a sword of meane length, neither wholly after the manner of the Frenchmen, nor altogether like unto the Almaines : for the wearing of it too lowe doth greatly trouble a souldier. The short dagger also is one of the most necessariest weapons, wherewith in a prease a man may better help himself than with a sword. The pike, a halberd, and amongst many halbards, some pertuisans are also called weapons. The target may not be called a weapon, notwithstanding it is a very good peece."

length



Pub. 5 April 1788. by J. Hooper

An Officer of Pikemen.

J. Hooper del.

MADAMAM, in the Southern Armada, gives a description of the manner in which the pikemen should be armed: "Next (says he) for the weapons, shall be that every man be well and sufficiently armed, with good and allowable weapons, that is to say, all his pikemen shall have good sword-cases for their hands, well lined with velvet or silk, and their bodies of nimble and good mould, being light and goodly, sharp and well compact gorgetts for their necks, and their jaynet tunics, to come to the mid-thigh; as for the pouldrons or the hauberkes, they may be spared, because they are not necessary. All this armour is to be rather of russet, or of brown, or of black, or of white or milled, for it will longer last than of gold or silver."

Then it shall be that every man have a pike of ash wood, and the head shall be sharp, and armed with plates downward from the head, of such size and form, and the full size or length of every pike shall be sixteen foote besides the head.

These pikemen shall also have good, sharpe, and broade swords (of which the Turkie and Bilboe are best) strong scabbards, chapt with iron, girdle, hangers, or bantrieke of strong leather; and lastly, if to the pikeman's head piece be fastened a small ring of iron, and to the right side of his back peece (below his girdle) an iron hook, to hang his steele cap upon, it will be a great ease to the souldier, and a nimble carriage in the time of long marches.

By the regulations in the act of the 13th of Charles II. a pikeman was to be armed with a pike of ash, not under sixteen feet in

and a head piece with the face uncovered. The weapons must be these: a sword of mean length, neither wholly after the manner of the Frenchmen, nor altogether like unto the Alemains: for the wearing of it too lowe doth greatly trouble a souldier. The short dagger also is one of the most necessary weapons, wherewith in a prease a man may better help himself than with a sword. The pike, a halberd, and amongst many halbards, the spear is also called weapons. The target may not be called a weapon, notwithstanding it is a very good peece."

length



Pub. 3^d. April 1786. by S. Hooper

N.C. Goodnight sculpit.

An Officer of Pikemen.

length (head and foot included) with a back, breast, headpiece and sword. (b) The tallest and strongest men were generally selected for the pike, and in France their pay was somewhat greater than that of the musketeers.

THE general introduction of the bayonet superseded the pike, the use of which was abolished in France, by a royal ordonnance, issued in the year 1703, with the advice of the Marechal de Vauban, though contrary to the opinion of Monsieur d'Artagan, afterwards Marechal of France, under the name of Montesquiou. The exact period when pikes were laid aside in England, I have not been able to discover: it, however, certainly took place about the same time as in France; a book of the exercise of the foot, published by the royal command in 1690, has the exercise of the pike, which proves it was not then laid aside; and the Gentleman's Dictionary, published in 1705, describes it as a weapon formerly in use, but then changed for the musket, so that the alteration must have taken place sometime between the years 1690 and 1705. (c)

THE

(b) *The Prices of a Pikeman's Armour and Pike as established by the Council of War, 7th of CHARLES I.*

	l.	s.	d.		<i>Price of the Pike.</i>		
The breast	0	5	6		l.	s.	d.
The back	0	4	6	The staffe	0	2	6
The taffets	0	5	0	The head	0	1	8
The comb'd head } piece lyned	0	4	6	Socket and colouring ..	0	0	4
The gorgett lyned	0	2	6	Total	0	4	6
Total	1	2	0				
If the breast, back and taffets be lyned with red leather, the price will be	1	4	0				

(2) PIKES are the arms carried by pikemen, who used formerly to be the third part of the company, but they are now turned to musketeers. The pike is made of a point

THE long bow was first introduced here, as a military weapon, by the Normans, who at the battle of Hastings too fully demonstrated its utility and excellence, as they are said to have been, in a great measure, indebted to it for the success of that day.

IT is not to be supposed that the English were ignorant of the bow and its uses; they undoubtedly knew and used it in the chase, but had not then admitted it into their armies.

IT is probable that the Conqueror, sensible of the importance of archery, encouraged and commanded the practice of it; for in a short time we find that art much cultivated, so that the English archers formed a very considerable part of the national infantry, and were universally considered as superior to those of most other countries.

To preserve this superiority by constant practice seems to have been the study of many of our kings, diverse statutes enforcing it having been enacted, even long after the invention of fire-arms; and a number of laws, ordonnances and regulations made, for procuring a constant supply of good bow staves, for furnishing the counties distant from London with bowyers, string makers, fletchers and arrow head makers, and for guarding against the frauds and neglects of those artificers.

To enforce the practice of archery, it was enacted by a statute of the 33d of Henry VIII. that every man under the age of sixty not labouring under some bodily incapacity, ecclesiastics and

of iron, in form of the leaf of an apricock tree, called the spear, about four inches long, and broad in the middle, from whence it runs to a point: the spear has two branches or plates of iron, to fix it to the staff, of about a foot long, and strong enough to resist the stroke of a broad sword. The staff or shaft of a pike is about thirteen or fourteen feet long, made of a slip of ash, very straight, about an inch and a quarter thick at the greatest end, which is shod with brass or iron, sharpened to a point, to stick in the ground.

Gentleman's Dictionary, Part ii.

judges

judges excepted, should use the exercise of shooting in the long bow, and keep in their possession, bows and arrows. The fathers, governors, and masters, should instruct and bring up their sons and youths under their charge in the knowledge of shooting; that every man having a boy or boys in his house, should provide for each of them, of the age of seven years, and untill he arrived to that of seventeen, a bow and two shafts, to induce him to learn and practise archery; if a servant, the cost of the bow and arrowes might be deducted out of his wages; and that after such youth had arrived at his seventeenth year, he should then buy, and constantly keep a bow and four arrows. That if any parent or master, having a youth or youths under seventeen years of age, should suffer any one of them to want a bow and two arrows for one month together, he should for every such neglect forfeit 6s. 8d. and every servant above seventeen years of age, and under sixty, who received wages, neglecting to furnish himself as here directed, for every default should forfeit 6s. 8d. Justices of assize of gaol delivery, justices of the peace and stewards of franchises, leets and law days, had power to enquire respecting the observance of this law, and to punish persons wanting bows and arrows, as here directed.

THAT the young archers might acquire an accurate eye, and a strength of arm, none under twenty-four years of age, might shoot at any standing mark, except it was for a rover, and then he was to change his mark at every shot, under the penalty of four pence, for every shot made contrary to this regulation. It was also enacted that no person above the said age should shoot at any mark that was not above eleven score yards distant, under pain of forfeiting for every shot six shillings and eight pence.

THE inhabitants of all towns and places were directed to make up their butts against a day assigned, and to maintain and keep them in repair under penalty of 20s. for every month they were wanting:

wanting: they were also commanded to exercise themselves with shooting thereat on holidays, and all other convenient times. (d)

To secure a proper supply of bow staves, merchants trading from places whence bow staves were commonly brought, were obliged to import four bow staves for every ton of merchandize, and that in the same ship, in which the goods were loaded; (e) they were also bound to bring in ten bow staves of good and able stuff, with every ton of Malmsey or Tyre wine. (f) To encourage the voluntary importation, bow staves of six feet and a half long or more, were excused the payment of any duty: and the chief magistrates of the different ports were authorised to appoint proper and skilful persons to examine the bow staves imported, and to see that they were good and sufficient. (g)

To prevent a too great consumption of yew, which was the best wood for bows, bowyers were to make four bows of witch hazel, ash, or elm, to one of yew, and no person under seventeen years of age, unless possessed of moveables worth forty marks, or the son of parents having an estate of ten pounds per annum, might shoot in a yew bow, under a penalty of six shillings and eight pence. (h)

(d) So jealous were the English of other nations acquiring a skill in archery, that by the 33d of Henry VIII. aliens were forbidden to shoot with long bows, without the king's licence, under penalty of forfeiting their bows to any person who would seize them.

(e) 12th Edw. IV. under penalty of 6s. 8d. to the king for each bow staff deficient.

(f) 1st Rich. III. under penalty of 13s. 4d.

(g) This seems to shew that our ancient bows were at least six feet long. A gentleman of the society of archers, who has made the properties of the long bow his particular study, says, that the best length for a bow is five feet eight inches fromnock to nock; and that of an arrow two feet three inches. We however in ancient poems read of arrows a cloth ell long.

(h) It has been supposed that yew trees were originally planted in church-yards, in order to furnish bow staves; but it is more probable, that they being ever-greens, are planted there as an emblem of the immortality of the soul, which, though the body is dead, still flourishes. See *Bourne's Antiquities of the Common People*, ch. iii.

THAT

THAT every man might be able to furnish himself with those inferior bows on the shortest notice; every bowyer dwelling in the cities of London or Westminster, or the borough of Southwark, was always to have in his custody fifty good bows of elm, witch-hazel, or ash, well and substantially made and wrought, upon pain that every of the said bowyers, who for the space of twenty days should not have the number of bows of those materials, ready made and fit to be sold and used, should for every bow wanting of that number, forfeit 10s. one half to the queen, and the other half to any armourer, fletcher, or maker of bow strings, that would sue for it.

THE prices of bows were occasionally regulated by acts of parliament, from whence we learn, that the price of bow staves had encreased from 2l. to 12l. the hundred, between the reigns of Edward III. and the 8th of Elizabeth, though this is said to have been partly effected by the confederacy of the Lombards.

IN the reign of Edward III. the price of a painted bow was 1s. 6d. that of a white bow 1s. a sheaf of arrows if "acerata," or with steeled points, 1s. 2d. if non acerata, blunt or unsteeled, 1s.

IN the 24th of Edward IV. no bowyer might sell a yew bow to any of the king's subjects for more than 3s. 4d. and in the 38th of Henry VIII. the price of a yew bow, for any person between the ages of seven and fourteen years, was not to exceed 12d.

THE bowyers were besides to have by them inferior bows of all prices from 6d. to 12d. The price of a yew bow of the tax called elk, to any of the king's subjects, was limited to 3s. 4d. In the 8th of Elizabeth, bows of foreign yew were directed to be sold for 6s. 8d. the second sort at 3s. 4d. and the coarse sort, called livery bows, at a price not exceeding two shillings each, and bows of English yew at the same. A clause of a former act, directing the bowyers of London and Westminster to make four bows of different wood for one of yew, was repealed, with respect to those artificers dwelling

dwelling in those places, on their representation that the citizens of London would purchase none but yew bows.

ALIENS might not convey, sell, nor exchange any bows or arrows to parts out of the king's obedience, without his special licence, under pain of forfeiture of the same, or the value thereof, and imprisonment, till they had paid such fine as should be imposed on them, by two justices of the peace, or find surety for the payment. (i) All bow-staves brought into the kingdom, to be sold open, and not in bundles, to the intent that the buyers might know their qualities. (k)

ARROWS were made of different kinds of wood, but according to Roger Ascham, ash was the best. Their heads were of the best iron, pointed with steel; for this purpose, the flocks of anchors were sometimes used. (l) Arrows were armed with iron heads of different forms and denominations; some were barbed, which rendered it impossible to draw them forth from the wound, without laceration; they were feathered with part of a goose's wing. (m) Arrows were reckoned by sheaves; a sheaf consisted of twenty-four arrows. They were carried in a quiver, worn on the right side, or at the back. This served for the magazine; arrows for immediate use were often worn in the girdle.

By an act of parliament, made 7th of Henry IV. it was enacted, That for the future, all the heads of arrows and quarrels should be well boiled or braised, and hardened at the point with steel; and that

(i) STAT. 33 Hen. VIII. chap. 9. || (k) IBID.

(l) THE sheriff of Norfolk being ordered 42 Ed. III. to provide a certain number of garbs or sheaves of arrows headed with steel, for the king's use, is directed to seize all the flocks of anchors, (omnes alas ancorum) necessary for making the heads.

Swinden's Hist. Great Yarmouth.

(m) MANY instances occur in our ancient records, where the sheriffs of different counties are directed to find feathers from the wings of geese for arrows.

every head of an arrow or quarrel should have the mark of the maker; workmen offending against this act, were liable to a fine and imprisonment, at the king's will; and the justices of the peace in every county in England, and also the mayors, sheriffs, and bailiffs of cities and boroughs, were authorised to enquire concerning all makers of arrow-heads, and to punish defaulters.

In order that the distant counties might be furnished with the necessary artificers for making bows and arrows, bowyers, fletchers, string-makers, and arrow-head-makers, not being freemen of London, might be sent, by the appointment of the king's council, the lord chancellor, lord privy seal, or one of them, to inhabit any city, borough, or town within the realm, that was destitute of such artificers. Any of these workmen, being duly warned, neglecting to repair to the places directed, were liable to a penalty of 40s. for every day's neglect, and contrary abode. (n) For the foreign garrisons of castles in the time of Edward II. one artificer, stiled artillator, was appointed. (o)

THE range of a bow, according to Neade, was from sixteen to twenty score yards; and so quick were the ancient archers, or so slow the musketeers, that he says, an archer could shoot six arrows in the time of charging and discharging one musket.

THE force with which an arrow struck an object at a moderate distance, may be conceived from an instance given by King Edward VI. in his journal, wherein he says, that an hundred archers of his guard shot before him, two arrows each, and afterwards all together, that they shot at an inch board, which some pierced quite thorough, and stuck into the other board, diverse pierced it quite

(n) 33d Hen. VIII. sec. 8.

(o) ITEM ordinatum est, quod sit unus artillator qui faciat ballistas, carellos, arcus, sagittas, lanceas, spiculas; & alia arma necessaria pro garrisonibus castrorum. *De Officio Senescalli Aquitaniæ*, quoted by *F. Daniel*, vol. i. p. 196.

through with the heads of their arrows, the boards being well seasoned timber: their distance from the mark is not mentioned. (p)

IN ancient times phials of combustible composition for burning houses or ships were fixed on the heads of arrows, and shot from long bows. (q) Neade says he has known by experience, that an archer may shoot an ounce of fire-work upon an arrow, twelve score yards. Arrows with wild-fire, and arrows for fire works, are mentioned among the stores at Newhaven and Barwick, in the 1st of Edward VI. (r)

CHAUCER in his prologue to the Canterbury Tales, thus describes an archer of his time.

And he was cladde in cote and hode of grene
 A shefe of peacock arwes bright and kene .
 Under his belt he bore ful thriftily,
 Well coude he dresse his takel yewmanly,
 His arwes drouped not with fetheres lowe,
 And in his hand, he bare a mighty bowe,
 A not-hed hadde he, with broune visage,
 Of wood crafte could he wel all the usage;
 Upon his arme he had a gai bracer, (s)
 And by his side a sword and a bokeler,

(p) SEE K. Ed. VI. *Journal in Burnet's Hist. of the Reformation.*

(q) MISIMUS igitur super eos spicula ignita. *Mat. Paris*, p. 1090. And, p. 1091, Et phialas plenas calce, arcubus per parva hastilia ad modum sagittarum super hostes jaculandas. Arrows of this kind were used by the Romans, and called falarica and mallioli.

(r) IN Mr. Brander's MSS. Where, in the armoury at Westminster, there is also an entry of "two longe bowes of ewghe to shote stones in, with cases of lether to them."

(s) A BRACER serveth for two causes; one to save his arme from the strype of the stringe, and his doublet from wearing, and the other is, that the string gliding sharplye and quicklye off the bracer, may make the sharper shot. A shooting glove is chiefly to save a man's fingers from hurting, that he may be able to bear the sharp stringe to the uttermost of his strength. *Roger Ascham.*

And on the other side a gai daggere
 Harneised wel, and sharp as pointe of spere :
 A cristofre on his brest of silver shene,
 An horn he bare, the baudrik was of grene,
 A forester was he sothely as I gesse."

THE dress of our ancient archers is given in several chronicles. Fabian (t) says the yomen hadde at those dayes theyr lymmes at lybertye, for theyr hosyn were then fastened with one point, and theyr jackes were longe and easy to shote in, so that they myghte drawe bowes of great strength, and shote arrowes of a yerde longe; and according to Caxton, (u) the yeomanry hadde theyr hosen terven or bounden bynethe the knee having long jackys. But every man hadde a good bowe, a sheaf of arrowes and a sword.

THE following description of an archer, his bow and accoutrements is given by Ralphe Smithe.

ARCHERS of LONG Bows.

CAPTAINS and officers should be skilfull of that most noble weapon, and to see that their soldiers according to their draught and strength, have good bowes, well nocked, well strynged, everie stringe whippe in their nocke, and in the myddes rubbed with wax, brafer, and shuting glove, some spare stringes trymed as afore said; every man one shefe of arrowes, with a case of leather defensible against the rayne, and in the same fower and twentie arrowes, whereof eight of them should be lighter than the residue, to gall or astoyne the enemye with the hail shot of light arrowes, before they shall come within the danger of their harquebuss shot. Let every man have a brigandine, or a little cote of plate, a skull or hufkyn, a mawle of leade, of five foote in lengthe, and a pike, and

(t) VOL. ii. p. 172. || (u) POLYCHRON. book viii. chap. 13.

the same hanging by his girdle, with a hooke, and a dagger; being thus furnished, teach them by musters to march, shoote and retire, keepinge their faces upon the enemys. Sumtyme put them into great nowmbers, as to battell apperteyneth, and thus use them often times practised, till they be perfecte; ffor those men in battell, ne skirmish can not be spared; none other weapon maye compare with the same noble weapon.

THE bow maintained it's place in our armies, long after the introduction of fire-arms, and many experienced soldiers have been advocates for it's continuance, and even, in some cases, preferred it to the musket. (x) King Charles I. granted two commissions under the great seal, for enforcing the use of the long bowe; the first in the 4th year of his reign; (y) but this was revoked by proclamation, four years afterwards, on account of diverse extortions and abuses committed under sanction thereof. The second, an. 1633, in the 9th year of his reign, to William Neade and his son also named William, wherein the former is stiled an ancient archer, who had presented to the king a warlike invention of the pike and bow, seen and approved of by him and his council of war: where-

(x) THE long bow might on some occasions undoubtedly at this time be used with great advantage, particularly against cavalry: a few horses wounded by arrows left sticking in them would probably become so unruly as to disorder a whole squadron; besides the sight and whizzing of the arrows before the heads of those horses they did not hit, would keep them in a constant state of terror and restiveness. Nor would a flight of arrows falling on a battalion of foot fail of a considerable effect, independent of the men they killed or wounded, as when shot with an elevation they would be visible almost from the time they left the bow, and it would require a more than ordinary exertion of courage to refrain from looking at them, and endeavouring by some movement to avoid them; this, by engrossing the attention of the men, would prevent their acting with vigour against a battalion opposed to them; archers could act in the rear of a battalion of infantry, and even of a squadron of cavalry.

(y) To Timothy Taylor, John Hubert, Henry Hubert, Gentlemen, and Jeffery Le Neve, Esq. *Rymer.*



H.C. Delingh 1621

A Soldier of the time of K James 1st armed with a Caliver.

the hand hanging by his girdle, with a hooke, and a dagger; being
 taught by numbers to march, shoote and retire,
 Sumtyme they were upon the rump. Sumtyme put them into
 battell, as in battell apperteyneth, and thus use them
 till they be perfect; ffor those men in bat-
 tle, no other weapon may be feared; none other weapon maye com-
 pete with the hand which is upon.

Thus now we shall see its place in our armies, long after the
 introduction of the sword, and many experienced soldiers have
 been known to use it with success, and even, in some cases, pre-
 ferred it to the sword. King Charles I. granted two commis-
 sions under the great seal for improving the use of the long bowe;
 the first in the 11th year of his reign; (y) but this was revoked by
 proclamation soon afterwards, on account of diverse extor-
 sions and abuses practised under sanction thereof. The second,
 in 1633, in the 9th year of his reign, to William Neade and his son
 also named William, wherein the former is stiled an ancient archer,
 who had presented to the king a warlike invention of the pike and
 bow, soon approved of by him and his council of war: where-

It may be said how much service muskets undoubtedly at this time be used with
 great advantage, particularly against cavalry: a few horses wounded by arrows left sticking
 in their sides would probably become so unruly as to disorder a whole squadron; besides the
 sight and whizzing of the arrows before the heads of these horses they did not hit, would
 keep them in a constant state of terror and restiveness. Nor would a flight of arrows fal-
 ling on a battalion of foot have of a considerable effect, independent of the men they killed
 or wounded, in what they saw an elevation they would be visible almost from the time
 they were shot, and it would require a more than ordinary exertion of courage to re-
 main steady at them, and endeavouring by some movement to avoid them; this,
 by diverting the attention of the men, would prevent their acting with vigour against a
 battalion opposed to them; archers could act in the rear of a battalion of infantry, and
 in the rear of a squadron of cavalry.

To Timothy Taylor, John Hubert, Henry Hubert, Gentlemen, and Jeffery Le
 Neve, Esq. *Rever.*



N.C. Goodnight sculp^t

A Soldier of the time of K. James 1st armed with a Caliver.

fore his majesty had granted them a commission to teach and exercise his loving subjects in the said invention, which he particularly recommended the chief officers of his trained bands to learn and practise; and the justices and the other chief magistrates throughout England, are therein enjoined to use every means in their power to assist Neade, his son, and all persons authorised by them in the furtherance, propagation and practice of this useful invention. Both the commission and proclamation are printed at large in Rymer. (z) At the breaking out of the civil war, the earl of Essex issued a precept, dated November 1643, "for stirring up all well-affected people by benevolence, towards the raising of a company of archers for the service of the king and parliament." And in a pamphlet printed anno 1664, giving an account of the success of the Marquis of Montrose against the Scots, bow men are repeatedly mentioned.

To protect themselves against the attacks of cavalry, our archers carried each of them one or two long stakes, pointed at both ends, these they planted in the earth, sloping before them, the points presented the height of a horse's breast. In the 1st of Edward VI. three hundred and fifty of these were in the stores of the town of Berwick, under the article of archers stakes; there were also at the same time eight bundles of archers stakes in Pontefract castle. (a) Stakes of this kind were ordered by the earl of Salisbury, in the wars of Henry V. in France. (b)

To

(z) THIS exercise was printed, A. D. 1625, under the title of the Double armed Man, with figures representing the Motions. From the preface it appears, that Neade caused a soldier to perform this exercise before the King, and petitioned him to give orders for its being practised in the artillery gardens of London and Westminster; to which the king answered, "That it were meet for them to practise it of their own accord:" he nevertheless was afterwards prevailed on to issue the requested orders. This exercise with the explanatory figures, will be given under the article of the exercise of the pike.

(a) MR. BRANDER'S MSS. || (b) FOR to make stakes against a battayle or journey.
Alsoe

To the many laws, ordonances and regulations issued for the support of archery, may be added the institution of the artillery company, which was incorporated by the patent of Henry VIII. in the year 1537, to Sir Christopher Morris, Knight, master of the ordnance, Anthony Knevett and Peter Mewtes, gentlemen of the privy chamber, overseers of the fraternity or guild of St. George, granting licence to them to be overseers of the science of artillery, videlicet for long bows, crosse bows and hand guns; and the said Sir Christopher Morris, Cornelys Johnson, Anthony Anthony, and Henry Johnson to be masters and rulers of the said science of artillery, during their lives; and to them and their successors for ever, being Englishmen or Denisons and the king's servants, authority to establish a perpetual fraternity or guild, and to admit all honest persons whatsoever, as well strangers as others, into a body corporate, having perpetual succession, by the name of masters, rulers and commonality of the fraternity or guild of artillery of long bows, crosse bows and hand guns, with the usual powers granted to corporations of purchasing lands, and using a common seal. This society might elect four under masters, either English or strangers of good character, to oversee and govern the company, and to have the custody of their property, real and personal; these might be chosen annually. The fraternity were also authorised to exercise themselves in shooting in long bows, crosse bows and hand guns at all manner of marks and butts, and at the game of the popyemaye, (c) and other game or games, as at the fowle

Alsoe that every captayne doe compell their yeomen, every man in all haste to make him a good substantiall stake of a xi feete in lengthe for certain tieings (tidings) that lords have heard, and in payne to be punished as hereto belongeth." *MSS. of Mr. Petyt's in the Inner Temple, entitled Collectanea*, vol. i. p. 509, & seq.

(c) So in the charter: undoubtedly the popinjay. Maitland says the crosse bow makers used to exercise themselves in shooting at the popinjay or artificial parrot, in a field called Tassel

fowle and fowles, as well in the city of London and suburbs, as in all other places wheresoever, within the realme of England, Ireland, Calais and the Marches of Wales, and elsewhere within the king's dominions, his forests, chases and parks, without his especial warrant reserved and excepted, as also game of heron and pheasant, within two miles of the royal manors, castles and other places, where the king should fortune to be or lie, for the time only.

THE masters of this corporation were authoris'd to keep long bows, cross bows, and hand guns in their houses, and their servants to carry the said weapons, when and where ordered by their masters, which servants carrying such cross bows or guns might not shoot at any sort of fowl, under penalty of paying the forfeiture according to the act. No other fraternity of this sort might be formed or kept in any part of England without the licence of these masters and rulers. The patent also permitted them to use any sort of embroidery, or any cognisance of silver they should think proper, on their gowns and jackets, coats or doublets, and to use in them any kind of silk or velvet, satin or damask (the colours of purple and scarlet only excepted) and also to have on their gowns or other garments all sorts of furs, not above that of Martyns, without incurring the penalty of any act or proclamation respecting apparell. (d)

THE

Tassel Close, in London, from the number of thistles growing there; this was afterwards hired by the artillery company, and is called the Old Artillery Ground. The exercise of the popinjay was an ancient amusement in France, as is shewn by the following passage: L'exercise du papegay ou papegault, que l'on fait encore aujourd'hui dans quelques villes de France, ou il y a des prix proposez pour celui qui tirera le mieux, est un reste de l'ancien exercice, qu'on faisoit faire aux Bourgeois. Et je crois que cet exercice en quelques endroits est aussi ancien que l'institution de la milice des communes, &c. de la jurisdiction des maisons de ville, qui furent institutées sous le regne de Philippe I. quatrième Roi de la première race ainsi que je l'ai dit ailleurs. *P. Daniel Hist. de la Mil. Fr. tom. i. p. 379.*

(d) MANY sumptuary edicts were in former times published by proclamation, regulating

THE masters and rulers of this fraternity were exempted from serving on any inquest within the city of London or any where else within the realm: and the king further granted, that if any of the fraternity shooting at a known and accustomed butt, having first pronounced or spoken the usual word FAST, (e) should after that happen by mischance to kill any passenger, he should not suffer death, nor be impeached, troubled, or imprisoned for it. The patent was directed to be made out under the great seal, without the payment of any fees to the king, his heirs, or the hanaper, and was passed the 29th of Hen. VIII. (f)

ANOTHER patent was granted by King James I. in the 3d year of his reign, A. D. 1605, to the lord mayor of London, the lord Ellesmere, lord chancellor of England, Thomas earl of Dorset, high treasurer, Thomas earl of Suffolk, chamberlain of the household, Charles duke of Devonshire, master of the ordnance, Robert earl of Salisbury, principal secretary, with diverse judges, knights and gentlemen for the encouragement of the artillery company and the maintenance of archery and artillery within the realm of England.

IN this patent, after reciting the national utility of this company, it is stated that diverse persons for their own gain and advantage have plucked up the ancient marks used in shooting, raised the banks and hedges, and deepened the ditches, thereby preventing the necessary communications in the fields, anciently appropriated to this exercise contrary to the ancient customs of

ing the materials, colours and decorations of the garments to be worn by different ranks of people; among the trimmings, furs of different animals made a very distinguishing part, and were particularly appropriated.

(e) FAST, i. e. stand fast, a notice not to move till after the person giving such notice had made his shot.

(f) THIS charter is printed in a brief historical account of the artillery company, by Mr. Blackwell, adjutant and clerk to the company, anno 1726.

London,

London, statutes, provisions and proclamations, whereby there is a danger that many persons being deprived of their usual amusements, might haunt and frequent unlawful games; wherefore the commissioners, or any six of them, were empowered to survey the grounds near the city of London, where the archers had been accustomed to shoot, and to cause them to be reduced to the state in which they were in the beginning of the reign of King Henry VIII. by calling before them the owners and occupiers of those lands, where any alterations had been made since that period, to be proved by oath, by such honest and lawful men as they should deem competent witnesses, and ordering the said owners and occupiers to do the necessary work, at their own cost and charges. Any persons resisting, refusing, or neglecting to obey those orders, were to be punished with fine and imprisonment to the king's use. In this patent the coat of arms they now bear was granted them.

A SIMILAR commission was granted by King Charles I. in the 8th year of his reign, A. D. 1633, wherein the grounds used for archery were directed to be reduced to the state in which they were in the beginning of the reign of King James I. (g)

IN the year 1638, the company performed an exercise of arms at Merchant Taylors Hall, before the lord mayor, court of aldermen, and many other eminent citizens, so much to their satisfaction, that in testimony thereof, they made a present to them of the ground they now enjoy, to serve them for a military field of exercise, it was then called the Artillery Garden. The company was also enriched by many gifts and legacies. Anno 1641, Charles

(g) UNDER these clauses, a cow keeper, named Pitfield, was, so late as 1746, obliged to renew one of the shooting marks which he had displaced, on which the artillery company cut the following inscription, viz. *Pitfield's Repentance*: and the Hon. Daines Barrington, in his ingenious treatise on archery, published in the 7th volume of the *Archæologia*, says, he is informed that Mr. Scott, the great brick maker, hath been under the necessity of making his submission on a like occasion.

prince of Wales (afterwards King Charles II.) the duke of Bavaria, and James duke of York (afterwards King James II.) entered themselves members of this company.

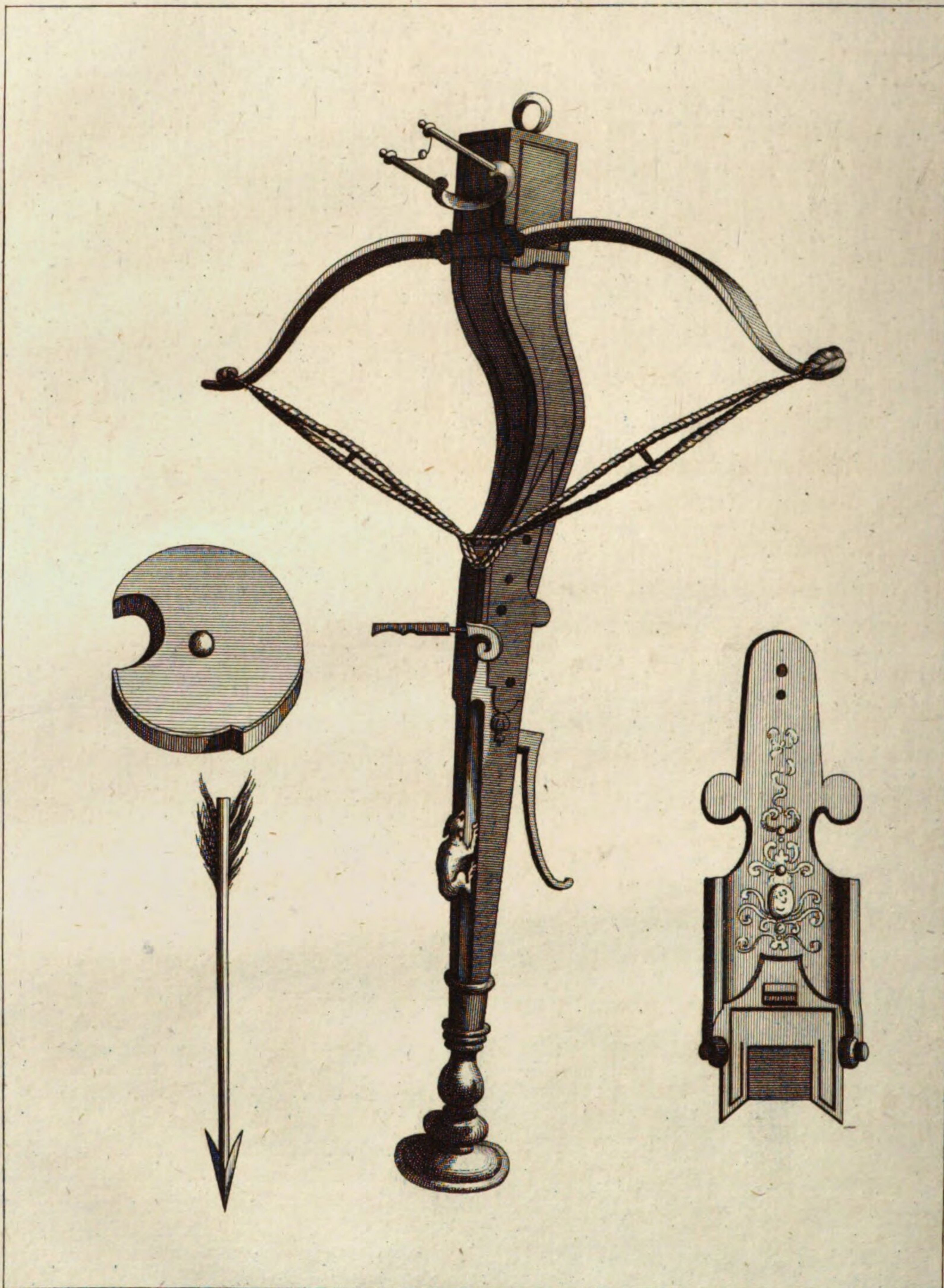
It received some interruption during the civil wars, and had no exercise from 1643 to 1656, at which time it was again revived, many citizens entering themselves members of it.

IN 1644, the duke of York was appointed captain general of the company, and exercised it; the same year, the dukes of Monmouth, Albermarle, and Ormond, the earls of Sandwich, Manchester, Anglesea, and the Lord Craven became members of it.

AFTER the revolution, King William in the year 1689, restored the company to the right of annual elections of its officers, which in the two preceding reigns had been interrupted from political motives; he also declared himself captain general, appointing his grace the duke of Norfolk his deputy, during his absence abroad. On the accession of Queen Anne, she appointed her royal consort, Prince George of Denmark, to be captain general. (h)

IN the year 1719, his majesty ordered that all the commission and staff officers of the city trained bands should become members of the artillery company, and exercise with them at all convenient times, in order to qualify themselves the better for their respective stations. It was also ordered, that the above mentioned officers should not fail to make their appearances at the three annual marches or exercises of the said company, unless hindered by some extraordinary business, and in such case, that they should provide some other person to appear in their stead: since which, no person can have a commission in the trained bands from the court of lieutenantcy, unless he produces a certificate, that he is a member of the artillery company. On the 30th of May, 1722, his majesty

(h) ARCHERY seems at this time to have been totally laid aside by the company, who exercised themselves in the use of the musket and pike.



Pub: 20 April 1788 by S Hooper

CROSSE BOWE.

J Newton sculp

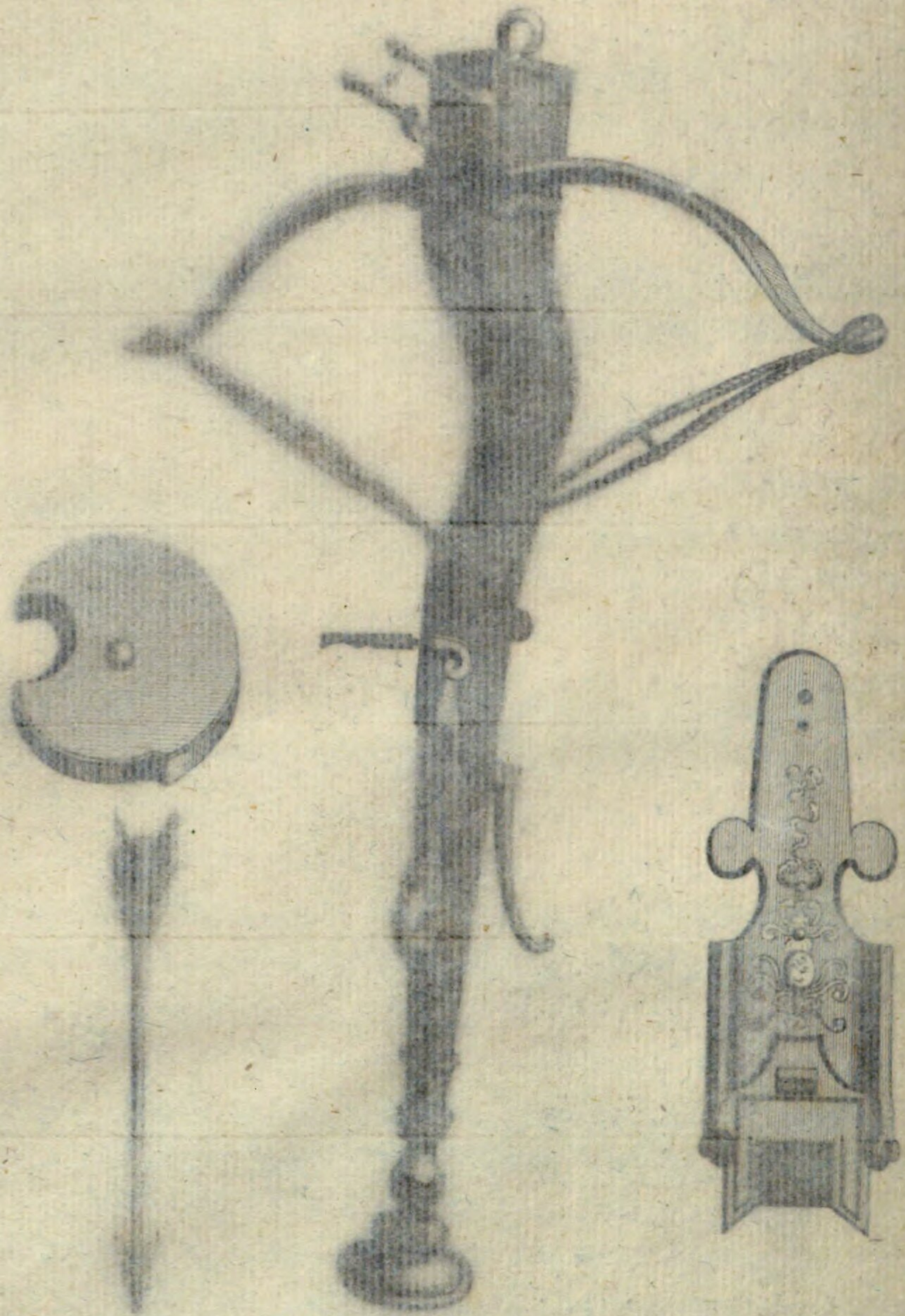


FIGURE 10.

J. Norton, fecit

caused the company to march in review before him in St. James's Park, and was pleased to make them a present of five hundred pounds.

ALTHOUGH both long and cross bows have for many years been laid aside, the company still continues to exercise in the artillery ground. His Royal Highness the Prince of Wales is captain general, there is also a president, vice president, treasurer, colonel, lieutenant colonel and major (usually chosen from the court of aldermen or other substantial citizens) with an adjutant, engineer, surgeon, chaplain, clerk, serjeant major, drum major, and messenger.

THE cross bow, or arbalist, called in Latin *arcus balistarius*, or *balista manualis*, and in French *arbalèt*, is said by some to be of Sicilian origin, others ascribe its invention to the Cretans. It is supposed to have been introduced into France by the first crusaders, and is mentioned by the abbé Suger in the life of Louis le Gros, as being used by that prince, in the beginning of his reign, (i) which commenced in the year 1108.

VERSTIGAN seems to attribute the introduction of this weapon into England, to the Saxons under Hengist and Horfa, but cites no authority in support of that supposition. In a print representing the landing of those generals, the foremost of them is delineated with a cross bow on his shoulder, and others are seen in the hands of the distant figures of their followers, landed and landing from their ships; of this print he says, "and because these noble gentlemen were the first bringers in and conductors of the ancestors of Englishmen into Britaine, from whence unto their posterity, the possession of their countrey hath ensued, I thought fit here in pourtraiture to sit down their first arrivall, therewithall to shewe the manner of the apparell which they wore, the weapons which they

(i) P. DANIEL Hist. de la Mil. Fr. tom. i. p. 425.

used, and the banner or ensign first by them spread in the field. Some writers say, William the Conqueror had cross bows in his army at the battle of Hastings. The Genoese were reckoned skilful in the use of this weapon; a great number of them were in the French service at the battle of Crecy.

THE effects of this weapon were deemed so fatal and cruel, that the use of it was forbidden by the second Lateran council, in 1139, under the penalty of an anathema, as hateful to God and unfit to be employed among Christians, which prohibition was confirmed by Pope Innocent III. it was nevertheless introduced into our armies by King Richard I. who being slain by a quarrel shot from one of them, at the siege of the castle of Chaluz in Normandy, his death was considered as a judgment from Heaven, inflicted upon him for his impiety. Notwithstanding this example, the cross bow continued to be much used by the British troops, and in the list of the forces raised by King Edward II. against the Scots, the cross bow men make the second article in the enumeration of the different kinds of soldiers of which it consisted. (k)

THE cross bow kept its footing in our armies even so late as the year 1572, when Queen Elizabeth, in a treaty with King Charles IX. of France engaged to furnish him with six thousand men, part of them armed with long bows, and part with cross bows. And in the attack made by the English on the isle of Rhee in 1627, some cross bow men were, it is said, in that army.

CROSS bows were of different kinds, some called latches, and some prodds. The bow was commonly of steel, though sometimes

(k) *TITULUS de vadiis tam peditum, balistariorum, lanceatorum, & sagittariorum Angliæ, Walliæ & Vascon; quam quorundam hominum ad arma et hobelariorum, retentorum ad vadia domini regis Edwardi, filii regis Edwardi, in guerra Scotiæ et alibi, a primo die Maii, anno quinto decimo, usque septimum diem Julii, anno regni ejusdem sexto decimo, finiente tempore. Rogeri de Waltham tunc custodis, et Roberti de Baldok tunc contra rotulatoris garderobæ. MSS. in the Library of Tho. Astle, Esq.*

of wood or horn ; the smaller bows were bent with the hand by means of a small steel lever, called the goat's foot, from it's being cloven or forked on that side that rested on the cross bow and cord ; the larger were bent with one or both feet, put into a kind of stirrup : some were also bent with a machine called a moulinet.

CROSS bows not only discharged arrows, but also darts called *quarreaux*, from their heads, which were square pyramids of iron, corruptly named *quarrells*, these were sometimes feathered (as the term was) with wood or brass : cross bows also shot stones or leaden balls.

ACCORDING to Sir John Smith, in his Instructions and Observations, &c. p. 204, a cross bow would kill point blank between forty and sixty yards, and, if elevated, six, seven, and even eight score yards ; the range indeed depended on the size and strength of the bow ; but the distances here given are such as a common cross bow would carry.

MONSIEUR DE BELLAY, in the treatise before quoted, speaks highly of the cross bow, which he prefers to the *harquebuzs*, and says it would kill an hundred or two hundred paces ; (1) probably he here meant only military paces, of two feet, or two feet and a half.

CROSS bow men were dressed, and otherwise armed, much in the same manner as the archers, and like them were frequently mounted on horseback.

THE invention of gunpowder and its application to artillery and small arms, did not produce that sudden change in the art of war, or weapons that might, on a first consideration, be expected. Mankind in general, have an almost superstitious reverence for old professional customs, which they ever relinquish unwillingly, and slowly, adopting improvements by degrees only. This arises, not only

(1) Book i. p. 26.

from a strong prepossession in favour of opinions they have been taught all their lives to consider as uncontrovertible, but because improvements tend to shew that the rising generation is wiser than their forefathers and seniors, a position old men will never willingly allow; this dislike to innovations is peculiarly found in old soldiers, because by adopting new weapons, and consequently a new exercise, the old and expert soldiers find themselves in a worse state than new recruits; as they have not only a new exercise to learn, which after a certain age is no easy matter, but also the old one to forget: for the truth of this observation, I appeal to every military man, who has seen any alteration made in the ordinary routine of duty or exercise.

THIS was the case, with respect to changing the long bow for the harquebuss; to prove it a number of instances might be produced, which must occur to every reader of ancient military books; it likewise is strongly marked by a letter written by Camden, transcribed in the note below. (m) Indeed many of the ancient soldiers

(m) CAMDEN to Sir Ed. Cecil. ——— Honorable Sir. The proposition you make is oute of the reache of my profession, and not of antiquitie, but of late memorie; by reason of Sir Rob. Cott.'s absence I can imparte nothing from him as yet, and for my owne observation it is very slender, onely I remember, that after Captain Morgan in the yeare 1572 had first carried to Flushing 300 English, and had (persuaded) procured Sir Humphrey Gilbert to bring over more, and to be coronell of the English there, a new militarie discipline was shortly after brought in, and the new marche by some that had served the duke of Alva, and entertained especially by the important instance of Sir Roger Williams, although strong opposition was then against it, by Captaine Pykeman, and afterward by Captaine Reade, ancient leaders, and Sir William Pelham, who were scornfully tearmed by the contrary parte, Sainte George's souldados; and Sir John Smith, who had served under the constable Momorancy twice in Hungary, att Penon de Veliz and Malta, yea, and under Dalva, encountered with his penne against the newe Discipline, and did writght much which was never published. This in hast, untill I may (cann) happen upon Sir Robert Cotton, I thought good to imparte to your lfp. to whom I wish all happye successe to the encrease and compliment of your honor.

THIS

diers were much divided on that subject, nor does it appear that the government of those days had formed any decided opinion upon it, as the strongest statutes for enforcing the practice of archery were enacted after the introduction of fire arms : and so indifferent were our rulers under Queen Mary, to the introduction of them, that in her ordonnance respecting armour and weapons, the alternative is left to the choice of the people, whether they would find a long bow and sheaf of arrows, or a haquebut, in every case where they were by law charged with the latter. This national backwardness to a general adoption of fire-arms must strike every person, when it is shewn how long hand guns were known and introduced here, before the use of them became general.

FIRE-ARMS discharged by hand were first called hand canons, hand culverines, and hand guns ; they afterwards acquired the appellations of hackbuts, harquebusses, muskets and calivers, and lastly their present name of firelocks. Various are the opinions and accounts, respecting their origin, and the time and place where they were first used. The chief of these are given in the note. (n)

Hand

THIS letter, which is in the Cott. Lib. Julius F. 6, fol. 441, is not signed, and by the corrections here marked, seems to have been a foul copy ; probably the person who marked it as Camden's knew his hand. One of the treatises written by Sir John Smith, and here mentioned by Camden, was printed in London, 1st May, 1590, in quarto, it is entitled, " Certain Discourses written by Sir John Smythe, knight, concerning the formes and effects of diverse sorts of weapons, and other very important matters militarie, greatlie mistaken by divers of our men of warre, in these daies, and chiefly of the mosquet, the caliver, and the long bow, as also of the great sufficiencie, excellencie, and wonderful effects of archers, with many notable examples and other particularities, by him presented to the nobilitie of this realme, and published for the benefite of this his native countrie of England."

(n) FATHER DANIEL has collected the following particulars respecting the different kinds of fire-arms. " The president Fauchet says, that the first of our historians who has spoken of these canons and hand culverines which I have before mentioned, is Monstrelet, whose history begins in 1400, and terminates in 1467, that is to say, a little beyond the

Hand guns were first introduced into this kingdom, in the year 1471, when King Edward IV. landing at Ravenspurgh in Yorkshire,

the time, in which that of Philip de Comines begins. Fauchet is right: but there are historians as ancient as Monstrelet, as for example, Juvenal des Urins, who likewise mentions them.

It appears to me, that these culverines or hand canons, which were fired on little carriages, were what we now call the arquebus à croc (arquebus with a hook) or something very like it. They were since called the arquebuses with a hook, upon account of a little hook, cast with the piece; they are placed on a kind of tripod, as may be seen in the representation; they are of different lengths, and for caliber, between the smallest canons and the musket; they are used in the lower flanks, and in tours pierced with loop-holes, called murderers.

A LONG time afterwards the name of arquebuses was given to a fire-arm, the barril of which was mounted on a stock, having a butt for presenting and taking aim: this was at the soonest about the end of the reign of Louis XII. It became in time the ordinary piece born by the soldiers. This is the most ancient arm mounted on a stock. We have the epocha of that invention in the authors of the time in which I place it: for Fabritius Colonne, in Machiavel's Dialogues upon the Art of War, speaks of this arm as a new invention of his time: "The harquebuses, says he, which is a weapon newly invented, as you know, and very necessary for the present time." The author of the Military Discipline attributed to the Seigneur de Langei, says the same. "The harquebuses, says he, has been invented within these few years, and is very good:" he wrote under the reign of Francis I. This arm a good deal resembled our present musketoons in the stock and barril, but they had wheel locks. If we believe Luigi-Collado, in his Treatise of Artillery, printed at Venice, in the year 1586, they only began in his time to use the wheel lock in Germany. *Nell' Alemagna etiandio fu ritrovata l'invention de gl' archibugi da ruota.* the best arquebuses were made at Milan, as Brantome says in his eulogy on M. de Strozzi.

MONSIEUR DE BELLAY says, that one of the first occasions where it was made use of, was in the year 1521, when Pope Leo X. and the Emperor Charles V. confederated against France, and their troops besieged Parma, which was defended by the Marquis de Foix. At that time, says he, were invented harquebuses, which are fired on rests, those before carried by the harquebussiers, both horse and foot, were much lighter.

FROM harquebuses came pistols or pistolets, with wheel locks, the barrils of which were only one foot long, being the harquebuses in miniature. It is thought that these arms were called pistols or pistolets, because the first were made at Pitoye in Tuscany. I think I have remarked in our histories, that the Germans made use of them in France, before the French; and the horsemen who carried them in the time of Henry II. were called *pistoliers*. Monsieur de la Noue, in his eighteenth Military Discourse, confirms what I say:

In

shire brought with him among other forces, three hundred Flemings

In the mean time, says he, we must give the honour to the Reitres, of having first brought pistols into use, which I think are very dangerous when properly used. They are mentioned as early as the year 1544, under the reign of Francis I. I have seen one at Chantilly, which is all iron except the ramrod.

ANOTHER arm was afterwards made, a medium between the harquebuss and pistol, it was called a petrinal or poitrinal, this we learn from the president Fauchet, who lived under Francis I. and died under Henry IV. "Within twenty or thirty years, says he, they call petrinals like instruments, the mean between harquebusses and pistols, having a very strong and quick wheel; and it is believed that this arm is the invention of the bandouliers of the Pyrenean mountains.

NICOT, who was of the same time, thus describes a poitrinal in his Dictionary: "It is, says he, a species of harquebuss, shorter than the musket, but of a greater calibre, and on account of its weight is carried in a broad baudrick worn over the shoulder, and rested on the breast of the person who carries it, when he fires it, wherefore it received its name. The poitrinalier is the soldier who carries and uses the poitrinal." This arm is mentioned in the relation of the siege of Rouen by Henry IV. in 1592.

AFTER the harquebusses came muskets; they were made in the time of Francis I. for in the same cabinet of arms at Chantilly, there is one marked with the arms of France and the salamander, which was the device of that prince. Nevertheless, if we will believe Brantome, it was the duke d'Alva, who first brought them into use in the armies, when during the reign of Philip II. he went to take upon him the government of the low countries in the year 1567; but that only means, he brought them more into fashion than they were till that time, and that till then they were rarely used, at least in the field. He says then in his elogy on Monsieur de Strozzi, colonel general of the French infantry under Charles IX. that it was that officer who introduced the use of the musquet into France, by this is to be understood the common use of it.

PISTOLS with a simple spring, instead of the wheel formerly made use of, fusils and musketoons, all these are modern and well known; but I know not the inventors; it is the workmen themselves who have improved upon these arms, and rendered them more simple. I have been assured, that in 1658, the use of wheel locked pistols was not then abolished.

I SHALL remark likewise upon the article of muskets, that the Spaniards of the time of Philip II. caused them to be made of a very great calibre, and such that a strong and vigorous foot foldier might carry them, but that they were so heavy that they could not be presented, without the assistance of staves shod and pointed at the bottom, and which they fixed into the earth, and made use of a fork that was at the top, as a prop to sustain the end

nings armed with "hange gunnes:" (o) this is fifty years before the date generally assigned for their introduction; Mr. Anderson and diverse other writers placing that event in the year 1521, at the siege of Berwick. (p)

THERE is reason to believe that this innovation in the ancient military system was not generally approved of by the English, or was not productive of any very striking effects, since we scarcely hear any mention made of fire-arms, till they occur in the statute of the 33d of Henry VIII. when it was enacted, that no hand guns should be used of less dimensions than one yard in length, gun and

of the musket; they made use of them not only in sieges to fire over the walls, but also in battles; these large muskets carried to a great distance, and by the size of their balls made terrible wounds: but since on account of their weight they have left off using them in the field, and they are only used in sieges. Harquebusses and pistols with wheel locks are at this time very little known, and rarely to be found, except in arsenals and in the cabinets of arms, where some of them are preserved out of curiosity: I must therefore explain what this wheel was which gave movement to all the springs. It was a little solid wheel of steel, fixed against the plate of the lock of the harquebus or pistol, it had an axis that pierced it in its center, at the interior end of this axis which went into the lock, a chain was fastened, which twisted round it on the wheel being turned, and bent the spring by which it was held: to bend this spring a key was made use of, into which the exterior end of the axis was inserted. By turning this key from left to right, the wheel was made to revolve, and by this movement a little slider of copper, which covered the pan with the priming, retired from over it; and by the same movement the cock, armed with a flint like the cock of a fusil, was in a state to be discharged on pulling the trigger with the finger, as in ordinary pistols; the cock then falling on the wheel, produced fire, and communicated it to the priming.

(o) IN the XLIX yere of King Henry VI. cam King Edward with the Lord Hastings, the Lord Say and IX.C. Englishe men, and III.C. Flemings with hange gunnes. *Leland's Collect.* vol. i. p. 721. Probably the word *hange* is an error of either the transcriber or printer, and should have been *hand*.

(p) ANDERSON'S *Hist. of Commerce*, vol. i. p. 351. The musket is mentioned as a weapon of the infantry in Poland in the year 1475. "Quilibet peditum habeat balistam vel bombardam." *Lit. Casmerii III.* an. 1475. *Leg. Polon.* tom. i. p. 228. These are generally assigned to the year 1520. Add. to vol. i. and ii. of Warton's *Hist. of Poetry*.

stock

stock included, which shews that the early hand guns were of a much smaller length than those afterwards made; probably their calibre was in proportion, in which case they would do but little execution on men mostly armed: this perhaps may, in some measure account for their being so slowly adopted. The piece called the haquebut or hagbut was still shorter, for by the same statute, it might not be under three quarters of a yard long, gun and stock, as before, included. This piece is by some writers supposed to owe its name to its butt being hooked or bent, somewhat like those now used, the butts of the first hand guns being, it is said, nearly straight. There were likewise some pieces called demi haques, either from being less in size, or from having their butts less curved. A sort of pistol, called a dag, was also used about the same time as hand guns and haquebuts. Pistols were so called from being made at Pistoia, in Tuscany. After some time, the haquebut obtained the name of harquebuss, which is by Fauchet derived from the Italian words "arca bouza," or the bow with a hole. It does not appear that the harquebuss was originally confined to any particular length or bore. All these pieces, namely, the hand gun, hackbut, harquebuss and dag, were at first fired with a match, and some of them afterwards with a wheel lock; the former, by means of a spring let down a burning match upon the priming in the pan; and the latter was a contrivance for exciting sparks of fire, by the friction of a notched wheel of steel, at the bottom of the pan, which with a quick revolution grated against a flint; the spring which turned this wheel was wound up, or, as the term was, spanned, with an instrument called a spanner, somewhat like the key of a clock.

THE machinery of the wheel lock is described by Father Daniel in the note, p. 162.

THE inconsiderable execution done by pieces of small calibre probably caused the introduction of the musquet, which was a long heavy piece, carrying large balls, and on account of its size and weight

weight fired on a kind of fork, called a rest; the rest continued in use for a considerable time, but on certain occasions, being found unwieldy and inconvenient, a lighter kind of piece was introduced, generally known by the name of the caliver, (q) which was fired without any such assistance. But before the entire dismissal of the rest, diverse attempts were made to convert it to a defence against cavalry, whilst the musketeer was loading, by arming it with a projecting spike from one of the prongs of the fork, serving for

(q) THE caliver was a lighter kind of matchlock piece, between a harquebus and a musket, and fired without a rest. The following explanation of its name is given by Edmund York, an officer who had served in the low countries, and was employed by Queen Elizabeth to regulate the militia of London, at the time the kingdom was threatened with a Spanish invasion. "I remember (says he) when I was first brought up in Piemont, in the countie of Brisacks regiment of old bandes, we had our particular calibre of harquebuse to our regiment, both for that one bullet should serve all the harquebuses of our regiment, as for that our colonel should not be deceived of his arms; of which word calibre, came first that unapt term, we use, to call a harquebuse a caliver, which is the height of the bullet, and not of the piece. Before the battle of Mountgunter, the princes of the religion caused several thousand harquebuses to be made all of one calibre, which was called harquebuse du calibre de Monsieur le Prince; so, I think some man, not understanding French, brought hither the name of the height of the bullet of the piece, which word calibre is yet continued with our good canoniers." See Matiland's Hist. of London, in Art. Artillery.

SIR John Smith, in his Confutation of Capt. Berwick, MS. Bib. Harl. No. 4685, thus explains the word Caliver: "It is supposed by many, that the weapon, called a caliver, is another thing than a harquebuse; whereas in troth it is not, but only a harquebuse, saviage that it is of greater circuite or bullet, than the other is of; wherefore the Frenchman doth call it a peece de calibre; which is as much as to saie, a peece of bigger circuite." Pecke, in his Desiderata Curiosa, has preserved the price of a caliver and its accoutrements, as paid by the sheriffs of Lancashire, in the reign of Queen Elizabeth, anno 1584, for the use of the recruits raised for the Irish service, which was, the caliver, furnished with flaske and touche box, laces and moulds, thirteen shillings and sixpence. In an estimate, made the 18th of James I. anno 1620, of the expences of a royal army of thirty thousand men, intended to be sent into the Palatinate, a caliver, with bandaleers, is valued at 14s. 10d. The price of a new musket, as settled the 7th of Charles I. was 15s. 6d. a rest, 10d. For a new bandalier, carrying twelve charges, a primer, a priming wire, bullet-bag, and a strap or belt, two inches broad, 2s. 6d.

the



Pub: 16 April 1788 by S. Hooper

INFANTRY.

N. C. Goodnight scul^d

the head, or part on which the musket rests, and is by making a ruck in the shaft of the rest, which is moving a little, and sprung out; rests thus armed, were called rest and feather, or swine's feathers, and were contrivances preceding the use of the bayonet.

THE harquebussers or soldiers bearing harquebusses, were armed with morions, or steel hats called *gasa*, and a cuirass of backs and breasts, and tassets covering their thighs. These suits are known in the tower by the name of harquebuss armour.

When hand guns first came into use, not only balls, but also steel quarrels, and wooden arrows called *spontes*, were discharged from them: of the effects of the last Sir Richard Hawkins gives a very wonderful account, which I own I do not comprehend any more than Lord Verulam's reasoning on it, and have therefore transcribed both passages verbatim et literatim, for the judgment of my readers. "In this discourse, Generall Michael Angeli demanded for what purpose served the little short arrowes which we had in our shippe, and those in great quantitie: I satisfied him that they were for our muskets. They are not as yet in use among the Spa-

(r) THE Swedish, or swine's feather, is mentioned by several ancient military writers, particularly Ward, Turner, and the Duke of Albemarle. "Muskett rests (says Turner) were used a long time, and in some places are yet, to ease the musketeers in discharging their guns, and when they stood sentinel; but in the late expeditions in most parts of Christendom, they have been found more troublesome than helpful; a musketeer on any sudden occasion, not being able to do his duty with musket, sword, and rest, especially if you give him a Swedish feather to manage with them. Bolester, the engineer, speaks of an instrument that might serve for both rest and feather, and such, perhaps, would be very useful and convenient; he would have it at the top as all rests are, but a fork on the one side, whereof he would have an iron, of one foot and a half long, sticking out, sharply pointed; these planted in the van or flanks where you expect the charge, as the Swedish feathers used to be, will sufficiently pallisade and defend musketeers from horse, and upon them they may lean their muskets when they give fire." *Turner's Military History*, p. 270. The Duke of Albemarle, in his *Observations upon Military and Political Affairs*, passed anno 1671, recommends the arming musketeers and dragoons with muskets having swine's feathers, with the heads of rests fastened to them.



Designed by J. B. H. H. H.

W. Goodnight fecit

INFANTRY.

the head, or part on which the musket was laid: or by enclosing a tuck in the shaft of the rest, which on opening a small valve, sprung out; rests thus armed, were called the swines or Sweedish feathers, and were contrivances preceding the use of the bayonet. (r)

THE harquebuffiers or foldiers bearing harquebuffes, were often armed with morions, or steel hats called pots, cuirasses consisting of backs and breasts, and taffets covering their thighs. These suits are known in the tower by the name of harquebuffs armour.

WHEN hand guns first came into use, not only balls, but also steel quarrels, and wooden arrows called sprites, were discharged from them: of the effects of the last Sir Richard Hawkins gives a very wonderful account, which I own I do not comprehend any more than Lord Verulam's reasoning on it, and have therefore transcribed both passages verbatim et literatim, for the judgment of my readers. "In this discourse, Generall Michael Angell demanded for what purpose served the little short arrowes which we had in our shippe, and those in great quantitie: I satisfied him that they were for our muskets. They are not as yet in use among the Spa-

(r) THE Swedish, or swine's feather, is mentioned by several ancient military writers, particularly Ward, Turner, and the Duke of Albemarle. "Musket rests (says Turner) were used a long time, and in some places are yet, to ease the musketeers in discharging their guns, and when they stood centinel; but in the late expeditions in most places in Christendom, they have been found more troublesome than helpful; a musketeer in any sudden occasion, not being able to do his duty with musket, sword, and rest, especially if you give him a Swedish feather to manage with them. Bokeler, the engineer, speaks of an instrument that might serve for both rest and feather, and such, perhaps, would be very useful and convenient; he would have it at the top as all rests are, like a fork on the one side, whereof he would have an iron, of one foot and a half long, sticking out, sharply pointed; these planted in the van or flanks where you expect the charge, as the Swedish feathers used to be, will sufficiently pallisade and defend musketeers from horse, and upon them they may lean their muskets when they give fire." *Turner's Pallas Armata*, p. 176. The Duke of Albemarle, in his *Observations upon Military and Political Affairs*, printed anno 1671, recommends the arming musketeers and dragoons with musquets having swine's feathers, with the heads of rests fastened to them.

niards, yet of singular effect and execution, as our enemies confessed; for the upper worke of their shippes being musket prooffe, in all places they passed through both sides with facilitie, and wrought extraordinary disasters, which caused admiration to see themselves wounded with small shott, where they thought themselves secure, and by no means could find where they entered, nor come to any fight of any of the shott. Hereof they proved to profit themselves after; but for that they wanted the tamp-kings, which are first to be driven home, before the arrow be put in, and as then understood not the secret, they rejected them as uncertaine, and therefore not to be used; but of all the shot used now adayes, for the annoying of an enemy in fight by sea, few are of greater moment for many respects, which I hold not convenient to treat of in publique." (s) Thus far Sir Richard Hawkins. My Lord Verulam, taking the fact for granted, endeavours to account for it on philosophical principles. "The Turkish bowe (says he) giveth a very forcible shoot, insomuch as it hath been known, that the arrow has pierced a steel target, or a piece of brass, two inches thick: but that which is more strange, the arrow, if it be headed with wood, hath been known to pierce through a piece of wood of eight inches thick: and it is certain, that we had in use at one time for sea fight, short arrows which they call sprights, without any other heads save wood sharpened; which were discharged out of muskets, and would pierce through the sides of ships, where a bullet would not pierce. But this dependeth upon one of the greatest secrets in all nature; which is, that similitude of substance will cause attraction, where the body is wholly freed from the motion of gravity; for if that were taken away, lead would draw lead, and gold would draw gold, and iron would draw iron, without the help of the loadstone. But this same motion of weight or gravity

(s) *Voyage to the South Seas*, A. D. 1591, p. 164, sec. lxvi.

(which

(which is a mere motion of matter, and hath no affinity with the form or kinde) doth kill the other motion, except itself be killed by a violent motion; and in these instances of arrows, for then the motion of attraction by similitude of substance beginneth to shew itself. But we shall handle this point of Nature fully in due place. (t)

THE following extract from a military treatise, written in the year 1619, exhibits a striking delineation of the musketeer of those days: (u) "Therefore a souldier must either accustome himselfe to beare a peece or pike: if he bear a peece, then must he first learn to hold the same, to accommodate his match betweene his two formost fingers and his thombe, and to plant the great end on his breast with a gallant souldier-like grace: and being ignorant, to the intent he may be more encouraged, let him acquaint himself first with the firing of touch-powder in his panne, and so by degrees both to shoote off, to bow and beare up his body, and so consequently to attaine to the levell and practise of an assured and serviceable shot, readily charge, and with a comely couch discharge, making choise at the same instant of his marke, with a quick and vigilant eie. His flaske and touch box must keepe his powder, his purse and mouth his bullets; in skirmish his left hand must hold his match and peece, and the right hand use the office of charging and discharging.

BEING against the enemy, whilst with an indented course he doth travell his plaine ground, or else takes advantage of his place and invasion, as under the safeguard of a trench, the back of a

(t) SYLVA Sylvarum, p. 148.

(u) ENGLAND'S Trainings and plainly demonstrating the dutie of a private souldier, with the office of each severall officer belonging to a foot company, and the martiall lawes of the field; as also the office and charge of a colonell; the exercise of trayning or drilling: with diverse other necessary and profitable disciplined notes and observations: by Edward Davies, gentleman, 1619, p. 4.

ditch, old-wall, tree, or such like; let him ever first load his peece with powder out of his flaske, then with her bullet, and last with amuring and touch-powder, foreseeing ever that the panne bee cleane, the cover close, and the tutch-hole wide, or else well proind: so that still observing modest order in his traverse, neither over-flow nor over-speedy, to the entent he become not each man's marke through his sluggishnesse, nor run himself out of breath through his owne rashnesse, for the most parte keeping his side towards his enemie: let him discharge going, but never standing: so shall he the better shunne the enimies shot, and chuse his assured advantage. A souldier ought to be careful that his furniture be good, substantiall, and staunche from raine, the charge of his flaske just for his peece, and the spring quick and sharpe: the pipe of his touch-box somewhat wide, that the powder may have free passage, which otherwise would choak up.

IN time of marching and travelling by the way, let him keepe a paper in his panne and tutch hole, and in wet weather have a case for his peece, somewhat portable, or else of necessitie he must keepe the same from wet under his arm-hole or cassocke, or by some other invention free from damage of the weather, and his match in his pocket, onely that except which he burnes: and that likewise so close in the hollow of his hand, or some artificiall pipe of pewter hanging at his girdle, as the coale by wet or water go not out.

IT is moreover requisite, that a souldier keepe his cocke with oyle free in falling, and his peece bright without rusting, neither must he want his necessarie tooles, as a scowrer, tirebale and worme, having every one a vice to turne into the end of the scouring sticke, so that if thorough wet weather, or any other accident, his peece will not be discharged, the skilful souldier may with his tireball pull out his bullet with the worme, the paper, and wet powder, and with his scourer make his peece cleane within. His scourer must be trimmed on the end with a linen cloth of sufficient substance, therewith to make cleane the cannon of his peece within.

The

The one end of his scouring stick ought to have a round end of bone of just bignesse with the mouth of his peece, therewithall at his pleasure, to ramme in powder and paper, or instead of paper, suche softe haire as they stuff saddles withall, the danger whereof is not like; but this the soldier must use when time permits. During the time of his service let him ever have a diligent care to keepe his peece cleane and bright within, and once a fortnight, or at the least once a month, take out the breech, and throroughly view and wash the barrell within, to see whether it hath any flawes, brackes, chambers, frettings or ruptures, which would endanger the breaking thereof; especially if before hand the end of his bare scourer hath given him any cause to suspect such faults, to the intent he may change the same for a new for feare of spoiling himselfe.

HE that loves the fastie of his owne person, and delights in the goodness and beautie of a peece, let him alwayes make choice of one that is double breeched, and if it be possible, a Myllan peece, for they be of tough and perfect temper, light, square, and bigge of breech, and very strong where the powder doth lie, and where the violent force of the fire doth consist, and notwithstanding thinne at the end.

OUR English peeces approach very neare unto them in goodnesse and beautie (their heavinesse only excepted) so that they be made of purpose, and not one of these common sale peeces with round barrels, whereunto a beaten souldier will have great respect, and choose rather to pay double money for a good peece, than to spare his purse, and endanger himselfe.

BUT to returne to my matter; let a souldier have hanging ever at the strings of his tutch box, or some other readie part of his garment, a couple of proyning pinnes at the least, that if by fortune the tutch hole of his peece be stopped or furred up, hee may therewith both make his pan cleane, and yeeld a ready passage, that the fire may have her course, by incorporating both the tutch-pou-

der without and the corn-powder within together. (x) But a reydy souldier will alwaies foresee that the tutch-hole be so wide as the pouder without in the pan may have free concourse to that within the peece, thereby to hasten more speedy discharge, considering a souldier cannot have leisure and commodity to proine his piece at all times, but must of necessitie use a great dexterity.

BUT since I am false into the speech of a quicke charge and nimble discharge, I will by way declare the opinion of certaine nations therein.

EXPERIENCE of late daies hath taught us, that those nations which followe the warres, invent every way how they may endamage the enemy in all their enterprises, but especially in skirmish, which for the most parte consists in shot, and by such as can with the eye of his minde make an assured levell, and with a nimble discharge, both choose out and kill his enemy.

AND therefore those souldiers which in our time have beene for the most part levied in the low countries, especially those of Artoys and Henault, called by the generall name of Wallownes, have used to hang about their neckes, upon a baudricke or border, or at their girdles, certaine pipes, which they call charges, of copper and tin, made with covers, which they thinke in skirmish to bee the more readie way. But the Spaniard despising that order doth altogether use his flaske.

THE Frenchman, both charge and flaske. But some of our English nation their pocket; which in respect of the danger of the sparks of their match, the uncertaine charge, the expence and spoile of pouder, the discommoditie of wet, I account more apt for the show of a triumph and wanton skirmish before ladies and gentlewomen, then fit for the field in a day of service in the face of an

(x) THIS passage shews that the touch-powder contained in the primer was mealed, or what was formerly called serpentine powder.

enemy: and in like sort the charge which either doth shed and loose his powder, whilst a souldier doth traverse his ground, or else is so cloddered and rammed together, that he shall be forced sometimes to faile of halfe his charge. Therefore I conclude with the Spaniard, that a good flaske is that which is most warlike and ready in service, without the curious help of any extraordinary invention.

ONE of the greatest helps consists in powder and match: for a souldier must ever buy his powder sharpe in taste, well incorporate with saltpeter, and not full of coole-dust. Let him accustome to drie his powder, if hee can in the sunne, first sprinkled over with aqua vitæ or strong claret wine. Let him make his tutch-powder being finely sarsed and sifted, with quick-pale, which is to be bought at the powder makers or apothecaries: and let his match be boiled in ashes-lye and powder, that it will both burne well, carrie a long coale, and that will not breake off with the touch of your finger. The preparations will at the first touch give fire, and procure a violent, speedy, and thundering discharge. Some use brimstone finely powdered in their tutch-powder, but that furs and stops up your breech and tutch-hole.

THE bullet of a souldier's peece must be of a just bignesse with the mouth of the same, so that falling in smoothly, it may drive down, and close up the mouth of the powder. Some contrary to the lawes of the field use chaine-shot, and quarter-shot, which is good in the defence of a breach, to keepe a fortresse, or upon ship-board; but being daily used, it will gaule a peece within, and put it in hazard to breake, specially in a long skirmish where the barrell is hot.

NOTE, that after his peece is very hoate, let the souldier if he can, give somewhat a lesse charge for feare of bursting his peece, unlesse he have good triall thereof. If the stocke of his peece be crooked, he ought to place the end just before above his left pappe:

if long and straight as the Spaniards use them, then upon the point of his right shoulder, using a stately upright pace in discharge.

It is not in vaine to advertise him, that in skirmish he must hold his peece betwixt his thombe and the ends of his fingers, which I account a sure meane, betwixt griping of the barrell, and laying the same onely upon his foremost finger and thombe; for the one is over dangerous, and the other altogether unsteedy.

I JUDGE it likewise most convenient for him, to take hold of his peece with his left hand in that part of the wood (wherein the barrell lies) there as the peece is of most equall ballance; although some accustome themselves to hold it just under the cocke, by reason whereof he shall be enforced to change his hand, if he charge out of a flaske, into the midst of the peece, to bring downe the mouth to his flaske, which is great delay and hinderance in skirmish. So to conclude, he that meanes to be accompted a forward and perfect goode shot, by continuall exercise must be so ready, that in all particular points touching his peece, powder, match, bullets, and the use of them, that he neither be to seeke, nor grow amazed in the furious rage of Bellona's fiery skirmishes, her suddaine surprises and bloody slaughter, of dangerous assaults, of cruell battailes.

THE musket is to be used in all respects like unto the hargabuse, save that in respect he carries a double bullet, and is much more weightie. He useth a staffe breaste high, in the one end a pike to pitch in the ground, and in the other an iron forke to rest his peece upon, and a hoale a little beneath the same in the staffe: whereunto he doth adde a string, which tied and wrapped about his wrest, yeelds him commodity to traine his forke or staffe after him, whilst he in skirmish doth charge his musket afresh with powder and bullet.

Now to speake somewhat of a pikeman's charge, a few words shall suffice, because I will not be over tedious. Let him learne to tesse his pike, couch and crosse the same, to receive the violent charge



Printed & sold by S. Hooper.

A Musketeer with his Match-Lock, Bandoliers and Buckler.

and straight as the Spaniards use them, then upon the point of his right shoulder, using a stately upright pace in discharge.

It is not in vain to advise him, that in skirmish he must hold his peece betwixt his shoulder and the ends of his fingers, which I understand to be meant, betwixt gripping of the barrell, and laying the same evenly upon his foremost finger and thombe; for the one is very dangerous, and the other altogether unsteedy.

It is likewise most convenient for him, to take hold of his peece with his left hand in that part of the wood (wherein the butt is) that there is the peece is of most equall ballance; although some will have him to hold it just under the cocke, by reason whereof he shall be enforced to change his hand, if he charge out of a bush, into the sight of the peece, to bring downe the peece to his hand, which is great delay and hinderance in skirmish. He is moreover, in that meane to be accompted a forward and perfect goods shot, by continuall exercise must be so ready, that in all particular points touching his peece, powder, match, bullets, and the use of them, that he neither be to seeke, nor grow amazed in the furious rage of Bellona's fiery skirmishes, her sudden surpris and bloody slaughter, of dangerous assaults, of cruell battles.

The halberd is to be used in all respects like unto the hargabuse, save that in respect he carries a double bullet, and is much more weightie. He useth a staffe breaste high, in the one end a pike to pitch in the ground, and in the other an iron forke to rest his peece upon, and a hole a little beneath the same in the staffe: whereunto he doth adde a string, which tied and wrapped about his wrist, yields him commodity to traine his forke or staffe after him, whilst he in skirmish doth charge his musket afresh with powder and bullet.

Now to speake somewhat of a pikeman's charge, a few words shall suffice, because I will not be over tedious. Let him learne to with his pike, couch and crosse the same, to receive the violent charge



Pub^d 3 April 1786 by S. Hooper.

Goodnight sculp^d.

A Musketeer with his Match-Lock, Bandoleers and Rest.

charge of horsemen, to front the furious shock of footmen, and be able to furnish out his fight both afarre off and neere hand: which notes with the like will be sufficient, by reason that he is for the most part put to stand in a maine and square battaile. Both the hargabufier, and the pikeman must weare a short rapier and a small poinado: for if in the middest of encounters and skirmishes, they be driven to use them, their length is an occasion they cannot be drawne, unlesse he abandon his peece or pike, whereby he shall either loose his pike, or want his rapier, which at the scra and close, is very necessary both for defence and offence: contrary to the carelesse custome of some whom I have seene come into the field without rapier or dagger, which was an assured argument, that their heeles should be their target, and their shamefull flight their safety, when their powder was spent.

Now as these carelesse persons farre misse the marke with over-great securitie, so some bring in a custome of too much curiositie in arming hargabufiers, for besides a peece, flaske, tutch-box, rapier and dagger, they loade them with a heaue shirt of male, and a burganet: so that by that time they have marched in the heat of sommer, or deepe of the winter, ten or twelve English miles, they are more apt to rest, then ready to fight, whereby it comes to passe, that either the enterprize they go about, which requires celerity, shall become frustrate by reason of the stay they make in refreshing themselves, or else they are in danger to be repulsed, for want of lustinesse, breath and agilitie.

WHEREFORE in mine opinion it is not necessary, that this extraordinary arming of shot should be used, but in surprises of townes, escalades, and assaults of breeches, to defend the fouldiers heads from stones, and such stuffe as they besieged have prepared to drive them from their enterprize: or else in some speciall set battaile against the cut and thrust of weapons: which exploits, for that they be not so ordinarye as is the skirmish, so are these armes nothing so necessarie, but rather a burthen, more beautiful than beneficiall.

beneficiall, and of greater charge then commoditie, specially a shirt of male, which is very dangerous for shot, if a number of those small peeces should bee driven into a man's body by a bullet.

THE furniture due to a pikeman, besides his pike, rapier and dagger, consisting of a common corselet, having a collar, curiat, tases, back-part, poldrowes, wambrasses, and burganets for the head, for that they be sufficiently knowne, because I will not be over prolix upon every particular point, I will onely say thus much more touching the pikeman, that he ought to have his pike at the point and middest trimmed with handsome tassels, and a handle, not so much for ornament, as to defend the souldiers body from water, which in raine doth runne downe alongst the wood. (y)

EVERY souldier ought to carry his hargabuse, pike, or halberd, upon that shoulder and side which is outward in ranke, for that side which is discovered inward is more defended by the general order that is kept than any other, which order of carrying armes is not onely ready and commodious to use at all occasions, but also doth make a gallant shew, and a general forme of good proportion and true prospect; a thing most necessarie for a man of valour to use in all his doings." (z)

THE exchange of the match-lock musket for the fire-lock, fusil,

(y) THE parts of this quotation describing the armour and appointments of the pikeman, which have been already treated of, being very short, were here given, to avoid breaking the thread of the description.

(z) ALTHOUGH the arms and appointments of a musketeer are here pretty minutely described, it may be necessary to observe, that the Flemish custom for soldiers to carry their powder in small cases of copper, tin, leather, pasteboard or other substances, with each its cover, was adopted here; a dozen of them hung to a belt worn over the left shoulder, was called a bandaleer, or bandaleers; to the same belt hung the bullet bag, flask for priming, and sometimes the spare match. These small cases were sometimes fixed to a belt worn round the waist. The arms and appointments of a musketeer about the 13th of Charles II. are specified in p. 27.

or snaphance, (a) most probably was not made at the same time, throughout the army, but brought about by degrees. The fire-lock seems to have been known as early as the reign of Henry VIII. many pieces so named occur in the survey of the different armouries and arsenals of this realm and its dependencies, taken 1st Ed. VI. (b) but whether by the term fire-lock a wheel-lock was meant, admits of a doubt; certainly the wheel-lock is as much a fire-lock as the snaphance, both being fired by the collision of the flint and steel. The duke of Albemarle recommends arming a dragoon with a snaphance to a musket barrel, because on occasion he might use it on horseback, and go upon service in the night, without being discovered by the light of his match. (c)

THE fire-lock musket is also recommended by the earl of Orrery, in preference to that with the match-lock, in his Treatise on the Art of War, published in the year 1677, (d) for which he gives these reasons: "First, it is exceedingly more ready; for with the firelock you have only to cock, and you are prepared to shoot; but

(a) SNAPHANCE, the Dutch name for a fire-lock; the first firelocks were so called here.

(b) GREENWICH, item, one chamber pece blacke, the stocke of redde woode, set with bone worke, with a fier-locke in a case of crymsen vellet. Item, one longe white pece, with a fier-locke. Item, one longe pece, graven and guilte, with a stocke of redde woode, set with white bone, with a fier-lock, in a case of lether. Item, two chamber peeces, guilt and graven, with a fier-locke, in a stocke of yellow vellet, &c. *Mr. Brander's MS.*

(c) OBSERVATIONS upon Military and Political Affairs, by George duke of Albemarle, 1671, p. 27. To prevent the matches being seen in the night, small metal tubes of about a foot long, big enough to contain a match, and pierced full of little holes to admit the air, were worn by the Flemish musketeers; this contrivance is said to have been invented by Maurice, prince of Orange, and was the origin of grenadiers match-boxes. These tubes are described by Walhuysen, in p. 136 of his book entitled *l'Art Militaire pour l'infanterie*, pub. in 1615.

(d) CAPT. SMITH, in his Military Dictionary, says, fire-locks were first made use of in 1690, when match-locks were universally disused; but he does not cite any authority for this assertion.

with your match-lock you have several motions, the least of which is as long a performing, as but that one of the other, and oftentimes much more hazardous; besides if you fire not the match-lock musket as soon as you have blown your match (which often, especially in hedge fights and in sieges, you cannot do) you must a second time blow your match, or the ashes it gathers hinders it from firing.

SECONDLY, the match is very dangerous, either where bandeleers are used, or where soldiers run hastily in fight to the budge-barrel, to refill their bandeleers; I have often seen sad instances thereof.

THIRDLY, marching in the nights, to avoid an enemy, or to surprise one, or to assault a fortress, the matches often discover you, and inform the enemy where you are, whereby you suffer much, and he obtains much.

FOURTHLY, in wet weather, the pan of the musket being made wide open for a while, the rain often deads the powder, and the match too; and in windy weather, blows away the powder, ere the match can touch the pan: nay, often in very high winds, I have seen the sparks blown from the match, fire the musket ere the soldier meant it; and either thereby lose his shot, or wound or kill some one before him. Whereas in the firelock, the motion is so sudden, that what makes the cock fall on the hammer, strikes the fire, and opens the pan at once.

LASTLY, to omit many other reasons, the quantity of match used in an army, does much add to the baggage, and being of a very dry quality, naturally draws the moisture of the air, which makes it relax, and consequently less fit, though carried in close waggons: but if you march without waggons, the match is the more exposed; and without being dried again in ovens, is but of half the use which otherwise it would be of: and which is full as bad, the skeans you give the corporals, and the links you give the private soldiers (of which near an enemy, or on the ordinary guard duty, they must never be unfurnished) if they lodge in huts or
tents

tents, or if they keep guard in the open field, (as most often it happens) all the match for instant service is too often rendered uncertain, or useless; nothing of all which can be said of the flint, but much of it to the contrary.

AND then the soldiers generally wearing their links of match near the bottom of the belt, on which their bandaleers are fastened, in wet weather generally spoil the match they have, and if they are to fight on a sudden, and in the rain, you lose the use of your small shot, which is sometimes of irreparable prejudice."

A SMALL anonymous military treatise (e) printed in the year 1680, says the fusil or fire-lock was then in use in our army, especially among the fusileers and grenadiers; in all likelihood the appellation of fusileers was given to those troops who were armed with fusils; in that case the date of the eldest regiment of that denomination will give some little direction toward finding their first introduction.

PERHAPS the fusileers regiments were originally a sort of grenadiers, as like them they wear caps, and have no ensigns. (f)

(e) ENGLISH Military Discipline, or the Way and Method of exercising Horse and Foot, printed for Richard Harford, p. 19.

(f) FUSILEERS are foot soldiers armed with fuses with slings to sling them. There are four regiments in our army, which have always been called fusileers, and go by the name of the English, Scotch, Irish, and Welch fusesleers; but now we have none but fusesleers abroad, for the pikes are quite laid aside. The first design of fusesleers was to guard the artillery, for which end the regiment of English fusileers, now commanded by Sir Charles O'Hara were first raised. To supply the want of pikes, and to secure themselves against horse, the fusileers used to carry turnpikes along with them, which in a camp were placed along the front of a battalion, and on a march were carried by the soldiers, each carrying one of the short pikes, and two, by turns, the sparr through which they are thrust, so that they were quickly put together. *Gentleman's Dictionary*. According to Millan's Succession of Colonels, the 7th regiment, or royal English fusileers, were raised, June 11th, 1685; the 21st regiment, or royal North British fusileers, 23d Sept. 1679; the 23d, or royal Welch fusileers, 17th March, 1688, but there is no Irish regiment bearing the appellation of fusileers.

THE use of cartridges, which seems to have taken place about the same time as the firelock, introduced the cartridge-box instead of the bandeleers. This was a very considerable improvement, as the ammunition was not only more commodiously and safely carried, but by using cartridges, a soldier was enabled to fire at least three times the number of shot he could discharge when loading from his bandeleers, which were besides subject to many inconveniencies and objections. Their imperfections are fully stated by my lord Orrery. "I am also (says he) on long experience, an enemy to the use of bandeleers, but a great approver of boxes of cartridges; for then but by biting off the bottom of the cartridge, you charge your musket for service with one ramming.

I WOULD have these cartridge boxes of tin, as the carabines use them, because they are not so apt to break as the wooden ones are, and do not in wet weather, or lying in the tents, relax.

BESIDES, I have often seen much prejudice in the use of bandeleers, which being worn in the belts for them, above the soldiers coats, are often apt to take fire, especially if the match-lock musquet be used; and when they take fire, they commonly wound and often kill him that wears them, and those near him: for likely if one bandaleer take fire, all the rest do in that collar: they often tangle those which use them on service, when they have fired, and are falling off by the flanks of the files of the intervals, to get into the rear to charge again. To which I shall add, that in secret attempts in the night; their rattling often discovers the design, and enables the enemy to prevent it; and in the day time on service, especially if the weather be windy, their rattling also too frequently hinders the soldiers from hearing, and consequently obeying, the officer's word of command, which must be fatal when it happens: whereas the cartridge boxes exempt those who use them from all these dangers and prejudices: they enable the soldiers on service to fire more expeditiously; they are also usually worn about the waste of the soldier, the skirts of whose doublet and his coat, doubly

doubly defend them from all rain that doth not pierce both; and being worn close to his body, the heat thereof keeps the powder dryer, and therefore more fit to be fired in service.

BESIDES all this, whoever loads his musket with cartridges, is sure the bullet will not drop out, though he takes his aim under breast high, for the paper of the cartridge keeps it in; whereas those soldiers which on service take their bullets out of their mouths (which is the nimblest way) or out of their pouches, which is slow, seldom put any paper, tow or grafs, to ram the bullet in; whereby if they fire above breast high, the bullet passes over the head of the enemy; and if they aim low, the bullet drops out ere the musket is fired; and 'tis to this that I attribute the little execution I have seen musketeers do in time of fight, though they fired at great battalions, and those also reasonable near.

IT might also do well, if the soldiers tyed their links of match about their middle, and under their coat and doublets, instead of tying them to their bandeleer belt, or collar, for by that means the match would be kept dryer, and fitter for service in the time of action.

THE institution of grenadiers originated in France, from whence we borrowed it; they were, as their denomination imports, soldiers trained to the art of throwing hand grenades, in the attack of trenches or the covert way."

FATHER DANIEL says the first grenadiers in the French troops were placed in the king's regiment, in the year 1667, when there were four of them in each company, and that in the year 1670, the king united them into one company, the command of which he gave to M. de Riotor, who was the first captain of grenadiers.

I HAVE not been able to discover the time, when grenadiers were first introduced into the English army: Smith, in his Military Dictionary, says they were first known here in the year 1685; but in this he is greatly mistaken; as in a list of the army, published in the

year 1684, (g) we meet with grenadier companies to most of the regiments of infantry; they were armed with muskets and bayonets, without swords, and wore caps.

GRENADIERS, at their first institution, were not confined to the infantry; for to each of the three troops of horse-guards, a corps of sixty-four grenadiers, with two drums, four hautbois, two corporals, two serjeants, and two lieutenants, were attached. These corps were armed with harquebuzes and bayonets, and distinguished by caps and looped clothes, (h) but had no captains, being then considered as parts of the troops of guards to which they were annexed: they appear to have been afterwards formed into two troops; the first, October 4th, 1693; the second on the 27th of May, 1702. The command of them were given to the earl of Cholmondeley, and W. Lord Forbes.

IN a book of exercise, (i) published by authority in the year 1686, the grenadiers appear to have been armed with fire-lock, or snaphance muskets, slings, swords, daggers and pouches with grenades; they had also hatchets, with which, after firing and throwing their grenades, they were on the word of command "fall on," to rush upon the enemy. The practice of screwing the dagger into the muzzle of the piece, is also there directed; it likewise appears that they then loaded with cartridges, and that the match-

(g) A GENERAL and complete List Military of every commission officer of horse and foot, now commanding his majestie's land forces of England (excepting the unregimented companies) as also the proper distinctions of their cloathings, badges of honour, and colours of each troop and regiment. The names of the chief officers of the ordnance, and other officers belonging to the army, &c. &c. as established at the time of the review upon Putney Heath, the 1st of October, 1684, &c.

(h) THIS distinction is mentioned in the old grenadier song:

Come let us fill a bumper, and drink a health to those,

Who wear the caps and pouches, and eke the looped clothes.

(i) AN Abridgment of the English Military Discipline, printed by especial command, for the use of his majestie's forces, 1686.

lock and fire-lock or snaphance were both then in use, the exercise for both being laid down in that book.

IN another book of exercise, published also by royal authority, in the year 1690, (k) the match-lock exercise and the use of the bandileers are still retained, but the grenadiers appear to have been armed with fire-locks, and to have used cartridges; their daggers are here stiled bayonets, but were still screwed into the muzzles of their pieces. Bayonets were solely appropriated to the grenadiers and dragoons. The hatchet is not mentioned in this book.

I HAVE in vain endeavored to ascertain the precise time when the bayonets of the present form were first adopted here; that improvement, as well as the original invention, is of French (l) extraction. The following anecdote respecting that weapon was communicated to me by Lieutenant Colonel Christopher Maxwell, of the

(k) THE Exercise of the Foot, with the evolutions according to the words of command, as they are explained; as also the forming of battalions, with directions to be observed by all colonels, captains, and other officers in their majesties armies: by their majesties command, 1690.

(l) FATHER DANIEL says, the regular introduction of bayonets took place in France about the year 1671, the first corps armed with them was the regiment of fusileers raised that year, and since called the royal regiment of artillery, but although the adoption of the bayonet is so recent, the idea of it had long occurred to different officers, some of whom had occasionally put it in practice; among them was Monsieur de Puisegar, in the district in Flanders, where he commanded: "For my part (says he in his Memoirs) when I commanded in Bergue, in Ypres, Dixmude and Quenoque, all the parties I sent out passed the canals in this fort; it is true that the soldiers had no swords, but they had bayonets with handles of a foot long, the blades of these bayonets were as long as the handles, the ends of which were fitted for being put into the barrels of the fusils, to defend themselves, if attacked after they had fired." The term bayonet was derived from these weapons being first made at Bayonne in Spain; they were called by the French bayonets a manche, or bayonets with handles, there are many of them in the small armory in the tower of London. The modern bayonets are called bayonets a douille, i. e. bayonets with sockets.

30th regiment of foot, who had it from his grandfather, formerly lieutenant colonel of the 25th regiment of foot.

IN one of the campaigns of King William III. in Flanders, in an engagement, the name of which he had forgot, there were three French regiments, whose bayonets were made to fix after the present fashion, a contrivance then unknown in the British army; one of them advanced against the 25th regiment with fixed bayonets; Lieut. Col. Maxwell who commanded it, ordered his men to screw their bayonets into their muzzles to receive them; thinking they meant to decide the affair point to point; but to his great surprize, when they came within a proper distance, the French threw in a heavy fire, which for a moment staggered his people, who by no means expected such a greeting, not conceiving it possible they could fire with fixed bayonets; they nevertheless recovered themselves, charged and drove the enemy out of the line.

NOTWITHSTANDING this instance of the superiority of the socket bayonet, it seems as if that invention was not immediately adopted, but that the old bayonets underwent a mutation or two, before they arrived at their present form; one of them was a couple of rings fixed into their handle, for the purpose of receiving the muzzle of the piece, like the socket of the present bayonet, by which means the soldier was enabled both to fire, and load his musket, without unfixing it. The late Reverend Mr. Gostling, of Canterbury, who was extremely inquisitive respecting military affairs, told me he remembered to have seen two horse grenadiers ride before the coach of Queen Anne, with their bayonets fixed by means of the rings here described.

The 42d regiment of foot differs from all the others in his majesty's service, in their dress and appointments, their uniform being the ancient habit of the Scottish Highlanders, consisting of the bonnet, plaid, red jacket faced with blue, the Philibeg and Tartan hose. Their arms, besides those borne by the other regiments of infantry, namely firelocks and bayonets, are large basket hilted broad



Pub. 20 Dec. 1786 by S. Hooper

An Officer & Serjeant of a Highland Regiment.

broad swords, and daggers of about eighteen inches long, called dirks. (m)

THIS regiment was composed of independent companies raised for the protection of the country against robbers, thence called the high-land watch, they were regimented Oct. 25th, 1739, when John earl of Crauford was appointed colonel. (n) Some of the chiefs in raising these companies had given them promises they were not authorised by government to make; among other inducements to enlist, thus improperly held forth, it is said, the men were assured they should not go out of their own country; under the faith of this promise, many reputable farmers and yeomen's sons entered themselves as privates in the corps, who would not otherwise have thought of enlisting.

It being found necessary to send this regiment on foreign service, it was ordered up to the environs of London, in the beginning of May, 1741, and was the fourteenth reviewed on a Sunday common by General Wade.

A REPORT having been circulated that it was destined to the West Indies, a great uneasiness arose among the private men, which was increased on account of some stoppages in their pay, probably only the usual arrears: these discontents were fomented by some evil minded people, who magnified to them the unwholesomeness of the country, to which they were supposed to be ordered, and terrified them with a tale of the miseries on the expedition under General Wentworth.

UNDER the influence of these notions a body of one hundred and fifty of them assembled, on the 1st June, 1741, at the High-

(m) I doubt whether the dirk is part of their regular arms, the 1st battalion in the year 1747, most of the private men had them, and some of them were used to carry targets; the regiment was then on service in Flanders.

(n) See Millar's Succession of Colonels.



An Officer & Serjeant of a Highland Regiment.

broad swords, and daggers of about eighteen inches long, called dirks. (m)

THIS regiment was composed of independent companies raised for the protection of the country against robbers, thence called the high-land watch, they were regimented Oct. 25th, 1739, when John earl of Crauford was appointed colonel. (n) Some of the chiefs in raising these companies had given them promises they were not authorised by government to make; among other inducements to enlist, thus improperly held forth, it is said, the men were assured they should not go out of their own country; under the faith of this promise, many reputable farmers and yeomen's sons entered themselves as privates in the corps, who would not otherwise have thought of enlisting.

IT being found necessary to send this regiment on foreign service, it was ordered up to the environs of London, in the beginning of May, 1743, and was the fourteenth reviewed on Finchley common by General Wade.

A REPORT having been circulated that it was destined to the West Indies, a great uneasiness arose among the private men, which was increased on account of some stoppages in their pay, probably only the usual arrears: these discontents were fomented by some evil minded people, who magnified to them the unwholesomeness of the country, to which they were supposed to be ordered, and terrified them with the fate of the troops on the expedition under General Wentworth.

UNDER the influence of these notions a body of one hundred and fifty of them assembled, on the 17th, about Hampstead and High-

(m) I DOUBT whether the dirk is part of their regimental arms, but I remember in the year 1747, most of the private men had them, and many were also permitted to carry targets; the regiment was then on service in Flanders.

(n) SEE Millan's Succession of Colonels.

gate, with their arms, fourteen cartridges each, and six days provisions, and putting themselves under the command of a corporal of the name of M'Pherson, marched off with a resolution to return to Scotland; the remainder of the regiment was ordered for immediate embarkation.

ON the news of this mutiny, a party of General Wade's horse, commanded by Captain Ball, was sent, by General Blakeney, after the fugitives, towards Stilton, on which they took shelter in Lady-Wood, four miles from Oundle in Northamptonshire; of this Major Creed, one of the justices of the peace for that county, having information, on the 21st went to them, and endeavoured to persuade them to lay down their arms, to which, on condition of a pardon, they seemed somewhat inclinable; whereupon that gentleman engaged to write in their favour to the duke of Montague, and wrote at the same time to Major Otway, who then commanded the horse sent after them, to request that he would not proceed to extremities till he had received his grace's answer; but the Highlanders having moved to another part of the wood, contrary to their promise, General Wade was applied to for further orders; and a squadron of General Churchill's regiment was ordered to surround the wood, whilst Captain Ball endeavoured to bring them to a peaceable submission, which they at first rejected; but on finding they were surrounded, they sent to desire Captain Ball might again come to them with conditions of capitulation; but nothing less than an unconditional surrender being required of them, they absolutely refused it, and declared they would defend themselves to the last; but the Captain conferring with them separately, M'Pherson was prevailed upon to lay down his arms; his example was immediately followed by the rest, and they were conducted to the tower under a strong guard; a court martial was immediately appointed, and three of their leaders, Samuel and Malcolm M'Pherson, corporals, and Farquhar Shaw, private, were sentenced to die, and on the 18th of July were shot on the parade in the tower,
the



Pub. 20 Jan. 1781 by J. Hooper.

HIGHLAND SOLDIERS.



Pub. 20 Jan 1787 by J. Hooper.

HIGHLAND SOLDIERS.



A Piper of a Highland Regiment.

the rest of their camerades being drawn out to see the sentence executed. The unhappy men met their fate with great fortitude, and the remainder of the mutineers were in September disposed of to different foreign garrisons, thirty to Gibraltar, twenty to Minorca, twenty to the leeward islands, to Jamaica twenty-eight, and to Georgia thirty-eight, the last were allowed to carry their wives with them; these men marched for the places of their destination with the greatest shew of alacrity and satisfaction; thus ended this unhappy affair; and it is but justice to observe, that this regiment, by its faithful and gallant behaviour, in a variety of instances, has much more than effaced any stigma that might have fallen on it, from the error of a few deceived brave, but ill-judging men, who conceived themselves defrauded of their pay, and entrapped to serve in a foreign and unwholesome climate, contrary to the most solemn promises: like justice also requires it to be said, that government behaved in this instance with all possible lenity; to have pardoned all the offenders would have been a dangerous precedent: in military transactions, strict justice, and even severity to a few, is frequently mercy to the whole. (o)

THERE

(o) THIS transaction likewise shews the danger and even cruelty of making promises to recruits, under any thing less than the greatest certainty they will be faithfully observed; the contrary has more than once produced the most dangerous mutinies, and that even among the Highland regiments, whose education tends to make them more regular and subordinate than either the English or Irish; and if the causes of almost every mutiny that has happened, are diligently and dispassionately enquired into and weighed, it will be found that nine times out of ten, the soldiers, however wrong and unjustifiable in that mode of seeking redress, have had great reason for complaint, generally of the breach of some positive promise made them at enlisting.

AMONG these breaches of promise may be reckoned draughting of regiments. A country lad frequently engages in a corps, because his brother, his cousin, or several of his townsmen belong to it; or perhaps because the son of his father's landlord, or his nephew, is an officer in it; this man perhaps would not have engaged in any other corps; here probably, after some years service, he acquires a good character, and the confidence of his

THERE were during the last war and that of 1760, several other Highland corps, which have been reduced.

It having been found necessary on many occasions to embark a number of soldiers on board our ships of war, and mere landsmen being at first extremely unhealthy, and for some time, until they had been accustomed to the sea, in a great measure unserviceable, it was at length, judged expedient to appoint certain regiments for that service, who were trained to the different modes of sea fighting, and also made useful in some of those manœuvres of a ship, where a great number of hands were required; these, from the nature of their duty, were distinguished by the appellations of maritime soldiers and marines.

THE precise time when this institution first took place, is, like many other pieces of military history, involved in obscurity. The oldest corps of this kind I have been able to discover, stands the third regiment of infantry in the List of the Army for the year

officers, and consequently those little indulgences usually and with propriety granted to a good soldier; and he, on his side looks upon the regiment as his brothers, and the commanding officer as his father, in short, contracts that affection for the corps, which every officer and soldier feels for the regiment in which he first served; how cruel, how impolitic is it then to tear him from it, and to send him to a regiment where his good qualities are unknown, and where he, for a long time, is no more regarded than the most worthless malingering. The legality of this measure I have besides heard disputed, at least according to the common form of our attestations. It has been pleaded, that an attestation contains a specific agreement to serve the king in one particular corps and no other; that an agreement to serve in the cavalry does not bind the contracting party to serve in the infantry or marines; nor will an undertaking to serve as a private soldier in the 10th or any particular regiment of foot, compel the undertaker to serve in the 20th or any other corps, but that specified. It may be said that these distinctions are too like the quibbles of an attorney; it is granted: but would it not be best to avoid every shadow of doubt, or means of quibble? which may be done by inserting the power of draughting in the attestation. Should it be asked, how is any corps on foreign service to be otherwise recruited? the answer is, by volunteers from the different regiments at home, a measure never known to fail, and by which a corps gets rid of those restless spirits, who are best when employed on active service.

1684, before quoted; it there appears under the description of "the Lord High Admiral of England, his Royal Highness the Duke of York and Albany's maritime regiment of foot, commanded by the Hon. Sir Charles Littleton, called also the Admiral Regiment." It then consisted of twelve companies, without grenadiers, the men were clothed in yellow coats, lined with red, their colours were a red cross, with rays of the sun issuing from each of its angles. This was not the present third regiment now distinguished by the name of the old buffs, that regiment then stood the fourth on the list, and was commanded by John earl of Mulgrave. (p) Probably the admiral regiment was reduced, by which the buffs gained a step in seniority. Nothing respecting it appears in Millan's List.

IN the reign of King William III. there were several marine regiments, particularly those of Colonel Mordaunt, Colonel Thomas Brudenell, Colonel William Seymour, and Colonel William Dutton Colt. By a vote of parliament, 1st August, 1698, three of the abovementioned corps, namely, Mordaunt's, Seymour's, and Colt's, were put on the establishment of the navy, and were afterwards disbanded. (q)

IN the beginning of the reign of Queen Anne, six regiments of marines were raised: the following account of them is given in

(p) THIS agrees with Millan's List of the Succession of Colonels, according to which, this regiment was raised 31st of March, 1665, and J. earl of Mulgrave, the second of that name and title appears colonel, 26th January, 1684. This regiment is said, by Major Dunkin, in his Military Collections and Remarks, published at New York, A. D. 1777, "to have the privilege of marching through the city of London, with drums beating, and colours flying, which the city disputes not only with all other marching corps, but even with the king's guards, going on duty to the tower." It was called the Holland regiment, from having been, with diverse others, in the service of the states. The same privilege of marching through the city, is, it is said, claimed by the marines.

(q) THE Journals also mention the Marquis of Caermarthen's, Sir Cloudesly Shovel's and Lord Torrington's regiments of marines, disbanded about the year 1698.

Burchet's Naval History: (r) "Here let me take up a little of your time by acquainting you, that her majesty was pleased to establish six marine regiments; but they were put on a different foot than those which were thought necessary at the beginning, but discontinued before the close of the last war; for as the soldiers were formerly discharged from the regiments, and entered on the ship's books as foremast men, when they had qualified themselves to serve as such, and no money allowed to the officer to procure others in their room; so now when any of the marine soldiers died, or were otherwise missing, the companies were only made full by levy money to the officers, without any regard to their being a nursery for seamen, which was one of the principal motives for the first raising such a body of men. The charge of these regiments was defrayed by the navy, as being part of the men voted by parliament for sea service, and money was issued out from time to time, by the treasurer thereof, by warrants from the lord high treasurer, to a person particularly appointed to receive and pay the same; so that the navy board, who as well as the admiralty, were, in the former war, put to a considerable trouble on this account, had no other now, than the ordering the payment of money, from time to time, in gross sums; and that the reader may be informed what the annual charge of these regiments was, I have hereafter inserted the establishment; (s) and in the next place, the rules established by her majesty for their government.

EXPERIENCE hath shewn that these regiments have been very useful, but more especially upon fitting out squadrons of ships for an immediate expedition; for as they are constantly quartered when not at sea, as near the principal ports as possible, namely, Plymouth, Portsmouth, and Chatham, so were they with great fa-

(r) BOOK 5. chap. 9, p. 615. || (s) THE establishment will be given under the article of pay.

cility put on board such ships as had most occasion for them; for they were under the immediate direction of the admiralty; and the rules and instructions for the better government of them, settled by her majesty in council, the 1st of July, 1702, were as follows, viz.

I. THEY were to be employed on board her majesty's ships, as there should be occasion, and quartered (as I have already said) at or near as might be, to the dock-yards, when on shore, to guard them from embezzlements, or any attempt of the enemy.

II. IN all matters relating to their subsistence and clearings, when on board or on shore, they were to be paid in like manner as the land forces, and the same deductions to be made from them for cloathing, and one day's pay once a year from each soldier for the hospital.

III. THEY were to be allowed an equal proportion of provisions with the seamen, without deductions from their pay for the same.

IV. AND to have the same allowance for short provisions as the seamen, to be paid to them or their assigns.

V. SUCH part of the regiments as should be on shore were to be mustered by a commissary or commissaries, in the same manner as the land forces, excepting in this case that they, the said commissaries, were obliged to allow at each muster on his or their rolls, all such officers and soldiers as should appear to him or them, by authentic vouchers and certificates, to be put on board any of her majesty's ships or vessels: and that such part of the aforesaid regiment as should be at sea, might be paid whilst they were so, it was directed, that the commanding marine officer with them should, every two months, return to the commissary general of the musters, a perfect list of all the officers and soldiers on board each ship, signed by himself and all the marine officers, expressing the times of entry, death and discharge of each man, that so the commissary might compare the said lists with the monthly books sent to the Navy Office,

Office, and allow such of the said officers as should appear to him fit to be allowed.

VI. To prevent confusion, not less than fifteen marine soldiers, and with them an officer, were to be put on board a ship, at any one time, unless in cases of necessity.

VII. AND for the ease of the whole, a particular paymaster was appointed, with power to solicit the arrears of the regiments, and to receive all sums of money from the treasurer of the navy, and immediately upon the receipt thereof to issue the same to the respective colonels or their agents; he was also required diligently and carefully to adjust all accounts relating to the regiments, according to such muster rolls as should be delivered to him by the commissary, or commissaries, and those muster rolls were to be allowed of, as sufficient vouchers for the charges in the accounts, and for making out debentures and warrants.

VIII. To enable the aforesaid paymaster to keep an office, and to defray the charge thereof, and of clerks and other contingencies, he was allowed sixpence in the pound, pursuant to the subscription of the respective colonels, which he had power to deduct out of all monies issued to him, in the same manner as the poundage is deducted from the land forces.

IX. FOR rendering such part of the regiments as should be on shore, the more useful, her majesty declared it should be left to herself or the high admiral, to dispose of them at such places nearest to the several dock-yards, as might be judged most convenient: and since there might be occasion for labourers to dispatch necessary works, her majesty empowered her high admiral, or commissioners for executing that office, to cause to be employed in the aforesaid dock-yards, so many of the marine soldiers as should be judged fitting, and to make them such daily allowance for the same, besides their ordinary pay, as to him or them should seem reasonable.

AND

AND for the better regulating of these regiments, his royal highness, as lord high admiral, empowered Colonel William Seymour (brigadier, and since lieutenant general of his majesty's forces) to take upon him the command of them, and not only to see that they are well quartered, but that the respective officers diligently attend their duty, and that, when ordered on board her majesty's ships, the soldiers were supplied with proper sea cloaths, chests, and other necessaries.

IN the war preceding the peace of 1748, there were ten regiments of marines, which were disbanded about the year 1749; these were under the direction of the lords of the admiralty, and when ashore were quartered in the neighbourhood of the docks and sea ports.

IN the year 1755 a number of companies of marines were raised, under the direction of the secretary of war: they were afterwards formed into three divisions, and stationed at the towns of Plymouth, Portsmouth, and Chatham; and at each of these places have now convenient barracks. These companies, A. D. 1761, being 130 in number, were, from the time of their establishment, put under the immediate direction of the lords of the admiralty. At the peace many of them were reduced, and in 1770 there remained only seventy companies; but in the year 1782, they were increased to one hundred and fifty; at present they consist of seventy companies.

THE marines are clothed and armed in the same manner as his majesty's other corps of infantry, their uniform is scarlet, turned up with white, white linings, waistcoats and breeches; they also wear caps, like those of the fusileer regiments, this caused them when serving on shore, at the siege of Bellisle (where they gained great honour) to be called by the French les petits grenadiers.

THE invalids form another department of the British forces. These consist of soldiers partly disabled by their wounds, and veterans, who from old age and length of service are rendered incapable

ble of the duties of an active campaign, but are still judged fit for garrison duty. Of these the 41st regiment is composed, (t) and there were likewise in 1782, thirty-six independent companies, forming the garrisons of Jersey, Guernsey, Scilly, Portsmouth, Plymouth, Chester, Hull, and other forts and castles. Invalids have been known in this kingdom ever since the restoration of Charles II. The invalids are armed like other regiments of infantry, their uniform red, faced with blue, and plain button holes.

THE fencible corps were a species of militia, raised for the defence of particular districts, from which several of them could not by the conditions of their institution be detached. The first of these corps were the fencible men of Argileshire, who were raised the 21st of July, 1759; their service was restricted to the county in which they were raised. The adjutant and quarter master of this corps were the only officers entitled to half pay.

SEVERAL of these fencible corps, and others called provincial regiments, both foot and dragoons, were raised in the years 1778 and 1779, when by a clause in an act of parliament, their officers were declared to rank with those of militia, according to the dates of their commissions; (u) consequently they ranked with the army as youngest of each degree.

ABOUT the same time many new regiments were raised, several

(t) THE 41st regiment was regimented 11th March, 1719: in 1782, there were ten independent companies of invalids in Ireland.

(u) AND whereas it is necessary to ascertain the rank to be held by the officers of certain corps raised or to be raised, within that part of Great Britain, called Scotland, called fencible men, or of any other corps of men, which may be raised within Great Britain, wherein such officers shall not be entitled to rank or half pay, except during the time of the actual service of such corps, with respect to the officers of the militia of that part of Great Britain called England, during the time that the officers of such corps, and of the militia shall serve together; be it therefore enacted by the authority aforesaid, that the officers of such corps and of the militia, of equal degree, shall rank according to the date of their respective commissions. Stat. 18 Geo. III. cap. 59.

of whose colonels, field officers and captains, having never served before, or having no military rank, it was stipulated by the secretary of war with them, that they should not be entitled to either rank or half pay after the reduction of their corps, but the ensigns, or those officers who came from the half pay or out of established regiments, and gained only one step, were permitted to retain their acquired rank, with the half pay belonging to it. (x)

THE city of London seems to have long had somewhat like a militia for its own particular defence. Maitland says, such a force is mentioned in the Saxon Chronicle, as early as the year 896, under the title of auxillaries, when they having joined Alfred, marched to dislodge the Danes from a town in Hertfordshire, supposed to have been Hertford.

THE present city trained bands appear to have arisen out of the artillery company, a body of the principal citizens who voluntarily assembled to practise archery and military exercises, and who, three years after their first institution, amounted to near three hundred men. (y)

FROM this body in the year 1585, when the kingdom was threatened with a Spanish invasion, many persons were appointed officers

(x) DIVERSE independent companies were also raised towards the close of this war and that of 1762, some of which were afterwards regimented. These were mostly raised by subalterns, who undertook to complete them against a stated time, and at their own expence, on condition of being appointed to the command of them. The best idea of these companies may be gathered from the definition given of them by a private soldier at Belleisle, during the siege of Palais. A number of these independent companies being regimented were sent out to that place; one night in the trenches an officer overheard several of the men in high dispute concerning the meaning of the term *independent*, in which they could by no means agree, till one of them, an old grenadier, raising his voice, called his comrades a pack of stupid fellows, for puzzling at so obvious a term: "You see what stuff they are (said he) now it is plain they are called independents, because they are not to be depended upon."

(y) SEE the charter and privileges granted by K. Henry VIII. to this company, p. 150.

in the militia of several parts of the kingdom, in order to instruct them in military discipline.

IN the succeeding year the more effectually to guard against any insurrection that might be made by the papists, diverse excellent regulations were drawn up by these citizens; among them were these:

“ I. THAT every alderman of his warde assisted with the gravest inhabitants there, do gather and register the names of all such householders, their children and servants, as dwell in the same warde, who openlye professe and shewe themselves to love the gospel and hate poperie, being of sufficient wealth to mainteyne their owne state, and able to beare armes.

II. THAT from the more apte of those citizens, there be chosen out for special leaders (every of them to leade five and twenty of his neighbours dwelling next him) and that there be so manye of those leaders as after that rate shall be sufficient to lead four or five thousand men, or more or less, as shall be thought meete, and that the said number of men be chosen out of those to be registered as aforesayd.

III. THAT the most valiant, grave and wise amonge the sayd registered citizens be chosen captaynes of bandes, every one of them under severall ensignes, to receave tenne of the sayd special leaders, with every of them his five and twentie men, so shall there be two hundred and fifty men under an ensigne, and that they have their several ensignes accordinglye.

IV. THAT of the sayd citizens, there be chosen to serve under everie suche of their captaynes, their several lievetenants, ensign-bearers and sergeantes, with a fit drumster: And that there be assigned a place certen to every captayne, whereunto he shall resorte upon any sudden alarme. And that he know all his officers, and those petty leaders know the same place and their captayne.

V. THAT after such election and appointment as aforesayd, everie one applye himself to learne and knowe how to exercise their
several

several offices and roomes, as apperteyneth ; and that everie householder have readie in his howse all weapons and furniture for himself and those of his howse to be appointed in his service."

SHORTLY after this, Edmond York, a gentleman who had served long in the low countries, gave, by order of the privy council, certain rules for the better defence of the city, in case of necessity ; those respecting the militia were in substance as follows.

THE city to be divided into as many districts or quarters as can furnish fifteen hundred men each. In every quarter the mayor and marshall to chuse one colonel, a man of substance and reputation, who shall have under him ten captains, to be chosen by him, and approved by the mayor and marshall. The company of each captain to consist of one hundred and fifty men, to be formed of eight halberdiers, sixty armed pikes, thirty musketeers, and fifty harquebusiers, with the two odd men for serjeants. All, both officers and private men, to be inhabitants of the same quarter or district, and the latter either householders, the sons of householders, or domestic and continued servants.

" THIS done, the city shall be divided into so many quarters as there is fiftene hundredth men ; in everie quarter shall be chosen one colonell, a man there dwellinge, and a citizen of honestie, reputation and wealth, elected by the mayor and marshall (after your lordship's allowance) who shall have under hym tenne captaynes, all dwellers in that quarter ; and everie captayne shall have a hundredth and fiftie men, all inhabitants of that quarter, which shall be either the householder, his sonne, or his continewed servant : provided that the colonels be none of the aldermen ; because they are already chosen to the civil government. (z)

THE regiment being all dwellers together in one quarter, doe

(z) At present many of the aldermen are colonels of the city regiments.

make the colonells government easye, and make the assemblie of the souldiers speedie.

THE collonells chofen, and the quarters divided, then shall everie collonel choofe fix captaynes, which shall be allowed by the mayor and marshall (after they have informed your lordships) being all dwellers in the collonels quarter.

AFTER the captaynes chofen, the lord mayor, his bretheren, and the marshall, shall deliver so many householders, their sons or continewed servants, as will furnish everye captayne one hundred and fiftie men with weapons thus divided: that is, eight halbardiers, sixty armed pikes, thirty musketeers, and fiftie harquebusiers; and the two odd men shall be for the sergeants. For to put into these trayned companyes any archers, or superfluous number of short weapons, it were inconvenient; for that the multitude upon any alarum, will come furnished with those weapons; and therefore to teach that by art which nature gives, were time lost, and to charge a people with that which is not wanting were frivolous.

THE companies furnished, as aforesayd, then the serjeant major or his corporals, shall visit every man's particular furniture in their private houses; as well to see the goodnes of their arms, as to see it in order, least they should dishonour their commanders, for not performing that which apperteynes to men of judgment and souldiers to doe.

AFTER your armes provided and reviewed, a muster general of the army shall be held in some convenient place; at which musters shall only be the shew of the men with their armes, without any exercise, which shall be held in the presence of such honourable persons as your lordships shall appoint, joined with the mayor, his bretheren, the marshall and sargeant major: at which tyme the marshall, serjeant major and provost shall be presented unto the collonels, captaynes and souldiers, and their commissions published."

SUCH was the method laid down for raising these troops. Maitland

land says the danger being over by the destruction of the Spanish fleet, the practise of instructing the citizens in the art military was discontinued till the year 1610, when it was revived, and the promoters to encourage the practitioners in that art, erected an armory, and furnished it with a variety of arms, and reassuming the ancient appellation of the Artillery Company, increased to such a degree, that in the late civil war they supplied the parliament with a great number both of officers and soldiers.

DURING the troubles under Charles I. we find the city trained bands regimented and distinguished under the different titles of the red, yellow, and orange regiments, &c. and in the year 1643, two of these regiments marched to join the parliamentary army, on Brackley Heath.

IN the engagement near Newbury, that year, the orange regiment gained great honor, and was esteemed as fine a one as any in the army.

ANNO 1647, in the 10th of July, an ordinance passed the lords and commons, empowering committee of the militia to raise horse; any person charged to find horse, rider, or furniture, refusing or neglecting to send them, to forfeit twenty pounds, to be levied by distress of goods, or to punish the defaulters by imprisoning their persons till paid.

ANY person sending an unserviceable horse, an insufficient rider, or unserviceable arms, to forfeit ten pounds, to be levied in like manner.

THE said committee were also empowered to levy by distress a fine of forty shillings on any foot soldier of either the trained bands or auxillaries, who should neglect to repair to his colours on the beat of drum; or to imprison the offender till that sum was paid. These committees had also power to elect major generals for the command of the forces to be raised in the city; they were also authorised to disarm and secure the persons of any who should endeavour to impede this service either in the city or tower hamlets.

AT present the military government of London is managed by a
court

court of lieutenancy, which is composed of a certain number of citizens, the principal whereof are the lord mayor and aldermen. The commissioners appoint the officers for the city trained bands, who are formed into six regiments; the blue containing eight companies and 1411 men. 2. The Green, eight companies, and 1566 men. 3. The Yellow, eight companies, and 1526 men. 4. The Orange, eight companies, and 1740 $\frac{1}{2}$ men. 5. The White, eight companies, and 2088 $\frac{1}{2}$ men. 6. The Red, eight companies, and 1630 men, including officers and drums.

IN the out-parts not subject to the government of the city, there is also the following military establishment.

Two regiments of trained bands belonging to the tower hamlets, the first regiment containing 2299 $\frac{1}{2}$ men; the second 1898 men, including officers and drums. Two regiments of trained bands belonging to the city of Westminster and county of Middlesex: the Westminster regiment containing twelve companies, and 4182 men; the Middlesex regiment, nine companies, and 2597 men.

BESIDES the above specified eleven regiments of trained bands, the artillery company, of about four hundred men, is still subsisting, and serves as a nursery of officers for the said regiments; whereby it appears, that the numbers of troops for the defence of this city and suburbs amount to twenty-four thousand six hundred and twenty-one men.

THESE are the different species of troops, of which the British armies have at different times been formed; (a) two only remain to be described, who, though originally deemed military bodies, have long since been considered as part of the suite of the king's household; they are the serjeants at arms, and the yeomen of the guards.

THE serjeants at arms were first instituted by King Richard I. in

(a) THE royal regiment of artillery and corps of engineers will be considered under the article of artillery.

imitation of a corps of the same name, formed by Philip Augustus King of France, when on a crusade, to guard him against the subjects of the old man of the mountain, famous for their daring assassinations.

THE duty of these serjeants originally was to watch round the king's tent in complete armour, with a mace, a bow, arrows, and a sword, and occasionally to arrest traitors and other offenders about the court, for which the mace was deemed a sufficient authority. They were called the valorous force of the king's errand, in the execution of justice; they held their places for life; their number was originally twenty-four, all persons of approved worth, and not under the degree of the son of a knight: and afterwards the sons of gentlemen were admitted into the body.

IN the reign of Edward I. the serjeants at arms were allowed two marks for winter, and the same for summer robes. Their pay in that of Edward II. was twelve-pence per diem, when they attended on horseback, and eight-pence when they attended without a horse.

A MS. of the expences of Ed. III. in the 21st year of his reign, there is the following entry of the "Sergeauntes at armes, with their retinew. Standard-bearers 4, seargeauntes 67, men at armes 3, archers of horse 7, archers on foote 9." (b)

THEIR allowance, when absent from court on the king's affairs, was 12d. each by the day; and under another head (c) they appear

(b) THE title of this MS. runs thus: "Here ensue the rates of wages, of peace and warre, expences, necessaryes of officers, and other charges concerning the household of the prince of noble memory, Edward III. as well in tyme of peace as warre; and also the number of soldiers, as well by land as sea, and shippes retayned in the warres of the saide kinge, as by the parcells of the accompte of Walter Wentwayt, treasurer of the said household, from the 21st day of Aprill, in the 18th year of the raigne of the same king, unto the 24th day of December, in the 21st year of the same kinge's raigne.

(c) RATES of wages in time of peace, fees of banneretts, and bachelors of the king's house, robes, and all other places, officers, ministers and servauntes of the same, and lyveries of mens servauntes, intituled Calciatura, besides all wages in manner as followeth."

charged

charged at 26s. 8d. each, for winter, and 20s. for summer. They were besides entitled to certain fees from persons arrested; these were in proportion to their rank and degree.

IN the reign of King Richard II. ann. 10, the commons complained to the king in parliament, that the number of these ferjeants were greatly encreased, and that they had been guilty of many extortions and oppressions, under colour of their office, praying they might be reduced to their ancient number, and that those guilty of misbehaviour may be discharged. To this the king answered, he would have the estate of his household regulated by the advice of his council. (d)

IN the 13th year of the same king's reign, fresh complaints were laid before him in parliament, wherein it was represented that the ferjeants at arms were originally twenty-four in number, who received the accustomed wages of their office; that these were chosen out of the most sufficient people of family and loyalty that were to be found, but that by a late augmentation there were a great multitude of them, who took no wages, but by means of their office committed violent extortions and oppressions on the people; wherefore they besought his majesty, that such as were guilty of these offences might lose their offices, and make fine and ranfome to the king at his pleasure; and that it might be ordered, that none should presume to exercise that office above the number beforementioned, under pain of a year's imprisonment; and afterwards to make fine and ranfome at the king's will: and that this ordinance might be fully executed within a month after the parliament ensuing. In consequence of this petition, the king caused it to be enacted, that they should be all discharged; and that out of those so dismissed and elsewhere, should be taken, to the number of thirty good and sufficient persons, for those offices, and no more

(d) Rot. Parl. in anno.

to be afterwards added; and moreover they were forbidden to meddle with any thing that did not immediately appertain to their office, or to be guilty of any kind of extortion or oppression on the people, under pain of losing their office, making fine and ranfome to the king, and full satisfaction to the parties aggrieved. (e)

It seems as if this statute was suffered to lie dormant, for in the 17th of the same king, the commons petitioned it might be put in execution, and that no more serjeants might be appointed, except in cases of vacancy, and that then their names should be recorded in chancery; they likewise petitioned that it might be enacted, that no serjeant of the city of London, or any other city, town, or place, should carry his mace out of the franchise to which he belonged, under pain of forfeiting his office, and making fine and ranfome to the king, for the profit of the realm; such serjeants under colour of their offices, arresting men out of their franchises, and committing many oppressions, to the prejudice of the king's majesty, and to the scandal of his serjeants at arms. Also that no alien should be a serjeant at arms, and if appointed, should be ousted from his office, that the councils of the realm might not be by them discovered. To this the king gave no answer; and if any measures for redressing these grievances were taken, they do not seem to have been efficacious; for five years after (f) the commons again moved the king on this matter, representing, that formerly it was ordained that the serjeants at arms should be chosen from among good, valiant and sufficient persons, such as would duly and honestly execute their offices, but that now there is a great complaint throughout different counties, that the number of serjeants is excessive, that they are not valiant, nor such as are required for the king's honor, and that under cover of their offices they commit great oppressions on the people; wherefore they besought the king to enquire into

(e) Rot. Parl. in anno. || (f) Rot. Parl. 21 Rich. II. A. D. 1397.

the number and characters of these serjeants, and to ordain that only those who were fit and qualified for that office, might be appointed. The king considering that their petition was good and just, for his own honour promised that sufficient persons should be appointed to these offices, and of them only a reasonable number, as is ordained by the statute.

ACCORDING to the orders given by Thomas of Lancaster, constable at the siege of Caen, Sept. 3d, 1417, a serjeant at arms was to appear in the king's presence, with his head bare, his body armed to the feet with the arms of a knight riding, wearing a gold chain with a medal, bearing all the king's coats, with a peon royal, or mace of silver in his right hand, and in his left hand a truncheon. (g)

IN the 7th of Hen. VII. they were ordered to attend the army. (h)

THE number of this corps has varied exceedingly. In the reign of Edward IV. they were reduced to four; in that of Edward VI. they were encreased to twenty-two; and in the succeeding reign to twenty-three; but by King James I. retrenched to sixteen; at present there are only eight. (i)

THE yeomen of the guard were raised by King Henry VII. in the year 1485. Rapin, who calls them archers, says they were instituted on the day of his coronation, which was the 30th of October, and that they then consisted of fifty men, to attend him and his successors for ever; a precaution which, in all appearance, he thought necessary at that juncture.

By the first regulation, every yeoman of this band was to be of the best quality under gentry, well made, and full six feet high.

THEIR numbers have varied in almost every reign, and formerly consisted of a certain number in ordinary, and an indefinite number

(g) Bib. Harl. No. 297, fol. 254. || (h) VIDE Raftall, chap. 3.

(i) Most of the writers against standing armies commence that establishment with the serjeants at arms.



Pub. 20 July 1786, by J. Hooper

N. C. Goodnight scul.

A Yeoman of the Guard, attending Queen Elizabeth on a Progress.

extraordinary; and in case of a vacancy in the Senate, it was supplied out of the latter number. (b)

There exists in that which was worn in the reign of King Henry VIII, and which on many occasions was put on by the king: it consists of a scarlet coat reaching down to the knees, gartered with golden blue velvet, and deep borders of the same and crosses on their breasts and backs; their breeches are also scarlet, gartered with blue velvet, their caps are of black velvet, with round round crowns, adorned with ribbons of the royal colours, viz. red, white and blue; and half of them formerly carried bows and arrows, the other half halberds, both had large swords by their sides. Chamberlains and the Esquires have been dressed ever since the reign of Henry VIII.

[illegible]

In the reign of Queen Elizabeth, the various attending to her different progresses were occasionally mounted, a great use of them on horseback is given in the work.

In the reign of Queen Anne had the first

MAGEE's New State of England, A. D. 1703, and Cambridge

(1) PRESENT State, A. D. 1735. In Rymes there is a notice made by Henry Rymes, on June 3d. 1642, to Thomas Clarke, of the office of buyer for the clothing and buying of the clothes for all and singular the yeomen of the guard, during life.

(m) This print is copied from a work entitled *Discursus Geographico-Historico-Politicus*. Ubi fere Europæ, Asiæ, atq; Africæ equitandi ratio propria expellitur, et delineatur. Impressa in ædibus Nicolai Johanni Vischeri, 1617. The second is called *Discursus Geographico-Historico-Politicus*, probably from being without decorative margins.



A Yeoman of the Guard, attending Queen Elizabeth on a Progress.

extraordinary; and in case of a vacancy in the former, it was supplied out of the latter number. (k)

THEIR dress is that which was worn in the reign of King Henry VIII. and which on many occasions was put on by that king: it consists of a scarlet coat reaching down to the knees, garded with garter blue velvet, and rich badges of the rose and crown on their breasts and backs; their breeches are also scarlet, garded with blue velvet; their caps are of black velvet, with broad round crowns, adorned with ribbons of the royal colours, viz. red, white and blue; one half of them formerly carried bows and arrows, the other half harquebusses, both had large swords by their sides. Chamberlain says, the harquebusses have been disused ever since the reign of King William. (l)

IN the reign of King Edward VI. this corps was very numerous, for in his journal, published in Burnet's History of the Reformation, he says "there mustered before me, an hundred archers, two arrows apiece, all of the guard;" and afterwards "so it was appointed there should be ordinarily one hundred archers, and one hundred halbertiers, either good wrestlers, or casters of the bar, or leapers or runners, all tall men of personage."

IN the reign of Queen Elizabeth, the yeomen attending her in her different progresses were occasionally mounted, a print of one of them on horseback is given in the work. (m)

IN the reign of Queen Anne half this band were armed with

(k) MIEGE's New State of England, A. D. 1703, and Chamberlain.

(l) PRESENT State, A. D. 1735. In Rymer there is a grant made by King Charles I. June 3d, 1642, to Thomas Clarke, of the office of taylor for the making and fitting of the clothes for all and singular the yeomen of the guard, during life.

(m) THIS print is copied from a work entitled *Diversarum Gentium Armatura Equestris. Ubi fere Europæ, Asiæ, atq; Africæ equitandi ratio propria expressa, et Amstelodami impressa in ædibus Nicolai Johanni Vischeri, 1617.* This yeoman is called *Reginæ Angliæ fattelles ferentarius*, probably from being without defensive armour.

harquebuzes, (n) the other half with partizans, and both with swords; they had then wages and diet allowed them, (o) their duty was to wait upon the queen in her standing houses, forty by day, and twenty by night. At St. James's they waited in the first room above stairs, called the guard chamber. It is also their duty to attend the sovereign abroad by land or water.

At present this corps consists of a captain, lieutenant and ensign, four exons, a clerk of the cheque, two messengers, and an hundred yeomen, eight of whom are called ushers. Six are called yeomen hangers, and two yeomen bed goers. The pay of the captain is 100*l.* per annum, the lieutenant 50*l.* and the ensign 30*l.* The exons 150*l.* each, the clerk of the cheque the same. Each of the ushers 49*l.* 1*s.* 3*d.* each hanger and bed goer the like pay as the ushers, and every other yeoman, 39*l.* 1*s.* 3*d.*

In ancient times, when an army was to be raised, either for foreign service, or to guard against invasions or domestic insurrections, the feudal tenants and the posse comitatus being assembled in their proper districts, by the usual methods before mentioned, they were inspected by certain provincial officers termed arraitores, in English arrayers; two or more, being trusty and experienced officers, were commonly appointed by the king's commission for each county. It was the duty of these arrayers not only to inspect the soldiers, and see that they were able bodied and fit for service, but also that they were properly armed, accoutred, and otherwise appointed, according to their station and the nature of their service. They were likewise to arrange both the cavalry and infantry into their proper bodies, equivalent to the present divisions of squads, troops, companies and battalions.

(n) CHAMBERLAIN says, A. D. 1705, "one half of them of late bear in their hands harquebuzes, how to reconcile this with the assertion in note (l) I know not.

(o) In a MS. of the expences of the royal establishment for the year 1727, the charges of the table of the yeomen of the guard was 273*l.* 15*s.*

THE ancient cavalry was divided into small bodies called constabularies, from their being commanded by officers stiled constables; this we learn from a writ of the 18th Edward III. 1324; (p) how many men a constabularie consisted of, is not there said; but in a similar order of John king of France for dividing the French foot, a constablerie is stated at twenty-five or thirty men. (q)

IN a MS. account of the pay of the army of K. Edward I. in the library of the Antiquarian Society, as well as in one printed by Brady respecting the reign of Edward III. it appears that these constables received the same pay as esquires, ranked with them in the army, (r) and probably had in common with them, under certain circumstances, the right of displaying a pennon of their arms. (s) The title of constable applied to the commanders of small bodies of men, occurs as early as the reign of King John. It was also given to naval officers. (t)

(p) "ITA quod omnes armis sufficientibus muniti, videlicet equites in constabulariis & pedites in centenis & vintenibus arraiati prompti sint & parati." *Rymer*, tom. 4. p. 78.

(q) "DESCRIBITUR statutum Johannis Regis Franc. quo statuitur ut in posterum, " tous pietons soient mis par connestables ou compagnies de 25 ou 30 hommes, & que chaque connestable prenne double gages, & que les mareschaux pour les gens d'armes, & les maitres des Arbalestriers pour pietons assisteront aux monstres deux fois le mois." *Du Cange*.

(c) DOMINO Roberto de Barton clerico assignato ad vadia peditum veniencium de com. Northumbr. usq; Berwic super Twedam ad proficiend. cum rege in exercitu suo versus Stryvelin pro recessu castri regis ibidem, pro vadijs III^{or}. constabular. cum equis coopertis, et 392 sagittar. peditum de eodem com. per unum diem, videlicet 15 diem Decembr. quo die visus factus fuit, de eisdem apud Twedemuth, cuilibet constabular. per diem 12d. cuilibet vintinar. per diem 4d. et cuilibet alii pediti per diem 2d.

(s) THE pennon was the proper ensign of a bachelor or simple knight. Du Fresne shews that even esquires might bear pennons, provided they could bring a sufficient suite of vassals into the field.

(t) ET LXXVII. Walensibus peditibus & VII. constabulariis eorum, et 4 archeriis equitibus, qui missi fuerunt in Norweiam XXVII. l. & 14 d. de liberatione sua de 1 mense per breve regis. Mag. Rot. 3. I. Rot. 11. b. Ductores et constabularii navigii regis. Hoved. P. 2. p. 666. n. 10. temp. R. I.

THE next division seems to have been that arranged under a banner, and commanded by a banneret, a rank originally conferred on such only as by their estates were enabled to bring a certain number of vassals into the field; for in the petition for that rank, such ability was always premised, (u) and the usual mode of conferring that promotion was cutting or tearing off the point of the pennon of the candidate, and thereby rendering it square, perhaps in allusion to the command it conferred, which was that of a squadron, so denominated from being a square body, consisting of as many ranks as files. Father Daniel quotes two different regulations, respecting the number of vassals necessary to be brought into the field by a petitioner for the rank of banneret: the first was twenty-five men at arms, each attended by two horsemen, in all amounting to seventy-five men; the second at least fifty men at arms, accompanied as before, making together one hundred and fifty men; taking then an hundred for the medium, that number forms a square of ten in each face, and is the lowest estimation of our present squadrons. Ancient writers describing the strength of

(u) FROISSART thus recites the petition of John Chaundos to the black prince and Don Pedro, king of Castile, for the dignity of banneret, just before the battle of Nasars. "Monseigneur. Veez cy ma banniere je la vous baille par telle maniere qu'il vous plaise la d'evelopper, & que aujourduy je la puisse lever, car (Dieu mercy) Jay bien de quoy en terre & heritage pour tenir estate ainsi come appartient á ce."

A BANNERET was originally one entitled to display his standard in the field. "When a bachelor (says the Ceremonial) has long followed the wars, and has land sufficient to have gentlemen for his vassals, and to accompany his standard, he may lawfully raise his banner, and not otherwise; for no man ought to display his banner in battle, if he has not at least fifty men at arms, with all the men, archers, and cross bow men appertaining to them; and if he has them, he ought at the first battle at which he is present, to bring a pennon of his arms to the constable or mareschal, or the king's lieutenant in the army, requesting to bear a banner, which if granted, he must call the heralds for witnesses, when the general or chief officer will cut off the tail of the pennon. Banneretts are mentioned in our histories as early as the time of King Edward I.

the

the cavalry in different armies, estimate them according to the number of pennons and banners.

ALTHOUGH the bands of cavalry were only divided into constabularies, knights might act as intermediate officers, between the constable and bannerett, commanding two constabularies under their pennon. Father Daniel says, that in France the bannerets formerly commanded the different bodies of cavalry (x) under the counts and dukes.

THE denomination of captain and lieutenant, applied to officers commanding small bodies of men, equivalent to our troops and companies, was scarcely introduced into our armies before the reign of Henry VII. and VIII. where we find them borne by the officers commanding the yeomen of the guard and the band of gentlemen pensioners, and their occasional representatives. We likewise read of captains and petty captains in acts of the 4th and 5th of Philip and Mary against desertion: probably the former meant a colonel, or one commanding a corps, band, or regiment; the latter the captain of a company. (y)

(x) Le titre de capitaine a l'égard des Officiers de l'armée, excepté le general, ne fut gueres en usage dans les temps les plus reculez de notre ancien milice Francoise ceux qui commandoit sous les comtes & les ducs aux temps de la premiere & de la seconde race, étoient les viguiers, les centeniers, &c. depuis l'institution de la chevalerie un peu avant Philippe Auguste, c' étoient les chevaliers bannerets avec ce titre de banneret, qui commandoit les diverses brigades de gendarmerie. Le titre de capitaine commence a etre en usage dans le signification qu'on y donne aujourd'hui, quand nos rois outre les troupes de leur vassaux, donnerent des commissions a quelque seigneurs pour lever des compagnies de gendarmes. Ces seigneurs prirent le titre de capitaine de ces compagnies comme on le voit par un ordonnance du Roi Charles V. de laquelle j'ai parlé ailleurs. *P. Daniel*, tom. 2. p. 58.

(y) THE term regiment was not then in use, being in all likelihood borrowed from the French, whose bands were, according to Father Daniel, first formed into regiments in the year 1562. Sir James Turner, whose book stiled *Pallas Armata*, was published A. D. 1683, says, the term regiment was not then an hundred years old.

IN the list of the army employed at St. Quintin's, A. D. 1557, the cavalry was divided into troops of an hundred private men, commanded by a captain, lieutenant and standard bearer, having each a surgeon, a harbinger (similar to a quarter master) a chaplain, a trumpeter and a smith. This list is among the first where a body of cavalry is distinguished by the appellation of a troop. (z)

IN an estimate for a royal army, made anno 1623, when it was intended by King James I. to recover the palatinate, the cavalry were to consist of independent troops of an hundred men each, commanded by a captain, lieutenant, cornet, and quarter master, three corporals and two trumpets. (a)

THE English infantry, from the time of Edward I. and probably from that of the conquest, to the reign of Henry VII. was divided into thousands, hundreds and twenties; answering to our regiments, companies and squads; this appears from a variety of writs and commissions for assembling the national forces on different occasions, wherein they are constantly directed to be arranged in those numbers.

THE squads of twenty were commanded by officers thence stiled vingtners; the companies or hundreds by centenaries, but the title of the officer presiding over thousands, is not mentioned in any list I have seen.

IN a list of the St. Quintin's army before mentioned, the companies of infantry then consisted of an hundred private men, their officers were a captain, lieutenant and ensign, a serjeant, a harbinger and drummer to each company.

IN the army designed for the palatinate, the infantry was computed by regiments; each regiment to consist of thirteen companies; the colonel's company to have 192 private men, four (b) gentlemen,

(z) No. 6848. Harl. MS. || (a) No. 5109, Harl. MS. || (b) GENTLEMAN of a company is he who is something more than an ordinary souldier, hath a little more pay

tllemen, four corporals, two serjeants, and two drummers; the other companies only one hundred and forty-four private, three gentlemen, three corporals, two serjeants, and two drummers. The commissioned officers to each company, a captain, lieutenant, and ensign. The staff officers will be mentioned under their particular head.

THE different bodies, both cavalry and infantry, being assembled and thus arranged, were then to march to the place of general rendezvous, usually appointed as near the place of embarkation, or part of the kingdom likely to become the scene of action, where on their arrival they were to be mustered. (c)

It is needless to enquire into the antiquity of musters, since they must have existed from the first time an army was assembled, without a muster it could not be known whether the feudal tenants or others liable to furnish soldiers, had provided their due number, nor could a general otherwise know the true strength of his army, the ground they would occupy, the quantity of provision and forage necessary for their subsistence, and that of their horses, nor the money required for paying them.

THE object of a muster was not only to ascertain the number of men and horses, but likewise to examine their armour and weapons. In the ordinances of war made by K. Henry V. the office of a commissary of musters is mentioned, and his power and duty thus described: "It is our will, that every captain of our army, without any fraud or reserve whatsoever, shall make a muster or shew of all his soldiers, as well men of arms as archers, fully

pay and doth not stand centinel; in French he is called appointé, and with the Germans, he is called Gefreuter, they march and watch with arms, they go common rounds and patrouilles, and near an enemy they are to be the forlorn centinels whom the French call perdus. *Sir J. Turner, Pallas Armata, p. 218.*

(c) THE term muster is derived from the barbarous Latin *mustrum* & *monstrum*, or the old French *monstre*, a shew or exhibition.

and perfectly, according to their assigned number, before us or our commissaries, as often as the said captain shall by us or our said commissaries, be duly and legally required. Also that the captains shall shew only their own foldiers, with whom they have agreed for the expedition, and no others, under pain of perpetual reprobation (d) and the loss of their wages for the said expedition. We also prohibit any one from retaining in his service any soldier, servant or boy, (e) who was lately in the service of another, without the consent and permission of his prior captain or master. We moreover direct and command, that all our commissaries in the afore said musters do diligently enquire after, and see that the foldiers shew their proper arms, without fraud, and this we would have more especially observed respecting the bowes and arrows, and if necessary, it is our will, that on this article our commissaries may compel the captain or master to answer upon oath."

In Rymer we meet with many more ancient directions for musters, some of them as old as Edward III. but none of them so fully describe the duty of the commissary as that here cited, it was therefore selected in preference to the others, some of which are given in the note (f).

CERTIFI-

(d) PERPETUAL reprobation was a perpetual disqualification to serve, or what in modern terms is expressed by "rendered incapable of serving in any military office." Captain here meant the commanding officer of a body of men, and not the regimental officer of that denomination.

(e) THE boys following an army were in the Latin of those days called *Garciones*, they were the servants of the soldiers. In father De Aquino's Military Dictionary, *Garcio* is explained to be a camp servant, one who fetched water for the soldiers, these boys were by the French termed *goujats*, and according to Richelet were the servants of foot soldiers; but Boyer calls them, the servants of horse or foot soldiers.

(f) A. D. 1343, 16 Ed. III. a commission was granted by that king to Oliver de Ingham, seneschal of Gascony, and Master Walter de Weston, the king's treasurer for the army in that dutchy, whereby on account of diverse mismanagements of the king's money, they are directed that before the wages of the men at arms are paid, they do
make

CERTIFICATES of these musters were frequently ordered to be sent to the king and council, and sometimes to the great wardrobe, under the seals of the commissioners or commissaries.

THE method of mustering the troops in the reign of Queen Elizabeth differed very little from that directed by King Henry V. The duty of a muster master is thus defined by Ralph Smith. "The muster master, takinge the muster, must have a speciall eye and regarde unto those officers appointed the leading of men, that they bee men of service, and not chosen without great experience, also sober and of good counsaile; and to see that the souldiers be furnished with armour and weapons as followethe, commandinge them to bee obediente and truely to keepe all such lawes and ordinances, as by the said lord lieutenante and his counsaile shalbe commanded, sett downe and appointed bye his authoritie; likewise he is to see howe everye captaines bande is furnished, and thereof to make a booke to the treasurer, that paymente bee made to the coronalls and captaines, accordinge to the number of soldiers under every of their bandes."

THE following method of calling the roll at a muster is the same as now practised. "At everye musteringe or assemblinge, the captaines bill shalbe called by the clarke, everye man answearinge to

make diligent scrutiny, that they have their due appointments of horses and armour according to ancient usage; and that there might be no deceit in the article of numbers, they are commanded with the constable and mareschal of the army to cause frequent muster to be made, one at least in every month; and at the same time to inspect the number and equipment of the armed men: That payment should be made for the effective only, without favour; and to avoid the frauds which frequently happen in the restoration of horses, all those which, according to the custom of war, were to be appreciated, should immediately on their arrival be valued, and marked with some particular mark, by which they might again be known. *Rymer.*

In the year 1415, Richard Redman and John Strange were appointed to take the muster of the forces of Thomas Duke of Clarence, going abroad with the King, and to certify the numbers of the men at arms, armed men, and archers, under their seals." *Ibid.*

his own name, marchinge foorth as he is called, that noe man unto twoe names make answere; yf any foldier bee ficke or hurte, being not serviceable, paye him his wages, give him his pasporte, send him home, furnishe his roome with an hable fouldier; yf any helthfull fouldier absente himself at such tymes, let him be punished as in the statutes is mentioned, to the example of the rest."

THE following regulations were laid down for the muster master, in the lawes and ordinances of warre, established by the earl of Northumberland, lord general of the armie and fleet of K. Charles I. 1640.

"I. No muster master shall wittingly let any passe in the musters, but such as are really of the troop or company presented, upon pain of death.

II. ALL captains shall cause their troops and companies to be full compleat; and two dayes after the generall mustering, they shall send to the lord generall a perfect list or roll of all the officers of their troops and companies, and likewise of all the troopers and fouldiers that are in actuall service, putting down distinctly on the head of each man his monethly pay.

III. THE like roll or list shall the captains send to the lord generall, and to the treasurer of the armie upon every pay day, during the service, with a punctuall expression at the bottome of the said roll, what new troopers or fouldiers have been entertained since the last pay day, in lieu of such as are either deceased or casseer'd, (g) and likewise the day whereon they were so casseer'd and entertained.

(g) CASSEER'D, from the French word *cassé*, disbanded, discharged; this word did not originally mean discharged with ignominy, as it now generally does. "Casser. En parlant de soldat, c'est défarmer un soldat à la tête de la compagnie, ou du regiment, et le remercier de son service, mais en parlant d'officier c'est le faire remercier de la part du Roi, par un commissaire des services qu'il a rendus et le renvoyer." *Richlet*. This word is now written cashier'd, which has caused an opinion that it had some relation to cash or money.

IV. WHICH said list or roll shall be subscribed not onely by the captain, his lieutenant, and cornet, or enseign, but also by the sergeants and corporals respectively; who shall declare upon their oaths, that the troopers and souldiers inrolled in the said list, are reall and actuall troopers and souldiers, of the respective troops and companies; and whosoever shall be convicted of falsehood in any of the premises, shall be punished with death.

V. No muster master shall presume to receive or accept of any roll to make the musters by, but the forementioned rolls, upon paine of the losse of his place, and other punishment at discretion.

VI. No man shall presume to present himself to the muster, or to be enrolled in the muster rolls by a counterfeit name, or surname, or place of birth, upon paine of death."

AT or immediately after the muster, another important business took place: this was the appreciation of the horses of the cavalry, in which the marshal and some other officers appointed for that purpose, set a certain price upon each horse, which the king was to pay to the owner, in case such horse was either slain or incurably lamed in service; this payment appears in our ancient records under the Latin title of *Restauratio* (h), or the French one of *Restour*. In order to make this valuation with the greatest exactness and impartiality, the clerk of the marshal was to act the part of an ap-

(h) OF this word Du Cange gives the following explanation and instance, in the treaty made between Philip the Fair, king of France, and William, earl of Hainault, 28th October, 1314. "Li dui mareschal de France, ou li un d'aus, ou aucuns prudhoms a ce commis, priferont et estimeront loialement per leurs sermens les chivals morts, et les chivals de nos gens; et nous en fera nos dis Sires plain retour selonc leur prise. Et le dit mareschal ou cil qui le prisé devoit fere, entendent tant que aucun cheval feusse mort ou perdu, si rendroit nos sires devant dit, de valeur des chevaux par prise de bon Gent. Et infra Asquiex li Roi nos Sires priera gages et retors. Occurrit passim in compatos Thesaurariorum Guerram. Huc etiam pertinet vetus charta, apud Ughellum in Episcopis Teatinis. Quod si miles dextrarium aut loricam in obsequio illo perdiderit, mihi Goffridus vel suus hæres reddere debet, et tamdiu ei nullam debeo facere servitium.

praiser in behalf of the proprietor, in opposition to an officer called the king's clerk: the marshal sat as judge or umpire between them; this particular we learn from a manuscript respecting the rights of that office, as claimed by Thomas de Brotherton. (i) Sometimes this appreciation was made by special commissioners appointed for that purpose, and in France by a sort of jury upon oath. None but the war horses or chargers were appreciated. Baggage horses were not included in that regulation. Blount mentions a tenant in capite, who held lands on the condition of serving King Edward II. in his wars, with a horse not to appreciated. (k) The accounts of these appreciations were frequently ordered to be given in at the great wardrobe.

RYMER, in his *Fœdera*, has a variety of instances of this appreciation; some as old as the reign of Henry I. where, in several agreements between that king and the earl of Flanders, for furnishing troops, it is stipulated, that restoration of horses shall be made to the earl, in the same manner as is done by the king to his own subjects. (l)

ANOTHER instance occurs anno 1355, 29 Ed. III. in a commission of appreciation granted to Edward prince of Wales, Thomas de Beauchamp earl of Warwick, Robert de Ufford earl of Suffolk, John de Vere earl of Oxford, William de Montacute, earl of Salisbury, and Reginald Cobham, empowering them to act jointly or separately, the horses appreciated are therein directed to be marked with a particular mark.

(i) Et ensi doit le mareschal, estre presier des chivaux q ferront apresiez, et son clerk doit estre contreplaidour encontre le clerk nre, Se le Roy. Brotherton's Claims. Nero, D. vi. Bib. Cott. || (k) PASCH. 14. Edw. II. Dors. Blount, 31.

(l) SEE other agreements in the same Collection, tom. 2. p. 265, A. D. 1284, et A. D. 1295. The last was an agreement made 23 Edw. I. with the Duke of Brabant for two thousand horsemen, armed with iron, to serve for half a year, for which 160,000 livres Tournois was to be paid for all demands, except the horses of arms, which were to be replaced as usual, and the King of England to cause them to be valued.

IN the account of Roger de Waltham before cited, we meet with the particulars of a restauration made the 15th of Ed. II. as follows: "Nicholas Despensay had restour for two of his horses, viz. one sorrell killed in the king's service at York, in the month of May, in the 15th of the said reign, and one bay killed as aforesaid, at Fellerham, on the 15th of September, 4l." A number of similar entries follow, which seem to shew that 40s. was the sum generally allowed for an ordinary troop horse. (m)

"To Edward earl of Arundel, on account of two of his horses appreciated in the said war, one for his knight, Robert de Swinburn, and another for the lord John, extraneous another of his knight's, which died in harness, in the king's wars, on the said day, 16l. 14s. 4d.

AYMER DE VALLANCE, earl of Pembroke, for restauration of two of his horses appreciated in the Scottish wars the present year; the one a sorrel, for John de Freville, his retainer or servant, and the other a brown bay for John de Berne, his servant, dead in the king's service, in the month of August; by a valuation made of them by Thomas de Chester and Godrick his clerk, at Newcastle upon Tyne, the 19th September, when these men appreciated them at 10l."

FIRST among the staff officers of our ancient armies stood the high constable, who was the supreme commander of the army next the king, and his authority, in some cases, even seemed to clash with that of royalty, insomuch that it was deemed too great to be entrusted to any subject, and was therefore by Henry VIII. laid aside.

(m) A SORT of restoration of horses is still made in our armies, there being, as I am informed, an allowance to the regimental stock purse, and officers of the cavalry of 15l. for each officer's charger, or private troop horse slain in battle; the like allowance is made to the contractors for furnishing horses to draw the artillery, for every horse that actually dies in harness.

THE title of constable is by some etymologists derived from Comes Stabuli, the earl or chief officer of the king's stables; others deduce it from the Saxon terms koning-stable, the king's stay or hold. If it was at first a civil office, it soon became a military one signifying the commander of an army.

THE first constable of England is said to have been created by the Conqueror, (n) and the office was afterwards held by the Bohuns, earls of Hereford and Essex, in consequence of their being possessed of certain manors, (o) whence it came to the Staffords and dukes of Buckingham as heirs general; but Edward duke of Buckingham being attainted of high treason, anno 13th Henry VIII. the office became forfeited to the crown, and since that time has been only granted occasionally (*pro hac vice*) to be exercised at a coronation, or some other great public solemnity.

By statute the high constable of England had cognizance of all things appertaining to war and arms, and abroad sat as supreme judge on all trials, as well for military offences as other matters of litigation, between soldiers or the followers of the army, in which he was assisted by the earl marshal, three or more doctors of the civil law, and a clerk, whose duty it was, like the present judge advocate, to prosecute all military delinquents.

HE was also at home a supreme judge, in all matters of honour and disputes respecting armorial bearings, taking precedence of the earl marshal, even in what was denominated his own court.

IN a return made by the officers of the exchequer to King Edward I. on being ordered by him to search their records for the fees usually received by the high constables, they state, that having consulted a book of the constitutions of Henry II. and other authorities, they find, that the constables of England ought and were

(n) JACOB'S Law Dictionary. || (o) THE manors of Harlefield, Newmarket, and Whitenhurst.

accustomed to receive, by virtue of their office, two pence out of every pound paid by the king to his stipendiary troops, with the army, or elsewhere, on his service; and also that he was entitled to the same deliveries for his subsistence as the chancellor and seneschall; which was, when they eat abroad, five shillings a day, with one dominical, (p) and two salted semnells, (q) two quarts of claret, (r) and one of ordinary or household wine, (s) with wax and other candles; but if they eat in the palace, they were to receive only 3s. 6d. a day, two salt semnells, one quart of household wine, and a sufficiency of candles. (t)

OVER and above these allowances, the high constable had diverse other privileges and emoluments; the latter shall be mentioned under the head of pay.

BESIDES the high constable of England, other constables were sometimes appointed to command the king's armies, perhaps when particular circumstances prevented the high constable from attending; or, they might be his deputies, when more armies than one were raised and employed. An instance of this is found in Rymer, in the 26th year of the reign of King Henry III. when William de Cantilupe, the younger, John de Gray, Philip Basset and Paul Peyvur were appointed by that king to command his army in Poitou. (v)

THE rights, privileges, and power of a high constable of France are thus stated, by father Daniel.

(p) DOMINICAL semnel, a better sort of biscuit made for Sundays and holidays.

(q) AN inferior kind of semnel, mixed with salt; this, by mistake, is printed in Rymer, ii solidos, instead of ii salata. || (r) VINO claro, claret. || (s) ET unum sextarium de vino expensali; which is thus explained by Du Cange, vinum expensabile, quotidiana potus in usus domesticorum; vin de depense, nostris vulgo boite, vel bouvande. || (t) FOR this return, see Rymer, Fœd. tom. 2. p. 191. Madox's Hist. of Exchequer. || (v) RYMER'S Fœd. tom. 1. p. 410. tom. 1. p. 173.

EXTRACT from the TITLES of BOURBON, in the Chamber of Accounts in Paris.

“THESE are the rights of the constable of France, by virtue of his office.

FIRST, The constable is, and ought to be the most secret and intimate of the king's council; and the king ought not to order any feat of war, without the council of the constable, if he can be present to give his advice.

ITEM, The constable should have a lodging at court, or wherever the king shall be.

ITEM, If the king goes to the army, the constable may go on an expedition as often as he pleases, without his proper establishment of followers, the king being obliged to furnish him with a guard, whether he be with the same part of the army as the king, or with another (u); and his retainers shall mount no guards, unless at his will; and he shall post the guards when mounted by knights. (x)

ITEM, If a fortress or castle is taken by storm, or shall surrender, the horses, harness, provisions, and all other things found therein, belong to the constable, excepting gold and prisoners, which belong to the king, and the artillery to the master of the cross bows.

ITEM, If the constable goes out on an expedition, whether with or without the king, provided it be the king's army; he (the constable) may take ten men at arms from each battail, to accompany him, except from that of the king.

ITEM, The constable serving in the king's wars, with, or without him, ought to cause his war horses, and those of his companions and of all the people of his household, to be appreciated by the marshal;

(u) BY this he was not liable to lose any of his suite, their horses or arms. || (x) THE knights rarely mounted guard but on some particular occasion, and it was meant as an honour to that corps, that the constable was to post their guard, and attend its mounting.

and the price set on them by the marshal, shall be restored by the king.

ITEM, No one shall have any cognizance, authority, lordship or judgment, on any of the suite of the constable, except himself, and the masters of his household.

ITEM, Whenever the king is at war, the constable shall have a day's pay of all persons receiving wages, or who are to have a certain sum instead thereof. (y)

ANY one changing his establishment for another, the constable shall again have of him a day's pay. (z)

ITEM, If the constable rides out on an expedition, every thing taken by him or his household is his, except gold and prisoners, which belong to the king.

ITEM, Every day that the king rides forth armed at all points for assault or battle, the constable shall have an hundred livres, but if his legs only are armed, he shall have but fifty; and if several horses are brought to the king for some feat of arms on that day, after the king has chosen one, the constable shall take the second.

ITEM, In all legal duels within the kingdom, the constable shall guard the parties, and take their oaths; and if any part of their armour shall fall in the field, it belongs to the constable; and he may stop them, or cause them to proceed or cease at his direction; and the lances, swords, and armour of the dead horses are his perquisites.

ITEM, The constable being on service in the king's war, all his expences shall be defrayed by the king.

ITEM, All military persons in the army are to obey the constable, and such orders as he shall have caused to be proclaimed; and if

(y) PROBABLY one day's pay in the year was meant, tho' not expressed. || (z) CHANGING of establishment, may mean either exchange of garrison, or quitting one banner to engage under another, perhaps on superior rank or pay, in which case, the second day's pay was a kind of fee on promotion.

any one receiving pay, shall depart from the army contrary to his will, or without his leave, his horses and arms shall be forfeited to him, the said constable, and the body of the offender remain at the king's disposal.

ITEM, Neither the mareschal nor the master of the cross bow men, shall undertake any feat of arms for the king's service, either in the army, or in garrison, without consulting the constable, and obtaining his assent.

ITEM, In all places where castles or fortresses are taken, if the king is not present, the banner of the constable shall be the first planted on them; and for each of his two banners, the bearers are to have one hundred pence of the king: and if the king is present, his banners always go foremost, and those of the constable follow them; but the bearers in that case have no perquisite.

ITEM, In all places where the king shall be present, all proclamations shall be made in his name, or that of his constable, without naming any other persons.

ITEM, Where the constable shall be present in the king's wars, whether with or without him, every serjeant of arms shall attend him and obey his orders. (a)

ITEM, If a serjeant at arms shall misbehave, the constable may take away his mace, and suspend his service; in which case the king ought not to restore him, until the constable had related to him the cause of deprivation.

ITEM, When the king is at his coronation at Rheims, the constable ought to be lodged at the moulinet, before Notre Dame, and should send the men at arms to fetch the ampulla, or vessel holding the holy oil, and go with them and convoy them back."

(a) THESE serjeants at arms were the king's body guard, and all of them gentlemen; their officers, who were persons of high rank, probably made a difficulty to receive the constable's orders when the king was in the camp, which difficulty might have caused this regulation.

HERE follows another piece, containing the prerogative of the constable also preserved in the chamber of accounts at Paris, in the register, entitled PATER. fol. 183.

“ I. THE constable is superior to all other persons in the army excepting the king. If there are dukes, barons, counts, knights, esquires, horse or foot soldiers, of what estate soever, they must obey him.

II. ITEM, The mareschals of the army are under him, and have their distinct offices of receiving men at arms, dukes, counts, barons, knights and esquires, and their companions ; (b) but cannot, nor ought not, to go out on any expedition, nor order any battle, without the direction of the constable, nor make any ban or proclamation, without the commands of the king or constable.

III. ITEM, The constable should order all battles, expeditions, and establishments of posts, both in the field and garrisons. (c)

IV. ITEM, Whenever the army moves from one place to another, the constable takes and delivers by his right, their different stations in the troops, to the king, and other officers of the army, immediately after the master of the cross bows, and then the battalions, and the mareschal should be in his battail.” (d)

THIS matter, which (says Pere Daniel) is expressed in an obscure manner, is explained by an ancient manuscript in my possession, at the head of which is an ordonance of Philip le Bel, of the year 1306, touching the gages of Battailles. Many other matters are there treated, and among them is this title, “ Ordonnance of the king when he goes with the army.” The contents are as follows :

“ WHEN the king takes the field with the army, he ought to march in battalia ; and first, the constable should command forth

(b) PROBABLY in order to assign their quarters in garrison, or ground in a camp.

(c) ESTABLIES. This word, in the old French, signifies as well posts in the field, as garrisons. || (d) BATTAILE was an ancient military term for an indefinite body of men ; armies were frequently divided into three battles.

the scouts, who should be good soldiers and well mounted; after them a mareschal, or other vailliant man, leading a squadron of choice men, having a sufficient number of archers, for the protection of the scouts; and there should be the masters of offices, prevoists, fourriers and their people, for distributing quarters; after these comes the constable in the van-guard, with a sufficient number of barons, and good soldiers; and there are their pennons, banners and standards, and their body of archers who go before.

AFTER them comes the master of the cross bows, with the archers; then comes the first esquire of the esquiere (e) who carries, or causes to be carried, the royal standard, until it is wanted for service; and after him are the pages on barded war horses (f), and the king's horses, who bear rich bacinets, helmets, lances, salades and hats; after them come the trumpets, and then the king's banner, which the first chamberlain, surrounded by kings of arms, heralds and pursuivants, is to bear, or cause to be borne, till it is wanted for service; after all these comes the king in person, accompanied by dukes, counts, barons, and princes, and other noble and powerful men; and the first groom-carver (g) should be next behind him carrying his penon, which should move to and fro every where the king goes, in order that every one may know where he is; and the banner, pennon, and standard horses are at the conclusion of the campaign, the right of those who have borne those ensigns, the two wings of the corps de battail, and their archers, should be commanded by two princes, admirals, or mareschals, or other wise and vailliant captains, who should speedily send some good and able cavalry, to reconnoitre the way and country; after all these comes the rear guard, commanded by a duke, count, or mareschal, well accompanied by vailliant men, and the archers belonging to them, who behind them should have a little square (h) of good troops; and after them some

(e) ESCUYER d'Escuyerie. || (f) ARMED or barded horses. || (g) PREMIER Varlet Tranchent.

horsemen well mounted, to prevent their being attacked in the rear.'

By this extract, may be clearly seen, what is confusedly told in the preceding article, shewing in what manner the constable, by virtue of his office, and of his right, assigned to the king and the officers, the post each should hold in the march of the army. First of all the constable made a detachment which marched before the army; and in that detachment were the fouriers and other officers destined to distribute the ground in the place, where the camp was to be formed.

SECONDLY, The constable marched at the head of the van guard. Thirdly, after the van guard, and before the corps de bataille, marched the grand master of the cross bow men, whose corps was very numerous; and then followed the corps de bataille, where the king was, after the body commanded by the master of the cross bow men; and finally followed the rear guard, behind which was a detachment of brave soldiers, to prevent the enemy from troubling them in their march. I return to the suite of functions or prerogatives of the constable.

"ITEM, The king, if with the army, ought not to ride forth on any expedition, nor the other combattants, unless by the ordonnance and council of the constable.

ITEM, The constable has the care of sending messengers and spies for the use of the army, every where he shall see necessary, as also when requisite, couriers, and other horsemen."

THE four articles following respect the right the constable has to take a day's pay from each man of war in the wages or pay of the king, of which mention has been made in the other acts.

IN an account of William Charrier, of the year 1424, under Charles VII. taken from the chamber of accounts, I have remarked a privilege of the constable, namely, that he should have for every

(h) THAT is a small body of men, ranged in rank and file, which seems to shew, that the other troops did not observe much order in marching.

month, as his predecessors had, the payment of an hundred men of arms, without being liable to either muster or review, being only obliged to deliver every month, on a roll of parchment, the names and surnames of those men at arms, certifying under his seal, that he had them in his company.

THESE were the chief military prerogatives of the constable of France, from whence probably those of the English constables were taken. This office was suppressed in France, by Louis XIII. in the year 1627: the motives mentioned in the ordonnance for this suppression, were the great appointments and power of this officer, the latter frequently in prejudice to the royal authority.

THE mareschal, or marshal, was the officer next in command to the constable. (i)

THIS office is as old as the conquest, there were two marshals created by William the Conqueror, Roger de Montgomery, and William Fitzosborne. It was conferred for several generations, in the family of de Clares, Earls of Pembroke, after which, reverting to the crown, it was held by different great personages, till the 25th Hen. VIII. when it was granted to Thomas Howard, Duke of Norfolk, and his heirs male for ever, with power to execute it by deputy, since which it has, with some interruptions, arising from attainders, and other consequences of civil dissensions, continued in that family.

BESIDES the earl marshal, it appears that other marshals have been occasionally appointed for commanding our armies, perhaps for the same reasons as were suggested respecting the constable. (k)

THE

(i) SOME derive the term mareschal from the two saxon words, mar, march, or marach, equus, and scalc præfectus, that is to say, that the office of marshal was formerly the superintendancy of the king's horses, like that of constable, but subordinate to it. || (k) KING Henry VII, albeit there was an earle marshal of England in being, appointed Sir Robert Willoughby,

THE following list of droits and fees claimed and enjoyed by Thomas de Brotherton, son of King Edward I. in virtue of his office of marshall of England, is preserved in the British Museum, written in the old French. (1)

THESE

Willoughby, Lord Brooke, to be marshall of his army or hoast, in the eighth year of his reign ; and gave authority to Sir John Digby, knight, marshall, and Sir Robert Clifford, to use marshall law against rebelles, in the twelfth year of his reigne. Historical Anecdotes of the Howard Family, p. 171.

(1) Cotton, MS. Nerv. D. VI. An English copy is printed in the Historical Anecdotes of the Howard Family, p. 151. said there to be truly copied out of a book, written in the time of King Henry VIII. also in the Cotton collection ; as this copy is in some articles, fuller than the French, and differs in others, it is here given.

“ FIRST, The maresshall, by authority and power of his office, ought to have the foreward in every field, and to have it by the king’s assignment.

Of the number of soldiers. THE maresshall ought to appoint the number of the noble-men, of what arms, and of all the chieft in battaile, and other routs, and of all archers.

Of the appointment of lodgings. THE maresshall, with his officers, and lawful deputies, when they ride out, to appoint lodgings for every estate after their degrees.

Of the maresshall’s watch. THE maresshall ought to be abroad in the field, until the other be lodged, for many considerations ; and ought not to come to his own lodging, untill the carriages be come into the said field.

Of the watching banner. THE maresshall to have borne before him, a watchinge banner, whereby every captain shall know him by the same.

Of the maresshall’s courts. THE maresshall ought to have all the courts and leetes holden under him, and in the name of the maresshall of England,

Of such castles as be taken in time of warre, within the roade. The maresshall ought to have, when he maketh any roade, all manner of beasts that have no horns, and all the horses unshodd, and all hoggs, and other gelded beasts.

What he should have of every buyer and seller ; and of such as set up lodgings. THE maresshall ought to have of every merchant, buyer, or seller of any thing amongst the host, every week, foure-pence ; and of every one that setteth up lodgings, foure-pence.

How he ought to have all forfeitures. THE maresshall ought to have all forfeitures of harnys, of such as be misdoers, either by day or night.

How he ought to sett price, and have affize of ale and beer. THE maresshall ought to sett price of all wyne and ale, and have affize thereof ; and also to sett price of all other

THESE are the usages that Thomas de Brotherton claimed to use, by his office of marshalsey.

ALSO, It is right, that the constable and mareschal shall have the number of the armed men, and the names of every one embodied,

victuals that are sold in the host ; also, he ought to have, of every barrel of ale or beere sold in the host, one penny.

How he shall have all new pelfrey. THE mareshall ought to have all such towns as are taken and given up without composition, all the harneys, hole clothes that be new, all manner of vessels, coats, sheets, coverletts, feather bedds, table clothes, towells, with all other things of pelfrey to his advantage.

How the constable and mareshall shall watch. THE constable and mareshall shall ordeyne and devise the manner of watching, and the mareshall to sett the watch, and the constable to visit them, and to give them the watch word ; and all these things must be observed at the siege of a town, or a castle, or when they remove, whither soever it be.

How they ought to watch in the king's campe or hoste. THE constable one night, and the mareshall another night, shall make certain watch, to ride out for to scoure, and assure the host ; also to take all strangers out of the host ; and as for the constable and mareshall, they ought not to watch nightly, but in default of others.

How the mareshall admitteth all the king's servants in warres. THE mareshall, and the clerke of the king's wardrobe, ought to receive all the servants that shall come to serve the king, by XL daies : and after they have served out that terme, they ought not, nor may not depart from the host, untill he or they have a letter of testification from the constable or mareshall, witnessing that they have done their service.

For prising of horses. THE mareshall or his deputies and officers, shall prize the horses that shall be sold. Also, the mareshall's clerke, when any plea ought to be pleaded, ought to make plea against the king's clerke.

The ordering of the king's battaile. THE mareshall ought to be with the constable before the king, at the ordering of the battailes ; and he ought to have in his companie, all manner of men of warre, as well footmen as horsemen, as the constable hath ; and thereby he may the better devise to lodge all the host, and the scouts to the safeguard of the host.

How the pleas belong to the constable and mareshall. ALSO, when the battailes be ordeyned, the steward ought not in any thing to inter-meddle with the pleas that be in the host, but only the constable and mareshall ; of which the constable shall have the fines, and the mareshall the amerciaments and forfeitures of them that have deserved justice, and the profits of them that be commanded to prison.

What the mareshall shall have of every artificer. THE mareshall should have of every merchant, armorer, taylor, barber, and of every man that buyeth and selleth in the field, every

bodied, and under arms, as also of the archers ; and when they ride forth, the constable and marshall shall assign their quarters ; first, as is reasonable, to the van guard, and every other battaile to remain in the field till the preceding one is quartered ; when they are lodged in tents or pavillions, the white banner shall be the rear guard of the whole ; and no carriage to remain behind it.

WHEN an inroad takes place, the constable shall have, out of the plunder taken, all the beasts without horns, all the unshod horses, and hogs, the marshall shall have all the castrated beasts.

ITEM, The constable shall have of every merchant or sutler, buying or selling in the army, 4d. and for a barrel 1d. and shall have the assize of all things sold, wine or beer.

every Saturday, in and for assigning of them their places for keeping of their shoppes, four pence ; and in likewise he shall have, if the said persons sojourne but only two or three daies in one place.

For the marshall's court. ALSO, no order ought to be made without the constable and marshall, and in every company ought to be a knight or an esquire under the high constable and marshall, to appoint their lodgings, and to clayme their fees, and the marshall shall have, as is aforesaid, all the gelded beasts, horses, and such other beasts as have no horns ; and the constable hath been accustomed to have all the shorne beasts, or such as have used to be shorne ; and all colts and other beasts, as maires, sheep, and goats and hoggs, except such as have been gelded, to be free and common to all them that may get them ; and likewise, be all manner of beasts, when they be brought into the field and cried haveoke, then every man to take his part, if the time therefore be convenient, and that the same may be done without prejudice of the host.

For prisoners that escape and be taken againe. ALSO, if it fortune any prisoner to be taken in warre, and the said prisoner escape out of the hold of him that took him, and if he fortune to be taken by the watch, they shall bring him to the marshall, and the marshall ought to have the proffit of his ransome, for he is taken as an estraye.

Of every homager armed. IF any do homage armed, or on horsebacke, the marshall shall have the horse, with all the harneys.

Of the marshall's court. AND at such times as the king is in warre, then ought the constable and marshall to hold the courts, and the marshall to have the amerciements and forfeitures of them that break the commandements of the constable and the marshall."

ITEM, He shall take of every prostitute, 4d. a week ; and from those who erect lodges or stalls, the marshall shall have four pence.

ITEM, The constable shall have all the forfeitures of armour, of those who misbehave, day or night ; and also in towns taken and surrendered at discretion, he shall have the armour, and all the entire or uncut cloth.

ITEM, The marshall shall have all the vessels of silver, cotes, feathers, sheets, coverlets, table cloths, towels, and other kinds of pelf.

ITEM, The constable and marshall shall order the maner of those who watch and the marshall shall cause them to make themselves ready at the hour of eating. The marshall shall post them, and the constable visit them, and give them the watch word ; and these things shall be done at the siege of town or castle ; and when the army is in tents or pavillions, the constable one night, and the marshall another, shall cause certain persons to ride abroad, to protect the army from marauders belonging to it ; and the constable and marshall shall not watch, but on default of others.

ITEM, The constable ought to have from the army, horses for himself and suite ; and the marshall, and a clerk of the king's wardrobe, ought to receive all the persons who come to serve the king for forty days, who, when they have performed their services, cannot depart from the army, untill they have letters from the constable and marshall, testifying, that they have duly performed them : and the marshall ought to appreciate the horses, which are to be prized ; and his clerk ought to act as counter pleader, against the clerks of our lord the king.

ITEM, The marshall should be at the ordaining of the battailes, before the king and council, respecting their arrangement into constablers ; and he ought, as well as the constable, to have a roll of all the men of arms in the army, and of all the infantry, to be the more able to appoint the watches, sentinels, and scouts, for the

the safety of the army; and when the battailes are arranged, the seneschal ought not to meddle with the pleas in the army, which belong only to the constable and marshall, of which the constable is to have the fines, and the marshall, the amercements and forfeitures of all those condemned, and the profit of all those committed to prison.

THE marshall shall have of every merchant that follows the army, of every armourer, taylor, sutler, barber or cook; and from every man that buys and sells in the army; and from every prostitute, every Saturday they sojourn there; and of every one keeping a shop, 4d.; and in the same manner, at every removal of the army, after their sojourning two or three days; and the marshall shall have all the gelded beasts taken by the soldiers of the army in any inroad, and no parties to go forth on any enterprise, without the permission of the constable and marshall; each party should have a knight, or in his place, an esquire, to quarter them, that is to say, the marshall shall have all the castrated beasts, and the constable all the colts, these are the fees of the constable and marshall; the mares belong to those that can take them, and the shod horses to the constable.

ITEM, all the sheep and hogs belong to such private soldiers of the army as can take them; and when they come into the army, and havock is cried, every one may take his part.

ITEM, If a prisoner is taken in the seat of war, and shall escape from the custody of him who took him, and is retaken by the guard, they shall take him to the marshalsea, when the marshall shall have the advantage of his ransom, he being a kind of estray."

THESE are the principal rights and privileges of the marshall, considered as a military officer; he had diverse others, in virtue of his duty about the king's court, which are also specified in the anecdotes before-mentioned; and as some of them are of a very singular

gular nature, and strongly mark the barbarity of the manners of those times, they are transcribed in the note. (m)

At present the earl marshal is not considered as a military officer.

Next in order to the marshall, was the master of the ordnance, but this was no farther back than the first year of the reign of King Richard III. when "Rauf Bigod was appointed to the mastership of the ordnance, during life, with an hundred

(m) THE marshalsey is a serjeantry granted to the Earl of Norfolk in fee, who when he cannot personally execute the office, may appoint a knight, but with the king's consent. If the knight marshall so appointed, do make any default, the earle marshall shall not be amerced as earle, but only as servitor.

HE hath a vierge to be carried before the king, when upon the space about the king, wheresoever he be in England, containing twelve miles (leucarum) is called the vierge.

IN warre he is not bound to keep watch, but every night shall place the watch, and discharge them in the morning; he shall go out with the forragers, with banners displayed for their protection.

HE shall see execution done upon the judgments of the king's stewards within the vierge.

HE shall have the charge of the prisoners.

HE shall have all spotted beasts, or of diverse colours; and of every pound of that fee, he shall pay two pence to the king.

THERE is assigned unto him one clerk, and one serjeant, for keeping of them that are attached.

IT is their charge to keep the vierge from harletts.

THE marshall shall have of every common harlett, within the limits of the house, fourpence the first daie.

IF she be found againe, she shall be forbidden before the steward, not to enter into the king's house, nor the queene's, nor their children.

IF the third time she be found, she shall be imprisoned or abjured the court.

IF she be found the fourth time, her private parts shall be shaven.

IF the fifth time, her upper lip shall be cut off.

AND it was wont, that the marshall had belonging to the court, seventeen single women, that should sweere to the knight mareshall, that they knew no more common women but themselves following the court, no thief, no mesell, but they should utter it to the mareshall, and they ought to serve the court, and no other.

marks

marks fee for himself, and the wages of 6d. per diem for a clerk, and 6d. for a yeoman, to be paid out of the issues of the manors of Kyrton and Lyndefay in Lincolnshire, with the knight livery of household. (n) This is the first master of the ordnance I have been able to find on record; the clerk of the ordnance is mentioned in Rymer as early as the 5th of Henry V. (o)

It does not appear that the English had any particular officer presiding over their projectile machines or artillery, previous to the invention of gunpowder and canon, (p) although in France they were under the direction of an officer stiled the grand master of the cross bowes, an office of great antiquity in that kingdom, at least as old as the reign of St. Louis, who died anno 1270. From this and the little mentioned in our public records respecting these machines, it seems they were not very numerous in our armies, but that they had and used them in sieges, we learn from a variety of historians.

BESIDES the grant to Rauf Bigod before mentioned, there occur in the same reign and manuscript, diverse others respecting the ordnance, which though not immediately in point to our present subject, yet as they serve to shew the very low state of that establishment in its infancy, I shall here transcribe them in the note below. (q)

FROM

(n) No. 433. Harl. MS. p. 105.

(o) WHERE a writ is directed to John Louth clerke of the ordnance, and John Benet of Maidstone, mason, reciting that a sufficient number of masons and labourers had been assigned for making seven thousand stone shot for guns of different sorts, with a sufficiency of stone for the same, as well in the quarries of Maidstone or elsewhere, as should be most for the benefit of the service.

THE workmen to be kept till the whole war completed, and men to be impressed for the carting, boating, or other carriage of the said stones.

(p) MACHINES for shooting stones and darts, used in sieges before the invention of fire arms were called artillery.

(q) To Richard Warmyngton th' office of the artillerie within the town of Calais, with the wages of 12d. by the day, and 6d. for a yeoman under him for life.

JOHN

FROM this slender beginning, the office of master of the ordnance soon grew into great importance, as may be seen by the establishment for the expedition to St. Quintin's, in the year 1557, given in note (r) from a manuscript in the British Museum.

AN

JOHN STOKES th' office of clerk of th' ordonnance within England or elsewhere, for tyme of his life, with the wages of 6d. by the day, to be received of the lordships of Wrytell, Havering, Boyton, Hadleighe, Rayleighe and Rochford in Essex, and of the manors of Tunbrugge, Penshurst, Middleton and Marden in Kent.

WILLIAM TEMPILL th' office of yeoman of th' ordonnance for life, with wages of 6d. by the day, to be received out of the lordships as above.

To Richard Garnet the office of serjeant of the king's tents for life, with wages of 12d. per diem for himself, and 4d. per diem for a yeoman under him, and 100s. for a house to lay the tents in; 46s. 8d. for his robes; 13s. 4d. for his yeoman's robes, to be taken from the issues of the lordships of Wrytell, Havering, Boyton, Hadleigh, Rayleigh, and Rocheforthe, in co. Essex, and the lordship of Tunbrugge, Penshurst, Myddleton and Merden, in co. Kent, by the hands of the receyvoirs.

JOHN ATKYNSON kep. of the armour, in the tower, or elsewhere, within England for life, with fee of 6d. per diem, to be received as above.

To Henry Grey the younger squier, the king hath confirmed unto him th' office of the keeping of the armoury within the tower of London for term of his life, with the wages and fees accustomed to be received by fee farm of Norwiche.

VINCENT TENTLER, armourer; the king hath confirmed unto him to be his armourer during his life, with 20l. fee by the hands of the treasurer and chamberlain of the exchequer.

SIR John Donne, knight; th' office of serjeant or matter of the armoury within the tower of London, during his life, with wages of 12d. for himself, 6d. for a yeoman, and 3d. for a gowne, by the hands of the sheriff of London and Midd. of the issues, &c. this last grant was in the 3d, all the rest in the 1st of K. Richard III.

	Per Diem.				Per Diem.		
	l.	s.	d.		l.	s.	d.
(r) THE master of th' ordy- nance	1	6	8	A surgeon	0	1	0
His lieutenant	0	13	4	Sixe boweyers	0	6	0
Master of the carriages	0	10	0	Sixe fletchers	0	6	0
The trenche master	0	5	0	Three carpenters	0	3	0
A chaplain	0	1	0	Three smythes	0	3	0
A Clerke of th' ordynance	0	2	0	Three guyders of th' ordon- nance	0	4	0
Two clerkes	0	2	0				
							Twelve

AN ancient manuscript in the Harleian Collection, marked No. 4685, entitled "The Order of a Campe or Army Royall, with the Dutie of every Officer belonging to the same, per B. Con Milit. 1518." describes the duty of the master of the ordnance in the field, in these words :

"FIRST, it is the office of the Mr. of th' ordonnance, after that he hath receyved his charge at the councelles handes, he must firste of all, in anie wise before he shall goe fowrthe to the campe, se that they lacke no kynde of municon or such other necessaries whiche apperteine to the said Mr. of th' ordonnance.

AND there are apperteyninge to the Mr. of th' ordonnance, a leyvetenent and certaine clerkes, which are all in wages.

Also the sayd Mr. of th' ordonnance must also first of all receyve the ordonnance, shotte, corne powder, serpentine powder, match and all other municions, as fire-workes, bowes, arrowes, strings, pikes, billes, halberts, harquebusses, qualivers, launces, light horsemens staves, javelins and bore speares.

AND further the said Mr. of th' ordonnance must receyve all kinds of necessaries, that is to saie, ladders, ladles and spunges, for artillerie, mattocks, spades, shovells, pick-axes, crowes of iron, cart wheeles for ordinnances, carriages for ordonnance, axeltrees, hand-axes, axeltrees for ordonnances, windoses for the defence of ordonnance, cart traces, with all kind of cart wares, as ropes, creffed and creffettes, lights, lanthorns, candell and linkes, with all other ne-

	<i>Per Diem.</i>				<i>Per Diem.</i>		
	<i>l.</i>	<i>s.</i>	<i>d.</i>		<i>l.</i>	<i>s.</i>	<i>d.</i>
Twelve carriages	3	0	0	Ten halberdyers	0	10	0
A drumme	0	1	0	Hacquebutter on horseback for	}	0	6
A phife	0	1	0	the lieutenant			
A hundreth and twentie fy-	}	1	5	Mr. gonner	0	3	4
myres				Twelve gunners	0	16	0

See No. 6844, Harl: MS.

cessaries, whiche muste be foresene, that there be no lack before their goinge on.

FURTHER yt is the office of the Mr. of th' ordonnance, after he comes into campe, and the provost marshall hath appointed the grownde most mete and necessarie for the artillerie, then must the aforesaide Mr. of th' ordonnance cause the saide ordonnance to be brought to the saide place appointed, there to be placed to the most advantage.

ITEM, the saide Mr. of th' ordonnance must cause the saide munition to be brought to the place appointed and mete therefore, which must be trenched about, for the danger of fyre; and the aforesaid Mr. of th' ordonnance must charge some discreet man with the watch, yf it stande in neede.

ALSO the saide Mr. of th' ordonnance must se that there be attendinge on the office of ordonnance, certaine artificers, as carpenters, wheele wrights, smithes, bowyers, fletchers, masons, and suche other necessarie men, mete and convenient therefore.

THE saide Mr. of th' ordonnance his office is, that yf there be any capteine that lacketh munition for his soldiers, the saide capteine shall come to the Mr. of th' ordonnance, and he must commande the clerke of th' ordonnance to deliver suche munition as he lacketh; providinge alwaies that the clerke of th' ordonnance do take a bill of the captaine's hand, or of his lyvetennent, for the saide munition, and at the paye daye the clerke shall deliver the saide bille unto the treasurer, that he maye stave so muche monye in his handes as shall answer the queen for the munition so delivered.

FURTHERMORE yt is the office of the Mr. of th' ordonnance, that if the enemye and yowe joyne battaile, the grownde beinge appointed by th' officer of the field where the battaile shall be pytched, to repaire to the field, there to see th' ordonnance planted to the most advantage; and yf occasion shalbe given, to remove the saide artillarie, as shall seme good to the Mr. of th' ordonnance, and
in

in anye wise to be circumspect that the Mr. gonners do their duties belonging thereto."

ANOTHER, and seemingly a more ancient manuscript, late the property of Mr. Anstis, has several curious particulars respecting the power and perquisites of the master of the ordnance, intermixed with the duty of the provost marshall of the artillery, under the following head :

THESE be the AUTHORITIES and POWER that the PROVOSTE MARSHALL and his LIEFTENANT have in the Jurisdiction of the Artillerie.

" FIRSTE, the provoste marshall hath none authoritie to bear his staffe nor his lieftenent within the jurisdiction of the artillerie, withoute licence of the provoste of the artillerie, but to lett his staffe before the artillerie gate, as the antient custome is in the realmes of France, Spayne, Portingale, Naples, &c. &c. Cicellie and Levant.

ITEM, if there be anie person found in the artillerie, charged with a cryme, foe must the provoste of the artillerie deliver him out of the artillerie unto the provoste marshall or his lieftennents, reservinge allwayes that the saide provoste of the artillerie shall keepe for himselfe all those goods and clothinges belonging to the foresaid " crymeneux dedely patient." (s)

ITEM, all those of the small artillerie, as serpentines, courtoux, bombardes, are bounden and must forth with eache of their master gunners and other gunners, at the commandement of the originall master gunner, uppon the payne and correctinge of the chief master of the artillerie and his counsell.

ITEM, that all the carpenters are bounden to be by their (t) mantells and workes in the artillerie, as well in the fieldes as els

(s) So in the original. || (t) PROBABLY mantlets.

wheare, that is, in anie busines to doe, upon payne to abide the correctinge of the said master and his counsell.

ITEM, the master of the artillerie shall doe crie with sound of trumpett, within his jurisdictione of the artillerie, with his provoste, that all master gunners, courtoux, serpentines, and all other beinge of the same offices, that each man shall keepe the ordinances made by the great master of the artillerie, every man severlie keepinge his place, his peece, and their fire and powder; and their servants and boies shall diligentlie watch upon their masters, and abide by them, to see what they have need of, or anye thinge shoulde lacke, as is powder, stones, pellets, necessarie unto them wheare they lie, uppon the paine to abide the correction of the master of the artillerie, lieftennent or provoste.

ITEM, the provoste shall goe with the lieftennent of the kinge or prince of the armie, with the consent and licence of the great master of the artillerie, to make place, as is accustomed to be done of olde, and that they shall take footemen enough to make a place to shote, and dicke it as apparteyneth, within the which they may bringe in their waynes and cartes with powder and other necessarie thinges, and soe there uppon to depute and ordeigne VI. or VII. men deputed or assigned by the master of the artillerie to the defence of the same, upon the payne to be corrected as is aforesaid.

AND wheareas the master of the ordinance is committed and made by anie kinge, prince or captaine generall, and by their counsell, is admitted and charged with the gunners in towne or in field, their ought no man without commandement of the said prince, lieftennent, captaine generall, and the saide counselle, to put noe gunner, in or out the ordinance, without the licence of the said master, or the lieftennent, for his discharge.

ITEM, all other waynes and cartes that bee laden shalbe sett in good ordinance, as it hathe been of olde and antient custome to be, on paine as is aforesaid.

ITEM, that all the mantells and timber worke, basilisques, water milles,

milles, and other instruments belonginge to the sieged towne or castell, the which shalbe brought foe secretlie by night and darkenes as is possible to be done.

ITEM, the gentlemen deputed to give attendance upon the master of the artillerie, to govern any bombards or cannon, shall not doe nothinge, otherwise then is ordeyned by the said master of the artillerie, uppon payne to abide the correction of the saide master.

ITEM, that all servants and officers that have to doe under the authoritie of the master of the artillerie, and in his absence, his lieftennent and officers, as his chappeleyne, receivor, comptroller, provostes and clerkes, master gunners of cortolles or serpentines, and all other servants, as waggoners, carters, their servants, with other, shall keepe and fulfil all such statutes as are ordained by the great master of the artillerie and his counsell, lieftennent and provoste, upon payne to be corrected to the example of all other.

ITEM, as a towne is wonne, whether it is by assalt, per force, subtile practise, or by anie other manner given up, be it towne, castell, pyle, church, or bastile, or fortresse, the chief master of the artillerie, or his lieftennent, shall ordayne, that the master gunners and their companie shall have the best bell within that place foe wonne, or the churchwardens shall appoynt or compound with the great master of the artillerie and his counsell; and that to be reported by the provoste of the artillerie, and given knowledge to the lords and rulers of that place foe wonne, with the comons of the same, what that the master of the artillerie, his counsell and master gunners, and their companie have determined and ordeyned, by a convenable and reasonable estimation, to see and knowe if the lordes and commons will hold the ordinance and appoyntment made. (u)

ITEM,

(u) IN France this perquisite belongs to the grand master of the artillery, "Le grand maitre a encore une privilege dont il n'est point fait mention dans ses provisions; c'est que quand

ITEM, that all the butchers of the artillerie shall flea their beasts without the precinct of the artillerie, and that they grave and burie the filth of those beasts in the yearth, without the artillerie, upon payne to be, &c. &c.

ITEM, that all the horses and other beastes that be killed, or die one their own death, being carrion, the provost of the artillerie must

quand une ville ou forteresse a laissé tirer le canon, les cloches des eglises, les utensils de cuivre & autre metal lui appartiennent, & doivent être rachetées d'une somme d'argent par les habitans, à moins que dans la capitulation on ne convienne du contraire.

Ce droit pourroit bien avoir été accordé au grand maitre de l'artillerie en de dommagement d'un autre qu'avoit le grand maître des arbalétriers, auquel a succédé le grand maitre de l'artillerie, & qui est ainsi exprime dans un ancien registre que j'ai cité ailleurs. "*Que se ville, forteresse ou chateau est pris, a lui appartient toute l'artillerie quelle que soit qui trouvée y est.*" P. Daniel Hist. de la Mil. Franc. tom. 2. p. 526. Something like this perquisite to the grand master of the cross bowes, was allowed by King William III. to the commanding officer of artillery in Ireland, as is shewn by the following warrant: William R. Whereas by our royal warrant bearing date the 25th day of February, in the 4th year of our reign; we did authorize and empower the lieut. general and principal officers of our ordnance, to pay to our trusty and well beloved colonel, John Whynant Goor, the sum of five hundred pounds, in consideration of several broken and unserviceable brasse ordnance, &c. found in the towns reduced during the war in our kingdom in Ireland, being a perquisite belonging and apertaining to the said colonel Goor, and were by him delivered into our magazines for our future service; and whereas the said coll. Goor hath not yet received any part of the said five hundred pounds, by reason it was to be paid out of such moneys as should be appointed for payment of the arrears of the train in Ireland, which payment we have not yet thought fit to direct; we are therefore out of our Royal favour to the said colonel Goor, graciously pleased to direct you to cause the said sum of five hundred pounds, to be paid out of the moneys appropriated to the office of our ordnance on account of land service, and for so doing, this shall be as well to you as to the auditor of our inquest a sufficient warrant. Given at our court at Whitehall, this 14th day of February 1693, in the sixth year of our reign.

By his majesty's command,

J. TRENCHARD.

To our right trusty and well-beloved cousin and counsellor Henry Viscount Sidney, master general of our ordnance, &c. Memorandum. The master general of the ordnance, his signification upon the above said warrant, dated the 19th day of February, 1693—4.

convey

convey them out of the parke of artillerie, for becaufe of infection, uppon the payne to be corrected by the master and his counsell, or his lieftennent.

ITEM, the provost of the artillerie shall have his right of the victuallers within his jurisdictione, in likewise as the provost marshall hath in the greate armye by estimatione."

HAVING here given the general outlines of the duties and privileges of the ancient masters general of the ordnance, I shall conclude the article with a list of the masters general of the ordnance from its first institution to the year 1780, reserving the modern regulations respecting this office for the article of artillery.

SUCCESSION OF MASTERS GENERAL OF THE ORDNANCE.

Rauf Bigod	- - - - -	2 June, 1483, for life
Sir Richard Gyleford	- - - - -	— 1485,
Sir Chrystopher Morres, Knt. was	} 29 H.VIII. 1537,	
master		
Sir Francis Flemynge, Knt.	- - - - -	— 1547,
Sir Philip Hoby, Knt.	- - - - -	— 1548,
Ambrose Dudley, Earl of Warwick	- - - - -	— 1587,
Robert Devereux, Earl of Essex	- 29 Mar.	1596,
Charles Blount, Earl of Devon,	} 10 Sept. 1603, during pleasure	
stiled general of the ordnance		
George Carew, Earl of Totness	- 27 June, 1609,	ditto
Horatio Lord Vere	- - - - -	5 May, 1617, for life
Sir Richard Morrison	- - - - -	26 Aug. 1623, ditto
Sir Thomas Stafford	- - - - -	— 1628, ditto
Mountjoy Blount, Earl of Newport	2 Sept. 1634,	ditto
Sir William Compton	- - - - -	22 Jan. 1660, ditto
John Lord Berkely	- - - - -	21 Oct. 1664, during pleasure
Sir John Duncomb, Knt.	- - - - -	ditto, ditto

Sir

Sir Thomas Chicheley, Knt. first called master general of the ord- nance - - - - -	}	21 Oct. 1664, during pleasure
Thomas Chicheley - - - - -		4 June, 1670, ditto
{ Sir John Chicheley - - - - - Sir William Hickman - - - - - Sir Charles Musgrave - - - - -	}	23 Jan. 1679, ditto
George Legge, Lord Dartmouth -		28 Jan. 1681, ditto
David Schomberg - - - - -		28 Ap. 1689, ditto (x)
Henry Sidney, Viscount Sidney, afterwards Earl of Romney -	}	28 July, 1693, ditto
John Churchill, Earl of, and af- terwards Duke of Marlborough	}	29 June, 1702, ditto
Richard Savage, Earl of Rivers -		10 Sept. 1711, ditto
James Duke of Hamilton - -		5 Sept. 1712, ditto
John Churchill, Duke of Marlbo- rough - - - - -	}	4 Oct. 1714, ditto
William Cadogan, Earl of Cadogan		22 June, 1722, ditto
John Campell, Duke of Argyle and Greenwich - - - - -	}	3 June, 1725, ditto
John Montagu, Duke of Montagu		30 May, 1730, ditto
Charles Spencer, Duke of Marl- borough - - - - -	}	— 1755, ditto
John Ligonier, Viscount, after- wards earl Ligonier - - -	}	30 Nov. 1757, ditto
John Manners, Marquis of Granby		— 1763, ditto
George Townshend, Viscount Townshend - - - - -	}	— 1772, ditto

(x) IN Millian's List. it is Frederick Duke of Schomberg.

IN small armies, and after the disuse of the office of high constable, the officer commanding in chief was stiled captain general. This was the case in the list of the army sent to St. Quintins, before quoted; where next in succession to the captain general, stands the lieutenant general, and the high marshall occupies only the third place in order and command.

THE staffe and suite, &c. of the capitaine general were, a secretary, another for the Frenche tongue, two surgeons, a trounche man, (y) ten carriages, for transportinge his baggage, two trumpetters, a drum, a phife, and thirty halberdiers for his guard.

THE staff and suite of the lieutenant general, were a chaplaine, a surgeon, a troucheman, three carriages, a trumpetter, and fifteen halberdiers.

THE highe marischall had a master of the campe, a chaplain, a surgeon, three carriages, a trumpetter, a drum, and fifteen halberdyers.

THE next officer in rank in this army, was the generall of the horsemen, his staff, a lieutenant, a chaplain, a surgeon, four commissaries, his trumpetter, and fifteen halberdiers.

THE infantry was commanded by an officer stiled captain general of the footmen, and had a lieutenant, a serjeant major, (z) six wyfflers, (a) a chaplain, a surgeon, three carriages, a drum, a fife, and fifteen halberdiers.

THE

(y) PROBABLY a truncheon man, or tipstaff, commonly attendant on persons of high rank, as well military as civil, in order to clear the way, in processions, &c.

(z) SERJEANT major here seems to mean a general officer, afterwards called serjeant major general; serjeant major commonly meant, in the language of those times, the office now stiled major.

(a) WYFFLERS are commonly understood to mean a sort of fers, yet from the following passage in an ancient MS. late in the collection of Mr. Anstis, they seem to have been concerned in drilling of the men; this manuscript is anonymous, but from the hand writing, seems of the time of Queen Elizabeth, "*A charge for every wyffeller*" ffyrste, that they instructe the sowldyers how they shall carry there weapons.

THE duties and powers of the master of the ordnance having been before described, and those of the captain and lieutenant general differing very little from those of the constable and marshal; we come next to general of the horsemen.

THE offices of generals of the horsemen and footmen require no particular explanation, except that their duties were generally restricted to their different services; the generals of cavalry rarely interfering with those of the infantry, or those of the infantry with the cavalry. (b) Nor did officers of the same rank always command according to their seniority. (c) In some instances the command
between

SECONDLY, to show what space betwixte rancke and rancke, 1 betwixte every gunner, twise the length of his gunne, and betwixte every rancke of archers, as moche space as he may goe his bowe by thend and to reche to his foer goer. Betwixt every rancke of pykes, half the pyke length, that thende of his pyke may be within a foote of his fellowe, he that goeth before hym. And betwixt every bill man, the lengthe of hys weapon; and they shall not to motche, neither stay to drinke, and that when any rancke is last behynd to hast the follower; and yf the followers cannot conveniently overtake the foregoers, that one whyffeler call to another before hym, to stay the whole armye, that all may goe together; and in any wyffe, when they ringe be a makeinge, which beginneth as sone as the fyrst rancke ys entered the fylde, that then every whyffeler doo greate diligence to keepe men together in order, and that one rancke doe not lagge behynde another at the entry of the ringe, and likewise within the ringe, that every rancke follow instantly and directly his foregoer, and that the shoullder of one man to be from another, that they may easily handell there weapons for to fight; and when they stand to stay, that every man stayeth, a pyke, to set up his pyke on hys shoullder, and that the hand that holdeth the pyke sett the bought of his elbow out warlycke, and the other hand to be sett under his syde, elles upon the hylte of his sworde, and likewise the bill."

(b) THE title of general is not of very ancient date in the English armies, as we do not find it till about the reign of Henry VIII. after which we meet with the term captain general of the horsemen, and captain general of the footmen, in armies commanded by persons bearing only the title of general. The same army sometimes had a captain and lieutenant general, and also a captain general of the horsemen or foot. An instance of this occurs in the army sent to St. Quintins.

(c) SEE an instance in Rymer, 34th of Eliz. A. D. 1592. In some regulations respecting two thousand footmen, and one hundred horse, to be sent from the Low Countries into France, wherein is the following passage: "And because it standeth with some good order,

between the officers of the same denomination, was thus settled. In the field the officers of cavalry commanded those of the infantry of the same rank, and vice versa in garrison, the infantry commanded their equals in the cavalry, without any respect to the dates of their appointments.

IN the reign of King James II. the officers of the cavalry took rank on detachment according to the dates of their commissions, but those of the infantry on like occasion commanded according to the seniority of the corps to which they belonged; so that a captain or any other officer of the first regiment, though but just appointed, would have commanded a captain, or other officer of like rank with himself, of ten years standing, in the second or any other corps. For this regulation, see the note below. (d)

THE serjeant major general, sometimes denominated serjeant major of the camp or field, was what is now called major general, as serjeant major of a regiment formerly signified the officer now

order, that all the several captains with their bands, may orderlie take their voyage, with one consent, and agree amongst themselves, considering, as they are captains, they will everie of them accompt themselves equal one with another; Sir Robert Sidney and you shall let them know, that it is thought convenient that Sir John Pooley, Knt. should take the charge of the shipping of all their forces, and that they shall for their passage, and during the time untill they should land, be advised by him, as we doubt not but he will perform the same discreetly to their contentation; and at their landing, Sir John Pooley shall have knowledge of her majesty's pleasure from hence, under whose commandement both he himself and all the rest shall there serve in France." From this it is evident, that it was not then the practice for the eldest officer to command on detachments, where there were several of equal rank; had it been so, there would not have been any occasion for the regulation here cited, in favour of Capt. Pooley.

(d) UPON detachments or parties, all officers of horse are to command according to the dates of their commissions, and all officers of foot according to the ranks of their regiments, and not according to their commissions; but all lieutenants and ensigns of the same regiments, upon such detachments or parties are to command among themselves, according to their commissions, and not to the rank of their companies. *Abridgment of the English Military Discipline*, published by authority, 1680.

filed major. The duty of this officer is thus laid down in the same manuscript with that of the master of the ordnance.

“ The OFFICE of the SERJEANT MAJOR in the field or campe, with the DUTIES thereunto belonging, viz.

FIRST of all the serjeant major of the campe ys to receive at the handes of the high marshall the whole number of footmen, that be in the armye, and beinge so receyved he must divide the weapons severallie, that he may perfectlie knowe what number he hathe of everie kinde of weapon, and so to set the order of the battaills accordinglie.

ITEM, the said serjeant major must receyve commandement from the leyvetenent generall, and he must put in order of battaile all the battaile aforesaid, as he is appointed to do, by the said leyvetenent, his commandement, in use.

FFURTHER yt ys the office of the serjeant major, that yf the enemye drawe so near unto yower armye, that the battaile is appointed, then is it most mete and convenyent, that the said serjeant major repaire to the highe marshall, to attend on him when he goeth to viewe the field, where he intendeth the battayle shalbe pytched, and he to take viewe of the grownde of advantage for settinge the battayle, and that beinge done, to return and make reporte to the lord leyvetennent generall, howe he hathe surveyed the grownde, and the most advantage thereof; and to make declaration what order he thinketh moste mete and convenient to set the battaile in. And if it be the aforesaid leyvetennent's pleasure, the said lord generall being therewith well content that it shalbe so don.

THE serjeant major must then repare also unto the said field, there to set the order of the battaile to the most advantage according to the ground. And first of all, he must divide his weapons, and appoint everie ranke withe weapons most convenient according to order; that being done, and the battailes beinge set, and everie
 weapon

weapon placed in everie rank most convenient, then must the said serjeant major se that the kinge's standarde be placed in the middest of the mayne battaile, and the marishall's ensigne in the right hand of the kinge's standarde, and the treasurer's ensigne on the left, and to appoint three or foure other ensignes, as the serjeant major shall thinke goode, for the furnyshinge out of the said rank. Also the said serjeant major must appoint certaine drummes and phifes, to attend on the aforesaid ensignes.

Also the said serjeant major must appoint six ranks of halbertes, that is to saie, three rankes to be placed before the kinge's majestie's standarde, and other three rankes behinde the standarde, of the most tallest, and best armed, that can be found in the whole battaile, for the garde of the kinge's majestie's standarde.

THE aforesaid serjeant major must also appoint the residewe of the ensignes, everie of them in the places, as the said serjeant major shall thinke most mete. That beinge done, and all the battailes in good order, the weapons with their drummes, ensignes and phyffes accordinglie, then must the said serjeant major appoint unto everie capteine their speciall places within everie battaile; some in the fore part of the battaile, some in the myddest, some in the sydes of the said battaile, and other some in the hindermost part of the said battaile, as he shall think metest.

ITEM, the said serjeant major must also se that the shotte be placed within the wynges of every battaile, for the impalement and garde of the aforesaid battailes; and the said serjeant major must also appoint certaine capteins to have the charge of the said shotte, and leadinge of them.

Also the said serjeant major must appoint the forlorn hope in his order before the front of the battaile, and to charge certain capteynes with the leadinge of them.

It is also the office of the said serjeant major to serve with his own person in the fore front of the battail, and to lead the battail."

THE treasurer, sometimes called the high treasurer of the army, was an officer of great trust as well as authority, somewhat like that of the paymaster general of the present time, but invested with more power. The duties of this office as described by Ralph Smithe are: "Alsoe you oughte to chuse unto you a highe treasurer, which is an office of great reputation, and therefore he oughte to be a man of greate wisedome, experte in martiall affaires, for that hee is to speake his opinion in all offices, as well concerninge other offices as his owne, otherwise committed to his chardge; the payment of all highe officers, namelye, captaines and corronells: likewise he shall receive from the generall the true number of horsemen and footemen within the army, and to make a perfitte booke every moneth, how much is due unto everye officer and souldier; hee is to conferre with the master of the ordenance, for the storing of munition of all sorts; and likewise with the master of the victualls; and to see that he be well furnished thereof at all tymes. All other thinges which oughte dulie to be observed and performed by him, the which I do not make relation hereof, butt refer it to wiser heads." Another military treatise (e) says of this officer, "He is still the king's counsell, especially that you tearme martiall, and is to give his opinion in all proceedings of the army, and sometimes may deny disbursements though the generall command the same. His office extends to take account of the musters, and to booke the companies; whereby the prince or generall may still know the strength of the camp, and he himself know how to discharge the souldier. He is also to conferre with the master of the ordnance about the spending of powder and provision of munition; yea, all inferior officers, as the provost master, muster master, commissaries, undertakers for victuall and apparell, pay masters, captaine of the pioners, carriage masters and such like, are all subject to his parti-

(e) THE Military Art of Trayning, &c. London, 1620.

cular examination, by way of placing and displacing as he seeth just occasion."

THE high harbinger was the quarter master general of former times; his office is very minutely described in the manuscript before quoted. (f)

"The OFFICE of the HARBINGER in the field or campe, with the DUTIES thereunto belonging, videlicet.

FIRST, the harbinger, after that he is appointed unto his charge, ought to resort to the lord lieutenant general, to enquire of him the names of all the officers of honor, and counseillors, belonging to the armye, and also all other meane officers apperteyning to the same, that he may appoint lodgings for them accordinglie. Also, he must know of the said lord lieutenant generall, the place where the armye shall assemble to be mustered; and thither must he repaire, callinge before him the cheefe rulers of the towne, declaringe unto them that he is come to provide lodgings for the lord lieutenant generall and the armye; and to charge the said rulers, that they send some of their officers, to bringe him to everie house in the towne that is hable to make any lodgings, that he may take a note what beddes they make within the towne, or subberbs of the same, and to command them to provide victualls sufficient for suche souldiers as they do lodge, upon prices reasonable; and after that he has divided his lodgings, and made his booke of them, he must first appoint for the lord generall, the chiefe lodgings, and next after him his two lordes lieutenants of the fore and rear wards; the master of the ordinnance, and all other meane officers, to be lodged as near to the counsaile as he convenientlie maie, that they may be readie to attend uppon the lord lieutenant generall, when they shall

be called for: and after he hath lodged the lord lieutenant generall and the counsaile, he must reserve certain of the best lodgings for the captaines and men of worship that serve in the field, deliveringe to every man's servant that cometh for a lodgings for his master, one billet, naminge therein the lodgings for him, and what number of beddes are appointed for him, whiche billet he must enter into a booke for his remembrance.

THE said harbinger oughte to have also some under him, and he should deliver to everie of them a booke, devidinge the lodgings in the towne in four partes, appointinge to everie clerke one part of the towne to make lodgings in, whiche clerkes must appoint no lodgings but such as the harbinger appointeth by billet.

AND their office ys to se that no man take any lodgings in their quarter, but where they be assigned; and yf they do, and will not be avoyded, then muste they resort to the highe marischall, who may remove them; the harbinger must also make streight commaundement, that no householder, upon paine of imprisonment, doe take into his house anie man to lodge without billet from him, upon paine of answeringe to the same.

FFARTHER the said harbinger and his servants must give their attendance upon the high marischall, when he goeth to viewe the ground where the camp shalbe pitched. And after that the highe marischall hath appointed the ground for the camp, then the provost marischall makethe devision of the quarters of the camp, assigning a place for the market, or place of assemblie, and the streetes for the same; and the harbinger being made privie thereunto must remaine upon the same ground, readie to answer all suche as come before, to knowe where they shall pitche their tentes and discharge the carriages.

ALSO for that every man shall knowe where to pitche their tentes, and to be lodged in such place as they marche in; that is, he that marcheth in the waward to be placed there; and in the battailes, the harbinger ought to have one of his clerkes to give attendance,

dance, to assign the places appointed, and one other being the fourth clerke shall attend on and upon the ground appointed for the horsemen likewise, to set them in order for their lodgings. And the cheefe harbinger shall have ynough to doe, to se all these thinges done accordinge to his direction : and his office is to amende suche faultes as he shall finde done contrarie to his order ; and if he be letted so to doe, then must he complaine to the highe marishall, which ought to reforme the same."

THE provost marshal or chief provost of the army, seems to have been formerly an office of much greater rank and authority than it is at present. This we learn from the manuscript quoted in the preceding article, and according to the detail of the duties of that office, there laid down, in several instances bordered on those of the quarter master general ; a transcript of that article is here given.

" The OFFICE of the PROVOST MARSHALL in the fiede or campe, with the DEWTIES thereunto belonginge.

FIRST, yt is the office of the provost marshall to receyve at the handes of the highe marischall the whole nomber bothe of horsemen and footemen that are in the armye, to the ende, the said provost marishall maie bothe order and appointe the campes accordinge to the nombers.

ITEM, the said provost marishall, after that the highe marishall hath appointed the ground where the campe shalbe, then must the provost marshall divide the ground into severall quarters, appointinge to everie battaile their quarter, and to everie capten their severall growndes within the quarters of the said battaile.

THE provost marshall must also when he maketh the campe, appoint within the said campe, a large market place of assemblie, and to appoint certaine streetes in the said campe, between the quarters

of everie battaile, and to appoint the leyvetenent generall's place, giving him the place of honor in the fiede.

FFURTHER, that the said provost marischall must give straight commandement, that no man pitch anie tent near unto the ryng of the said campe by some score foote at the least; and everie captaine, after they be encamped, shall commande that their carriages shall go to the impalement of the saide campe.

ALSO the said provost marshall must give commandement to the captaine of the pyoners, to appointe certain of his labourers to entrench the saide campe or place of assemblie.

AND further the said provost marischall must appoint in the ringe of the campe, grownd of advantage for th'artillerie mete and convenient.

AND further the said provost marischall must se all watches to be set himselfe, and also give to everie watche their charge, with the watche worde, then must he twise or thrise in the night himself goe to searche them, that goode watch be kepte, and that everie man doe his dutie accordinglie.

ALSO the said provost marischall must appoint within the market place or place of assemblie, within the aforesaid campe, a place for the munition, not neare the danger of fire.

AND the aforesaid provost marischall must cause it to be trenched about, and to give charge and commandement unto the Mr. of th' ordinnance, and he shall command and appoint some discret honest man to have the charge of the watch thereof.

ITEM the said provost marischall must appoint near unto the place where the municion is set, a place convenient for the master of th' ordonnance, with the office of th' ordonnance.

IF it chance that the enemy and you joyne in battaile together, then is the office of the provost marshall to serve in his owne person with the footemen, in the rank with the serjeant major.

THE provost marshall also ought to see all proclamations to be proclaimed

proclaimed with the harrald at armes, and the trompetter, in the lorde leyvetenente generall his name.

ITEM, the said provost marischall must likewise gyve streighte commandement that after the watch be set, and the watche piece shotten off, there be no maner of noyse in the campe, but that all men be at quiet.

MOREOVER, the tipstaves of the said provost marischall ought to se that good order be kept within the aforesaid campe, that there be no brawlinge nor fightinge within the said campe, but forthwith the said tipstaves to bringe them that so offend unto the marishallie, and there to be punished at the direction of the said provost marischal."

AT present the chief duties of the provost marshal of an army are: the keeping of all prisoners, particularly those confined for great offences, apprehending deserters, marauders or soldiers straggling beyond the limits of the camp. At night, by his rounds or those of his deputies, preventing any disturbances among the petty sutlers in the rear, and apprehending all soldiers out of camp after gun-firing. Causing the butchers to bury all their offal; also to kill all glandered horses, and to bury them, and all others dying in the camp, in order to prevent infection. To enable him to perform those duties, the provost martial has a serjeant's, and sometimes a subaltern's guard; and occasionally to give him the more authority, has the rank of captain; besides which, he is permitted to make out a contingent bill, for his fees for executions, and other expences attending his office. A very curious one of Assarias Van Velthoven, a Dutchman, provost general in Ireland, under King William III. is preserved in the Museum, which in one campaign amounted to 307l. 10s. (g) This being thought an enormous charge, some persons were authorised to enquire into it; what was

(g) No. 6844, Harl. MS.

their report does not appear, but there is the king's order for paying the bill. As a matter of curiosity, several specimens of his charges are given in the note, (h) with some of the evidences brought

(h) ACCOUNT of the CHARGES and DISBURSEMENTS done by the Provost General Velthoven, concerning the prisoners, who by order of his Excellency and by the High Counsel of Warr are acquitted, as also of those that are executed in order of the sentence.

Kilkenny, 9th of June, (1691.) Have bene send in areft by order of his excellency the Lord of Sgravemore, two persons, named Thomas Traffi and Philip Wodli, being both raperies, and remained in the areft until the 11th of Feb. when the same in pursuance of the sentence and approbation of the Lord of Sgravemore in Kilkenny, hane bene punished with the rope to death, amounts for 33 daies diet, from the 9th of January untill the 11th of Feb. at 6d. a day, is for both of them	l. s. d.
For extraordinary treats, after the sentence of death of the patients as otherwise, each one six shillings, is together	1 13 0
Paid unto the thre servants that hane sit up with and served the patients, after the sentence of death, accordinge to custome, half a crowne a day, is for two days and a night	0 12 0
For the reading of the sentences	0 2 6
Unto the executioner, for hanging and takeing downe, as otherwise, ten shillings apiece, is together	1 0 0
For the ladder, ropes and bolts	0 3 0
For the locking and unlocking of each, 2s. 6d.	0 5 0
For assisting in the execution according to custom for me	0 10 0
For the listenent	0 4 0
Paid for burying unto the servant, 2s. 6d. each	0 5 0
Dec. 19th. Hane bene send in areft by the Collonel Floid, John Gerritse, drummer, and John Wright, souldier, under do. regiment, under the company of Capt. Person, deserters, and remained until the 13th of Feb. when the same by the sentence of the high counsel of warr and the approbation of the General Ginkel should hane bene punished to death, but John Gerritse has got his freedom with diceing under the gallows, but John Wright has punished with the rope unto death: for 57 daies diet, from the 19th of December to the 13th of February, at 6d. a day, amounts to	2 7 0

N. B. Charges of execution as before.

Feb.

brought to invalidate them. His establishment was a lieutenant, a sub lieutenant, a scrivener or clerk, an executioner, eight horsemen for his guard, a prison, a prison keeper, with four servants; he

Feb. 25th. Brought in arrest William Waters for a repery, and do. remained to the 5th of March, after he had severely bene whipped with rods, without Kilkenny, accordinge to his sentence, upon the 28th day of February.	l. s. d.
For 9 daies diet, from the 25th of February to the 5th of March, at 6d. } a day, is	0 4 6
For reading of the sentence	0 2 6
For whipping	0 5 0
For locking and unlocking	0 2 6
Feb. 26. Made by order of the Lord of Sgravemore, a new gallows without Kilkenny.	
Paid for wood for the same	1 15 0
For making and erecting the same	0 15 0
For the ladders and bringing	0 3 0
For	0 2 0
March 20. By order of the Lord General ordered to be brought into a rome, and there given them notice of their death, the following soldiers of the regiment of the Earl of Nassaw, having bene abroad upon partie, and not done their dutie, namely Abraham de Vlieger, Peter de Moy, Hery Cornraed, Casper Willem Hager, Pieter Ettersen, Jacus Slim, Benedictus Moet, and have accordingly to the sentence the next day plaid at dice, and the lot for to dye is fallen upon Casper Willem Hager, but have afterwards bene pardoned, and on the 23d acquitted.	
Their ordinary diet was sent to them from ther regiment, but for their extraordinary after their condemnation to death, 2s. 6d. each is	0 17 6
For five servants that waited on them after their condemnation to death, at 2s. 6d. a day, for two days and one night is	1 5 0
For locking and unlocking, 1s. each, is	0 7 0
Lift of the servants of the executioner concerning the horses in the late camp, as also by the head quarters and the particular regiment are buried, as also some dead bodies in Athlone, and before Limericke buried.	
Jan. 4th, Buried horses, 7.	
In all buried horses 102, at 2s. 6d. each.	

Jan.

was likewise allowed two waggons with eight horses, for the carriage of sick prisoners, with carters to drive them. As Velthoven was a foreigner, it will account for the extraordinary bad English, in which his bill is written.

THE

January 24. Buried before Athlone, 7 men.

For each 2s. 6d.

July 31. Buried before Athlone, 30 men.

These are particular articles extracted from the bill, and often occur in it: the objections against it were these.

OBJECTIONS against Affarias Velthoven's ACCOUNT of DISBURSEMENTS hereunto annexed.

	l.	s.	d.
That he gives no particulars how he laid out the 60l. he owns by his first article to have received, yet charges the same again in fol. 32.	60	0	0
Overcharged the 9th of June	47	0	0
From 3d June, 1691, to 2d November following, charges 6d. apiece, 1669 days, 41l. 14s. 6d. when he allowed them but one ammunition loaf for 2 days, which (when he pays Mr. Perrara for) will cost him 3 ³ / ₄ d. apiece, overcharged	27	13	9
That he chargeth for extraordinary treats to 26 persons after sentence of death passed upon them, 7l. 16s. whereas he gave some only one pot of beer, some had a pot of beer, and two pounds of meat and bread, and some nothing at all, at 1s. a head, which is far more than they cost him, is 1l. 6s.—overcharged	6	10	0
Feb. 25th. He chargeth for 3 days diet of 68 officers, 30l. 12s. whereas all the meat cost him but	0	3	6
The beer at 3d. a pint	0	17	0
The cheefe at 6d. per lb.	0	8	6
The bisket at 1d. per piece	2	11	0
	4	0	0
overcharged	26	12	0
He charges for watching condemned persons, but inasmuch as where one watched, he sets down two, and where two he chargeth four or five, and when one night, sometimes a night and a day, or two nights; if he pays the men (which as yet he hath not) it will cost him 3l. 10s.—overcharged	7	0	0

7thly.

THE scowt master was another ancient staff officer, whose duties are described in this manuscript, in the following words.

“THE OFFICE of the SCOWT MASTER in the fielde or camp, with the DUTIES belonging to the same.

“FIRST, the office of the scout master is, that he attend upon the highe marishall when he goeth to viewe the ground, where he intendeth

	l.	s.	d.
7thly. He charges for executing 24 men, as paid by him 12l. when he pays the executioner, it will cost him but 6l.—overcharged	6	0	0
8thly. He chargeth for whipping 3 men paid by him, 15s. if he pays the executioner, it will cost him but 7s. 6d.—overcharged	0	7	6
9thly. When one or more are executed, he is allowed to charge 10s. for himself, for his day's attendance, and no more, as appears by his own account, fol. 14, where he chargeth but 10s. for executing 5 persons.			

On the 13th of February, 1691, John Langton and John White were both hanged, fol. 3, he chargeth

	l.	s.	d.
For himself	0	10	0
For his lieutenant	0	4	0
For watching	0	10	0
For reading the sentence	0	2	6
For ladder	0	1	0
	0	17	6

Fol. 4. He chargeth them all over again for John White, saving that he says, 15s. for watching, whereby he puts clear into his pocket	1	12	0
11th. For the new gallows he bought for 1l. 5s. he overcharged my Lord Sgravemore 1l. and received of him for the same 2l. 5s. yet now chargeth 2l. 5s. to the king's account for them, whereby the king is wronged	3	5	0

For burying men and horses, he chargeth 12l. 15s. but did not pay it.

He chargeth for burying a man, who according to his sentence was left hanging on the gallows. N. B. Another paper respecting these charges, says, the men charged as buried were thrown into the river. He is there also charged 9l. for a lined tent, given to a lady of pleasure.

He

intendeth to campe. Then must the said scowte master both view and se in what fort he may set the scowte, that when the trumpet foundeth to the watche at night, then must the said scowt master repaire to the tent of the generall of the horsemen, there the said generall or his lieutenant shall appoint certaine horsemen that attend on the scowt, to be in the scowt that night. Furthermore, the said generall must in anie wise gyve straight commandement unto the said scowt master after the relief be founded, that they

He chargeth for extraordinary treats of seven soldiers of the	l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.
Earl of Nassaw's regiment, after condemnation, 17s. 6d.	0	1	2			
he only gave them 7 quarts of beer, which cost him						
Small beer	0	0	6			
More strong beer, a pint apiece	0	0	7			
More strong drink	0	0	6			
	0	2	9			
Besides what is undiscovered, there is overcharged				217	18	9

J. HOFFLINGH,
JOHN GOEDART.

JOHANNES HOFFELINGH, native of the Hague in Holland, aged 34 years, or thereabouts, maketh oath, that about the beginning of the month of October, Ao. Dni, 1691, Affarias Van Velthoven, the Dutch Provoe being in the camp before Limerick, in Ireland, gave one of the best horses in his troop to his son John Christian Van Velthoven, cadet in another company, making his trooper serve on foot. That in the month of November following, the said Van Velthoven gave Mrs. Mary Valentine (his lady of pleasure) one tent lyned with blew, and four very good harnesses for waggon horses belonging to their majesties. That the said Van Velthoven bought very bad horses for his troopers, one whereof cost him but three pounds, another two guineys, and another but two cobbs, or nine shillings and sixpence, insomuch, that if they had occasion to ride five or six miles in one day (least they should founder) said Velthoven would often cause them to lide and walk on foot in their jack-boots, to their no small fatigue.

THAT whilst the army was before Limerick, and many died for want of bread, the said Velthoven, under pretence he had many prisoners in his custody, sent for great quantities of bread from the king's stores, wherewith (to save charges) he caused his whole troop of horses to be fed, yet at the same time brought their majesties a Dutch guilder a day

they shall not, upon paine of deathe, stirre from their charge before the scurriers be come into the field to take their places, and then they may depart.

ALSO the said scowt master, when the trumpet foundeth the relief of the watch in the morninge, must repair unto the lieutenant of the horsemen, there to receive at his hands, suche horsemen as the said lieutenant shall appoint to be in the scurrage that daie.

ITEM, it is the office of the scowt master, when he cometh into

day to account, for the keeping of each horse in his troop, giving as a reason for his knowledge, that he the deponent was under lieutenant to said Affarias Van Velthoven, and privie to the premises.

J. HOFFELINGH.

Sworne before the Commissioners of accompts, the 27th day of September, 1692.

ZYRACH GOUT, one of the troopers in his troop, also swears, that although the said Velthoven received money from their majesties in 1690, for the purchase of new boots and pistols for his troop, he bought such old ones, that the pistols were unserviceable, and the boots obliged to be new footed on their arrival in Ireland, for which he obliged his troopers to pay.

JOHN GOEDART also confirmed the former evidence, and further accused Velthoeven of swapping away one of the best horses of his troop with one Capt. Young, for one so very old, that he was left behind in Ireland, as unserviceable, and also that before the said Van Velthoeven went to Ireland, he kept three men for several months, ready for a false muster; that he received pay for a clerk, and an allowance for his horse, 37 guilders ten stivers for the first, and a gilder a day for the horse, and kept neither. This deponent was his upper lieutenant. His servant John, borne a Polander, also on oath, confirmed these accusations, and added several instances of his changing and selling the horses, furniture, &c. and also accused him of leaving in Dublin, with a cousin of Mrs. Valentine, a large portmanteau full of iron bars, chains, fetters and other things useful for securing of prisoners, one other tent lined with blue, and the harness for four waggon horses, all which belonged to their majesties.

IN Van Velthoeven's answer to these charges many he denies, for several he pleads custom in Holland, and respecting Mrs. Vallentine, he says the irons in question were sent to Holland by mistake, but that he has more irons with him than he received from the king, out of which he will make them good; with respect to false musters, he never was mustered himself, nor his company.

the field to set and appoint the scowrage, he must appoint some to the high hilles, that are thereabouts, to viewe and se if they can discover any thinge.

Also the said scowte master must appointe one other companie of scuragers, to searche and viewe every valley thereabouts, that there be no enemies laide privilie for the anoyange of the said campe, and if they do discover anie, they are to advertise the scowt master; and he must either bring, or send worde to the high marischall of their advertisement, with speed.

THE said scowt master must also contynuallie, bothe daie and night, be in the felde himself, or appoint some discrete honest man, whom he may trust in his absence, to foresee that bothe the scowte in the night season, and scurriers in the daie, may do their duties that appertene to their charge; for there lieth a great charge of yt, as muche as the life of the scowt master is wurthe, if any thinge happen amisse: and the said scowte master must contynuallie bringe advertisement of all thinges that the scowrriers here or se."

"THE Trench Master (says Markham) hath command over all the pyoners, in all their works, and by his directions (i. e. the master general of the ordnance) seeth all manner of trenches cast up, whether it be for guard and inclosing of the campe, or for other particular annoyance to the enemye, or for the building of sconces, or other defence or offence, as directions shall be given. (i) This officer seems sometimes to have been stiled "Devisour of the fortifications to be made." In the list of the staff of the Duke of Somerset's army, employed against the Scots, at the battle of Musselborough, Sir Richard Lee, Knight, held an office so denominated. (k)

THE Carriage Master general or waggon master, who amongst the Romans was called *impedimentorum magister*, the master of

(i) SOLDIERS Grammar, p. 128. || (k) SEE Patten's Account of the Expedition, printed by Richard Grafton, 1548.

the impediments or hinderances in the warres; for it is true, that from nicenesse and curiosity, first grew the foundation of this office; he hath the supreme authority over all waggons, carriages, sleds and the like, and foreseeeth that they march orderly, without cloying up the high waies, or doing foule annoyances one to the other in their marches, with a world of other observations which are too long to recite in that place. (l)

SIR James Turner, (m) under the head of the waggon master, has the following curious particulars respecting that office.

“EVERY regiment, whether of horse or foot, should have a waggon or a baggage master, and where the establishment of the prince doth allow him no pay, the colonel should order a sufficient serjeant or corporal to exercise that office by turns; these are to see, that every officer's baggage, from the highest to the lowest, march accordingly to the dignity and precedence of him to whom it belongs, whether it be carried on waggons, carts or horses; but these regiment baggage masters are not to suffer the baggage of the regiments to march, till they have received their directions from the waggon master general, when and in what manner it shall be done. The waggon master general's charge is extremely toylsome, when an army marcheth, every night after the army comes to quarter, and every morning before it march, he must attend the major generals of the cavalry and infantry, and receive his orders from them, if the whole army march together; but if the cavalry march apart, then the major general of the foot gives the waggon master his instructions, particularly a list in what order the army is to march; for ordinarily, regiments and brigades charge by turns, and their baggage must march in the same order that themselves do: the waggon master having got his list, he accordingly orders the regiment baggage masters (who are obliged to wait on him every

(l) SEE Markham's Soldier's Grammar, p. 128. || (m) PALLAS Armata, p. 276.

morning) to cause their luggage march, wherein they may not fail; for (unless some extraordinary occasion alters it) the prince, or in his absence, the commander in chief, his coach or coaches, with his waggons, go first; then the whole train of artillery behind it; the coaches and waggons of all the general officers, according to their dignity; after them the waggons of that brigade that hath the van for that day, and so all the rest in order, according as the regiments or brigades march. If any waggons or baggage horses press to be before these, behind whom the waggon master general has ordered them to march, he may safely make prize of them, owne them who will. When the waggons come to a heath, or a champaign field, the waggon master should order the waggons to draw up, two, four or five in rank, and to drive in that order so long as the ground permits them to do so, and this saves time, and makes dispatch; and when they come to strait ground, they are to fall off, by the right hand, in that order wherein they were before; the same course he is to take with baggage horses.

THIS baggage master general is allowed to have two lieutenants; so that if the army march three several ways (as sometimes it doth), himself and his two deputies serve to marshall the baggage of all the three. If the army is divided into two, or the cavalry march alone, one of his lieutenants goes along with the horse, the other stays with himself, and he is constantly to be there where the general of the army and train of artillery either marcheth or quartereth.

MANY times waggons are commanded to be burnt and destroyed; sometimes all the women and most of the baggage are left behind at some garrison and fortified place, or with the body of the infantry and artillery, when expedition calls away all the horse, dragoons, and as many foot as are able to march lustily. In some of these occasions officers go fair to lose their waggons and some of their moveables.

WOMEN who follow an army may be ordered (if they can be ordered) in three ranks, or rather in classes, one below another; the first

first shall be of those who are ladies, and are the wives of the general and other principal commanders of the army, who for the most part are carried in coaches; but those coaches must drive according to the quality of them to whom the ladies belong, and as the baggage of their husbands is appointed to march by the waggon master general. The second classe is of those who ride on horseback, and these must ride in no other place than where the baggage of the regiment to whom they belong marcheth, but they are very oft extravagant, gadding here and there, and therefore in some places they are put in companies, and have one or more to command and oversee them, called in Germany HUREWEIBLES, rulers or marshals of the whores; I have seen them ride, keep troop, rank and file, very well, after that captain of theirs who led them, and a banner with them which one of the women carried. The third classe is of those who walk on foot, and are the wives of inferior officers and souldiers; these must walk beside the baggage of the several regiments to whom they belong, and over them the several regiment marshals have inspection. As woman was created to be a helper to man, so women are great helpers in armies, to their husbands, especially those of the lower condition, neither should they be rashly banisht out of armies; sent away they may be sometimes for weighty considerations; they provide, buy and dress their husband's meat, when their husbands are on duty, or newly come from it, they bring in fewel for fire, and wash their linens, and in such manner of employment, a souldier's wife may be helpful to others, and gain money to her husband and herself; especially they are useful in camp and leaguers, being permitted (which should not be refused them) to go some miles from the camp to buy victuals and other necessaries. (n)

AT

(n) FORMERLY the soldiers had boys to attend them, to provide fuel, fetch water, &c. these were called, garciones and goujats, and in the French army so late as the beginning

AT the long siege of Breda, made by Spinola, it was observed that the married souldiers fared better, looked more vigorously, and were able to do more duty, than the batchellors; and all the spite was done the poor women was to be called their husbands' mules, by those who would be glad to have had such mules for themselves. Among all these kinds of women in well ordered armies, there are none but those who are married: if there be any else upon examination made by the minister, priest, or consistory, they are put away with ignominy, at least should be, conformable to all articles of war.

BUT a strange story is writ by good authors of that famous duke of Alva, whose name is yet so hateful to most of the Netherlands; they say, at that time that he marched from Italy to the Lowe Countries, to reduce them to the obedience of his master, the king of Spain, a permission was given to courtezans to follow his army, but they were to ride in troops with banners; they had their several captainesses, and alfieras or the cornets, and other officers, who kept amongst them an exact discipline in all points that concerned their profession; they were divided into several squadrons, according to their quality; and that was distinguished no otherwise but by the difference of their beauties, faces, and features. Those of the best sort were permitted only to traffick with men of the highest quality; those of the second rank with commanders of great note; those of the third with officers of a lower condition; and those of the fourth degree with officers who were of the meanest quality, and souldiers, whom those of the other three ranks rejected. An excellent commonwealth! where it was prohibited under all grievous pains, not to suffer themselves to be courted by any either above or below the rank wherein they were placed, and that was impartially done, according to the talent nature had bestowed upon

ginning of the 16th century, one of these goujats was allowed to every two soldiers: the English troops under Henry V. had a number of these boys.

them;

them; so that every common souldier, inferior person or low officer, ensign, captain, colonel, or general commander, knew to whom they might address themselves, and from whom they might buy repentance; a practice which, I suppose, never had a precedent in either Christian or Pagan army, and which, with an impudent face, loudly cried defiance to both religion and moral honesty.

“ The OFFICE of the CAPTEINE of the PIONERS in the fieelde or campe, with the DUTIES thereto belonging.

FIRST the office of the captaine of the pioners ys, that after he hath knowledge of the lord lieutennant what number of pyoners he shall have under his charge, he ought to take a viewe of them, and to se that they be hable and strong men, to endure anie laboure. (o)

Also he must appoint certaine capteines under him to hane the leading and government of them, whiche capteines ought to be readye

(o) PIONEERS were not formerly taken from the troops, as has been the practice of late years, but were sturdy labourers, pressed and equipped for the service they were to perform. Several instances occur in Rymer of writs to the sheriffs of different counties, directing them to furnish miners, or other labourers, from their respective districts.

ABOUT the time of Queen Elizabeth, soldiers guilty of certain offences were degraded to pioneers; this is alluded to by Shakspeare, in the following speech of Othello:

I had been happy, if the general camp,
Pioners and all, had tasted her sweet body,
So I had nothing known.

IN the ordinances of war of the earl of Northumberland, A. D. 1640, the following offences are liable to this punishment. “ If any trooper shall lose his horse or hackney; or a footman any part of his armes by negligence or lewdnesse, by dice or cards: he or they shall remain in qualitie of pioners and scavengers, till they be furnish’d with as good as were lost, at their own charge.

If a trooper shall spoil his horse willingly, of purpose to be rid of the service; he shall lose his horse, and remain in camp for a pioner.

A RE-

die at all tymes to bringe the pioners to worke where they shalbe appointed, and then to tarrye themselves to se them worke accordinglie.

ITEM, he must hane to every hundred pioners one clarke, who must everie morninge call them by their names, to se whether he want anie of his nomber or no, and if he want anie, he must make good enquirie whether these that are wantinge be sicke, deade, or ronne awaie; and as he findethe the truth, so to make report to the chiefe capteine thereof.

Also he must appoint certaine victuallers to provide victualls for them, and to bringe yt to them where they worke, which victualls must be brought to them at such hours as are appointed them to take their rest in; and their victuallers shall receive victualles, and they shall have them brought to them when they do not worke, at suche place as they be commanded to bring them unto, for that they must alweies be kept together, to be redie at commandement.

THE said capteine of the pioners ought to goe withe the marishall when he goethe to viewe the grownd, where the campe shal be pitched, that he may se whether the waie be easie and good for the great artillerie and other carriages, to passe or no; and if he do perceive that the waie is not good, he must cause the pioners to mend it, against the artillerie and carriages do come, so as they maye hane readie passage without anie stoppe.

FFURTHER the said capteine of the pioners must attende upon the highe marischall to know whether the campe shall be entrenched about or not, and all tymes the said capteine and his pi-

A REGIMENT or company of horse or foot, that chargeth the enemy, and retreats before they come to handy strokes, shall answer it before a council of warr: and if the fault be found in the officers, they shall be banished the camp; if in the souldiers, then every tenth man shall be punished at discretion, and the rest serve for pioners and scavengers, till a worthy exploit take off the blot."

oners

oners ought to be at the commandement of the highe marischall bothe daie and night, to do suche thinges as he shall think most convenient to command them.

THE proviant master general was a commissary of provisions; his office is described by Sir James Turner.

“ SINCE money (says he) is generally scarce in the wars, inso-much that soldiers cannot receive their wages duly, let us see what allowance of meat and drink (ordinarily called proviant) princes allow their soldiery; to furnish which every army should have a general proviant master; and truly I conceive him to be an officer as necessary and useful, if not more, in the fields, where mostly our modern armies are entertained with proviant, as either a general, commissary, or a treasurer: his charge is to provide victuals, corn, flesh, wine, bread and beer; he hath the inspection of them, and should see them equally and proportionably divided to the regiments, according to their severall strengths; for which purpose he should have all the rolls and lists by him, which his secretaries should carefully keep. He hath no power to sell any proviant under what pretence soever, without the general's expresse warrant. All mills where the army comes are under his protection, and he is obliged to protect them. He hath the ordering of all the magazines for victuals, and to him belongs the care of seeing the garisons and fortified places sufficiently provided with such meats and drinks as are most fit to preserve; these are, corn, grain and meal of severall kinds, stock fish, herrings, and all other salted fishes; salted and hung fleshes, especially beef and bacon, cheese, butter, almonds, chesnuts, and hazel nuts, wine, beer, malt, honey, vinegar, oyl, tobacco, wood and coal for firing, and as many living oxen, cows, sheep and swine, hens and turkies, as can be conveniently fed; for which purpose, as also for horses, he is to provide straw, hay, and oats. This general proviant master hath under him a lieutenant, a secretary, a clerk, a smith, a waggon master,

and a waggon maker, a quarter master, and some officers who are called directors.

THERE are few princes who have not their particuar establishment for their proviant, both in field and garrison, as well as for money ; the order whereof commonly is this : they allow so much bread, flesh, wine or beer to every trooper and foot soldier, which ordinarily is alike to both ; then they allow to the officers, according to their dignities and charges, double, triple, and quadruple portions ; as to an ensign four times more than to a common souldier, a colonel commonly having twelve portions allowed him. The ordinary allowance for a soldier in the field is daily, two pound of bread, one pound of flesh, or in lieu of it, one pound of cheese, one pottle of wine, or in lieu of it, two pottles of beer. It is enough, cry the souldiers, we desire no more, it is enough in conscience. But this allowance will not last very long, they must be contented to march sometimes one whole week, and scarce get two pounds of bread all the while, and their officers as little as they ; who, if they have no provisions of their own, carried about with them, must be satisfied with commis-bread and cold water, as well as the common soldier, unless they have money to buy better entertainment from sutlers. I have known captains give a very great demonstration of their patience, and their affection to their master's service, by satisfying their appetites with water, and very coarse bread, one whole summer, and part of the next winter."

THE custom of paying by provand is highly reprobated by Sir John Smythe, who says it was first introduced in the reign of Queen Elizabeth, among the English troops sent to the assistance of the States of Holland, his words are :

" AND now in the same later time, when all things should by all reason have been reduced into order and discipline, because the nature of the war was altered from mercenary and voluntary, to princely authority ; I mean the sommer before the earl of Leicester
went

went over, our such men of war that had served divers yeares before in those parts devised a newe invention, never heard nor read of before amongst men of warre, but onely upon some great lackes and extremities, and that was that their souldiers insteade of pay with money, should be paid in provand, which was bread and cheese, and other such victuall of the best cheape and basest sort, and that taxed by measure, saying, that it was not convenient that their souldiours should receive their own payes, because they knew not how to lay out their money, but that they would spend it idly: which simplicity and ignorance, if it had been in them (as it was not) they and their officers by good instruction, should have reformed the same. But such covetous men of warre, under the pretence (as though their souldiours had beene either naturall fooles or children) did contrarie to all militarie order, put the greatest part of their souldiours pay into their own purses, allowing them great scarcity of provand. By which means it come to passe, that diverse thousands of their souldiours in those plentiful countries, partly by hunger and partly by evil lodging, and altogether by the small care and misuse of our such men of warre did perish. Besides that, great numbers of such their sicke and starved souldiers, by order of the earle of Leicester, were in those partes embarked and transported into Essex and Kent, and other partes of England, to recover health; of which foresaid great numbers of miserable and pitiful ghosts, or rather shaddowes of men, the Essex and Kentish carts and carters (that carried them) can testifie; of which scarce the fortieth man escaped with life.

Also, when any of their souldiers, through the naughtiness or scarcitie of their victuall, or by their evill lodging, or by the pestering, or lying of two or three hundred of them together in some one church, and so in divers churches, upon the bare pavements, or upon diverse other disorders and misusages of some of our such men of warre, fell sicke, our such men of warre did casse, and discharge them out of their bands for dead men, turning their pro-

vand money, with all overplusses into their own purses, procuring newe supplies of well apparelled and lusty young men out of England, to the intent to serve their own turns, and to consume people after people. All which marveillous disorders of some of our such men of warre against their souldiers, contrary to all discipline militarie by them practised and used, with infinit others (which to rehearse would make a huge volume) were the occasion that manie thousands of the lustiest and disposst sort of our English people, were in those warres (as it were) wittingly and willingly cast away, besides great numbers, that at divers times did choose rather to flie to the enemy, than to serve under such cruell and disordered chieftaines. And these wonderful disorders, with innumerable others, did continue and increase, untill such time as diverse young noblemen lately comming to take principall charges in those warres, as also divers knights and gentlemen of noble and of worshipful houses, and themselves of great valour and woorthines, did complaine of, and discover those most strange and wonderful abuses, unto the queene and to her counsell, who understanding thereof, did very nobly reforme and redresse diverse of those disorders, taking further orders that the aforesaid newe devised provand should be abolished, and that in steade thereof, the souldiours should receive their own payes in money: which with the wise and worthe proceedings and courses of the aforesaid noblemen, knights and gentlemen, that began with great order and discipline, to serve in those warres, some at, and others since, the going over of the earle of Leicester hath of late greatly prevailed, and redounded to the reformation of diverse of those strange inventions and abuses, invented and brought into those warres by the aforesaide newe fantasied men of warre. (p)

THE

(p) SEE Sir John Smythe Proeme Dedicatorie, &c. to his booke entitled Certain Discourses, written by Sir John Smythe, Knight, anno 1590. See some account of this writer,

THE corporals of the field seem, by the description of their duties laid down in the treatise entitled the Military Art of Trayning, to have been something like our present majors of brigade; they rarely occur before the time of the Queens Mary or Elizabeth. "The corporal of the field," says the writer of that anonymous work, "is an office of good reputation, tho' of great paines, labour and industry: there are commonly four of them, of which two are alwayes attending on the marshall or generall, as their right hands, discharging by their endurances the governours of the campe of many travailes, cares and watchings: they ought either to be ancient captaines, casheer'd as we say in the altering and charging the list of the army: or experienced souldiers that know how to bestowe the companies, and where to order the regiments and ambuscadoes; but in no case they must be chosen either for favour or affection, because their service consists in knowledge and understanding the secrets of the warre, as having the overlooking of the colonels and captaines companies, that they march in order; the informing of the quarter masters what squadrons shall goe to the watch or other employments, the giving the alarums to the campe, as taking notice of the scowt master's direction; the acquainting the colonel of the regiment volantem, with any danger or busines; the overseeing of skirmishes, and so to certifie the marshall and serjeant major, where is any defect or neede of supply: and a continuall attending both night and day, as never out of employment when the enemye lodgeth neare, or any towne or place is besieged."

MARKHAM, in his Souldiers Grammar, (q) says, 'the forrage master general is a principall dependant upon the lord marshall: to this officer's charge is delivered the disposing of all manner of horse

writer, in Wood's *Athenæ Oxonienses*; also Strype's *Annals*, vol. iv. p. 46; more of him *idem*, p. 296, 297, 298, 299. || (q) PAGE 128.

provisions,

provisions, as haye, corne, straw, grasse, forrage, and the like, and hee foreseeth that all inferiour officers which have charge herein, do their duties truly, and that equal distribution be made, and no souldier be hindered of his true allowance, and where fault is, to see due punishment executed on the offenders." The work last cited likewise (r) gives the following detail of the function of this officer. " You have likewise belonging to the campe, a forage master, an office of great use and expectation, as attending on the lieutenant of the horse, who puts him in trust with a convoy and a trumpet, to fetch in necessaries, both of grasse and stuffer; so that when all thinges are ready, as the sound of the trumpet troopt them together, they must likewise returne by the sound of trumpet, without straggling, placing their forage horses in the midst; but if every horse carry the provision behinde him, then is he to foresee that no mischief happen by negligence or retardance."

THE judge marshal, by some stiled auditor general, and since called judge advocate, was an officer skilled in the civil, municipal, and martial laws, his office was to assist the marshall or general, in doubtful cases; he had a clerk who took down the proceedings. In the army sent to St. Quintins, there were two judges, each having a clerk. A judge marshal is also mentioned in the estimate of the army intended for the recovery of the palatinate.

SIR James Turner describes the qualifications and duty of a judge marshal in the following words. " He ought to be a grave and judicious person, who fears God, and hates vice, especially bribery. A lawyer he should be, in regard most articles of war have their rise from law, and many cases chance to be avoided in courts of war, where no military article is clear, but must be determined by the civil law, or by the municipal law of the prince, to whom the army belongs; and the judge marshal's duty is to inform the court

what either of these laws provides in such cases ; some princes remit the whole justice of the army so absolutely to the judge marshal, that they give him power to punish soldiers who transgress publick proclamations of himself, without the colonel's consent, yea, whether he will or not. The provost marshal general, and all the officers of justice of the army, whatever name they bear, are to obey the judge marshal's directions and orders. He may cause delinquents to be apprehended, and send them to the regiments to which they belong, with direction to the colonels to call regiment courts of war, at which he may appoint the provost marshal or his deputy to be present, and to appeal from it in case any unjust or partial sentence be pronounced. All complaints, whether in matters civil or criminal, are to be brought before him ; and in many of them he hath power to give judgment himself, without any court, and in others he hath authority to oblige colonels to do justice, wherein if they fail, he may bring them before a general court, to answer for their partiality. All differences that are among merchants, tradesmen, mark tenters, and sutlers, who are permitted to frequent the army, or that happen between any of them and the officers and soldiers, are brought before him, and in them all (after due examination of the whole fact and witnesses) he hath power to judge and give sentence. He hath power to call together a general court of war, and to call such colonels to it as he thinks fit, but herein he seldom acts till the general or field marshal advise the matter with him. Such colonels as he cites to be assessors, and do not appear, he may fine, and by the fiscal exact the fines he hath imposed. He is bound to examine all prisoners of war, as also all such as frequent the army, and may be suspected to be spies. All testaments, contracts and obligations between party and party, are judged to be in force, when they are signed and attested by him. He hath power of the measures and weights within the army, and may order the marshals to set fitting prices on all vendible things that are for back or belly. And he is to have a care that the provost marshals
neither

neither wrong the soldiers, nor the merchants, victuallers or sutlers, and he is judge in any difference that may arise between them.

AMONG the Harleian manuscripts in the British Museum, there is a copy of the form of a commission granted A. D. 1661, by Henry earl of Peterborough, to the judge advocate of the army employed in Africa, which, as it describes the duties of that office, I have transcribed in the note below. (s) No name is mentioned, so that probably it was a rough draught of the commission for that appointment.

THE military surgeons of ancient times are very little mentioned in history, perhaps they were not in very great estimation, (t) the

(s) HENRY earl of Peterburgh peere of England, lord Mordaunt, lord baron of Turvey, captain general, and commander in chief of all his majesty's forces raised or hereafter to be raised for his majesty's service, in the kingdoms of Suez, Fez, and Morocco, and governor of the city of Tanjer, and of all other citties, townes, castles or villages which are or shall at any time hereafter be reduced to his majestie's obedience in the above mentioned dominions.

To advocate to the army. By virtue of the power and authority to me given by his most excellent majestie Charles II. by the grace of God king of England, Scotland France and Ireland, defender of the faith, &c. I do hereby constitute and appoint you advocate as well in causes civil as criminall, in the army, raised or to be raised for his majesties service in the kingdoms of Suez, Fez and Morocco, requireing and authorising you by all lawful means and by oathes of parties, to enquire of and examine all persons accused, delated, suspected, or defamed, for any crime or offence committed, or duties omitted, which are against the laws civill and ordinances of warr received or established, and after all such enquirey and examination, you are to pursue all such offenders to a condigne punishment, before myself or a counsell of warre, appointed in pursuance of the truth (trust) in you reposed, and your duty to his majesty. Given under my hand and seale att armes, the 12th day of Occtober, 1661, in the 13th yeere of his majesties reigne.

Signed, PETERBURGH.

No. 6844. Bib. Harl.

(t) THIS seems probable from the persons with whom they are classed in the military code made at Mans, by Henry V. where under the head of the persons subject to the constable and marshal, the medici are introduced in the following company: "Whether soldiers, shoemakers, taylors, barbers, phyicians, or washerwomen. See Upton de Re Militari.

super-

superstitious abhorrence of what was deemed a violation of the dead, prevented their having an accurate knowledge of the human frame, which is only to be acquired by frequent dissections: the practice of those times seems to have been confined to the composition of certain oils, balms and balsams, prepared with the grossest superstition, and administered under the rules of astrology. The low state of the art of surgery in France, even so late as the time of Francis I. contemporary with Henry VIII. may be gathered from the following note. (u) How terrible must have been the state of the

(u) In the year of our Lord, 1536, the victorious King Fraunces sent a great army into Piedmont to vitaille Thurin, &c.—I was at that time but a young chirurgion, and but little experienced in the art, because I never had (as yet) seen the curation of wounds made by gun shot. True it is, I had read John de Vigo, his firste booke of wounds in generall, chap. 8. where he saith, that those wounds made by fiery engines do participate of venenosity, because of the powder, and for their curation he commands to cauterize them with the oile of elders, mixed with a little treacle. Yet neverthelesse because I would not be deceived, before I made use of the said boyling oile, knowing that it brought extreme paine to the patient, I observed the method of other chirurgions in the first dressinge of such wounds, which was by the application and infusion of the aforesaid oile, as hot as possibly they could suffer it, with tents and setons: wherefore I became emboldened to do as they did. But in the end my oile failed me, so that I was constrained to use instead thereof, a digestive made of the yolk of an egge, oil of roses and terebinth. The night following I could hardly sleep at mine ease, fearing lest that for want of cauterizing, I should find my patients, on whom I had not used the aforesaid oyle, dead and empyoned; which made me rise early in the morning to visit them, where beyond my expectation, I found them on whom I had used the digestive medicine, to feele but little paine, and their wounds without inflammation or tumor, having rested well all that night: the rest, on whom the aforesaid oile was applied, I found them inclining to feavers, with greates paine, tumor and inflammation about their wounds: then I resolved with myselfe, never to burne so cruelly the wounded patients by gun-shot any more. A famous chirurgion at Turin, proposed a balm for gun-shot wounds as follows: two young whelps, one pound of earth worms, two pounds of the oil of lillies, six ounces of the terebinth of Venice, and one ounce of aqua vitæ; in my presence he boiled the whelps alive in the said oil, untill the flesh deserted from the bones; afterwards he took the worms, having before killed and purified them in white wine, to purge themselves of the earth, which they have always in their bodies; being so prepared, he boiled them also in the said oil, till they became dry;

the military hospitals, and what numbers of men must have fallen a sacrifice to ignorance, who under proper management might have been recovered to the service of their country ; but bad as the surgeons were, some were nevertheless necessary in our armies ; and although the general mode of raising and paying them is not handed down, certainly some regular form of doing it must have existed.

IN the wardrobe account of the pay of the army raised against the Scots, by Edward II. in the 15th year of his reign, many of the Welch corps have an officer stiled Medicus ; but whether by that term, a physician or a surgeon is meant, seems doubtful, as the word medicus is sometimes used for both a surgeon and an apothecary. None of these physicians or surgeons are charged to the English levies. And to the Welch they seem to bear no regular proportion to the number of private men ; a corps of one thousand nine hundred and seven men having only one, and another of nine hundred and sixty-eight having two ; the wages of all, except the two last named, was 6d. per diem each ; those which were raised on the king's land in Cardiganshire had only 4d. each per diem.

IN the list of the troops that attended King Edward III. to the siege of Calais, only one surgeon is mentioned, who seems to have been part of the retinue of the prince of Wales ; and in the military establishment of the 18th of the said reign, as given in the accounts of Walter Wentwayt, treasurer of the household, (x) there is one surgeon for the king's household troops ; four doctors, and one sur-

this he strained thorow a napkin without any great expression ; that doone hee added thereto the terebinth ; and lastly the aqua vitæ, and called God to witnesse that this was his balme, which he used in all wounds made by gun-shott, and in others which required suppuration ; withall praying me not to divulge his secret. Treasure of antient and modern times, being collections from Messrs. Francis Sanfovino, Anthony de Verdier, Loys Guyon, &c. London, 1619.

(x) MSS. in my possession.

geon

geon for the army of North Wales; two doctours and one surgeon for that of South Wales; a number by no means competent to the number of men to which they were appointed, supposing the inferior surgeons to have been stiled barbers, like the field shaver of the Germans, it seems reasonable to expect they would somewhere appear on the muster roll.

HENRY V. A. D. 1415, engaged Master Nicholas Colnet, a physician, to serve him for one whole year, in the voyage then to be made either to the dutchy of Guyenne or France. Colnet was to bring with him three archers. If the expedition went to Guyenne, he was to have for his own wages forty marks, and twenty marks for each of his archers, for the whole year. If to France, for his own wages 1s. and for each of his archers 6d. a day, with regards.

IN the same year the king engaged Thomas de Morestede, a surgeon, who contracted to bring with him twelve other surgeons and three archers. Morestede was to be paid as a man at arms, 12d. by the day, and his twelve assistants and three archers each 6d. with the usual regard. The same conditions were covenanted in case the campaign lay in Guyenne, that were made with Colnet. Upon a petition, the king granted Morstede one waggon and two sumpter horses, for the carriage of the baggage and necessaries for himself and the twelve other surgeons. He likewise petitioned for money to buy necessaries for his office, but it was not granted.

THE next year the king employed Morestede, joining with him William Bredewardyn, with the title of his surgeons, in a commission to impress as many surgeons as they thought necessary for the expedition, with a sufficient number of artificers for making their instruments, to be taken wherever they could be found. (y)

(y) RYMER, tom. 9. p. 362.

AMONG the different persons who indented in the 14th of Edward IV. to serve that king in Normandy and France, for one year, are the following physicians and surgeons. (z)

Master Jacobus Fryle, king's physician, 2s. per diem, with two servants at 6d. per diem.

Master William Hobbis, physician and surgeon of the king's body, 18d. per diem.

Richard Felde - -	}	Surgeons every one at XIIId. per diem.
Richard Elstie -		
John Smith - -		
Richard Brightmore		
Thomas Colard -		
Richard Clambre -	}	Other surgeons, every one at VIId. per diem, for their attendance in the said service beyond sea.
Symon Coll - -		
William Coke -		
Richard Smythys -		
John Stanley - -		
John Denyse - -	}	
Alexander Ledell -		

It is remarkable, that here are just twelve surgeons, the same number that appears to have been employed on the expedition under Henry V.

IN the expedition to St. Quintin's, in the reign of Philip and Mary, 1557, an army consisting of five hundred heavy armed horse, five hundred light horse, four thousand foot, and two hundred pioneers, with officers and a train of artillery proportionable, there were fifty-seven surgeons, two of them belonging to the suite of

(z) MS. in the library of Thomas Astle, Esq; being an Abridgement of the Indentures for raising Soldiers for different Kings, by Peter Le Neve Norrong; the original indentures are now remaining in the Paper Office.

the general, one to the lieutenant general, one to the high marshal, one to the general of the horsemen, one to the general of the infantry, and one to the master of the ordnance; all these at the daily pay of 1s. each. The remainder belonged to the corps of horse, light horse and infantry, in the proportion of one surgeon to an hundred men; the daily pay of a surgeon of heavy horse was 2s. of light horse 1s. 6d. and of infantry 1s. No surgeon is charged for either the ordnance or pioneers. (a)

BESIDES the king's pay, it seems as if the surgeons of former times, as well as those of late, received a weekly stoppage from the private men. This may be gathered from the following description of the duties of a military surgeon, written in the reign of Queen Elizabeth. (b)

“SURGEONS shoulde be men of sobrietie, of good conscience, and skillfull in that science, able to heal all soares and woundes, specially to take oute a pellett oute of the same. All captaines must have suche surgeons, and ought to see them to have all their oyles, balmes, salves and instruments, and necessary stuffe to them belonginge, allowinge and sparinge carriage for the same. That every souldier, at the paye daye, doe give unto the surgeon 2d. “as in tymes past hath beene accustomed,” to the augmentation of his wages; in consideration whereof, the surgeon oughte readilie to employ his industrie uppon the soare and wounded souldiers, not intermedlinge with any other cures to them noysome. Regarde that the surgeon bee truelye paid his wages, and all money due to hym for cures, that bye the same hee maye bee able to provide all suche stuffe as to him is needfull. Such surgeons muste weare their baldricke, whereby they may be knowne in the tyme of slaughter, it is their charter in the field. (c) IN

(a) No. 6844, Harleian MS. || (b) RALPH SMITH'S MS. before quoted.

(c) FROM this passage it should seem that surgeons formerly wore a distinguishing belt over their shoulders, like that now used by the itinerant farriers, vulgarly stiled sow-gelders, in.

IN an estimate made anno 1620, for an army of twenty-five thousand foot, five thousand horse, and twenty pieces of artillery, proposed by King James to be sent to the Palatinate, a number of surgeons are appointed, but no allowance or provision whatever appears in the estimate, for medicines or an hospital, although there is a very minute detail of almost every other necessary store; and this seems the more extraordinary, as many of the most experienced officers of that time were called in to assist in forming the estimate.

THE medicinal list appointed for this expedition were :

“ IN the general's trayne two physicians, at 6s. 8d. per diem each ; two apothecarys at 3s. 4d. and two surgeons, each at 6s. 8d.

EVERY regiment of foot consisted of twelve companies of one hundred and fifty men each, and had one chief surgeon, at 4s. per diem, and another surgeon to each company at 1s. per diem.

AMONG the general officers of horse is one chief surgeon at 4s. a day, probably to superintend the surgeons of troops.

To every troop which was to consist of an hundred men, one surgeon was allotted, his daily pay 2s. 6d.

To the ordnance, pioneers, &c. there was allowed one barber surgeon, at 2s. per diem, and two under barber surgeons, at 6d. a day each.”

ONE reason may be assigned for our ancient armies being able to do with so small a number of surgeons, which is, that immediately after a battle, such of the meaner sort of soldiers, whose wounds seemed to require a considerable time for cure, were by the general dismissed, with a small pecuniary provision to carry them home: this, according to Barnes's History of Edward III. was done immediately after the battle of Poictiers.

in order to protect their persons whilst administering to the wounded in the field of battle, a circumstance now rendered unnecessary by the apparatus of bandages, &c. carried by surgeons attending a party where service is expected, or in a field of battle.

PERHAPS

PERHAPS likewise the inferior surgeons, stiled barbers, were taken from the ranks, and therefore paid and mustered as private men.

IT seems uncertain at what time our armies were first divided into regiments, or rather, at what time that term was first introduced into our service; and the same difficulty occurs with respect to the rank and title of colonel. (d) Sir James Turner, who appears to be the best informed military writer of his time, cannot solve that question; speaking of a regiment he says, "I shall define it to be a certain number of companies joined in one body under one head. This definition agrees with all regiments of whatsoever strength they be. There is not a definite number of companies ordained for each regiment; some consisting of six, some eight, some twelve, and some of twenty; but ten is now most ordinary, and formerly it was so when regiments were three thousand strong, and each company three hundred; yet I find, that in every French legion (which consisted of eighteen companies) there were about three hundred three and thirty men in each company, for every legion was six thousand strong. Nor is this word [regiment] one hundred years old, nor do I know of what language it is; in the French and Italian tongues it was called a legion, and so it was in Latin, and he who commanded in chief over it was called colonel and colonello; (e) in Spanish it was called a terzo, (f) and its commander maestro del campo; in High Dutch it was called faulein, and he who commanded it, oberster, which signifies superior or su-

(d) SMITH, in his Military Dictionary says, regiments were first instituted in England, A. D. 1660, but cites no authority for his assertion.

(e) THE term tertio was used to signify a corps or regiment, so late as the civil war under K. Charles I.

(f) SOME derive the term colonel from the French word colonne or column, because the colonel marches at the head of the column. This officer is by some of our ancient military writers called coronell, crownell, and by Kelly (in his book entitled Pallas Armata, published 1627) crowner; the ensign he calls handfigne,

preme. But colonel is now understood in all languages, and the word [regiment] however barbarous it be in itself, hath suppressed all other names and titles, and is now only used in all European tongues." From this assertion, and divers other concurrent circumstances, we may, without being very much mistaken, place the introduction of regiments and colonels about the reign of King Henry VIII. The ranks of lieutenant colonel, and serjeant major, as the office now stiled major was originally called, do not seem to have been so soon adopted, for we find both the terms regiments and colonels in Fynes Morrison's Account of Queen Elizabeth's army in Ireland, A. D. 1600; but do not meet with those of lieutenant colonel, nor serjeant major, as regimental officers. Nor do they appear to have been generally established in the year 1591, for though a colonel general and a serjeant major are both mentioned in a military treatise, published that year by Gyles Clayton, the detail of their duties shew them to have been considered rather as general than regimental officers. We however find both these officers, with a description of their duties, in Ward's Animadversions of Warre, published A. D. 1639, from which it appears, there was little or no difference between the duty of those officers, then and at the present time. "The office of a colonell (says he) is very honourable, and a place of great consequence in the army, wherefore he ought to bee a grave experienced souldier, religious, wise, temperate and valiant; his command is not of so high an extent as the serjeant major generall's is; for his command extends no further than tenne or twelve companies, which he is to see well ordered, and strictly governed; hee that hath his commission first is to be accounted the eldest, and is to take place both in quarters, and in the march, and so every one successively, according to the date of their commission. He hath under his command two special officers; his lieutenant colonell and serjeant major: his office is, in time of warre, to see his regiment compleate, and to order his divisions, and draw them into forme of battell; his place in the
battell

battell is various, according as he shall be commanded by the generall, but most usuall, he takes his place before the right wing of his owne regiment, ordering his officers as he shall have directions from his superiors in authority; hee is to be forward in shewing good examples to his officers, that his worth and valour may not be blemished; his eye is to be duly upon his owne officers and souldiers, to rebuke them that are negligent and cowardly, and to animate those that are forward; hee ought to have all the colours of his regiment to be alike, both in colour and fashion, to avoide confusion, so that the souldiers may discerne their owne regiment from the other troopes; likewise every particular captain of his regiment may have some small distinction in their colours, as their armes, or some embleme, or the like, so that one company may be discerned from another. (g) Hee oughte in time of skirmishing in battell, to pry and take serious notice of the enemies battalias, how they are ordered, and what advantages are to be gained, which suddenly he is to encounter and atchieve; hee must be as cautelous and circumspect in taking notice how the enemye playes his game, as himselfe is to be wary and cunning in playing and managing his owne; hee is not be put upon any desperate service, unlesse he hath the command of five hundred or a thousand souldiers; hee ought to be very expert in raising of fortifications, and in all kind of stratagems, in as ample a manner as the generall; because many times he hath the sole command in beleaguered towns, and in certain quarters in the trenches against a fort beleagured; also many times hee is to command divers troopes as generall in some kind of services; hee is to have a well-governed and religious preacher to his regiment, so that by his life and doctrine the souldiers may be drawne to goodnesse; hee is to cause so many of his regiment as are to releve the watch, morning and

(g) FORMERLY and till the reign of Queen Anne, each company had a colour.

evening to be drawne in parado before the head of the quarters, where divine duties are to bee performed by the preacher amongst them: every sabbath day he is to have a sermon in his tent forenoon and afternoone, and every officer of his regiment is to compell his souldiers that are freed from the guard to repaire thither; and that no sutler shall drawe any beere in the time of divine service and sermon: hee is to have a special care to see such duties performed by his officers as are given them in charge: there is no impunity or remissnesse to be used in the warres, to any one that shall neglect or slight any duty or command: hee is to see that all guards, passages and fortifications, wherein any of his regiment are to guard or maintaine, that it be sufficiently guarded with souldiers; he seldome watcheth himselfe in person in the campe, only in beleaguered townes hee passeth upon his duty: hee is to cause his owne drumme to beate, to prepare for the relief of the watch, morning and evening; likewise all the drums of the regiment are, at the same time to beate; hee is to appoint the captaine of the watch in his regiment; the eldest captaine first beginneth, and successively one after another, according to their antiquity; he hath only a lieutenant and ensigne, his lieutenant is titularly called captaine; hee is to have a sufficient quarter master to his regiment; hee is also to have an under marshall, whose office is to lay irons upon such delinquents as shall be committed to his charge; hee is likewise to looke to all sutlers, that no abuse be in their excessive prices or ill measures; there are able and sufficient sutlers to bee provided for his regiment. The colonell is to sit in counsell with the generall, and to advise accordinge to his wisedome and experience, about all state affaires: hee is to sit in the marshal's court, and to give his voyce for the punishing of delinquents; hee is to be a man free from all vices; hee is to be religious, grave, wise, and truly valiant.

A LIEUTENANT colonel of a regiment is a place of high consequence and great dignitie, being the second person in the regiment; hee is not to be deficient in all kindes of literature, but to bee as
able

able both in valour and experience as the colonell ; in regard in the colonell's absence, hee hath the sole ordering of the regiment, and upon all occasions as his colonell shall command, hee is to bee ready and dutifull to performe : there is much toyle and paines belonging to his office, in regard he frees the colonell's execution of his duties ; hee ought, in time and causes of present perill, to give his best advice to his colonell, and to give him notice of every particular passage in the regiment ; hee is not of his owne authority to act any thinge without his colonel's command ; all the captaines and officers of the regiment ought to respect and obey his commands ; hee is to see the regiment well ordered ; the watches set, and the guards duly relieved ; in time of battell, he is in many times commanded to draw up divisions to charge the enemy : in besieges hee relieves his colonell, taking his command by turnes : it is his charge to see to the regiment that all things are orderly performed, and that all necessaries be provided both for food and ammunition ; hee is to see every captaine demeane themselves faire to their companies, that their pay be duly distributed amongst the souldiers ; hee is to see their armes fixed and fitting for service : every captain is to have two powder bougets, with powder, bullet and match ; hee is to command the captaines to drawe out their companies into the field, and to see them exercise them ; hee is to exercise every company in the regiment himselfe at his pleasure ; hee is to observe how every captaine clothes his souldiers, and to have his eare open to the complaints of poore distressed souldiers, and see them righted ; hee is to take notice of all quarrels and disputes among the officers, and endeavour to reconcile them, otherwise to lay his command on them, and to confine them to their lodgings untill his colonel understands of it ; hee is to release no delinquent from prison, that is laid in by the consent of his colonell ; hee is to sit in the marshall's court in the absence of his colonell ; hee is to see the serjeant major order the regiment for the march, and hee is to assist him in ordering and drawing up the di-

vifions into battalia; and to conclude, hee ought to be difcreet, wife, valiant and religious, fo that hee fhould be a patterne to all the officers of his regiment to fteere their courfes by.

A SERJEANT major is the third and principall officer of the field, hee ought to participate of all the perfections that officers of higher authority fhould have; his place and office doth fomewhat correfpond with the major general's, onely his duty is tending to officiate betweene the colonell and the officers of the regiment; he is to be learned in all the liberal fciences, he ought to have both fpeculative and practicke knowledge in all things belonging to his profeflion, he muft be very civill, wife and difcreet in his carriage and actions, in regard he is to manage a world of affaires of high confequence, which may ferve to the conferving or ruining of the army; he is duly to attend his colonel's pleafure, and morning, noone and night, he is to watch upon the major generall, and to receive fuch orders, as are by the generall of the army delivered unto him; hee is fpeedily to certifie his colonell what the orders are, and what the generall's pleafure is, and alfo, with all celerity, to execute fuch things as his colonell fhall give him in charge; he is not onely to be a good fcholler and witty, but he muft be quick in apprehenfion, and furnifht with an able memory; he muft have a paper book, with pen and incke, to fet down all orders and commands, that he may not erre nor vary one tittle from what was delivered him in charge: at drums-beat he is to repair to the general's tent, and take the word of the major general, and orders for that night's proceedings, then he is to repaire to his colonell's tent, where he is to deliver him the word, and to his lieutenant colonel, with fuch orders as he has received.

THE ferjeants of every company of his regiment are to repaire to him, to take the word from him, with fuch orders as he fhall give them, and they are fpeedily to acquaint their captaine and other officers with it; all the inferior ferjeants are to ftand round about him, and he is to deliver the word very privately in the ear of the
ferjeant

serjeant which stands at his right hand, and he is secretly to whisper it in the eare of the next, and so from one to another round, and the last man is to give it to the serjeant major againe, if the last man give it him wrong, then he must give it over again. He is to have them draw billets for their guards, in regard much disputes may arise, because many guards are more subject to the danger of the enemy, than some others are; and also to prevent treason, so that no officer know his guard beforehand: hee is also to provide powder, match and bullets, and distribute it among the officers of his regiment; he ought to have able officers to his owne company, because hee cannot tend unto them, his employments are so great; hee ought to have a swift nagge, to carrye him about the quarters, and to visit his guards, for his businesse lyes very confusedly in the army; hee is likewise to view all outward guards, both in the day time, and in the night, where his regiment hath command, every captaine is to give him the word, and from one guard to another he is to be guarded with certaine musquetiers; hee is to instructe and shewe such of his officers as are to passe upon watch, where to place their sentinels and perdues; he is likewise to shew every officer whether to draw his company to join with the rest in batalia, if the enemy should give an alarme. He is to exercise all the companies of his regiment at convenient times.

THE office of a captaine being so honourable and a place of such great consequence, that it ought not slightly to bee considered of, wherefore they ought to be men of excellent quality, and of undaunted valiant resolution; hee should not be inferior in knowledge and skill, and in all the circumstances and actions belonging to warre, in as profound a manner as the chiefeest officer of the field, for he hath a charge of great importance committed into him, hee being many times called to execute the office of serjeant major, or lieutenant colonell; besides hee is exposed to all manner of danger in the warres, for no captaine but must leade on his men in the face of an enemy, and charge them in the teeth, which if he be not skilfull

skilfull as well to leade them off as to draw them on, hee may be the occasion of spilling much bloud; hee ought not to be a man chosen altogether for birth, meanes, personage, favour or affection; but for his wisedome, civility, valour and experience; the unexpertnesse of a captaine hath bene the ruine of armies and destruction of commonwealths: in the time of peace, every brave fellow desires to bee honoured with the name and charge of a captaine, but when warre approacheth, and the enemy is at hand, they quake their swords out of their scabbards, and had rather make use in fight of their wings then their tallents. A captaine oughte to be well seene and read in all the liberal sciences, to be acquainted with history, and to have what speculative knowledge that may be to joyne with their practice; all kinde of stratagems should be familiar with him, and nothing should be wanting that might make him an accomplished souldier: a captaine ought to have regard to the due exercising of his souldiers, fitting them in all points for service; he ought to see his souldiers furnished with all things needful; as armes, munition, and their weekly pay duely at the appoynted times; hee is to be very conscionable in delivering them their off-reckonings and apparell; he is to passe very strictly (if it be in time of warre) upon his watch; being captaine of the watch, he is to command the gentlemen of the rounds to be set out, and to have the word given them; if he be in the field he should lead out the perdues, and see them visited in due season; then afterwards his lieutenant and other inferior officers are to do the like. If he be in garrison, in time of danger, hee is precisely to go the first round himselfe, being ayded with his serjeant and divers gentlemen, where he may viewe the strength and sufficiency of every guard, and how every officer doth dispose of his souldiers; hee is to take the word of every officer in his round at every corps du guard. If he be incampt in the field, then he is to goe the patroule through his owne regiment, and cause all futlers to extinguish their candles, and to suffer no drinking after the warning peece is discharged: if his company be

two hundred strong, hee is to have foure corporalls, and to divide his company into foure even parts, viz. fifty souldiers in a corporal-ship: in the time of peace and being in garrison, one squadron onely watcheth, beginning with the eldest corporal-ship the first night, and so successively, one corporal-ship relieving the other: in time of warre, halfe or whole companies, specially being in the fieelde; no guard should be relieved but once in twenty-four houres; hee is to make the choyce of the chief and ablest souldiers being men of quality, to be gentlemen of his company; they are to guard with the captaine of the watch by turns, and to walke the round aboute all the walls and bulwarkes; they are to give the word to the corporalls at every guard; they are to discover the enemy, and to see the sentinells doe their duty; which if they cannot, or mistake it, the guard is to charge them with their weapons, and apprehend them as enemies; the captaine is to lay out these gentlemen perdue upon convenient passages and apt places, to discover if the enemy should fallly out; accordinge as the place is in distance from the enemies trenches, so must the number of perdues be laid, one a pretty distance behinde the other, so that if occasion bee, they maye retreat backe one to the other, and so give notice to the campe, that they may prepare for an assault: these are to be relieved every hour or half houre; also the captaine to instruct his souldiers how to make an assault against the enemy, and also how to defend an assault: hee must be a good engineere, to knowe howe to raise all kinde of workes and trenches, and how to place his men upon the flankes to scowre the bulwarkes by the lyne of levell, upon a breste worke in the campe, hee is to place betwixt every two musquets, a pike, the musquetiers are to give fire and fall off, and another immediately to present in his place, the pikes are to stand firme: the captain is to have his armour of prooffe and a faire pike, for his offensive and defensive armes: hee is to have two great bougets made of dry neats leather, which will hold a hundred weight of powder apeece, to furnish his musquetiers withall: hee is to see the bandyliers

bandyliers filled with powder, with sufficient match and bullets ; hee must ever be in readinesse to answer an allarum, and the first that shall charge the enemy ; if the enemy make his approaches against the campe, after the captaine hath drawne his men up to the parapet, to make resistance, and being all ready to give fire, hee is to command that no man gives fire until he gives order, and to suffer the enemy to come in as close as may bee, and then give him a brave volley of shot altogether in his teeth, one musquetire relieving the other, the pikes charging manfully and stedfastly ; at all convenient times hee is to drill his souldiers very accurately, shewing them all the postures of the pike and musquet, then how to march, counter march, to double their files and rankes, the middle men to double to the front, to advance forwards, and to retreat backwards at the sound of the drumme, to wheele about his musquetiers, to make redy, present and give fire, to give fire in the front, in the reare and upon either flanke, to fall off by files and give fire, as we shall hereafter more largely discourse of. A captaine oughte to march into the field in the front of his company, and his lieutenant in the reare ; but marching out of the felde the captaine's place is to bring up the reare, and the lieutenant to leade the company ; the ensigne is to march before the first division of pikes, the eldest serjeant is to bring up the next division of pikes, and another serjeant the last division of musquetiers.

THE captaine ought not to doe any reall act in the warres without commission from higher authority, he is to lead up the right wing of his musquetiers, to charge the enemy, and his lieutenant the left : when a captaine makes choice of a lieutenant, or ensigne, he is to drawe his company into armes, and one of the gentlemen is to carry the pattisen or colours, and being marched into the field, the captaine is to deliver the pattisen or colours (in the head of the troope) to the officer he hath made choise of, commanding the souldiers to take notice of him, and to obey him as their officer ; he is to make choice of diligent serjeants and vigilant corporals, a trusty clerke, and good drummes ; he ought to have one waggon at the least, to carry his baggage, and to conducte sicke souldiers ; hee is to be as little pestered with

with luggage of his owne, or his souldiers, as possibly may be, lest it should hinder their march; and also upon any service be rather forward to fight for goods, than have their mindes homewards, fearing to lose their own; he ought not to be covetous nor niggardly, but forward to gratify all good services, with some gifts and courtesie, whereby he shall indeere his souldiers to be prodigall of their lives to doe him service: he must be familiar and eloquent in perswading and diswading his souldiers, and to stirre up their valors to undergoe pain and perill; if a souldier transgresse, he ought not to beate him, but to send him to the provost marshall, to have irons laid on him; by beating of a souldier, a world of hatred will be stirred up, and happily private revenge; he ought to be very careful to keepe his souldiers in action, whereby idle expence of time (as drinking and playing) may be prevented, which usually ends in quarrelling and bloud-shed: he is to have lanthornes and torches, suche as will burne in any storme and tempest, for they may stand him many times in great stead: he is to have his tent in the head of all his troope, and to be conversant with them, shewing them ensamples of hardship; he ought always to have his colours and drumme in the field when he exerciseth his company, as well to give the more reputation unto the action, as also that the use of them may be well knowne.

LASTLY, a captaine ought to carry himself in such a way, that his souldiers may both feare and love him; too much familiarity breeds contempt, and to sterne a carriage begets hatred; and so let him not over-value his life, but expose it to the fortune of the warre; using his best skill and indeavours to annoy his enemies, and to be diligent and forward in executing such commands as authority enjoins him, and so to persist in a resolution to feare nothing but infamie.

AND I will conclude with an exhortation to all noble captaines, desiring them for their credits sake, and for the honour of our gracious king and wellfare of our kingdome, to be more diligent in

the disciplining of their foldiers, and not to chop and change fo many new men in their companies, that betweene mufter and mufter, the third part of the company are new untutored fellows, that knowes not their right hand from their left; fo that it is a labor in vain to instruct them, and they are the meanes of putting all those that have some knowledge out of square, by their awckward doings; besides all base beggarly fellows are admitted into the mufter rowle, when as the best and chiefeft yeomen ought to doe their king and country service in their owne persons. Then lastly, that every captaine would command his officers to instruct the pikes and musquets whilst the rest are a calling over, and then eyther himselfe or his lieutenant to exercise them in grosse all their postures; and cause them to give fire in way of skirmish; and not to goe into the towne untill all the exercise bee finisht.

A LIEUTENANT is an office of high credit and reputation, and he ought in all respects to bee well indoctrinated and qualified in the arts military, and ought not to be inferiour in knowledge to any officer of higher authority; for an unskilfull captaine may better demeane himselfe with an experienced lieutenant, then an unskilful lieutenant can fadge with a skilful captaine; because all businesse belonging to a company, is for the most part ordered by the lieutenant, the captaine having other imployments of greate importance, hee is to see the company fitted in all respects for service; hee is the right hand to his captaine, in ayding and assisting him, as well in the brunt of battle, as in peace; hee is to see to the fitting and furnishing of all things necessary belonging to the company; hee is to keepe a perfect roule of all the souldiers in the company, and to observe that every squadron be compleate; hee is to view the sufficiency and fixenesse of the armes, and to give order for the repayring of suche as shall be found defective: he is to order and ranke the company fit for his captaine to marche with; hee is to divide his company into foure divisions; making two divisions of the pikes and two of the musquetieres; hee is to ranke

ranke the first division of musquets in the front, and the second division of musquets in the reare of the pikes; hee is to march in the reare of the company into the field; and in marching out of the field, the captaine is to march in the rear, and the lieutenant in the front; hee is carefully to passe upon his duty, to see the squadrons drawne to the guards for to watch; hee is to be very carefull and diligent in exercising his company; either by squadrons upon the guards, or the whole company in the field, assuming fit and convenient times; hee is to lead on the left wing of shot in time of service; in time of exercising, hee is to helpe order the company so that his captain may have the more ease and freedome; hee ought to be silent; and to cause silence in the company, during the time of his captaine's exercise; hee ought to bee in the reare of the company to instruct the souldiers how to act and observe the captaine's commands; hee ought to call over the company, and to take a particular survey of every defect; hee ought to rule over the company, and take a particular survey of every soldier in his captaine's absence, for then hee is in absolute authority, and the souldiers are bound to obey him as their chief in all respects; hee ought not to refuse to bee put upon any service by his captaine or colonell, or any chiefe officer of the field; also he is not to bee sent upon any convoy, or to guard any passage without a sufficient troope of souldiers; fifty or sixty at least; if lesse, then the ensigne is of sufficiency to command them: hee is to view his captaine thrice a day, morne, noone and night, but especially in the time of warre, to see what hee hath to command him; hee is to take notice of what discords, quarrels and debates arise amongst the souldiers of his band; hee is to pacifie them if it may bee, otherwise to commit them: hee is to judge and determine such disputes with gravity and good speeches, and where the fault is, to make him acknowledge it, and crave pardon of the party hee hath abused: hee is duly to see the watch set, and to follow them to the guard, and see the sentinells set out, and give them their charge what they are to

doe: if hee bee in the field, hee is to visit the sentry perdues very often: he is to command the soldiers in a kinde of perswasory way, to obey their corporals and serjants; wherefore hee ought to give good language, in a discreet and wise manner, to move and persuade them, with some reasons, to the observation and obedience of military discipline, disburthening his captaine of many toyles; hee is to be careful that every souldier have a sufficient lodging in garrison, and in the field a hut: hee is also to take due care of the sicke and maymed, that they perish not for want of means or looking unto; he is also to take care that the sutlers do not oppresse and rack the poor souldiers in their victuals and drinke; he is to see the company provided with all kinde of ammunition, with axes, mattocks, spades and the like, to build their hutts withall; these instruments are to have the marke of the gallowse set on them, in token of deathe to them that steale them; hee is, in his captaine's absence, to sit in the christrade or marshall's court, to define of the punishments which are to be inflicted upon delinquents and malefactours, their punishment going by most voyces; hee is to set a guard at his captaine's tent, and likewise at the cullours, where hee ought to give order for fitting a place to hang up loose armes; his hutt ought to bee in the head of the quarter upon the right hand, and the ensignes on the left, and the serjants at the reare of the quarter; hee is to bee alwaies in readinesse to answer an allarum, and with all speed to draw his men, if they bee in garrison, to that part or guard his squadron hath the watch at; if in the campe, then to the brest-worke before their quarters, where hee is to place between each musquet a pike, for their better defence: in garrison hee is to bee captaine of the watch, in his captaine's stead, onely for the ease of his captaine; where hee must be very circumspect upon his guard; hee is to have his ensign and his serjeants to attend him, hee is to goe the first round with a serjeant and two gentlemen at the least to attend him, where hee is to take the word of every corporall, and to see that
[the

the sentinells bee duly plact out, and to give them charge to bee very circumspect in their watches, that upon the sight of the enemy, or the seeing of their matches sparkle, or hearing their armour clatter, they presently informe the corporalls, so that an allarum may be given to the towne; but hee that shall give a false allarum is to bee imprisoned. The lieutenant is to go the patroule with a sufficient guard about all the streets, within the night, to prevent treason in the town, or to discover fire or ill orders, as quarelling, &c. Hee is to march in the morning with the major of the garrison, at the drumme beating, to the opening of the ports; hee is to be guarded with all the gentlemen of the round; in sommer time, at watch set, hee is to draw his men in parrado in the market place, with all the rest of the companies in the towne, their companies being compleate: if in the field and to goe upon service, hee ought to see prayers read in the head of the troopes every night; and every sabbath all those souldiers that have not the guard, hee is to compell them to goe to their colonel's tent to heare prayers and preaching; hee is to bee religious, valiant and wise; his armes is only a gorget and pattisen.

AN ensigne, being the foundation of the company, ought to be endued with valour and wisedome, and to equall his superior officers in skill, if it were possible; the honour and reputation both of the captaine and souldiers, depends upon the welfare of the colours, and contrarily there can be no greater dishonour then to lose them. I have read in history of ensignes, that rather then they would undergoe the dishonour of losing their colours, being so dangerously charged by the enemy, that either they must yield them up, or be flaine, have chosen rather to wrappe them about their bodyes, and have leapt into the mercilesse waters, where they have perisht with their colours, most honourably to their immortal fames: (h) After any company is cashired, if the ensigne hath behaved himselfe ho-

(h) ENSIGN EPPS, at the battle of Flanders, &c.

nourably,

nourably, the captaine ought to bestow the colours on him as a favour: in the absence of his superior officers, hee is punctually to supply their places, and to passe upon those duties which they should; whether it be to be captaine of the watch, or to bee commanded out with some troopes for the guarding of some passage, to prevent the enemies approaches; hee is to exercise his company in all their postures; he ought to be gallantly apparelled, with a faire sword and brigandine; if hee be commanded to passe upon any service with part of the company, he is not to carry his colours; also, if the whole company are to guard some dangerous out-workes, as a halfe moone or a redout, the company is to troope thither, and he is to leave his colours in the quarters, with a sufficient guard over them, and hee is to take for his weapon a good pike.

Also, every souldier's honour is highly engaged to defend and preserve their ensigne, and if occasion of necessity should happen, they must not spare to runne upon the pikes to relieve him, as divers valiant souldiers formerly have done: histories have eternized to their immortall fame, the honourable exploits of Capt. Morerula and his two brothers; one of them being his ensigne at the siege of the citie of Africa, in Barbary, in Charles the Fifth's time, when John de Vega, viceroy of Sicilia, scaled the walls of it; this ensigne being fore wounded and overthrowne, his brother, being serjeant, seconded him, and recovered the colours, who advancing forwards like a valiant souldier, was slaine; the captaine, brother to them both, tooke up the colours, and performed the ensigne's office; who in the scaling of the wall, was fore hurt, and died thereof; thus three valiant bretheren died honourably in defending their colours. If an ensigne should lose all his colours from the staffe and hose, it is no dishonour. When an army is drawne into batalia, the ensigne ought to stand out before the front of it, some five paces; and if the generall, or some other chiefe officer of the fiede pass by, he is gently to vaile his colours, holding the butte end of his staffe at his

his girdlested: also a maxime that no souldier moves hat or helmet to the greatest commander that is, but only to bow his body to him; likewise, in time of battell, the ensigne is to withdraw himselfe for his safety into the middlemost ranke of the pikes; likewise in a march the ensigne is to march before the first division of pikes, with his flying colours. If a kinge or great prince passeth by, the ensigne is to vaile his colours close to the ground, with his knee bending, in token of allegiance and submission; every ensigne of private companies ought to observe how the ensigne of the right hand of the battell orders his colours, after the same manner hee is to order his; every souldier upon an allarme is speedily to repaire to his colours; likewise not to forsake them until they be lodged; when any company shall march either into campe, guard, fortresse or castle, no souldier ought to disarme himselfe, untill they see first the colours placed, and the ensigne disarmed: likewise no sooner shall a souldier see the ensigne take up his colours, but they should arme and ranke themselves immediately.

No ensigne ought to disarme himself upon any guard, campe, or field, untill hee sees that with safety he may doe it: likewise an ensigne should shew himselfe forwardest with his colours in assaulting a fort, or entering a breach, to encourage the souldiers manfully to fall on to defend and make way for them: he ought to behave himself so, that he may gain the love of all the souldiers, whereby his owne person shall be in the more safetie, when he shall attempt any perillous exploits, for love will command a souldier to fight, when all things in the world else cannot spur him forwards; and let him know that the vertue of the ensigne setteth forth the vertue and valour of the captaine and his whole band. I could wish our noble captaines would be pleased to be more circumspect in their election of officers, and not to put undeserving fellowes of base birth and qualitie into place of comand, which deserves gentlemen of quality to officiate, the office of the ensigne being a place of repute and honour, doth not sute every yeoman, taylor, or fidler;

as

as I have knowne to one company in Essex, all these or the like mechanick fellowes have had the honour to beare the colours before a generous captaine of noble birth, whose name I forbear to relate, but let it be an item to all generous captaines to make choyce of officers that are well bred and deserving; otherwise they doe but disgrace themselves, and abuse his Majestie's service, and the reputation of our countrey."

VENN, in his Military Observations, (i) is very copious in treating on ensigns or colours, their dignity, the disgraces to which they are liable, the use and ordering of them, with the postures and flourishes thereunto belonging: these, as they contain diverse curious regulations, as well as ancient customs, are here laid before the reader. (k) Perhaps that part respecting the flourishes of the colours would have come more regularly under the article of exercise, but unwilling to separate it from the rest, I have ventured to transgress a little on method.

"THE dignitie and estimation of ensignes in all ages hath been held most venerable and worthy: they have been esteemed the glory of the captain and his company, and indeed they are no less; for where they perish with disgrace, there the captaine's honour faileth, and the souldiers in hazzard of ruine; for if the loss proceed either from their cowardice (or misgovernment) it hath been death by the law of armes to all that survive; and the best mercy that can be expected, is, that every souldier shall draw a lot for his life (file by file) so that one out of every file perisheth for it.

2. THE next dignitie of the ensign is, that every souldier, as soon as he is inrolled and hath received either pay or impress, they antiently took a solemn oath to be faithful to their colours, to attend them carefully, and to defend them valiantly; and that upon

(i) MILITARY and Maritime Discipline in three books, &c. by Captain Thomas Venn, published 1672. || (k) P. 180.

all summons of the trumpet or drum, or command of their officers, to repair to them wheresoever they shall be lodged, stand or be, and not to depart or straggle from them until they have received orders.

3. THE ensign hath another dignity, that whensoever he shall enter into city, town, garrison, camp, or other randevouze of aboad, he is to be first lodged, before any other officer or souldier; and not in any meane place, but the best and most spacious for the drawing up of the souldiers upon any alarme; and his quarter ought to be the most secure from danger.

4. THE ensign hath dignity of place according to the antiquity of his captain; but in one particular case, it hath been judged to be greater than his captain, and lendeth place to him; as thus, no captain can receive his antiquity from his inrollment, but from the first hour in which his colours flew; for if two be inrolled upon one day, and the latter marcheth before the face of his enemy with his colours flying, in this case the first has lost his priority, and the latter for ever after shall preceed him.

I HAVE read of another resolve, three captains (or more as occasion happeneth) were all inrolled upon a day, and all their colours flying; presently upon a truce, composition, or other occasion, there is some small cessation of armes, and these new inrolled captains are casheered (or dismissed) for the present service: now the two first that had priority of place, not only by inrollment but by flying of their ensigns, because they would not be out of action (to a souldier the taste of gain is pleasant) took upon them the commands as lieutenants of two colonels companies, &c. which are captaines places in courtesie, retaining those titles, and in some courts of war have had their voices; now the third all this time taketh upon him no place, but remaineth in statu quo prius; and in revolution of time all these three captaines aforesaid are again commissioned for three new companies of their own; the question was, whose ensign should fly first, and which of the three should have the priority of place? it was thus answered and adjudged by the old earl of Essex and

Sir Francis Vere, &c. that the two first who had taken upon them lieutenancies had utterly lost their superiorities, and the third whose honor slept, but diminished not, had precedencie of place, and his ensign flew before the other ever after.

5. THE ensigne hath this dignity, to have a guard ever about it, which no other officer hath, neither is it to be disembogued or unlodged, without a special guard attending upon it, both of musquetteers and pikes; (and so for a cornet with his own squadron of horse.) Also in the field, if it be in particular discipline or otherwise upon an alt or stand, at such time as the army or company are to refresh themselves with victuals or other rest; in this case the ensigne shall by no means lay his colours upon the ground, or put them in unworthy or base hands, but he shall firste furl and fold them up, and set the butt end on the ground, supported with the serjeants halberts, and the ensigne himself shall not go from the view thereof, unless he shall leave a sufficient guard for them.

6. ANOTHER dignity of an ensigne is, if a nobleman or an esquire will take upon him the command of a private company, and have no other superior place in an army; and a mean gentleman hath the like equal command, but a great deal more antient, although there ought to be a respect if they should happen in company, unto the worth and quality of the person; yet the meaner gentleman's colours shall fly before the other.

As this hath been the antient practise in the wars, how then do those captains debase themselves, and their ensigns, to suffer young captains to step in (either by greatness in quality or favour) to fly their colours before them, &c.

7. EVERY ensign hath his dignity, although he is wholly to be at the captain's command; yet in justice no captain nor other officer can command the ensign-bearer from his colours, for they are man and wife, and ought not to endure a seperation; nor can he be commanded with his ensign to any base (dishonourable) place or action: and hence it is, that to this day, this place and mark of honour

honour is held in such a venerable and worthy estimation amongst the Spaniards and Italians, that they will not allow of any second between him and the captain, as the name of a lieutenant to be amongst them, thinking it to be a superfluous charge and command, because it is, in their judgments, a lessening and a bating of the ensign's honour.

BUT in this, although we esteem an ensign very honourable, we in England differ from them, owning the place of a lieutenant to be honourable and necessary, who ought to be a man of most approved experience; for he takes from the captain those heavy burdens, which otherwise would make the captain's trouble insupportable; nor can the ensigne discharge them, unless he neglects his care and duty to his colours.

8. As for the dignity of the ensign in England, (not meddling with the standard royal) to a regimental dignity: the colonel's colours in the first place is of a pure and clean colour, without any mixture, the lieutenant colonel's only with Saint George's armes in the upper corner next the staff; the major's the same, but in the lower and outmost corner with a little stream blazont, and every captaine with Saint George's armes alone, but with so many spots or several devices as pertain to the dignity of their respective places.

BUT with us in England, placing and displacing is left to the generalissimo, &c. and so to his substitutes, or deputies: it is to me a riddle, that any person who cannot be stained with the least blemish, should lose his advancing honour; but kissing goes by favour.

Of DISGRACES to the ENSIGN.

THERE are as many disgraces that belong to the ensign as dignities; I shall for brevity sake mention but some few: all which must proceed from mistakes in one of these three, unskilful composition, negligent government, or rash actions.

1. TOUCHING unskilful composition, either in false making, or bearing of ensigns, and that you may be informed for the compositions

retreit, his colours shall be furled (or folded) up, or shouldred, and not flying, and held forth and extended with the left arm, and his sword advanced in his right hand, his colours are disgraced, and such retreat is base and unworthy.

4. If the ensign-bearer shall happen either in battel or skirmish, to be slain, and so the colours fall to the ground, if those or some of them, next adjoining thereunto, do not recover and advance them up, it is not only a disgrace to the ensign, but an utter dishonour to the whole company; as I have declared, that if the colours be lost, there must be a severe account given for them; and indeed a greater act of cowardice cannot be found, than to suffer the colours to be lost.

THERE is an ancient president, but fresh in memory, that in great defeats when armies have been overthrown, scattered and dispersed so that particular safety hath made men forget general observations; even then the ensign being wounded to death, and desperate of all relief, hath stript his ensign from the staff, and wrapt or folded it about his body, and so perished with it. This ensign cannot be said to be lost, because the honour thereof was carried with his freed soul to heaven, to the possession of the eternal fort for ever: now in this particular the enemy cannot boast of any triumph then purchased, more than every sexton may do when he robs the dead of his winding sheet.

THUS it hath reported that Sebastian king of Portugal, dyed at the battel of Alcazar: and I have read of many of our brave English that thus dyed at the renowned battel at Newport, and have heard that many have so done in the army of our late sovereign of ever blessed memory.

5. AND lastly, if any man shall recover the lost ensign, and bring it away flying, &c. no matter how low in condition the man is, if the captain upon any after considerations bestow those colours upon some other man, it is a disgrace both to the captain and his ensign, for he doth injury to vertue and discourage valour.

OBJ.

OBJ. But some may object, that upon composition with the party deserving, the captain may dispose of his colours where he pleaseth: I confess it true, but if this composition be forced, it is injurious; and if it come by a voluntary consent of the party, it is base and most unworthy in him also.

Of the right USE and ORDERING of the ENSIGN or COLOURS;
with the POSTURES and FLOURISHES thereunto belonging.

As to my best remembrance, I have given a catalogue of the disgraces; so I shall here insert, as to my knowledge, the true use of the ensign, whereby those injuries may be avoyded.

1. AND first, you shall understand, that in all extended marches (and not drawn into a body) as when they march either into a friend's or enemie's country; or otherwise are conducted to some remote randevouz; here the ensign (or colours) ought to be half furled (or folded) up, and half flying, shall be shouldred, and born a little cross the ensign-bearer's neck, with his hand extended a good distance from his body, and his left hand upon his side or hilt of his sword; this is termed marching in state.

2. IF he shall enter into any city or great town, then he shall unfold or open his colours, and let them fly at full length, and carry them in his right hand close under the hose, with a lofty hand, and extended arm; this is marching in triumph: but if the wind blow stiff, or there is a weakness, or wearisomeness in the ensign-bearer, then he may set the butt end against his waiste, and not otherwise: and is to have but one hand upon his staff in any march whatever.

3. IN all troopings, the ensign shall ever be furl'd, and carried in the same postures as the pikes ought to be.

4. WHEN the company is drawn up in a body, the colours must be flying; and by the way, in case the general, or supreme of the wars, or any noble stranger, worthy of respect, do come, immediately upon his or their approach, the ensign-bearer, in all humility,

lity, is to bow the head of his colours, waving them with the bow of his body, and to raise both it and himself up again: and as the said person shall pass away, the drum shall beat, and the colours shall be displayed: this also the ensign shall do in all marchings, or other motions of civil exercises, where your superiors pass by you, or you by them: nay, it is expedient and fit so to be done to any gentleman that is your familiar; for it is no more but as vailing your hat, or giving your friend a courtesie.

5. Now when the body is drawn up into battalia, and the enemy within view thereof, then every man being in his place is to express all the gallantry he can, and especially the ensign-bearer, either in displaying his colours standing, marching, charging and retreating (or retiring); and all these ought not to be done at one time, but when the bodies are joining, and they must be done with great respect, for to use the postures directly to the motion or standing of the body; and not to do as I have seen some in ordinary militia discipline, that have but one or two motions of their colours, upon and for all occasions; as if true honour had such weak inventions; this without doubt is most base and unworthy.

To proceed to the postures of the ensign.

THEY are in general as followeth, so well as I can express them; for they are better in execution, and to be taught by example, than any pen can describe them.

1. To change them with a plain wave from hand to hand.
2. To change them with lofty turns from hand to hand: each hand performing their turns before you deliver them, as from the right to the left, and from the left to the right, as at first.
3. FROM the right hand with a wave and lofty turn, jutting the colours upon the left shoulder, and raising them up with the same hand again, and with lofty turns to deliver it into the left hand, that so thereby you may execute the same upon the right shoulder, and after the turns, to deliver it into the right hand, as at first.
4. WITH (and from) the right hand with lofty turns, throw
your

your colours under the left arm, recovering them speedily back with conceived flourishes, you deliver them into the left hand: you may execute the same with the left hand.

5. WITH turns or flourishes you bring the butt end of the staff to your left hand, turning the palm of your left hand outwards (but not for the reception of it) and with the same hand only throw it off upon its turn with a flourish, to deliver it into the left hand, and to perform the same with the left hand and deliver the colours into the right hand, as at first.

6. WITH lofty turns bring the colours over the head down right (but not too low) before, and raising it again, with the fore-turn and back-turn over the head, changing of hands, and delivering as before.

7. FROM the right hand deliver into your left hand, with the palm of your hand uppermost, the butt end of your staff turning it backwards upon the left shoulder; and turning it over the head with the same hand, you deliver it into the right hand after the same manner, which being performed with the right hand, you proceed to the next.

8. FROM the right hand with lofty turns, fore-turns and back-turns, you deliver your staff into your left hand, and wheel it with the same hand on the same side, and after your recovery to deliver it into the right hand, performing of the same, and proceed.

9. FROM the right hand upon the left shoulder, raising it and turning with its back-turn into the neck; with its returns and lofty flourishes over the head, you deliver the colours into the left, and with the left hand upon the right shoulder you execute the same, delivering them into your right hand as first.

10. 'TIS by some termed the figure of eight; that is with the right hand the half wheel to the left side, and so back on the right side, and then delivering it into the left hand to performe the same.

11. To turn it round the head oftentimes upon the palm with your fingers of your right hand, so recovering it, with lofty flo-

rishe you deliver it into your left hand to performe the same, and so delivering of them into the right hand.

AND if it be your pleasure to be compleat in the exercise of them, you go back to the tenth, and so conclude with the first.

AND in your conclusion, I have seen some to furl them up as they display them, and so to open them again, but to furl them up in the field is most ridiculous.

OTHERS there are, that I have seen to round them oftentimes about their middles, but I cannot justifie it upon any military account.

OTHERS I have seen, that thinking to display their colours bravely, delivered them from hand to hand under leg; I must boldly inform such as use it, that 'tis a debasement to the captain's colours, and an unworthy act in the performers of it.

I TOLD you of some particular postures, and proper for the ensign-bearer to observe.

1. STANDING, when the body stands, you are to display the colours to and fro, in a direct circle, and changing from hand to hand, and no more, without you are commanded to shew the excellency of your parts; but be sure to be well guarded when you shall be so commanded.

2. IN marching, the posture is to display the colours with the right hand only, casting the ensign still forwards, waving it close over and by the right shoulder, never crossing the body, but still keeping it flying on the outside of the right shoulder.

3. THE charging posture is to carry the staff extended streight forward before your body, waving it to and fro as high as your bosom, being ready to give the assistance or aid with the left hand for the preservation of your colours, or to offend the enemy if occasion require.

THE retiring or retreating posture is a mixture compounded of the three former, for in the first retreat, or drawing away of the company, he shall use the posture of marching: but if the enemy
press

press near upon him, he shall stand upon his guard, and use the posture of charging; and in fine, having quit himself of danger, he shall use the standing posture a little, and then march or troop away, according to the directions of the commander.

AND lastly, when the ensign returns from the field, and is to be lodged; in former times the lieutenant had the van guard; but that I shall not insist upon, because I have observed it to be left off by able foldiers.

THE captain leading them out of the field, and coming near the place intended to lodge his colours, converts the ranks of musqueteers of both divisions to the right and left outwards, and joyns them; and being so fixed, the body of pikes stand in the rear, and the ensign in the head of them, the captain before the colours with the drums, and sarjants guarding the colours on each side, and the lieutenant behind the ensign bearer, and all being advanced, shall troop up with the colours furled to his lodging or quarters, and as he approacheth thereto, he shall with a bow to his captain carry in his colours; then the word shall be given to all the musquetters to make ready; that being done, they shall all present, and upon the beat of the drum, or other word of command, give one intire volley; and then command every officer to go to their quarters, and to be in readiness upon the next summons either by drum or command.

IT may fall out, that time will not permit this large circumstance; then the whole company being drawn up in a body shall troop up to the place, where the ensign shall quarter, to see the colours safely lodged, which being effected, the musqueteers shall with one entire volley discharge their musquets, and so depart to their respective quarters; commanding all upon the next summons to be in readiness, &c.

AND I might here adde the funeral posture: if for a private souldier, the ensign is to march in his place on the head of the pikes, with the pikes trailing revers'd, but the colours furl'd and

reversed only : but if it be a commander that is to be interred, he is then to march just before the hearse, with his colours reversed, &c.

IF I have writ any thing amiss, or omitted any thing as may prejudice the honour of the ensign, I beg your better advice, for it was in the year 1641 and 1642, that I minded any of those military actions ; therefore for any error herein, let the length of time plead my excuse : however, I could wish that every ensign would but observe these rules, he would then the better know his own worth, and what duty lieth incumbent upon him ; and being careful in the performance of them, his own honour will be displayed in his colours."

THE officer next in command in a company of foot is a non-commissioned one, namely the serjeant, whose duty is thus described by Ward. (1)

"A SERJEANT of a private company ought to be a man of good experience, and sufficiently instructed in all martial exercises ; and if it were possible, he should not be inferiour in knowledge and skill to his superior officers ; hee ought to have a quicke spirit and active body, able both suddinly to conceive, and painfully to execute his superior officer's orders and commands ; it importeth much that hee bee a skilfull valiant soldier, in regard hee is put upon weighty and dangerous services ; hee ought to be very ready and skilfull, in ordering and ranking the company, and in knowledge of exercising the same ; hee ought to take all occasions in time of peace, to call forth such squadrons as have the guard, and duly to exercise them there ; also to there every particular soldier their severall postures, and so to fit them in readinesse for the chiefe officers to exercise in grosse ; he ought to be learned both in writing and arethmaticke ; he is to have alwayes a squadran-rowle about

(1) P. 196.

him, wherein hee should distinguish every man by the armes he beares; his duty is, when the drumme beates for the watch setting, to repaire with his holberd to his colours, where he ought to call over particularly every souldier of that squadron, and view the fixennesse of their armes, and what match, bullets and powder every man hath; he is to rancke the squadron; and if no superior officer bee there, he is to troope away with them to the guard, with his holbert advanced.

HEE is to attend the coming of the major of a garrison, or the serjeant major of his regiment (if they bee intrencht in the field) for the watchword; and to receive such orders from him, as he hath received from the serjeant major generall of the army, or from the governor of the garrison, he is to give the word to his captaine first, if he bee in the place, and then to each superior officer, and lastly to the corporall; the eldest serjant in a march leadeth up the division of musquetires in the reare; in time of training, they are to looke that every man keepes his rankes and files duly, helpe order the company all the time of exercise: in time of warre, he is imployed upon parties which are sent out to discover, or to fetch in bootie and farrage; likewise many times to the guarding of passages; also in laying out of perdues, and visiting them: also in ordering of troops that are drawne out to charge some part of the enemy, where he is to bring up the musquetiers to his superior officer, in good order to skirmish, and to give fire upon the enemy, and so orderly to leade them off againe, seeing them ranke themselves fairly, and causing them to make ready their peeces to come up and fire againe; also in retreite, he ought to assist the souldiers discretely in keeping their orders, lest confusion betides them; also in time of fight, to see the soldiers bandaliers filled ready, that no stay bee made, and to see the powder transported after them securely; he is also (when his captaine is captaine of the watch) to call out the gentlemen of the round to doe their duties, and to give them the word; he ought to assigne every souldier his due and proper

nourably, the captaine ought to bestow the colours on him as a favour: in the absence of his superior officers, hee is punctually to supply their places, and to passe upon those duties which they should; whether it be to be captaine of the watch, or to be commanded out with some troopes for the guarding of some passage, to prevent the enemies approaches; hee is to exercise his company in all their postures; he ought to be gallantly apparelled, with a faire sword and brigandine; if hee be commanded to passe upon any service with part of the company, he is not to carry his colours; also, if the whole company are to guard some dangerous out-workes, as a halfe moone or a redout, the company is to troope thither, and he is to leave his colours in the quarters, with a sufficient guard over them, and hee is to take for his weapon a good pike.

Also, every souldier's honour is highly engaged to defend and preserve their ensigne, and if occasion of necessity should happen, they must not spare to runne upon the pikes to relieve him, as divers valiant souldiers formerly have done: histories have eternized to their immortall fame, the honourable exploits of Capt. Morerula and his two brothers; one of them being his ensigne at the siege of the citie of Africa, in Barbary, in Charles the Fifth's time, when John de Vega, viceroy of Sicilia, scaled the walls of it; this ensigne being fore wounded and overthrowne, his brother, being serjeant, seconded him, and recovered the colours, who advancing forwards like a valiant souldier, was slaine; the captaine, brother to them both, tooke up the colours, and performed the ensigne's office; who in the scaling of the wall, was sore hurt, and died thereof; thus three valiant bretheren died honourably in defending their colours. If an ensigne should lose all his colours from the staffe and hose, it is no dishonour. When an army is drawne into batalia, the ensigne ought to stand out before the front of it, some five paces; and if the generall, or some other chiefe officer of the fielde pass by, he is gently to vaile his colours, holding the butte end of his staffe at his

his girdlested: also a maxime that no souldier moves hat or helmet to the greatest commander that is, but only to bow his body to him; likewise, in time of battell, the ensigne is to withdraw himselfe for his safety into the middlemost ranke of the pikes; likewise in a march the ensigne is to march before the first division of pikes, with his flying colours. If a kinge or great prince passeth by, the ensigne is to vaile his colours close to the ground, with his knee bending, in token of allegiance and submission; every ensigne of private companies ought to observe how the ensigne of the right hand of the battell orders his colours, after the same manner hee is to order his; every souldier upon an allarme is speedily to repaire to his colours; likewise not to forsake them until they be lodged; when any company shall march either into campe, guard, fortresse or castle, no souldier ought to disarme himselfe, untill they see first the colours placed, and the ensigne disarmed: likewise no sooner shall a souldier see the ensigne take up his colours, but they should arme and ranke themselves immediately.

No ensigne ought to disarme himself upon any guard, campe, or field, untill hee sees that with safety he may doe it: likewise an ensigne should shew himselfe forwardest with his colours in assaulting a fort, or entering a breach, to encourage the souldiers manfully to fall on to defend and make way for them: he ought to behave himself so, that he may gain the love of all the souldiers, whereby his owne person shall be in the more safetie, when he shall attempt any perillous exploits, for love will command a souldier to fight, when all things in the world else cannot spur him forwards; and let him know that the vertue of the ensigne setteth forth the vertue and valour of the captaine and his whole band. I could wish our noble captaines would be pleased to be more circumspect in their election of officers, and not to put undeserving fellowes of base birth and qualitie into place of comand, which deserves gentlemen of quality to officiate, the office of the ensigne being a place of repute and honour, doth not sute every yeoman, taylor, or fidler;

as

as I have knowne to one company in Essex, all these or the like mechanick fellowes have had the honour to beare the colours before a generous captaine of noble birth, whose name I forbear to relate, but let it be an item to all generous captaines to make choyce of officers that are well bred and deserving; otherwise they doe but disgrace themselves, and abuse his Majestie's service, and the reputation of our countrey."

VENN, in his Military Observations, (i) is very copious in treating on ensigns or colours, their dignity, the disgraces to which they are liable, the use and ordering of them, with the postures and flourishes thereunto belonging: these, as they contain diverse curious regulations, as well as ancient customs, are here laid before the reader. (k) Perhaps that part respecting the flourishes of the colours would have come more regularly under the article of exercise, but unwilling to separate it from the rest, I have ventured to transgress a little on method.

"THE dignitie and estimation of ensignes in all ages hath been held most venerable and worthy: they have been esteemed the glory of the captain and his company, and indeed they are no less; for where they perish with disgrace, there the captaine's honour faileth, and the souldiers in hazzard of ruine; for if the loss proceed either from their cowardice (or misgovernment) it hath been death by the law of armes to all that survive; and the best mercy that can be expected, is, that every souldier shall draw a lot for his life (file by file) so that one out of every file perisheth for it.

2. THE next dignitie of the ensign is, that every souldier, as soon as he is inrolled and hath received either pay or impress, they antiently took a solemn oath to be faithful to their colours, to attend them carefully, and to defend them valiantly; and that upon

(i) MILITARY and Maritime Discipline in three books, &c. by Captain Thomas Venn, published 1672. || (k) P. 180.

all summons of the trumpet or drum, or command of their officers, to repair to them wheresoever they shall be lodged, stand or be, and not to depart or straggle from them until they have received orders.

3. THE ensign hath another dignity, that whensoever he shall enter into city, town, garrison, camp, or other randevouze of abroad, he is to be first lodged, before any other officer or souldier; and not in any meane place, but the best and most spacious for the drawing up of the souldiers upon any alarme; and his quarter ought to be the most secure from danger.

4. THE ensign hath dignity of place according to the antiquity of his captain; but in one particular case, it hath been judged to be greater than his captain, and lendeth place to him; as thus, no captain can receive his antiquity from his inrollment, but from the first hour in which his colours flew; for if two be inrolled upon one day, and the latter marcheth before the face of his enemy with his colours flying, in this case the first has lost his priority, and the latter for ever after shall preceed him.

I HAVE read of another resolve, three captains (or more as occasion happeneth) were all inrolled upon a day, and all their colours flying; presently upon a truce, composition, or other occasion, there is some small cessation of armes, and these new inrolled captains are casheered (or dismissed) for the present service: now the two first that had priority of place, not only by inrollment but by flying of their ensigns, because they would not be out of action (to a souldier the taste of gain is pleasant) took upon them the commands as lieutenants of two colonels companies, &c. which are captaines places in courtesie, retaining those titles, and in some courts of war have had their voices; now the third all this time taketh upon him no place, but remaineth in statu quo prius; and in revolution of time all these three captaines aforesaid are again commissioned for three new companies of their own; the question was, whose ensign should fly first, and which of the three should have the priority of place? it was thus answered and adjudged by the old earl of Essex and

Sir Francis Vere, &c. that the two first who had taken upon them lieutenancies had utterly lost their superiorities, and the third whose honor slept, but diminished not, had precedencie of place, and his ensign flew before the other ever after.

5. THE ensigne hath this dignity, to have a guard ever about it, which no other officer hath, neither is it to be disembogued or unlodged, without a special guard attending upon it, both of musquetteers and pikes; (and so for a cornet with his own squadron of horse.) Also in the field, if it be in particular discipline or otherwise upon an alt or stand, at such time as the army or company are to refresh themselves with victuals or other rest; in this case the ensigne shall by no means lay his colours upon the ground, or put them in unworthy or base hands, but he shall firste furl and fold them up, and set the butt end on the ground, supported with the serjeants halberts, and the ensigne himself shall not go from the view thereof, unless he shall leave a sufficient guard for them.

6. ANOTHER dignity of an ensigne is, if a nobleman or an esquire will take upon him the command of a private company, and have no other superior place in an army; and a mean gentleman hath the like equal command, but a great deal more antient, although there ought to be a respect if they should happen in company, unto the worth and quality of the person; yet the meaner gentleman's colours shall fly before the other.

As this hath been the antient practise in the wars, how then do those captains debase themselves, and their ensigns, to suffer young captains to step in (either by greatness in quality or favour) to fly their colours before them, &c.

7. EVERY ensign hath his dignity, although he is wholly to be at the captain's command; yet in justice no captain nor other officer can command the ensign-bearer from his colours, for they are man and wife, and ought not to endure a seperation; nor can he be commanded with his ensign to any base (dishonourable) place or action: and hence it is, that to this day, this place and mark of honour

honour is held in such a venerable and worthy estimation amongst the Spaniards and Italians, that they will not allow of any second between him and the captain, as the name of a lieutenant to be amongst them, thinking it to be a superfluous charge and command, because it is, in their judgments, a lessening and a bating of the ensign's honour.

BUT in this, although we esteem an ensign very honourable, we in England differ from them, owning the place of a lieutenant to be honourable and necessary, who ought to be a man of most approved experience; for he takes from the captain those heavy burdens, which otherwise would make the captain's trouble insupportable; nor can the ensign discharge them, unless he neglects his care and duty to his colours.

8. As for the dignity of the ensign in England, (not meddling with the standard royal) to a regimental dignity: the colonel's colours in the first place is of a pure and clean colour, without any mixture, the lieutenant colonel's only with Saint George's armes in the upper corner next the staff; the major's the same, but in the lower and outmost corner with a little stream blazont, and every captaine with Saint George's armes alone, but with so many spots or several devices as pertain to the dignity of their respective places.

BUT with us in England, placing and displacing is left to the generalissimo, &c. and so to his substitutes, or deputies: it is to me a riddle, that any person who cannot be stained with the least blemish, should lose his advancing honour; but kissing goes by favour.

Of DISGRACES to the ENSIGN.

THERE are as many disgraces that belong to the ensign as dignities; I shall for brevity sake mention but some few: all which must proceed from mistakes in one of these three, unskilful composition, negligent government, or rash actions.

1. TOUCHING unskilful composition, either in false making, or bearing of ensigns, and that you may be informed for the compositions

therefore I cannot better it than to declare to you Markham's own words out of his Soldier's Accidence, page 31, he saith, "There must be in military honour nine several faces, or complexions, that is to say, two which be called metals, as yellow and white, figuring gold and silver; seven which are called proper colours, as black, blew, red, green, purple, tannis, and ermine.

AND here it is to be noted, that no mettall is to be carried upon mettall, and for the signification of those colours, you shall understand that:

1. YELLOW betokeneth honour, or height of spirit, which being never seperated from virtue, of all things is most jealous of disgrace, and may not indure the least shadow of imputation.

2. WHITE signifieth innocencie or purity of conscience, truth and upright integrity without blemish.

3. BLACK signifieth wisdom and sobriety, together with severe correction of too much ambition, being mixed with yellow, or with too much belief or lenity, being mixed with white.

4. BLEW signifieth faith, constancy, or truth in affection.

5. RED signifieth justice, or noble worthy anger, in defence of religion or the oppressed.

6. GREEN signifieth good hope, or the accomplishment of holy and honourable actions.

7. PURPLE signifieth fortitude with discretion, or a most true discharge of any trust reposed.

8. TUNNIS or tawny signifieth merit or desert, and a foe to ingratitude.

9. ERMINE, which is only a rich furr, with curious spots, signifieth religion or holiness, and that all aimes are not divine objects.

Now from these colours and their mixtures are derived many bastard and dishonourable colours, as carnation, orange tawny, popengie, &c. which signifie craft, pride and wantonness; so that all commanders are left at their own pleasure for their mixtures, but with these considerations; as

I. NOT

1. NOT to put in his ensign his full coat armour.
2. NOT to bear one black spot and no more in his ensign, for it sheweth some blemish in the owner ; if the spot be round, square, or of equal proportion.
3. IF the spot be unequal, it signifieth a funeral or deadly revenge.
4. NOT to carry words in his colours without a device, nor a device without words ; and the words not to exceed four in number, for if there be more, it sheweth imperfection.
5. NOT to carry more colours than two ; except it be for some special note, or the ensign of several kingdoms, it is a surcharge, and esteemed folly.

2. HAVING shewed the true colours, and the disgraces that may arise in the composure of them, as mentioned by Mr. Markham, I come to the next disgraces, which proceed from negligence in government ; as in carrying his colours furl'd (or folded) up, when they should be flying ; or to let his colours fly, when they should be folded up ; or to display (or flourish them) when they should be carried without any hand motions ; or to carry them without motion when they should be displayed ; or to vaile them, when they should be advanced, or to advance them when they should be vailed.

To lodge or dislodge colours without a guard, or to suffer any man to handle them that hath not a lawful authority. Now the avoydance hereof is sufficient to keep any man from gross errors.

3. THE last disgrace as to the dignity of the ensign is

1. FROM the rashness and unadvisedness of actions ; when he is in safety, out of a phantastical bravado, to thrust himself into danger, as to charge the enemy when he should stand still : it is not only a disgrace ; but the offence hath been adjudged worthy of death, although he may obtain victory by that forward action.

2. IF in a march, battalia, or setting of the parade, or upon any other military employments, he shall misplace himself, it is a disgrace.

3. IF in a battel, skirmish, or fight, where the ensign is put to retreat,

retreit, his colours shall be furled (or folded) up, or shouldred, and not flying, and held forth and extended with the left arm, and his sword advanced in his right hand, his colours are disgraced, and such retreat is base and unworthy.

4. IF the ensign-bearer shall happen either in battel or skirmish, to be slain, and so the colours fall to the ground, if those or some of them, next adjoining thereunto, do not recover and advance them up, it is not only a disgrace to the ensign, but an utter dishonour to the whole company; as I have declared, that if the colours be lost, there must be a severe account given for them; and indeed a greater act of cowardice cannot be found, than to suffer the colours to be lost.

THERE is an ancient president, but fresh in memory, that in great defeats when armies have been overthrown, scattered and dispersed so that particular safety hath made men forget general observations; even then the ensign being wounded to death, and desperate of all relief, hath stript his ensign from the staff, and wrapt or folded it about his body, and so perished with it. This ensign cannot be said to be lost, because the honour thereof was carried with his freed soul to heaven, to the possession of the eternal fort for ever: now in this particular the enemy cannot boast of any triumph then purchased, more than every sexton may do when he robs the dead of his winding sheet.

THUS it hath reported that Sebastian king of Portugal, dyed at the battel of Alcazar: and I have read of many of our brave English that thus dyed at the renowned battel at Newport, and have heard that many have so done in the army of our late sovereign of ever blessed memory.

5. AND lastly, if any man shall recover the lost ensign, and bring it away flying, &c. no matter how low in condition the man is, if the captain upon any after considerations bestow those colours upon some other man, it is a disgrace both to the captain and his ensign, for he doth injury to vertue and discourage valour.

OBJ.

OBJ. But some may object, that upon composition with the party deserving, the captain may dispose of his colours where he pleaseth : I confess it true, but if this composition be forced, it is injurious ; and if it come by a voluntary consent of the party, it is base and most unworthy in him also.

Of the right Use and ORDERING of the ENSIGN or COLOURS ;
with the POSTURES and FLOURISHES thereunto belonging.

As to my best remembrance, I have given a catalogue of the disgraces ; so I shall here insert, as to my knowledge, the true use of the ensign, whereby those injuries may be avoyded.

1. AND first, you shall understand, that in all extended marches (and not drawn into a body) as when they march either into a friend's or enemie's country ; or otherwise are conducted to some remote randevouz ; here the ensign (or colours) ought to be half furled (or folded) up, and half flying, shall be shouldred, and born a little cross the ensign-bearer's neck, with his hand extended a good distance from his body, and his left hand upon his side or hilt of his sword ; this is termed marching in state.

2. IF he shall enter into any city or great town, then he shall unfold or open his colours, and let them fly at full length, and carry them in his right hand close under the hose, with a lofty hand, and extended arm ; this is marching in triumph : but if the wind blow stiff, or there is a weakness, or wearisomeness in the ensign-bearer, then he may set the butt end against his waiste, and not otherwise : and is to have but one hand upon his staff in any march whatever.

3. IN all troopings, the ensign shall ever be furl'd, and carried in the same postures as the pikes ought to be.

4. WHEN the company is drawn up in a body, the colours must be flying ; and by the way, in case the general, or supreme of the wars, or any noble stranger, worthy of respect, do come, immediately upon his or their approach, the ensign-bearer, in all humility,

lity, is to bow the head of his colours, waving them with the bow of his body, and to raise both it and himself up again: and as the said person shall pass away, the drum shall beat, and the colours shall be displayed: this also the ensign shall do in all marchings, or other motions of civil exercises, where your superiors pass by you, or you by them: nay, it is expedient and fit so to be done to any gentleman that is your familiar; for it is no more but as vailing your hat, or giving your friend a courtesie.

5. Now when the body is drawn up into battalia, and the enemy within view thereof, then every man being in his place is to express all the gallantry he can, and especially the ensign-bearer, either in displaying his colours standing, marching, charging and retreating (or retiring); and all these ought not to be done at one time, but when the bodies are joining, and they must be done with great respect, for to use the postures directly to the motion or standing of the body; and not to do as I have seen some in ordinary militia discipline, that have but one or two motions of their colours, upon and for all occasions; as if true honour had such weak inventions; this without doubt is most base and unworthy.

To proceed to the postures of the ensign.

THEY are in general as followeth, so well as I can express them; for they are better in execution, and to be taught by example, than any pen can describe them.

1. To change them with a plain wave from hand to hand.
2. To change them with lofty turns from hand to hand: each hand performing their turns before you deliver them, as from the right to the left, and from the left to the right, as at first.
3. FROM the right hand with a wave and lofty turn, jutting the colours upon the left shoulder, and raising them up with the same hand again, and with lofty turns to deliver it into the left hand, that so thereby you may execute the same upon the right shoulder, and after the turns, to deliver it into the right hand, as at first.
4. WITH (and from) the right hand with lofty turns, throw
your

your colours under the left arm, recovering them speedily back with conceived flourishes, you deliver them into the left hand: you may execute the same with the left hand.

5. WITH turns or flourishes you bring the butt end of the staff to your left hand, turning the palm of your left hand outwards (but not for the reception of it) and with the same hand only throw it off upon its turn with a flourish, to deliver it into the left hand, and to perform the same with the left hand and deliver the colours into the right hand, as at first.

6. WITH lofty turns bring the colours over the head down right (but not too low) before, and raising it again, with the fore-turn and back-turn over the head, changing of hands, and delivering as before.

7. FROM the right hand deliver into your left hand, with the palm of your hand uppermost, the butt end of your staff turning it backwards upon the left shoulder; and turning it over the head with the same hand, you deliver it into the right hand after the same manner, which being performed with the right hand, you proceed to the next.

8. FROM the right hand with lofty turns, fore-turns and back-turns, you deliver your staff into your left hand, and wheel it with the same hand on the same side, and after your recovery to deliver it into the right hand, performing of the same, and proceed.

9. FROM the right hand upon the left shoulder, raising it and turning with its back-turn into the neck; with its returns and lofty flourishes over the head, you deliver the colours into the left, and with the left hand upon the right shoulder you execute the same, delivering them into your right hand as first.

10. 'TIS by some termed the figure of eight; that is with the right hand the half wheel to the left side, and so back on the right side, and then delivering it into the left hand to performe the same.

11. To turn it round the head oftentimes upon the palm with your fingers of your right hand, so recovering it, with lofty flo-

risheſ you deliver it into your left hand to performe the ſame, and ſo delivering of them into the right hand.

AND if it be your pleaſure to be compleat in the exerciſe of them, you go back to the tenth, and ſo conclude with the firſt.

AND in your concluſion, I have ſeen ſome to furl them up as they diſplay them, and ſo to open them again, but to furl them up in the field is moſt ridiculous.

OTHERS there are, that I have ſeen to round them oftentimes about their middles, but I cannot juſtifie it upon any military account.

OTHERS I have ſeen, that thinking to diſplay their colours bravely, delivered them from hand to hand under leg; I muſt boldly inform ſuch as uſe it, that 'tis a debaſement to the captain's colours, and an unworthy act in the performers of it.

I TOLD you of ſome particular poſtures, and proper for the enſign-bearer to obſerve.

1. STANDING, when the body ſtands, you are to diſplay the colours to and fro, in a direct circle, and changing from hand to hand, and no more, without you are commanded to ſhew the excellency of your parts; but be ſure to be well guarded when you ſhall be ſo commanded.

2. IN marching, the poſture is to diſplay the colours with the right hand only, caſting the enſign ſtill forwards, waving it cloſe over and by the right ſhoulder, never croſſing the body, but ſtill keeping it flying on the outſide of the right ſhoulder.

3. THE charging poſture is to carry the ſtaff extended ſtreight forward before your body, waving it to and fro as high as your boſom, being ready to give the aſſiſtance or aid with the left hand for the preſervation of your colours, or to offend the enemy if occaſion require.

THE retiring or retreating poſture is a mixture compounded of the three former, for in the firſt retreat, or drawing away of the company, he ſhall uſe the poſture of marching: but if the enemy

preſs

press near upon him, he shall stand upon his guard, and use the posture of charging; and in fine, having quit himself of danger, he shall use the standing posture a little, and then march or troop away, according to the directions of the commander.

AND lastly, when the ensign returns from the field, and is to be lodged; in former times the lieutenant had the van guard; but that I shall not insist upon, because I have observed it to be left off by able soldiers.

THE captain leading them out of the field, and coming near the place intended to lodge his colours, converts the ranks of musqueteers of both divisions to the right and left outwards, and joyns them; and being so fixed, the body of pikes stand in the rear, and the ensign in the head of them, the captain before the colours with the drums, and sarjants guarding the colours on each side, and the lieutenant behind the ensign bearer, and all being advanced, shall troop up with the colours furled to his lodging or quarters, and as he approacheth thereto, he shall with a bow to his captain carry in his colours; then the word shall be given to all the musquetters to make ready; that being done, they shall all present, and upon the beat of the drum, or other word of command, give one intire volley; and then command every officer to go to their quarters, and to be in readiness upon the next summons either by drum or command.

IT may fall out, that time will not permit this large circumstance; then the whole company being drawn up in a body shall troop up to the place, where the ensign shall quarter, to see the colours safely lodged, which being effected, the musqueteers shall with one entire volley discharge their musquets, and so depart to their respective quarters; commanding all upon the next summons to be in readiness, &c.

AND I might here adde the funeral posture: if for a private souldier, the ensign is to march in his place on the head of the pikes, with the pikes trailing revers'd, but the colours furl'd and

reversed only : but if it be a commander that is to be interred, he is then to march just before the hearse, with his colours reversed, &c.

If I have writ any thing amiss, or omitted any thing as may prejudice the honour of the ensign, I beg your better advice, for it was in the year 1641 and 1642, that I minded any of those military actions ; therefore for any error herein, let the length of time plead my excuse : however, I could wish that every ensign would but observe these rules, he would then the better know his own worth, and what duty lieth incumbent upon him ; and being careful in the performance of them, his own honour will be displayed in his colours."

THE officer next in command in a company of foot is a non-commissioned one, namely the serjeant, whose duty is thus described by Ward. (1)

"A SERJEANT of a private company ought to be a man of good experience, and sufficiently instructed in all martial exercises; and if it were possible, he should not be inferiour in knowledge and skill to his superior officers ; hee ought to have a quicke spirit and active body, able both suddinly to conceive, and painfully to execute his superior officer's orders and commands ; it importeth much that hee bee a skilfull valiant soldier, in regard hee is put upon weighty and dangerous services ; hee ought to be very ready and skilfull, in ordering and ranking the company, and in knowledge of exercising the same ; hee ought to take all occasions in time of peace, to call forth such squadrons as have the guard, and duly to exercise them there ; also to there every particular soldier their severall postures, and so to fit them in readinesse for the chiefe officers to exercise in grosse ; he ought to be learned both in writing and arethmaticke ; he is to have alwayes a squadran-rowle about

him, wherein hee should distinguish every man by the armes he beares; his duty is, when the drumme beates for the watch setting, to repaire with his holberd to his colours, where he ought to call over particularly every souldier of that squadron, and view the fixennesse of their armes, and what match, bullets and powder every man hath; he is to rancke the squadron; and if no superior officer bee there, he is to troope away with them to the guard, with his holbert advanced.

HEE is to attend the coming of the major of a garrison, or the serjeant major of his regiment (if they bee intrencht in the field) for the watchword; and to receive such orders from him, as he hath received from the serjeant major generall of the army, or from the governor of the garrison, he is to give the word to his captaine first, if he bee in the place, and then to each superior officer, and lastly to the corporall; the eldest serjant in a march leadeth up the division of musquetires in the reare; in time of training, they are to looke that every man keepes his rankes and files duly, helpe order the company all the time of exercise: in time of warre, he is imployed upon parties which are sent out to discover, or to fetch in bootie and farrage; likewise many times to the guarding of passages; also in laying out of perdues, and visiting them: also in ordering of troops that are drawne out to charge some part of the enemy, where he is to bring up the musquetiers to his superior officer, in good order to skirmish, and to give fire upon the enemy, and so orderly to leade them off againe, seeing them ranke themselves fairly, and causing them to make ready their peeces to come up and fire againe; also in retreite, he ought to assist the souldiers discretely in keeping their orders, lest confusion betides them; also in time of fight, to see the soldiers bandaliers filled ready, that no stay bee made, and to see the powder transported after them securely; he is also (when his captaine is captaine of the watch) to call out the gentlemen of the round to doe their duties, and to give them the word; he ought to assigne every souldier his due and proper

per place to marche in, that no contention may arise; hee is to place the chief gentlemen in the front, on the right hand file; the next in degree is to lead the left hand file, so placing every man according to his degree; hee ought to see that every corporall be a musketiere; hee is to fetch the powder, shot, and match from the magazene, and distribute it to each corporall, and so to each soldier of their squadron: hee is, at his captaine's command, to carry all delinquents to prison, and see irons put upon them; if scarcity of victuals should be in the campe, he is to procure it from the ammunitioner of the army, lest the company fall in want, which being procured, hee is to distribute it to the corporalls, and they to their squadrons; hee is also to instruct the drummes the true tone of beating, viz. a call, a march, a troope, a charge, an allarme, a retreite, &c. hee ought to be resolute and forward in times of skirmishing, shewing worthy examples to the souldiers, that they might imitate him; hee ought, by his serviceablenesse and care, to gaine the love of the whole company; it must be farre from him to be addicted to the hellish vice of drinking, drabbing or dicing, using his best endeavours to shame suche as should in that kind transgresse; also he is not to permit any souldier that is in drinke to performe any duty of charge for that time, for feare of sleeping or quarrelling, whereby much inconveniencies may ensue; but rather seeke to punish him severely, that all may take example by him, to beware of the like oversight: hee is every night at drum beating to draw billets for his guard, and accordingly to leade his squadron to it; (m) and thus behaving himselfe wisely and valiantly, hee shall gaine honour and reputation, which will be steps to advance him to higher fortunes: and to define the office of a serjeant truly, hee is to bee the eye, eare, mouth, hand and feet of his superior offi-

(m) If the guard bee at a port, then the serjeant is to guard with his holbert all the day with the squadron, and many times all night in times of danger.

cers. I could wish our serjeants of bands here in England were thus qualified, for their captaines sakes ; but I fear the blind will leade the blind, and so fall both into the ditch ; it were happy if they would endeavor to learne to understand their office against his majesty should have occasion to use them."

SIR James Turner, in his *Pallas Armata*, p. 220, defines the duty of a serjeant in substance pretty similar to the description of it here given ; but adds, that a serjeant hath power to correct the soldiers with his halbert and sword, and commit to prison any soldier.

THE corporal, or more properly the caporal, is the next in rank to the serjeant, his title is of Italian origin, derived from capo, which signifies head, he being the capo de escadra, or chief of his squad or squadron. A caporal, says Sir James Turner, ought to be an experienced, vigilant and laborious soldier ; he hath an absolute command of his squadron, neither may any in it disobey him ; if any do, the caporal may beat him with his sword, and commit him to prison ; when a musquet rest was in fashion, he was permitted to beat with it. He is to warn all his squadron, or a part of it (according as he receives order) to the watch, or to be sent on party or other duties ; upon the watch the corporal (having got his orders from his superiors) appoints when, where, and how long each of his men are to stand centinel, and he is bound to teach them how they are to behave themselves when centinels, and is to visit them frequently ; but if he finds any of them asleep, he must not leave him as he found him, as an Athenian captain did (who kill'd a sleeping centinal) but he must bring him to the corps de guard, and there make him prisoner till further order. The caporal is to receive the rounds at his court of guard, and take the word from them, but of this I shall tell you more in another place ; he is also obliged, when he is not on the watch, to teach all that belong to his squadron their postures, and to handle their arms. So you see this caporal of ours hath work enough to do for all the pay or wages he gets.

THE lancepesata, anspesade, or as the present term is, lance corporal,

poral, was originally a man at arms or trooper, who having broken his lance on the enemy, and lost his horse in fight, was entertained, as a volunteer assistant to a captain of foot, receiving his pay as a trooper, (n) untill he could remount himself; from being the companion of the captain, he was soon degraded to the assistant of the corporal, and at present does the duty of that officer, on the pay of a private soldier. (o)

DISBANDED officers, called reformado's, or reformed, sometimes carried arms as privates, till they could be re-instated. These gentlemen, Sir James Turner says, were in some places permitted to be without arms.

A GENTLEMAN of a company is a term that frequently occurs among our ancient military writers; these seem to have been a kind of cadets, except that they had greater pay than the private men, arising, as it seems from some allowance from the captain or colonel. Sir James Turner describes a gentleman of a company as one something more than an ordinary soldier, having a little more pay, and who did not stand sentinel.

(n) PERE Daniel tom. ii. p. 71.

(o) LANCESPESATE is a word derived from the Italian, lance-spesata, which is a broken or spent lance. He is a gentleman of no ancient standing in the militia, for he draws his pedigree from the time of the wars, between Francis I. and his son Henry II. Kings of France, on the one part; and the Emperor Charles V. and his brother in law the Duke of Savoy, on the other part; in those wars when a gentleman of a troop of horse, in any skirmish, battle or rencounter, had broke his lance on the enemy, and lost his horse in the scuffle, he was entertain'd (under the name of a broken lance) by a captain of a foot company as his comrade, till he was again mounted. But as all good orders fall soon from their primitive institution, so in a short time our *Monsieur Lancestesata* (for so he was called) was forced to descend from being the captain's comrade, and become the corporal's companion, and assisted him in the exercise of his charge, and therefore was sometimes called by the French, *aide caporal*. But when the corporal grew weary of the comradeship of his lancespesata, he made him officiate under him, and for that, had some allowance of pay more than the common souldier. See Sir James Turner, in *Pallas Armata*, page 219.

A MILITARY manuscript in the British museum, (p) recommends, that a number of wise and worthy foldiers should be retained by the colonel to be gentlemen of his company, lance spezzates, or to serve for extraordinary lieutenants, whom he should not only use and entreat well, with an advantage in their pay, but alsoe feast them, cherish them, and set them oftymes by course at his own table, and always shew them a courteous countenance."

THE office of drum major does not appear to have been universally admitted into our service, till about the latter end of the reign of K. Charles I. Sir James Turner positively denies the existence of such an officer in our service at the time he wrote.

"THERE is, (says he) another inconsiderable staff officer in most armies, yet necessary enough in all regiments of foot, and that is the drummer-major, the French call him colonel drummer: hee is to receive his directions from the major of the regiment, at what hour he is to beat to the watch, when the dian, and when the tap-too, wherewith he is to acquaint the severall drummers of companies, and to appoint them by turns for there beatings; he is also to order them in what divisions each of them shall beat, when the regiment marcheth; and they are to obey all his directions punctually. In some places he gets a third more of pay than other drummers, but here at home we acknowledge no such creature."

NOTWITHSTANDING this, the drum major is mentioned by Ward (q) and Venn, (r) and his duty described; possibly some regiments who had served abroad, might have adopted that appointment. Besides a drum major to each regiment, there is now, and has been for some time, a drum major general to the army, who is appointed by his majesty's commission, running exactly in the same

(p) No. 5109. Bib. Harl. A colonel, his charge and employment notably demonstrated by E. D. late commander in the Lowe Countries.

(q) P. 194. || (r) P. 193.

words as the commission to any subaltern officer. A copy of the commission of the present drum major general is given in the note below; (s) he is also drum major to the third regiment of guards.

EVERY company had one or two drummers, according to its strength, and sometimes a phifer, by old writers often stiled whiffers, (s) tho' I am apt to think there was some small difference in the instrument, as in the list of the forces sent to St. Quintin's, both fifers and whiffers are mentioned. The qualifications of drummers and fifers are thus laid down by Ralph Smith.

(s) GEORGE R.

L.S. GEORGE the Third, by the grace of God, king of Great Britain, France and Ireland, defender of the faith, &c. to our trusty and well-beloved Charles Stuart, gent. greeting. We do by these presents, constitute and appoint you to be our drum major general of our forces. You are therefore carefully and diligently to discharge the duty of our drum major general, by doing and performing all and all manner of things thereunto belonging or appertaining. And you are to observe and follow such orders and directions from time to time, as you shall receive from us, or any other your superior officer, according to the rules and discipline of war. Given at our court at St. James's, the 4th day of January, 1777, in the 17th year of our reign.

By his Majesty's command,

SUFFOLK.

Entered with the secretary
at war.

M. LEWIS.

Entered with the commissary
general of musters.

JOHN F. HESSE.

Charles Stuart, Gent.

Drum major general.

(t) It is mentioned in this sense by Shakespear, in Henry V. act 4. sc. ult.

————— Behold the British beach
Pales in the flood, with men, with wives and boys,
Whose shouts and claps out-voice the deep mouth'd sea,
Which like a mighty whiffler 'fore the king,
Seems to prepare the way.

SOME derive this from the old French word, *viffleur*, but no such word occurs in either Cotgrave, Lacombe, Richelet, or Boyer.

THE fife is of German origin, and called by Sir James Turner and other old writers, the *Allamaine whistle*.

“ ALL

“ALL captains must have drommes and ffifes and men to use the same, whoe shoulde be faithfull, secrete, and ingenious, of able personage to use their instruments and office, of fundrie languages; for oftentimes they bee sente to parley with their enemies, to sommon their fforts or townes, to redeeme and conducte prysoners and dyverse other messages, which of necessitie requireth language. If such drommes and ffifes shoulde fortune to fall into the handes of the enemies, noe guifte nor force shoulde cause them to disclose any secrettes that they knowe. They must ofte practise their instruments, teache the companye the foundes of the marche, allarum, approche, assaulte, battaile, retreate, skirmishe, or any other callinge that of necessitie shoulde be knowen. They muste be obediente to the commandement of theyre captaine and ensigne, when as they shall commande them to comme, goe, or stande, or sounde their retreate, or other callinge. Many thinges else belonge to their office, as in dyverse places of this treatise shal be saide.”

It does not appear that drummers were at this time employed to execute the sentences of courts martial; indeed we learn from the account of Affarius Velthoven, the provost martial, page 253, that it was the duty of that officer, or his deputies, to execute all corporal punishments, for which he made a charge in his contingent bill: so that the custom of having those punishments inflicted by the drummers, seems to have taken place after the reign of King William. (u) From the following passages in Sir James Turner it looks as if every regiment was not entitled to fifers on the establishment, but that they were paid by the captain or colonel: “with us, says he, any captain may keep a piper in his company, and main-

(u) SIR James Turner, p. 223, says, “where regimental hangmen are wanting, capital crimes must be punished by harquebusiers, and scourging must be converted into the gatloupe:” and further, treating of the regimental provost marshal, says, “he is to be present at the execution of every sentence; and when a soldier is to run the gatloupe, he is to give him the first lash.”

tain him too, for no pay is allowed him, perhaps just as much as he deserveth."

FIFES were for a long time laid aside in our armies, and only revived about the year 1745, by the Duke of Cumberland, who introduced them into the guards; the first marching regiment that adopted them was the 19th, in the year 1747, a Hanoverian lad being then given to the lieutenant colonel of that corps. Fifers were afterwards only allowed to the grenadier company; but most of the drummers were taught the use of the fife as well as of the drum.

A CLERK of a company frequently occurs in the military writers of the last century, but he seems rather to have been the servant of the captain, than any part of the military establishment of the corps, at least no additional payment was allowed to him over and above that of a private soldier. The qualifications required in a clerk of a company were integrity, sobriety, writing a good hand, and a sufficient skill in arithmetick, to enable him to keep the accounts of the company.

THESE were the officers, commissioned and non commissioned, usually found in a regiment of infantry, till about the middle of the seventeenth century; since which, one distinguished by the title of a staff officer, (x) has been added to every battalion; this is the adjutant or aide major. Each regiment of cavalry has also an adjutant.

THIS officer, particularly from the term aide major, seems to have been borrowed from the French, and was, according to Father

(x) A STAFF officer is one whose duty is not confined to any single company, but lies equally with the whole corps, battalion or regiment. The commissioned staff officers of a corps of infantry are the chaplain, adjutant, quarter master and surgeon. The surgeons mates, though reckoned among the staff, have only warrants from the colonel. The quarter masters of cavalry are warrant officers, except those of the blues, who have the king's commission. The duty of an ancient regimental quarter master has been described under the article of herberger, the more modern duties will occur in the article of quarters.

Daniel, not introduced into that service before the year 1666. No such officer is mentioned by Ralph Smith, Davis, Ward, Markham, Venn, or Sir James Turner; but we find him in the list of the army reviewed upon Putney Heath, in the year 1684. It is the peculiar duty of the adjutant to superintend the drilling of the recruits and awkward men; to receive the orders from the brigade major, and to deliver them out to the serjeants, together with the particular regimental orders given by the commanding officer. The adjutant is charged with making out all the returns, and overlooking all the executions of the sentences of regimental courts martial. He, as well as the major, is to be on horseback when the whole regiment is under arms. In camp and in garrison the adjutant is to parade all guards, to see the men are properly dressed, that their arms are clean and in good order, and that they have their number of cartridges. In short, there is scarce any duty going forwards in a regiment, without the adjutant having some share in it. (y) As the adjutant is an assistant to the major, in like manner he is assisted by the chief serjeant, styled serjeant major.

THE field, staff, and regimental officers of the cavalry have in part been already mentioned; I shall nevertheless, from Markham, give a description of the appointments of the commission and non

(y) It is remarkable, that in the British service, this office, which requires abilities, attention, and a thorough knowledge of every part and etiquette of the service, and on the due execution of which the general appearance of the regiment so much depends, has no rank annexed to it, the adjutant being commanded by the youngest ensign in the regiment; this, as his duty frequently obliges him, in some measure, to interfere with the men of every company, at times, occasions heart-burnings and jealousy among the subaltern officers, and causes the discipline of the regiment sometimes to suffer from his want of authority to enforce what he sees necessary, without a formal complaint to the commanding officer. It is true, the adjutant till lately usually held a lieutenancy or ensigncy, and was formerly even a captain; but it having been since settled, the adjutant should hold no other commission, it surely would be for the benefit of the service, if the rank of lieutenant at least, was added to it, with some additional pay.

commission

commission officers of a troop, about the middle of the seventeenth century.

Now for the arming of the superior officers of these troopes, you shall understand that a captaine of curiaffiers may be armed at all peeces, cap a pe, in such fort as I shewed for the gentleman at armes, only he shall have no launce nor battle axe, but only his pistols and sword; his own head, his horse's head, and his horse's buttocks may be plumed; he may lead his men with a white truncheon charged on his right thigh. His place is on the head of his troope before the trumpet; he hath the absolute government of his troope, both for instruction and maintenance: onely he is to receive all speciall orders from his collonell, his collonel from the serjeant major of the field, and the serjeant major from the marshall.

THE lieutenant may be armed to the knee like the captaine, and his own head and his horse's plumed; his place is the reare, and in marches he may carry a truncheon, but of a thicker size than that of the captaine's.

THE cornet shall be armed and horst in all points both defensive and offensive like the lieutenant, onely instead of the truncheon, hee shall carry charged on his right thigh, his captaine's cornet, which (being a private captaine) should be compounded of colour and mettall impaled, that is, the one half colour, the other mettall. The substance of the cornet should bee of damaske, and the forme must be almost square (only a little longer from the staffe, then on the staffe) and fringed about suitably. The staffe should be small, like a foot ensigne, and not so long as an ordinary launce; it must be headed with steele, and either guilt or silvered; with faire tassels suitable to the cornet. If the cornet belong to a great officer, it shall then be of one entire colour, of lesse quantitie, and still square; and in this cornet, the captaine may carry devise and word, or else none, at his own pleasure.

THE trumpet is not bound to any armes at all, more than his sword, which in former times was not allowed, but with the
point

broken : he shall have a faire trumpet, with cordons fuitable to the captaine's colours, and to his trumpet shall be made fast a faire banner, containing his captaine's full coat armour ; he may weare a scarfe and feather, and all other ordinary accoutrements of a horseman ; and for his horse, it shall be a good hackney, with gentleman-like furniture.

THE corporalls shall be armed at all points, and horst like the maine body of the troope, onely in their right hands they shall carry truncheons ; for their office is to be like the serjeants of foot companies, to ride extravagantly up and downe on either side the troope, and to see them keepe their rankes and files, and that all thinges may bee performed which shall come from the captaine's direction. They are likewise to supply and doe all the duties of corporalls and lamprozados of foote, both upon scoutes, watches and guards, as also to looke to the provision of all necessary things which appertain to the troope, and where their own power cannot reforme, there to informe their superior officers ; and therefore these officers are to be chosen out of the troope, as the principall and best understanding men therein.

THE captaine of the hargobuffieres shall be armed, horst and accoutered, at all points, like the lieutenant of curiaffiers, and the lieutenant of the hargobuffieres like the cornet of cuirassieres ; and the cornet of hargobuffieres like a private gentleman of the troope of cuirassieres.

THE captaine of dragons shall be armed like the lieutenant of the hargobuffieres, the lieutenant of dragons like the cornet of hargobuffieres, the cornet and pistols excepted (for he shall carry the weapons of his owne troope), and the guydon (for these shall not be led with a cornet) of the dragons shall be armed like a private gentleman of the hargobuffieres ; and here is to be noted, that the difference betwixt the cornet and the guidon is much ; for the guidon is the first colours that any commander of horse can let flie in the field ; this guydon is of damask fringed, and may be charged
either

with the crest of him that is the owner thereof, or with other devise at his pleasure; it is in proportion three foot at the least deepe in the top, next the staffe, and upon the staffe, and so extendeth downe narrower and narrower to the bottome, where the ende is sharpe, but with a slit divided into two peaks a foot deepe; the whole guidon is fixe foote longe, and shoulde be carried upon a lance staffe. If the captaine (owner of this guidon) shall doe a good daies service, or produce from his vertue something worthy advancement, so that he is called to a better command, as to lead hargobuffieres or cuirassieres, then the generall or officer in chiefe shall with a knife cut away the two peaks, and then it is made a cornet, which is longer one way than another, if (after that) hee doe any thing worthily, whereby he is made by the king or supreme, either bannaret or baron, then shall his cornet be made just square in forme of a banner, which none may carry in the fiede on horseback, under those degrees; now if these noble customes be neglected, and that men out of ambition, usurpation, ignorance, or connivance, take to themselves other liberties; let those great knowledges which have command of armies reforme it; or else vertue will sit mourning at the ladder foote, because shee hath not one true round left to mount by.

SIR James Turner gives the following list of the officers of a troop of cavalry, which evidently appears to have been taken from the Germans.

“ THE stronger the troop be, it should have the more corporals, who begin now to be qualified with the title of brigadeers, for it seems not proportionable for a troop of one hundred and twenty to have no more corporals than a troop of fixty or seventy. Yet for most part now all troops have a like number of officers; and these are the captain or ritmaster, the lieutenant, the cornet, the quarter master, three corporals or brigadeers, two trumpeters, some have three, and some four, a fadler and a smith, and some allow a chirurgion, and a clerk. Many troops have no allowance for the last
four,

four, though all four are very necessary; in some places, if a chirurgion be allowed for every regiment, it is thought very fair; many ritmasters entertain a fadler and a smith in their troops, allowing them the pay of troopers, and what benefit else they can make by their several trades; but if all who ride in the troop be gentlemen, they will not pemit these two mechanicks to ride with them; yet my opinion is, since all who ride now in troops, are not gentlemen, they may, without any disparagement, suffer a smith and a fadler to ride in rank with them, being they are profitable members of that little commonwealth. It is, I think, an oversight that a clerk is not allowed for every company of horse, for a quarter master hath enough to do otherwise, though he be not bound to officiate for the clerk, to receive the pay of the troop, and give it out, and keep the accounts of it; unless you will say, that the paying money to a troop falls out so seldom, that the receiving it will be rather a divertisement then a trouble to the quarter master.

HAVING spoke to the duties of a captain, lieutenant, and ensign-bearer of a foot company, I have nothing to add to the duties of a ritmaster, lieutenant and cornet; but between the quartermasters of foot and horse there is the difference, that the first hath no command, but the second hath, in other duties there is none. But I shall tell the quarter masters of horse, that they should have skill in castrametation, as much as the foot quarter masters have, and rather more; for the last look only to the regular quartering of men in the field, the first to the quartering of both men and horses. A corporal of horse should have experience, for he either assists the lieutenant in placing or setting the guards, or he doth it himself without his lieutenant; he sets the centinels and sees them reliev'd; and orders the patrouels, which are rounds. He is to ride in rank, and if the troop march not in breast, but in three several squadrons, then there is a corporal on the right hand of every squadron; but in absence of higher officers, corporals lead

VOL. I. T t divisions,

divisions, so do they those parties which they are to command, if there be none to command above them.

WHEN a troop is divided into three squadrons they have not their denominations from the corporals or brigadeers, but the first is called the captain's squadron, the second the lieutenant's, the third the cornet's, and if there be a fourth it is called the quarter master's. When a troop marcheth, the captain leads the first division, the cornet with his standard the second, the quarter master leads the third, and the lieutenant brings up; yet some will have the eldest corporal to lead the last division, and the quarter master to bring up on the lieutenant's left hand, for which I see very small reason, or rather none at all. Some French troops, and ours likewise, have besides these officers whom I have named, a sub lieutenant or under lieutenant who hath no command in the lieutenant's presence, but in his absence he commands over the cornet: the French have likewise a guidon, to whom perhaps may answer he who in other places is appointed to carry the standard, either in the cornet's absence, or when he pleaseth to appoint him to carry it. As to the officers of the regiment staff of the cavalry, they are the same with those of the foot.

THE pay of our ancient armies comes next into consideration, in which, as has before been observed, there were at all times, both before and since the conquest, besides the feudal tenants, stipendiary or mercenary soldiers, both natives as well as foreigners. The feudal tenants, likewise, having performed the number of days service due on account of their tenures, were entitled to the king's pay or wages, during the time they afterwards remained with the army; this seems to have been regulated by their civil rank and condition: thus the commander in chief of an army, being a duke, received double what he was allowed if an earl, perhaps this might be in consideration that the higher the rank of the person, the more attendants and vassals he was likely to bring into the field.

OUR ancient historians have not handed down to us a regular
list

list of the pay of the different officers and soldiers, of which our armies were composed; but we are left to collect it from different records and official accounts. Of these the chief and most instructive are the accounts of the great wardrobe, as that office seems formerly to have had the payment of most of the servants of the crown; but I believe there are none of them extant older than the reign of King Edward I.

THE earliest information respecting military pay reaches no higher than the reign of King Henry II. in which reign, according to Fitz Stephens a contemporary historian, the knights of Archbishop Becket's household, employed in the war of Thoulouse, who were no fewer than seven hundred in number, received 3s. a day, the country being besides obliged to provide for their horses and esquires.

THE pay and allowance of the constable was settled in that reign by a book of the constitutions of the king's household, this we learn from a reference made to it in the 10th of Edw. I. printed in Rymer; part of the contents has been already quoted (page 217.) under the article of constable; to which may be added, that all matters respecting the king's hawks came under his regulation or that of his deputy; that he was one of the subscribing witnesses to all the accounts at the exchequer, where he had also a right to stop the sums due to him out of the wages of the stipendiary troops.

IT does not appear that the marshal of that or several succeeding reigns had any standing pay more than that of his rank as duke or earl; his perquisites and emoluments have been already mentioned.

MR. PETIT and Dr. Brady cite a record of the 6th year of King John, wherein it is ordered, that every nine knights, throughout England, should contribute to find a tenth, well provided with horse and arms for the defence of the kingdom, and should allow him 2s. by the day for his wages.

IN the wardrobe account of the 28th of King Edward I. A. D.

1300, published by the Society of Antiquaries, we have the following articles respecting the payment of the military establishment of that reign. From diverse instances, it appears the pay did not take place till after the muster and appreciation of the horses, probably the recruits subsisted on their way to the army, as was afterwards practised, by an allowance called conduct or prest-money, which was generally paid by the sheriffs of the counties wherein they were raised, or through which they passed, according to the number of days march, stating each days march at twelve and sometimes sixteen miles.

THE pay and emoluments of the constable in this reign were the same as in that of Henry II. the regulations of that period being cited as an authority.

THE pay of a banneret was four shillings; from the passage given in the note below, it appears that some bannerets used to diet at court, till the passing of the statute of St. Alban's, when certain wages were assigned them in lieu of their table. (z)

THE daily pay of a knight was 2s. and that of an esquire 12d. both were obliged to have barded horses, those who had them not, or neglected to have them mustered and appreciated, had part of their pay struck off, of which an instance occurs in an esquire of the name of John de Clothale, who instead of 12d. received only 8d. per diem, till his horse was mustered and appreciated. (a)

THE

(z) D^{no} Willmo de Cantilupo, baneretto, qui solebat comedere in aula regis ante statutum factum apud Sanctum Albanum, de aula non tenenda, et non comedenti amplius, sed percipienti certa vad. videlt, per diem 6s.—pro se et milite suo per statutum predictum, pro hujusmodi vadiis, a 27 die Junii, quo die venit primo ad curiam post statutum predictum, usque secundum diem Julii utroque computato per 6 dies, per quos fuit in Cur' et extra rotulum hospicii per compotum factum, cum Domino Rico de Nevill, militi suo, apud Drombou. 1l. 16s.

(a) JOHANNI de Clothale percipient' per diem 8d.—quia sine equo appreciato, pro vadiis suis, a 20 die Novembr' anno presenti incipient' usque 23 diem Decembr', utroque computato,

THE pay of a constable was also a shilling per diem; and though the appellation of constables in this reign was given to officers of infantry as well as cavalry (b) the former, like esquires, were obliged to have covered or barded horses, and we find, that such as were deficient in this article, received only 6d. a day, which was only half their ordinary stipend. (c)

IN this account under the article of esquires, we meet with many persons entitled valets, with the daily pay of 12d. Du Cange, and other writers, are of opinion that the appellation of valet was generally given to young gentlemen of rank and family, who were not yet knighted. (d).

THE term soldier frequently occurs, as if the party so distinguished was of a different order from the other troops; and there likewise appears to have been different ranks of soldiers; for we

computato, per 34 dies, 22s. 8d. Eidem, pro vadiis suis a 24 die Decembr, quo die equus suus fuit appreciat', usque ultimum diem ejusdem mensis, utroque computato, per 8 dies, percipient' per diem 12d. 8s. per manus proprias ibidem, 29 die Decemb. summa **xl. ios. 8d. p 211.**

(b) GALFRIDO de Ampleford constabular' equitum, &c. the pay the same as a constable of foot, i. e. 1s. per diem, p. 220.

(c) — cult. const. per diem 6d. quia cum equis discoopertis. p. 145.

(d) FATHER DANIEL in the Mil. Fr. fol. 1. p. 131. from Du Cange, cites an ancient French manuscript Romance, called le Roman de Rou, where in speaking of William the Conqueror, it is said

Guillaume fut, valet petit

A Falaise posé & norrit.

And in another place,

Et me fit avoir en otage

Deux valets de noble lignage,

N'ert [n'étoit] mi Chevalier, encore ert Valleton.

And speaking of Henry II. King of England.

Cinquante trois ans plus sa terra justifa

Emprés la mort son pere qui valet le laissa.

meet

meet with the term *scutifer*, or *esquire* soldiers at 12d. per diem each, and others styled soldier constables, and some simply soldiers, but all at the same pay. (e)

THE daily pay of a *hobiler*, was 6d. A *vintner* of cross bow men, 6d. A private cross bow man, 4d. An archer 2d. There appears to have been but few *hobilers* at this time employed, and some of those were Irish men, and most of them belonged to different garrisons.

THE *serjeants* at arms, of which there seem to have been many admitted as volunteers, received also 1s. per diem; (f) several of them appear to have been particularly assigned to different garrisons for their defence; six were sent to the town of Berwick. (g)

HERE likewise we find some slight traces of the engineers and their artificers under the following articles. Some of the engineers appear to have been monks.

To Master Reginald, engineer, for going by the King's order from Berwick upon Tweed to Newcastle upon Tyne, to the sheriff of Northumberland, to procure and chuse timber for the making of machines for the castle of Berwick; for 78 days expences in going and returning, and for hackneys for riding, &c. 2l. 8s. (h) Another article charges his pay at 6d. per diem. (i)

To brother Thomas of Bamburgh, a monk of Durham, for timber, and making two large engines constructed by him for the

(e) PAGE 216, 217, &c. *Eidem pro vad' 50 scutiferorum soldar' quolt, percip' per diem 12d. Eidem pro vad' 7 constabl' quorum unus in numero soldar', videlt Simon de Blakfale percipit vad' inter soldar. p. 145. Idem pro vad' Willi de Cardevill, soldar', percip' per diem 12d. &c. P. 146.*

(f) ITEM 28 die Julii admissus fuit Simon de Tardetz, tanquam serviens ad arma, ad percipiend' sicut alii servientes de hospicio Regis. P. 211. *Eidem pro vad' Roberti de Neketon, Henr' Nasard, Johis de Villers, Ranulphi de Charron, Ingelrami le Charron, et Bernardi de Grismak, servientum Regis ad arma assignatorum ad' morand' in munitione predicta, per idem tempus, cuilc, per diem 12d.*

(g) P. 145. || (h) P. 78. || (i) P. 148.

defence of the town of Berwick upon Tweed, in the time of Dom. Phil. de Vernaco, then keeper of the said town. 3l. 6s. 8d. (k)

BROTHER Robert de Ulmo, master engineer, retained in the king's service for the Scottish wars, with Alan Bright, carpenter; Robert at 9d. per diem, Allan at 4d. (l)

GERARD DE MAYAK, engineer, and Gaillard Abot, carpenter, employed by the king to make the pele of Dumfries, at 6d. per diem each. (m)

THREE master carpenters employed on the pele of Dumfries, had 6d. per diem; each thirty five other carpenters, each 4d. and four pages, probably apprentices, 2d. each. (n.)

A MASTER smith Thomas Furneys, working on the same pele had for his daily pay 6d. and of seven other smiths under him, two of them had 5d. and five 4d. per diem each. (o)

FOR the repairs of the abbey of Holm Coltrom, against the king and his army should come thither, perhaps to take up his quarters, master Everard of Carlisle, and six masons his companions, were employed, Everard at 6d. and every other mason at 4d. per diem; two labourers to serve the said masons are charged at 2d. and a smith to mend the doors and windows, at 4d. per diem. (p)

Two hundred ditchers, of whom ten were vintenars, were employed under a master; the private ditchers at 2d. the vintenars at 4d. and the master at 6d. per diem; four men were also paid 4d. per diem, as overseers. A number of women were likewise employed to assist these ditchers in clearing the ditch, at three half pence per diem each: (q) a bounty was distributed among the said ditchers by

(k) P. 78. || (l) P. 257. || (m) P. 268. || P. 263, and 264. || (o) Ibid. (p) Ibid.

(q) EIDEM, pro vadiis 7 mulierum coadjuvancium dictos fossatores ad mundand' dictum fossatum, per unum diem, videlt. 24 diem Octobr' cult. per diem 1d. ob. 10d. ob. Eidem pro

meet with the term *scutifer*, or *esquire* soldiers at 12d. per diem each, and others styled soldier constables, and some simply soldiers, but all at the same pay. (e)

THE daily pay of a *hobiler*, was 6d. A *vintner* of cross bow men, 6d. A private cross bow man, 4d. An archer 2d. There appears to have been but few *hobilers* at this time employed, and some of those were Irish men, and most of them belonged to different garrisons.

THE *serjeants* at arms, of which there seem to have been many admitted as volunteers, received also 1s. per diem; (f) several of them appear to have been particularly assigned to different garrisons for their defence; six were sent to the town of Berwick. (g)

HERE likewise we find some slight traces of the engineers and their artificers under the following articles. Some of the engineers appear to have been monks.

To Master Reginald, engineer, for going by the King's order from Berwick upon Tweed to Newcastle upon Tyne, to the sheriff of Northumberland, to procure and chuse timber for the making of machines for the castle of Berwick; for 78 days expences in going and returning, and for hackneys for riding, &c. 2l. 8s. (h) Another article charges his pay at 6d. per diem. (i)

To brother Thomas of Bamburgh, a monk of Durham, for timber, and making two large engines constructed by him for the

(e) PAGE 216, 217, &c. *Eidem pro vad' 50 scutiferorum soldar' quolt, percip' per diem 12d. Eidem pro vad' 7 constabl' quorum unus in numero soldar', videlt Simon de Blakfale percipit vad' inter soldar. p. 145. Idem pro vad' Willi de Cardevill, soldar', percip' per diem 12d. &c. P. 146.*

(f) ITEM 28 die Julii admissus fuit Simon de Tardetz, tanquam serviens ad arma, ad percipiend' sicut alii servientes de hospicio Regis. P. 211. *Eidem pro vad' Roberti de Neketon, Henr' Nafard, Johis de Villers, Ranulphi de Charron, Ingelrami le Charron, et Bernardi de Grismak, servientum Regis ad arma assignatorum ad' morand' in munitione predicta, per idem tempus, cuilf, per diem 12d.*

(g) P. 145. || (h) P. 78. || (i) P. 148.

defence of the town of Berwick upon Tweed, in the time of Dom. Phil. de Vernaco, then keeper of the said town. 3l. 6s. 8d. (k)

BROTHER Robert de Ulmo, master engineer, retained in the king's service for the Scottish wars, with Alan Bright, carpenter; Robert at 9d. per diem, Allan at 4d. (l)

GERARD DE MAYAK, engineer, and Gaillard Abot, carpenter, employed by the king to make the pele of Dumfries, at 6d. per diem each. (m)

THREE master carpenters employed on the pele of Dumfries, had 6d. per diem; each thirty five other carpenters, each 4d. and four pages, probably apprentices, 2d. each. (n.)

A MASTER smith Thomas Furneys, working on the same pele had for his daily pay 6d. and of seven other smiths under him, two of them had 5d. and five 4d. per diem each. (o)

FOR the repairs of the abbey of Holm Coltrom, against the king and his army should come thither, perhaps to take up his quarters, master Everard of Carlisle, and six masons his companions, were employed, Everard at 6d. and every other mason at 4d. per diem; two labourers to serve the said masons are charged at 2d. and a smith to mend the doors and windows, at 4d. per diem. (p)

Two hundred ditchers, of whom ten were vintenars, were employed under a master; the private ditchers at 2d. the vintenars at 4d. and the master at 6d. per diem; four men were also paid 4d. per diem, as overseers. A number of women were likewise employed to assist these ditchers in clearing the ditch, at three half pence per diem each: (q) a bounty was distributed among the said ditchers by

(k) P. 78. || (l) P. 257. || (m) P. 268. || P. 263, and 264. || (o) Ibid. (p) Ibid.

(q) EIDEM, pro vadiis 7 mulierum coadjuvancium dictos fossatores ad mundand' dictum fossatum, per unum diem, videlt. 24 diem Octobr' cult. per diem 1d. ob. 10d. ob. Eidem pro

meet with the term *scutifer*, or *esquire* soldiers at 12d. per diem each, and others styled soldier constables, and some simply soldiers, but all at the same pay. (e)

THE daily pay of a *hobiler*, was 6d. A *vintner* of cross bow men, 6d. A private cross bow man, 4d. An archer 2d. There appears to have been but few *hobilers* at this time employed, and some of those were Irish men, and most of them belonged to different garrisons.

THE *serjeants* at arms, of which there seem to have been many admitted as volunteers, received also 1s. per diem; (f) several of them appear to have been particularly assigned to different garrisons for their defence; six were sent to the town of Berwick. (g)

HERE likewise we find some slight traces of the engineers and their artificers under the following articles. Some of the engineers appear to have been monks.

To Master Reginald, engineer, for going by the King's order from Berwick upon Tweed to Newcastle upon Tyne, to the sheriff of Northumberland, to procure and chuse timber for the making of machines for the castle of Berwick; for 78 days expences in going and returning, and for hackneys for riding, &c. 2l. 8s. (h) Another article charges his pay at 6d. per diem. (i)

To brother Thomas of Bamburgh, a monk of Durham, for timber, and making two large engines constructed by him for the

(e) PAGE 216, 217, &c. *Eidem pro vad' 50 scutiferorum soldar' quolt, percip' per diem 12d. Eidem pro vad' 7 constabl' quorum unus in numero soldar', videlt Simon de Blakfale percipit vad' inter soldar. p. 145. Idem pro vad' Willi de Cardevill, soldar', percip' per diem 12d. &c. P. 146.*

(f) ITEM 28 die Julii admissus fuit Simon de Tardetz, tanquam serviens ad arma, ad percipiend' sicut alii servientes de hospicio Regis. P. 211. *Eidem pro vad' Roberti de Neketon, Henr' Nafard, Johis de Villers, Ranulphi de Charron, Ingelrami le Charron, et Bernardi de Grismak, servientum Regis ad arma assignatorum ad' morand' in munitione predicta, per idem tempus, cuilf, per diem 12d.*

(g) P. 145. || (h) P. 78. || (i) P. 148.

defence of the town of Berwick upon Tweed, in the time of Dom. Phil. de Vernaco, then keeper of the said town. 3l. 6s. 8d. (k)

BROTHER Robert de Ulmo, master engineer, retained in the king's service for the Scottish wars, with Alan Bright, carpenter; Robert at 9d. per diem, Allan at 4d. (l)

GERARD DE MAYAK, engineer, and Gaillard Abot, carpenter, employed by the king to make the pele of Dumfries, at 6d. per diem each. (m)

THREE master carpenters employed on the pele of Dumfries, had 6d. per diem; each thirty five other carpenters, each 4d. and four pages, probably apprentices, 2d. each. (n.)

A MASTER smith Thomas Furneys, working on the same pele had for his daily pay 6d. and of seven other smiths under him, two of them had 5d. and five 4d. per diem each. (o)

FOR the repairs of the abbey of Holm Coltrom, against the king and his army should come thither, perhaps to take up his quarters, master Everard of Carlisle, and six masons his companions, were employed, Everard at 6d. and every other mason at 4d. per diem; two labourers to serve the said masons are charged at 2d. and a smith to mend the doors and windows, at 4d. per diem. (p)

Two hundred ditchers, of whom ten were vintenars, were employed under a master; the private ditchers at 2d. the vintenars at 4d. and the master at 6d. per diem; four men were also paid 4d. per diem, as overseers. A number of women were likewise employed to assist these ditchers in clearing the ditch, at three half pence per diem each: (q) a bounty was distributed among the said ditchers by

(k) P. 78. || (l) P. 257. || (m) P. 268. || P. 263, and 264. || (o) Ibid. (p) Ibid.

(q) EIDEM, pro vadiis 7 mulierum coadjuvancium dictos fossatores ad mundand' dictum fossatum, per unum diem, videlt. 24 diem Octobr' cult. per diem 1d. ob. 10d. ob. Eidem pro

meet with the term *scutifer*, or *esquire* soldiers at 12d. per diem each, and others styled soldier constables, and some simply soldiers, but all at the same pay. (e)

THE daily pay of a *hobiler*, was 6d. A *vintner* of cross bow men, 6d. A private cross bow man, 4d. An archer 2d. There appears to have been but few *hobilers* at this time employed, and some of those were Irish men, and most of them belonged to different garrisons.

THE *serjeants* at arms, of which there seem to have been many admitted as volunteers, received also 1s. per diem; (f) several of them appear to have been particularly assigned to different garrisons for their defence; six were sent to the town of Berwick. (g)

HERE likewise we find some slight traces of the engineers and their artificers under the following articles. Some of the engineers appear to have been monks.

To Master Reginald, engineer, for going by the King's order from Berwick upon Tweed to Newcastle upon Tyne, to the sheriff of Northumberland, to procure and chuse timber for the making of machines for the castle of Berwick; for 78 days expences in going and returning, and for hackneys for riding, &c. 2l. 8s. (h) Another article charges his pay at 6d. per diem. (i)

To brother Thomas of Bamburgh, a monk of Durham, for timber, and making two large engines constructed by him for the

(e) PAGE 216, 217, &c. *Eidem pro vad' 50 scutiferorum soldar' quolt, percip' per diem 12d. Eidem pro vad' 7 constabl' quorum unus in numero soldar', videlt Simon de Blakfale percipit vad' inter soldar. p. 145. Idem pro vad' Willi de Cardevill, soldar', percip' per diem 12d. &c. P. 146.*

(f) ITEM 28 die Julii admissus fuit Simon de Tardetz, tanquam serviens ad arma, ad percipiend' sicut alii servientes de hospicio Regis. P. 211. *Eidem pro vad' Roberti de Neketon, Henr' Nafard, Johis de Villers, Ranulphi de Charron, Ingelrami le Charron, et Bernardi de Grismak, servientum Regis ad arma assignatorum ad' morand' in munitione predicta, per idem tempus, cuilf, per diem 12d.*

(g) P. 145. || (h) P. 78. || (i) P. 148.

defence of the town of Berwick upon Tweed, in the time of Dom. Phil. de Vernaco, then keeper of the said town. 3l. 6s. 8d. (k)

BROTHER Robert de Ulmo, master engineer, retained in the king's service for the Scottish wars, with Alan Bright, carpenter; Robert at 9d. per diem, Allan at 4d. (l)

GERARD DE MAYAK, engineer, and Gaillard Abot, carpenter, employed by the king to make the pele of Dumfries, at 6d. per diem each. (m)

THREE master carpenters employed on the pele of Dumfries, had 6d. per diem; each thirty five other carpenters, each 4d. and four pages, probably apprentices, 2d. each. (n.)

A MASTER smith Thomas Furneys, working on the same pele had for his daily pay 6d. and of seven other smiths under him, two of them had 5d. and five 4d. per diem each. (o)

FOR the repairs of the abbey of Holm Coltrom, against the king and his army should come thither, perhaps to take up his quarters, master Everard of Carlisle, and six masons his companions, were employed, Everard at 6d. and every other mason at 4d. per diem; two labourers to serve the said masons are charged at 2d. and a smith to mend the doors and windows, at 4d. per diem. (p)

Two hundred ditchers, of whom ten were vintenars, were employed under a master; the private ditchers at 2d. the vintenars at 4d. and the master at 6d. per diem; four men were also paid 4d. per diem, as overseers. A number of women were likewise employed to assist these ditchers in clearing the ditch, at three half pence per diem each: (q) a bounty was distributed among the said ditchers by

(k) P. 78. || (l) P. 257. || (m) P. 268. || P. 263, and 264. || (o) Ibid. (p) Ibid.

(q) EIDEM, pro vadiis 7 mulierum coadjuvancium dictos fossatores ad mundand' dictum fossatum, per unum diem, videlt. 24 diem Octobr' cult. per diem 1d. ob. 10d. ob. Eidem pro

meet with the term *scutifer*, or *esquire* soldiers at 12d. per diem each, and others styled soldier constables, and some simply soldiers, but all at the same pay. (e)

THE daily pay of a *hobiler*, was 6d. A *vintner* of cross bow men, 6d. A private cross bow man, 4d. An archer 2d. There appears to have been but few *hobilers* at this time employed, and some of those were Irish men, and most of them belonged to different garrisons.

THE *serjeants* at arms, of which there seem to have been many admitted as volunteers, received also 1s. per diem; (f) several of them appear to have been particularly assigned to different garrisons for their defence; six were sent to the town of Berwick. (g)

HERE likewise we find some slight traces of the engineers and their artificers under the following articles. Some of the engineers appear to have been monks.

To Master Reginald, engineer, for going by the King's order from Berwick upon Tweed to Newcastle upon Tyne, to the sheriff of Northumberland, to procure and chuse timber for the making of machines for the castle of Berwick; for 78 days expences in going and returning, and for hackneys for riding, &c. 2l. 8s. (h) Another article charges his pay at 6d. per diem. (i)

To brother Thomas of Bamburgh, a monk of Durham, for timber, and making two large engines constructed by him for the

(e) PAGE 216, 217, &c. *Eidem pro vad' 50 scutiferorum soldar' quolt, percip' per diem 12d. Eidem pro vad' 7 constabl' quorum unus in numero soldar', videlt Simon de Blakfale percipit vad' inter soldar. p. 145. Idem pro vad' Willi de Cardevill, soldar', percip' per diem 12d. &c. P. 146.*

(f) ITEM 28 die Julii admissus fuit Simon de Tardetz, tanquam serviens ad arma, ad percipiend' sicut alii servientes de hospicio Regis. P. 211. *Eidem pro vad' Roberti de Neketon, Henr' Nafard, Johis de Villers, Ranulphi de Charron, Ingelrami le Charron, et Bernardi de Grismak, servientum Regis ad arma assignatorum ad' morand' in munitione predicta, per idem tempus, cuilf, per diem 12d.*

(g) P. 145. || (h) P. 78. || (i) P. 148.

defence of the town of Berwick upon Tweed, in the time of Dom. Phil. de Vernaco, then keeper of the said town. 3l. 6s. 8d. (k)

BROTHER Robert de Ulmo, master engineer, retained in the king's service for the Scottish wars, with Alan Bright, carpenter; Robert at 9d. per diem, Allan at 4d. (l)

GERARD DE MAYAK, engineer, and Gaillard Abot, carpenter, employed by the king to make the pele of Dumfries, at 6d. per diem each. (m)

THREE master carpenters employed on the pele of Dumfries, had 6d. per diem; each thirty five other carpenters, each 4d. and four pages, probably apprentices, 2d. each. (n.)

A MASTER smith Thomas Furneys, working on the same pele had for his daily pay 6d. and of seven other smiths under him, two of them had 5d. and five 4d. per diem each. (o)

FOR the repairs of the abbey of Holm Coltrom, against the king and his army should come thither, perhaps to take up his quarters, master Everard of Carlisle, and six masons his companions, were employed, Everard at 6d. and every other mason at 4d. per diem; two labourers to serve the said masons are charged at 2d. and a smith to mend the doors and windows, at 4d. per diem. (p)

Two hundred ditchers, of whom ten were vintenars, were employed under a master; the private ditchers at 2d. the vintenars at 4d. and the master at 6d. per diem; four men were also paid 4d. per diem, as overseers. A number of women were likewise employed to assist these ditchers in clearing the ditch, at three half pence per diem each: (q) a bounty was distributed among the said ditchers by

(k) P. 78. || (l) P. 257. || (m) P. 268. || P. 263, and 264. || (o) Ibid. (p) Ibid.

(q) EIDEM, pro vadiis 7 mulierum coadjuvancium dictos fossatores ad mundand' dictum fossatum, per unum diem, videlt. 24 diem Octobr' cuilt. per diem 1d. ob. 10d. ob. Eidem pro

by the king, over and above their wages; as also 5s. to the masons.

SOME plaisterers were paid 3d. a day, others 2d. boys serving as labourers to them were also paid 2d. (r)

MINERS hired for the Scotch war, had each for their daily wages 3d. and their apprentices, stiled pages, 2d. (s). Four pence per diem is charged for an artificer stiled attillator, in the castle of Berwick, the same for a chaplain, a clerk of the chapel, a watchman, and a washer-woman. (t) Clerks employed to chuse and pay the troops, had mostly 12d. per diem, others paying the artificers, only 6d. (u)

IN Rymer, A. D. 1281, the 10th of Edward I. there is a writ for raising a number of wood cutters in the county of Gloucester, who are directed to join the king's army at Rudland in Wales, they were allowed 3d. each per diem, during their march, this was to be advanced by the sheriff.

THE daily pay of the constable of the castles of Berwick was 2s. that of the constable of Jeddeworth, the same; this seems to have been the general pay for the constable of a castle, unless he was of superior rank, as a banneret, &c.

JOHN de ST. JOHN, captain and keeper of the Marches of Cumberland and Vale of Annan, received 4s. per diem for that office. (x) Many marches and places were defended by persons indenting and contracting for a certain sum.

THE account of Roger de Waltham, keeper of the great wardrobe, gives a very accurate list of the pay of the army raised against the Scots in the 15th and 17th years of King Edward II.

pro vadiis 9 mulierum per 3 dies, 27 die Octobr' pro ultimo computato cult. per diem ut prius. 3s. 4d. ob. Eidem pro vad' 10 mulierum per 28 diem Octobr. et 14 mulierum per 29 diem Octobr' cult. ut prius. 3s. Eidem pro vad' 25 mulierum per unum diem. videlt. 30 diem Octobr. 3s. 1d. ob. Eidem ad distribuend' inter dictos fossatores de dono et curialitate Regis ultra vadia sua 1l. 5s. 7d. P. 269.

(r) P. 266. || (s) *IBID.* || (t) THE attillator was a kind of amouner. P. 152. (u) SEE P. 53 and 263. (x) P. 138.

wherein

wherein the sums paid do not materially vary from those of the preceding reign; but the titles of the officers are different in several instances, among others the term constable, applied to a regimental officer, is not once mentioned; the denomination of constable was afterwards chiefly confined to the cavalry. (y)

THE account opens with the roll of the Welch foot, who have diverse officers not found in the English corps; these are leaders, sub-leaders, chaplains, physicians and cryers. (z) The pay of the leader was 2s. per diem: The sub-leader, every esquire, centenary or commander of an hundred men, and chaplain, had 1s. per diem, each. Physicians 6d. Cryers, standard bearers and vinteners, each 4d. No regular proportion seems to have been observed between the private men and standard bearers. Some leaders of small numbers, not exceeding an hundred men had only 6d. a day. The pay of the other soldiers was, as is said above, the same as in the preceding reign, except that the foot soldiers armed with acketons and bacinetts, received 3d. each per diem; and those unarmed, stiled naked footmen, had only 2d.

SOME hobilers are charged 4d. and some 6d. a day; no reason is assigned for this difference, but perhaps the former had no horses, for we find in another corps that a centenary not having a war horse, was credited only at 6d. per diem.

AMONG the armed foot sent by divers ecclesiastics and others to perform their feudal services, some of them having served the time for which they were hired, remained afterwards with the army, in the king's pay; one of them, Andree de Netlee, is stiled foldario

(y) THIS valuable manuscript is in the library of Thomas Astle, Esq.

(z) STILED in the manuscript, ductor, sub-ductor, centenarius, capellanus, medicus, clamator, standardarius, vintenarius. In one account there were two standard bearers to 1818 private men, but a third was added by the king, as appears by the following entry, Tres standardarii q̄ habuerunt unū stand. de novo ex liberatione Domini Regis. Another corps of 968 men had six standard bearers.

ad arma, his daily pay was 12d. Diverse cross bow men and lanceirs, infantry, from Gascony, are charged 4d. a day.

ADAMAR de VALENCE Earl of Pembroke serving in these wars, received for his own daily pay 8s. for every banneret in his suite 4s. every knight 2s. and every man at arms 1s.

AN ancient manuscript gives the annexed establishment of the army of King Edward III. in Normandy and before Calais, in the 20th year of his reign, with their several stipends. (a)

				At per diem.		
				l.	s.	d.
	My Lord the prince	-	-	1	0	0
	Bishop of Durham	-	-	0	6	8
13	Earls, each	-	-	0	6	8
44	Barons and bannerets	-	-	0	4	0
1046	Knights	-	-	0	2	0
4022	Esquires, constables, centenary and leaders	-	-	0	1	0
5104	Vintenars and archers on horseback	-	-	0	0	6
335	Paunceners	-	-			
500	Hoblers	-	-			
15480	Foot archers	-	-	0	0	3
314	Masons, carpenters, smiths, engi- neers, tent makers, miners, ar- mourers, gunners, and artillery men Some at 12d, 10d. 6d. and 3d. per diem.					
4474	Welch foot, of whom 200 vintenars at the rest at			0	0	4
				0	0	2
700	Masters, constables, mariners, and pages	-	-			
900	Ships, barges, balingers and victuallers	-	-			
Sum total of the aforefaid men besides Lords				31000	—	294

(a) Ex Rotulo quodam penes Arth. Agard. Thes. in Novo Palatio, Westm. reposito collect. v. 1. p. 160. The original in Latin.

Of whom some men from Germany and France, each receive for their wages 15 florins a month.

THE sum total of the wages of war, with the wages of the mariners from the 4th day of June in the 20th of the said King Edward III. to the 12th day of October in the 21st of the same king, for one year 131 days, as appears from the book of particular accounts of Walter Wentwaght, then treasurer of the household, entitled wages of war in Normandy, France, and before Calais, 127201l. 2s. 9½d.

IN the account of Walter Wentwaght here mentioned, in the 21st year of the same reign, there is the following article. (b)

RATES and WAGES of WARRE by the DAIE.	l.	s.	d.
The Prince of Wales - - - - -	1	0	3
A bishoppe, or an earle - - - - -	0	6	8
A barone, a bannerette, the king's chamberlaine, the stewards, the treasurer of the king's house, the keeper of the privy seale, every man by the daye - - -	0	4	0
A knight, comptroller, coferer of the king's house, the king's standard bearers, the clerk of the kichine, pantry and wardrope, the clerke, comptroller, and the keeper of the victualles, every man at - - -	0	2	0
The king's chaplines, esquier, sergentes of armes, men of armes, sergeauntes of office, and other clerks of the king's house, marshall of the hall, ushers and fewers of the hall and chamber, sewer at dresser, harbengers, pantekers, butlers, furgions, minstrelles, ductors or centeners, every man by daye. - - -	0	1	0

(b) FROM a manuscript which seems a copy of that cited by Brady in his History of England.

The king's archers, vintners, yeomen of offices in the king's house, archers on horse, hobilers, messengers, artificers, chaplains of Welchmen, a master, a clarke, and constable, and a carpenter of a shipp, pannecos, (c) couners, and crosbowes of Almaynes, Lorians, and Hymonde, every one at	l. s. d. } o o 6
---	---------------------

Archers on horse, vinteners of footmen, standard bearers of Welshmen, surgeons of Welshmen, and criers of Welshmen, every man	} o o 4
---	---------

THE following list of the army sent to Ireland 36 of Edward III. is taken from a manuscript in the British Museum. (d)

A ROLL of the RETINUE of LIONELL the King's Sonne, Earl of Ulster, Lord of Clarence and Connaugh, and Lieutenant of his father in Ireland.

Knights	Himself at 6s. 8d. per diem, five knights
Sir Thomas de la Dale	at 2s. per diem, five esquires at 12d. per
Sir Philip Topham	diem, 70 archers at 6d. per diem, for a
Sir John Cornewall	quarter of a yeare, viz. from the 14th
Sir Robert Clynton	of August till the 12th of November, 526l.
Sir Symon Flemming	5s. 8d. and for regards (e) to the said earl
	and his retinue, 155l. 11s. 1d. q. d. Total
	681l. 16s. 9d.

AFTER he was created Duke of Clarence his own wages was 13s. 4d. per diem, and eight knights at 2s. per diem. Total 582l.

(c) PANNECOS probably paveros or pavifors, persons bearing pavaises or large shields: a great number of these occur in the list of the officers and soldiers that were with King Edward III. at Calais, published by Rowe Mores.

(d) MARKED Julius f. 6. Cotton.

(e) REGARDS was a kind of contingent allowance, which will be further explained in its place.

360 Archers on horseback of the county of Lancaster at 6d. per diem.

23 Archers on horseback from Wales.

RALFE Earle of Stafforde, for himself 6s. 8d. as aforefaid, for a banneret, 4s. per diem, 17 knights at 2s. per diem, 78 esquires at 12d. per diem, 100 archers on horseback at 6d. per diem, his entertainment began when he and his ritinue came to Bristow to transmitt for Ireland. ffor a quarter 973l. 11s. 7d.

24 Archers out of Staffordshire

40 Archers out of Worcestershire

6 Archers out of Shropshire

} under the Earle of Strafforde.

JAMES Earle of Ormond for himself, 4s. per diem, 2 knights 2s. per diem, 17 esquires, 12d. per diem; 20 hobilers armed, at 6d. per diem, and 20 hobilers not armed, at 4d. per diem each, to guard the Marches of Leinster for a quarter 165l. 6s. 8d.

O'KENEDY for himself, 12d. per diem, 11 hobilers at 4d. 88 archers on foot at 1½d. per diem.

JOHN CAREW, banneret, at 4s. per diem, 1 knight at 2s. 2 esquires at 12d. 10 archers on horseback at 6d. per diem.

WILLIAM WINDSORE for himself, 2s. 2 knights 2s. 44 esquires at 12d. 6 archers on horseback at 6d. per diem each. For the quarter 493l. 16s.

SIR THOMAS HOGGESHAWE for himself, 2s. per diem, 2 knights 2s. 30 esquires, and 30 archers as above.

SIR JOHN SHARDLEWE 2s. 2 archers on horseback.

SIR THOMAS NANTON 2s. and his valet at 6d.

DONALD GALL, an Irish captayne, 4d. per diem; 280 archers on foot at 2d. per diem.

HUGH SWISET, an Irish captayne, at 6d. per diem, 4 hobilers not armed at 4d. per diem, 35 archers at 1½d. to guard the Marches of Baltinglasse.

RICHARD TALBOT, a captaine of the Irish, and 17 archers on horseback of Darbyshire, 14 of Shropshire, 15 of Nottingham.

VINTENARIES at 4d. per diem, and 12 archers on foot 4d. per diem, 150 more archers of different countries.

SIR WINDESORE 16 archers more.

SIR EUSTACE TABRICKECOURT, banerett, 4s. per diem, 1 knight, 4 esquires, and 8 archers.

SIR JOHN ST. LAUDE, 5 esquires, and 20 archers on horseback.

THE passage of the Duke of Clarence, the Earle of Stafford, and the rest mounted to 500l. or upwards. A vintenarius had 20 archers under him, and no more.

No alteration appears to have been made in the pay of the army during the reign of Richard II. But in the succeeding reign there seems to have been some irregularity in that article, which had like to have produced very disagreeable circumstances to Prince John, son of King Henry IV. this we learn from the rolls of parliament A. D. 1404, being the sixth year of that king's reign, wherein it is recited "That whereas Monsieur John the king's son was at the point of having been put to great dishonor, and danger of his soldiers, for default of payment, if it had not happened that the Sire de Fournyvall assisted him and formed a credit in different manners; for the saving of the honor of the said Sire John, as well as for the honor of the said Sire de Fournyvall, the commons pray that payment be made, as reason and good faith require.

Also the said commons pray our lord the king, as they have before done, that he will please to consider the good and agreeable service that the Duke of Everwyk has done him at the time he was lieutenant in Guyen, and that the said duke for default of payment of him and his said soldiers in those parts, had sold and pledged all his gold and silver plate, as well for the preservation of the honor of our said lord the king, as of himself and all the kingdom; and that it may please our lord the king, to order that payment and satisfaction may be made to him in these parts as he trusteth.

Also the commons beseech our said lord the king, that it may please him to have in especial recommendation Monsieur Thomas
de

de Erpyngham, Monsieur Thomas Remptson, John Norbury, and the other vailliant knights and esquires who risked themselves with our said lord the king at his arrival in England, and that our said lord the king himself would have them in honour and esteem for their good and agreeable service performed to him both here and abroad.

ANOTHER petition appears in the second year of the succeeding reign, A. D. 1414, wherein the soldiers forming the garrisons of the castles on the frontiers of Picardy, set forth, that being obliged to come to England for payment of their wages, the expences of their journey cost them the greatest part thereof, and also that the said frontier was considerably weakened by their absence; wherefore they prayed that they might receive their pay at the exchequer of Calais, according to the tenure of their indentures: They were referred for an answer to the king and council, but their complaint seems not to have been remedied till the next reign.

IN an indenture between King Henry V. and the Duke of Clarence, A. D. 1415, wherein the duke covenants to serve the king for a year in France with a certain number of men to be paid as follows. The duke for himself, 13s. 4d. for an earl 6s. 8d. a banneret, 4s. a knight 2s. an esquire 1s. and for each archer 6d. per diem, with the usual regards. It was also covenanted that if it happened that these troops should be employed in the Dutchy of Guyenne, that he should then receive for each esquire 40 marks, and for every archer 20 marks for the whole year, this to be paid half the first quarter on signing of the indenture, and the other half after the muster. The king to find transports going and returning for men, horses, harness, and victuals, at the following rate:

50 Horses for the duke himself

24 Horses for an earl

16 Horses for each banneret

6 Horses for each knight

4 Horses

4 Horfes for each efquire

1 Horfe for each archer. (f)

IN another indenture made at the fame time with Henry Le Scrope, as a security for the payment of the fecond quarter, the king covenanted to deliver in pledge on a certain day, jewels worth the fum of the faid wages and regards, which jewels were to be returned at any time his Majefty fhould chufe to redeem them within a year and a day from the time of their delivery, and if not redeemed within that time, Lescrope was authorized to difpofe of them at his pleafure without hindrance from the king or his heirs, according to the contents of the letters patent under the great feal. (g) The king likewise covenanted with the perfons thus indenting with him, that no procefs fhould iffue againft them for default of homage for any lands defcending to them during the time they were abroad in his fervice.

BESIDES the daily ftipend paid the troops, there was an additional douceur ftiled regards, (h) this was a kind of perquifite to the commanding officer, or chief contractor with the crown for every body of men, to enable them to keep a table for their officers, and to provide for the different contingent expences: the quantum of this allowance differed according to the nature of the fervice or country in which the troops were to be employed; the ufual fum was at the rate of an hundred marks for a quarter of a year, for every thirty men at arms, which amounted to near fix-pence a day

(f) SEE Rymer, vol. 9. p. 227. || (g) AT the death of this king, many of his jewels were in the hands of captains who had indented to ferve him, who applied to parliament to authorize them to outfet the thirds of the gains of war due from them to the king, againft the arrears of pay due to them; and alfo for permiffion to fell the jewels deposited in their hands, paying the balance, if any, into the Exchequer; this was granted to take place within half a year, if fuch jewels were not the jewels of the Crown. See Rot. Parl. 1ft. Henry VI.

(h) TRANSLATED by Du Cange, Reward.

each.

each. (i) Sometimes we meet with a stipulation for regard and a half, and sometimes for double regards and double wages. (k)

It also appears that the troops were occasionally paid half the quarter in advance, or had assignments on the supplies granted to the king, and in some indentures it is specified, that in default of payment of their wages or other reasonable cause, the parties indenting might disband and go whither they pleased, without any hindrance from the king or his heirs. (l) Edward III. I think, more than once paid his army with wool.

SOME little alteration in the denomination of the troops, caused a difference in their pay, about the beginning of the reign of Henry VII. as we learn from an indenture of war made in the year 1492, being the 7th of that king; wherein George, Earl of Kent, engages to serve the king abroad in such places as he shall direct, for one whole year, from the first day of muster, with six men of arms, himself reckoned as one; each man of arms having with him his cuistrill and page, sixteen demi-launces, sixteen archers on horse-

(i) RYMER, 3 Hen. V. tom. 9. p. 227.

(k) IN a MS. in the library of Thomas Astle, Esq. entitled Names of the Nobility and others retained to serve the kings of England in their wars from the 19th. of Ed. III. to Henry VIII. extracted out of the office of the Pells, by the industry of Sir William Le Neve, knight, Clarentius King of Arms, digested by Sir Edward Walker, knight, Garter, principal King of Arms, anno 1664, with an index, by J. Anstis, Garter; and the seals of the persons indenting, neatly drawn with a pen in the margin. There are several instances of regard and a half, double regard, and even double regard and double wages, in the reigns of Edward III. and Richard II. The originals of these indentures were removed from the Pells by order of a Committee of the House of Peers, anno 1719, and put into the hands of Mr. Incedon, house-keeper of the House of Lords, from whom they were delivered to Mr. Anstis to be arranged, they remained at his house at Mortlake till after his death. In 1756 they were taken into the custody of Mr. Carrington, in whose possession they continued till July 1770, when pursuant to an application made by a Committee of the house of Peers to the Secretary of State, they were delivered into the State Paper Office, where, anno 1784, they remained.

(l) RYMER, A. D. 1347. 21 Ed. III.

back, and fixty archers on foot, all able men fit for service, properly horsed, armed, garnished and arraied, according to their different kinds and stations, and the customs of war, or as shall be approved of by the king's commissioners deputed for taking the musters; the whole to be mustered at Guildford, on the 4th of June, and on their arrival at Portsmouth, probably the rendezvous of the whole army, to receive the conduct money, (m) which was an allowance for marching, to be calculated at the rate of 6d. for every twenty miles each soldier should march, to be reckoned from his residence to that place, each soldier to swear to the number of miles marched by him. And that from the first day the said earl shall arrive at Portsmouth, and during the time he shall serve the king in his wars, he shall receive for every man at arms, garnished with his custrill and page, 1s. 6d. by the day; for every demilance, 9d. and for every archer, whether horse or foot, 6d. The earl to receive a month's pay in advance, immediately on his arrival at Portsmouth, reckoning twenty-eight days for a month; this to be paid him, without any deduction whatsoever, before the transports leave the harbour, and on the last day of the month so paid, he shall receive another month in advance; the money so received he covenants to pay within six days to his soldiers, and in like manner to continue receiving and paying, during the time of his service. Respecting the payment of the thirds, and thirds of thirds

(m) THIS conduct money seems to have been in lieu of all other subsistence, as the troops do not appear to have drawn any pay from the treasurer of the army till they had actually joined it. Sums of money were, about the time of King Edward VI. and Queen Elizabeth, frequently if not always issued to troops going on foreign service, under the title of emprest or imprest money, from the French word *prest*, a loan, being considered as advanced or lent to enable them to provide sea stores, and other necessaries. Thus 20 days imprest was ordered to the 2100 men embarked for Flushing, 34th Elizabeth anno 1592, under the command of Capt. Pooley, and it was directed that they should have such weekly lendings during the time they remained in France. See Rymer in anno.

of all plunder or prisoners of war, (n) performing watch and ward, and other duties according to the statutes and ordonnances of war, made by the king with the advice of the lords of his council, a copy of which was delivered to him, he acknowledges himself liable to them, and covenants that he will obey and submit to them and the penalties therein contained, and that if any of his corps or retinue shall do any thing contrary to them, he will do his utmost to bring him to justice according to the said statutes. This indenture was signed the 9th day of May.

VERY little, if any alteration was made in the pay or establishment of our armies from this period till the reign of Queen Mary, what had taken place at that time will appear from the list of the army which served at St. Quintin's, which is here transcribed. (o)

THE officers, the captains, horsemen and footmen of a regiment of a thousand horsemen, four thousand footmen, and two hundred pyners, with their entertainment and wages. 10th July, 1557.

JOURNEY towards ST. QUYN TAINES, 1557, in the reign of
QUEEN MARY.

Per mensem.

Per diem.

		l.	s.	d.
The captain general for his person	-	5	1	2
Three chaplaynes	- - -	0	3	0
The secretarie	- - -	0	3	4

(n) EVERY commanding officer was accountable to the king for one third of his gains of war, whether made by prisoners or plunder, and he was entitled to one third of the gains of war of every one serving in his corps; for one third of these thirds, he was also accountable to the king. This will be further explained under the article of prisoners of war.

(o) THERE are several copies of this list, one in the Library of the College of Arms, marked W. S. The other in the British Museum, among the Harleian Manuscripts. No. 6844.

Per mensem.

Per diem.

						l.	s.	d.
One for the French tongue	-	-	-	-	-	0	3	4
Two surgeons	-	-	-	-	-	0	1	0
A trounce man (p)	-	-	-	-	-	0	2	0
Ten carriages	-	-	-	-	-	2	10	0
Two trumpetters	-	-	-	-	-	0	3	0
A drumme	-	-	-	-	-	0	1	8
A phife	-	-	-	-	-	0	1	8
Thirtie halbardyers	-	-	-	-	-	1	10	0
301	15	0				10	1	2

The lieutenant general	-	-	-	-	-	3	6	8
His chaplaine	-	-	-	-	-	0	1	0
A surgeon	-	-	-	-	-	0	1	0
His trounce man	-	-	-	-	-	0	2	0
Three carriages	-	-	-	-	-	0	15	0
His trumpeter	-	-	-	-	-	0	1	6
Fifteen halberdyers	-	-	-	-	-	0	15	0
153	5	0				5	2	2

The high marschall	-	-	-	-	-	3	6	8
Master of the campe	-	-	-	-	-	1	0	0
His chaplaine	-	-	-	-	-	0	1	0

(p) THE copy in the Herald's College has it Troughman, perhaps a corruption of the old French word Trucheman, an interpreter, some have supposed this to mean a truncheon man, a marshal, or kind of tipstaff, such as attended judges and other great persons in the civil line to make way for them.

His

THE ENGLISH ARMY.

341

Per menſem.

l. s. d.

His ſurgeon
Three carriages
His trumpetter
His drumme
Fifteen halbardyers

182 0 0

Per diem.

l. s. d.

0 1 0
0 15 0
0 1 8
0 1 0
0 15 0

6 1 4

The generall of the horſemen
His lieutenant
A chaplaine
A ſurgeon
Ffoure carriages
His trumpetter
Ffyfteene halbardyers

188 0 0

3 6 8
1 0 0
0 1 0
0 1 0
1 0 0
0 1 8
0 15 0

6 5 4

The captayne general of the footmen
His lieutenant
The Serjeant major
Sixe wyfflers
A chaplayne
A ſurgeon
Three carriages
A drumme
A phife
Fyfteene halbardiers

225 0 0

3 6 8
1 0 0
0 15 0
0 13 0
0 1 0
0 1 0
0 15 0
0 1 8
0 1 8
0 15 0

7 10 0

The

Per mensem.

l. s. d.

Per diem.

l. s. d.

	The master of th' ordynance		1	6	8
	His lieutenant		0	13	4
	Master of the carriages		0	10	0
	The trounche Mr. (p)		0	5	0
	A chaplain		0	1	0
	A clerke of th' ordynnance		0	2	0
	Two clerkes		0	2	0
	A surgeon		0	1	0
	Sixe bowyers		0	6	0
	Sixe fletchers		0	6	0
	Three carpenters		0	3	0
	Three smythes		0	3	0
	Two guiders of th' ordinnance		0	4	0
	Twelve carriages		3	0	0
	A drumme		0	1	0
	A phife		0	1	0
	A hundred and twentie lymyres		1	5	0
	Tenne halberdyers for the master of the ordnance		0	10	0
	Hacquebutter on horseback for the lieutenant, 6		0	6	0
	Master gunner		0	3	4
	Twelve gunners		0	16	0
304			12	15	4
	The treasurer		1	6	8
	Three clarkes		0	3	0

(p) PROBABLY the Trench master; such an officer being frequently mentioned in our ancient armies.

Tenne

THE ENGLISH ARMY.

343

Per menſem.

l. s. d.

Tenne halberders

Ffowre cariages

Per diem.

l. s. d.

0 10 0

1 0 0

2 19 8

The Mr. of the muſters

His two clerkes

0 16 8

0 2 8

0 19 4

The provost

Two judges

Two clerkes

Sixe halberdyers

Sixe tipſtaves

A chaplayne

A troutch man

Two jaylors

A hangman and his men

Two cariages

1 0 0

0 13 4

0 2 0

0 6 0

0 6 0

0 1 0

0 2 0

0 2 0

0 2 0

0 10 0

96 10 0

3 4 4

A chief ſurveyor of victuals

A clarke

Two other ſurveyors

0 6 8

0 1 0

0 4 0

17 10 0

0 11 8

The

Per mensem.

l. s. d.

o o o

o o o

o o o

o o o

o o o

o o o

o o o

o o o

o o o

o o o

o o o

o o o

o o o

o o o

o o o

o o o

o o o

o o o

o o o

o o o

o o o

o o o

o o o

o o o

o o o

o o o

o o o

o o o

o o o

o o o

o o o

o o o

o o o

o o o

o o o

o o o

o o o

o o o

o o o

o o o

o o o

The chief harbinger

Three other harbingers

A clarke

Mr. of the forage

His lieutenant

Mr. of the scowtes

His lieutenant

The harralde

His two men

A pursuivant

His man

Ffyve captaines of the armed horsemen, every
captaine 10s. by the daye

Ffyve lieutenants of horsemen, at 5s. each

Ffyve standard bearers, at 3s. 4d. each

Ffyve chaplains, at 12d.

Ffyve trumpettters, at 18d.

Ffyve surgeon, at 2s.

Ffyve harbengers, at 2s.

Per diem.

l. s. d.

o 4 o

o 6 o

o 1 o

o 11 o

o 6 o

o 3 o

o 9 o

o 6 o

o 3 o

o 9 o

o 5 o

o 2 o

o 3 4

o 1 o

o 11 4

2 10 o

1 5 o

o 16 8

o 5 o

o 7 6

o 10 o

o 10 o

Ffyve

THE ENGLISH ARMY.

345

Per menſem.

l. s. d.

Ffyve ſmythes, at 18d. - -
Ffyve carriages, at 5s. the peece -
Horſemen 500, every hundred, 7l. 10s. at }
18d. the man - -

Per diem.

l. s. d.

0 7 6
1 5 0
37 10 0

1360 0 0

45 6 8

Captaines of light horſemen ffyve, every one }
of them 6s. the day - -

1 10 0

Lieutenants, ffyve, at 3s. the day

0 15 0

Standard bearers, five at 2s.

0 10 0

Chaplaines, ffyve at 1s.

0 5 0

Trumpeters, ffyve at 1s. 6d.

0 7 6

Surgeons, ffyve at 1s. 6d.

0 7 6

Harbengers, ffyve at 2s.

0 10 0

Smythes, ffyve at 1s. 6d.

0 7 6

Carriages, ffyve at 5s. each

1 5 0

Light horſemen 500, every hundred 5l.

25 0 0

Ffyftie dead payes (q)

2 10 0

1001 5 0

33 7 6

Four thouſand footmen, at 8d. the day

133 6 8

Fortie captaines at 4s. per diem

8 0 0

Fortie lieutenants, at 2s. per diem

4 0 0

Fortie enſignes, at 1s. per diem

2 0 0

Forty chaplaines, at 1s. per diem

2 0 0

(q) DEAD payes were non-effective men, allowed to the captaines, ten to each troop.

Y y

Forty

Per menſem.

Per diem:

		l.	s.	d.
Forty ſerjeants of bands, at 12d.	-	2	0	0
Forty drummers, at 12d.	-	2	0	0
Forty fyfers, at 12d.	-	2	0	0
Forty ſurgeons, at 12d.	-	2	0	0
Forty harbingers, at 12d.	-	2	0	0
Forty carriages, at 5s. the carriage	-	10	0	0
Four hundred dead payes, at 8d. the peece		13	6	8
1240 0 0		41	8	6

The captayne general of the pyoners	-	1	0	0
One thouſand eight hundred pyoners, at 8d.	} 60	0	0	
the peece				
Six captaines at 10s. the peece	-	3	0	0
Six lieutenants, at 5s.	-	1	10	0
Six ſtandard bearers, at 2s. 6d.	-	0	15	0
Six drummers at 12d.	-	0	6	0
Two hundred myners, at 13d. the man		10	16	8
Two captains, at 5s. 4d.	-	0	10	8
Eight quarter maſters	-	0	17	9
With an hundred ſhillings more in the month among the pyoners than by the rate of the day aforeſaid.				

THE next eſta bliſhment of the Britiſh Army that occurs, is of that levied by Queen Elizabeth to repel the Spaniſh Armada, in which we find ſeveral officers ſtated at a much lower pay than in the preceding account.

The

The RATES for the ENTERTAINMENT of the OFFICERS of
the COMPANIES appointed for the service in the year 1588.

						l.	s.	d.
The lieutenant general of the army, per day	-					6	0	0
—— Halberdiers, at per day	-	-	-	-	-	1	10	0
The marshal of the field per day	-					2	0	0
—— Halberdiers, at per day	-	-	-	-	-	0	15	0
The provost marshal per day	-	-	-	-	-	0	13	4
The goaler per day	-	-	-	-	-	0	1	8
Eight tipstaves, at 8d. each per day	-					0	5	4
Ten halberdiers at ditto	-	-	-	-	-	0	6	8
The captain general of the lances, per day	-					1	0	0
Lieutenant	-	-	-	-	-	0	10	0
Guidon	-	-	-	-	-	0	1	6
Trumpet	-	-	-	-	-	0	1	6
Clerk	-	-	-	-	-	0	1	6
Surgeon	-	-	-	-	-	0	1	6
Ten halberdiers, at 8d. each	-	-	-	-	-	0	6	8
The captain general of the light horse per day	-					1	0	0
Lieutenant	-	-	-	-	-	0	10	0
Guidon	-	-	-	-	-	0	1	6
Trumpet	-	-	-	-	-	0	1	6
Clerk	-	-	-	-	-	0	1	6
Surgeon	-	-	-	-	-	0	1	6
Ten halberdiers, at 8d. each	-	-	-	-	-	0	6	8
The colonel general of the footmen, per day	-					2	0	0
Lieutenant	-	-	-	-	-	0	10	0
Serjeant major	-	-	-	-	-	0	10	0
Four corporals of the field, at 4s. each	-					0	16	0
Ten halberdiers, at 8d. each	-	-	-	-	-	0	6	8
The treasurer at war, per day	-	-	-	-	-	0	6	8

	l.	s.	d.
Four clerks at 2s. each	0	8	0
Ten halberdiers, at 8d. each	0	6	8
The master of the ordnance, per day	0	10	0
Lieutenant	0	6	8
Inferior officers of the ordnance, per day			
Ten halberdiers, at			
The muster master, per day	0	6	8
Four clerks at 2s. each	0	8	0
The commissary of the victuals, per day	0	6	8
One clerk	0	2	0
The trench master, per day	0	6	0
The master of the carriages, per day	0	4	0
Master cart takers, each per day			
Four clerks, each at			
The quarter master, per day	0	10	0
Six farriers, each at			
The scout master, per day	0	6	8
Two light horse, at 16d. each	0	2	8
The judge general, per day	0	2	8
The entertainment of the officers of the regiment			
The colonel, being a nobleman, per day	1	0	0
He being a knight or nobleman's son, per day	0	13	4
Lieutenant colonel, per day	0	6	0

THE pay of the captains and subalterns of the different corps being here omitted, as well as diverse other officers, another list of the army in Ireland, A. D. 1598, is adduced from Fyne's Morri-son's Travels to supply those and other deficiencies, from which it appears that the pay of the army was considerably raised in so short a time as ten years.

PAY of the ARMY in IRELAND under the EARL of ESSEX,
signed by QUEEN ELIZABETH, 24th March, 1598.

				Per diem.
				l. s. d.
The lord lieutenant general	—	—	—	10 0 0
The lieutenant of the army	—	—	—	3 0 0
General of the horse	—	—	—	10 0 0
Marshal of the camp	—	—	—	1 10 0
Serjeant major	—	—	—	1 0 0
Lieutenant general of the horse	—	—	—	1 0 0
The quarter master	—	—	—	1 0 0
The judge marshal general	—	—	—	1 0 0
The auditor general	—	—	—	0 13 4
The comptroller general of the victuals	—	—	—	0 10 0
Lieutenant of the ordnance	—	—	—	0 10 0
The surveyor	—	—	—	0 6 8
Two clerkes of munition, each	—	—	—	0 5 0
Four corporals of the field	—	—	—	0 6 8
One commissary of victuals	—	—	—	0 8 0
Three others, at each	—	—	—	0 6 0
The carriage master	—	—	—	0 6 8
Twenty colonels, each	—	—	—	0 10 0
Captains of horse, each at	—	—	—	0 4 0
Lieutenants of horse, each at	—	—	—	0 2 6
Cornets of horse, each at	—	—	—	0 2 0
Horsemen, (N. B. a troop consisted of one captain, one lieutenant, one cornet, with fifty private troopers) each	—	—	—	0 1 3
Captains of foot, each	—	—	—	0 4 0
Lieutenants of foot, each	—	—	—	0 2 0
Ensigns of foot, each	—	—	—	0 1 6
				Serjeants

					Per die m		
					l.	s.	d.
Serjeants of foot, each	-	-	-	-	0	1	0
Drummers, each	-	-	-	-	0	1	0
Surgeons, each	-	-	-	-	0	1	0

EACH company consisted of a captain, lieutenant, and ensign, two serjeants, one drummer, and one surgeon, with ninety-four effective private men, at 8d. per diem each, and six dead payes for non-effectives allowed the captain.

THERE is another list anno 1599, of the army under Lord Montjoy, where all the afore-mentioned officers and men are paid as before, but there is the addition of a provost marshal for Lough Foyle, and another for Bally Shannon, at 4s. per diem, each, 1600 gunners, canoneers, armourers and clerks of the ordnance, some at 4s. some at 2s. per diem, an inginere, at 10s. per diem, sixteen surgeons, the chief at 5l. the other at 50s. and 40s. a peece, the week; the lord deputy's doctor of physicke, at 5l. the week, and his chief chaplain at the same rate, and other ten preachers at 30s. or 40s. the week, and the commissaries of musters augmented from five to twenty, at 3s. 4d. per diem each; one to follow the army in each province, the rest to reside in garrisons.

THE pay of the army in the succeeding reign of King James I. with the prices of all sorts of military stores are minutely exemplified in a manuscript frequently before cited in the course of this work. (x) This manuscript which here follows, is entitled:

The LIST of a ROYAL ARMIE intended to be raised for the recovery and protection of the Palatinate, consisting of 25000 foote, and 5000 horse, 20 pieces of ordinance or artillerie, with the officers, artificers and attendants belonging to the whole

(x) No. 5109. Harl. MSS.

army, the charges, allowance, and several pays; with a schedule of the preparation of utensells and habillements of warre; the receipts for fire-workes, with spare provisions for supply of the army, as by his majesty's command it was consulted, advised and concluded on by a committee of lordes and others under their hands at Whitehall, London, Jan. 13, 1620, 18 January, &c.

At the Court at Whitehall, Januarie the 13th, 1620.

Lo. Arc. Bpp. of Canty.	Lo. Viscount Doncastre
Lo. Chancellor Bacon	Lo. Viscount Ffaulkland
Lo. Privie Seale	Lo. Carew
Lo. Steward	Lo. Digby
Lo. M. Hambleton	Mr. Treasurer
Lo. Chamberlaine	Mr. Secretary Nanton
E. of Arundel	Mr. Secretary Calvert
E. of Kelcye	Mr. Chancelor of the Exchequer
	Mr. of the Wardes.

HIS majestie having resolved to make some royal preparations for the recovery and protection of the Palatinate (being the ancient inheritance of his majestie's sonne in lawe and grand children) did in his high wisdom, thinke meet to appoint some persons of knowledge and experience in the warres to consider and give their advice in such propositions as shall be made unto them from the counsel board for the better expediting of that service.

To which purpose the Earl of Oxenford, and the Earle of Effex, both lately returned from the Palatinate, the Earle of Leicester, the Lo. Viscount Wilmot, the Lo. Danvers, the Lo. Caufield, Sir Edd. Cecil, and Sir Richard Morrison, Knts. and Captayne John Bingham; whre called to the table and made acquainted with his majesty's pleasure, that they, or any five or more of them, with Sir Horace Vere and Sir Edward Conway, knights, if they returned into England while the committee shall continue, shall undertake

undertake that service, and have their meetings and assemblies in the old council chamber at Whitehall, touching the affairs above-mentioned. And that for their better assistance they call unto them such others of experience, whose advice and opinion they shall think meete to make use of in their severall consultations upon such things as shall be soe referred to them from the Board, which they are to prosecute without intermission or delay, until they shall make report of their opinions, which is to be done in writing under five of their hands at least; which is accordingly done, as hereafter followeth.

THE particulars offered to their considerations were these:

I. WHAT proportion or number of men as well horse as foote, with munition, victuall, shippinge, and treasure will bee sufficient for that enterprize.

II. By what time it will be meete that these forces be in readiness, and where the armyes, munition and victuall may best be provided; together with such other circumstances, as are incident to any of these heades, for their better directions therein Mr. Secretaries will acquaint them with such intelligence as they have received touching the strength of the enemy's forces, now in the Palatinate.

XIth Feb. 1620.

THE LIST of a ROYALL ARMY, consisting of twenty-five thousand foote, five thousand horse, twenty peeces of artillery, and all other habillaments and utensels of warre for such an enterprize soe difficult and remote; with our opinions and estimate of every perticular sett downe accordinge to the limits of your lordships directions, and grounded upon such advertisements of the enemyes strength, as wee have received from the secretaries of state.

THE allowance of officers, and all entertainments unto this army, are extracted from the diversitie of former presidents in the severall

severall employments of our own nation, and onely supplied by the best institutions now in practice, where they have been defective.

FIRST. The charge of rayfing the said 25000 foote for their apparell and arms, viz. 20000 pikes and muskets, at 3l. 10s. a man; and 5000 calivers, at 3l. 6s. a man, abateing all dead payes, will amount to the sum of	1. s. d. 77836 8 0
---	-----------------------

The charge of rayfinge of 5000, viz. 3500 currafeers, at 30l. a piece, and 1500 carbynes at 20l. a peece all dead payes being likewise abated, will amount to the sum of	126900 0 0
--	------------

The charge of transportinge of 25000 footmen, to the most convenient places of landing in the river of Maize, used by the states in the low countreyes for landing there soldiers in like expeditions, at 4s. the man, will amount to the sum of	5000 0 0
--	----------

The charge of transportinge 5000 horsemen to the same place at 18s. a peece for horse and man, will amount to the sum of	4500 0 0
--	----------

THE twentie pieces of greate ordnance before-mentioned; two mortar pieces for fireworks, must be all mounted upon field carriages with four wheelles, and lymmers, fully compleate, and to be furnished and attended with spare carriages and wheelles, blocke carriages, copper ladles furnished with spunges and rammers, and with all other habillaments and utensells of warre, and with many other small provisions which are soe necessary for the trayne of artillery, that without them they can neither march nor be used. To which alsoe must be added some proportion of small provisions for the supply of the army.

ALL which we have caused to be drawn in a schedule hereunto annexed, and being rated by way of estimate as neere as we can, do amount to the sume of 4450l. 17s.

THE powder for the service of the same twenty pieces of grate ordnance, allowing 960 shott for every of the fourteen pieces of battery, for ten dayes battery in six months; and three tymes as many for the six field pieces, will amount to 138 lasts. And for the use of small shot, allowing one pound a weeke to every musket, and three quarters of a pound a weeke to every caliever, for matches, and all occasions of service during the space of two months, will amount to 260 lasts, out of which all fire-workes for the mortar pieces, must be made. The peterrs furnished, and petrinells and pistolles supplied, as ther shal be occasion. All which powder, rated at 100l. the last, by estimation will amount to the summe of 26200l.

IT will be likewise necessary to have 186 tunne of match, according to the neat great hundred, which being rated at 27l. the tunne, by estimation will amount to the sum of 5022l.

AND of round shot of iron for greate ordnanse, it will be likewise necessary to have 260 tunne, 1760 pounds weight, which at 9l. 10s. per tunn, by estimate, accordinge to the neat greate hundred, will amount to the sum of 2478l. 10s.

AND of lead for bullets for the use of the muskets and callevers to have 124 tunne, which according to the neate hundred, at 17l. the tunne, per estimate, will amount to the sum of 2108l.

For soemuch of those severall natures as shall be produced in the parts beyond the seas, the charge of transportation will be saved, and if shipping be hired at the best hand, as Flemish bottoms fitted for transportation, the tonnage will not cost soe much.

ALL which pieces of greate ordnance, mortar pieces and carriages of all sortes with all the afore-said powder, match, shott of iron and lead for shott; and with all the habillements and utensels of warre, and other small provisions abovementioned, necessarie for the trayne of artillery, will as near as we can rate them, amount to 1159 tunnes or thereabouts, the transportation thereof rated at 15s. per tunne, will amount to the sum of 869l. 5s.

FOR the land carriage and draught of all the said 1159 tunnes, allowing eight horses to every tunne,

If a place of safetie may be had for a magazine near the place where the warre is to be made, then a greate parte of this charge of carriages and horses may be saved.

tunne, and for 380 waggons, which we conceive will be necessarie for the carriages of all the officers and army, besides allowing three horses to a waggon, it will be necessary to have 10412 horses, which must be bought here, or in the low countries, or where they may be best had, which with their furniture, we rate at 9l. the peece, one with another, amounting to the sum of 93800l. or be hired, which we rate at 2s. a day for every horse, the carters to drive and keep them, which will amount to the sum of 1042l. 4s. per diem.

To which course of livinge we do rather incline, for that the charge of the hire will not begin until the army begin to march, and will be very much lessened so soone as they shall arrive at a place where the war shall be made, and a place obtained for a magazine; and for all the time that the army shall be in garrison, (which is like will be the greatest part of the yeare) will wholly determyne untill it shall begin to marche again; whereas if horses should be bought, the charges will be present, and the hire of carters very great.

YET we think it very necessarie that 200 strong cart horses of the largest size, (such as cannot be hired) should be bought and continually kept for the use of the ordnance and munition, upon all occasions of enterprize, which horses, together with their harnesse and furniture, we do rate 15l. a horse, amounting to the sum of 3000l.

The severall PAYES of all the OFFICERS, BANDS and TROOPES,
of the said foot, horse, and trayne of artillery, viz.

Officers of the Field.			The pay of the army per diem.			The pay per menssem of the army.		
			l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.
The lord generall at 10l. per diem, a- mounting for a month of 28 days to the sum of - - -			10	0	0	280	0	0
Lord Marshal at - - -	-	-	4	0	0	112	0	0
Serjeant major general - - -	-	-	2	0	0	56	0	0
Quarter master generall - - -	-	-	1	0	0	28	0	0
Provost marshall general - - -	-	-	0	6	8	9	6	8
Carriage master generall - - -	-	-	0	6	8	9	6	8
Eight corporalls the peece - - -	-	-	0	6	8	74	13	4
						569	6	8

The Lord Generall his trayne

Treasurer at warre, at - - -	-	-	2	0	0	56	0	0
Muster master generall - - -	-	-	1	0	0	28	0	0
Commissary general of the victuals - - -	-	-	0	10	0	14	0	0
Judge marshall - - -	-	-	0	10	0	14	0	0
Two chaplaynes le peece - - -	-	-	0	6	8	18	13	4
Two phisitions le peece - - -	-	-	0	6	8	18	13	4
Two apothecaryes, at 3s. 4d. per diem, le peece - - -	-	-	0	3	4	9	6	8
A secretary to the councell, at 5s. per diem.	-	-	0	5	0	7	0	0
Two surgeons, at 6s. 8d. per diem le peece	-	-	0	6	8	18	13	4
Fifty halberteers, at 12d. per diem, le peece	-	-	0	1	0	70	0	0
						254	6	8

Officers

	Per diem each.	Per menssem 28 days.
	l. s. d.	l. s. d.
Officers of the twelve regiments		
Twelve colonels, at 20s. per diem, le peece	1 0 0	336 0 0
Twelve lieutenant colonels, at 6s. 8d. le } peece - - - - - }	0 6 8	112 0 0
12 Serjeant majors, at 5s. per diem	0 5 0	84 0 0
12 Quarter masters, at 5s. per diem, le peece	0 5 0	84 0 0
12 Preachers, at 4s. per diem, le peece	0 4 0	67 4 0
12 Provosts, at 5s. per diem, le peece	0 5 0	84 0 0
12 Carriage masters, at 3s. 4d. per diem } le peece - - - - - }	0 3 4	56 0 0
12 Chief chirurgeons, at 4s. per diem le } piece - - - - - }	0 4 0	67 4 0
		890 8 0

Officers of the 12 Colonel's Companyes.

12 Captaynes, at 8s. per diem, le peece	0 8 0	134 8 0
12 Lieutenants at 4s. per diem, le peece	0 4 0	67 4 0
12 Ensigns at 2s. 6d. per diem, le peece	0 2 6	42 0 0
36 { Serjeants, at 12d. per diem, le peece	0 1 0	50 8 0
{ Drummers, at 12d. le peece -	0 1 0	50 8 0
12 Chirurgeons, at 12d. per diem le peece	0 1 0	16 16 0
		361 4 0

The twelve colonels companyes of 200
men a peece, whereof 4 gentlemen and
4 corporalls at 12d. per diem, le peece,
and the other 192, at 8d. per diem, le
peece - - - - - }

2284 16 0

Officers

Officers of the 144 companies of foot 150
men each, a peece

		Per diem.			Per mensem.		
		l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.
144	{ Captains, at 6s. 8d. per diem, le peece	0	6	8	1209	12	0
	{ Lieutenants, at 3s. per diem, le peece	0	3	0	604	16	0
	{ Ensignes, at 2s. 6d. per diem, le peece	0	2	6	504	0	0
288	{ Serjeants, at 12d. per diem le peece	0	1	0	403	4	0
	{ Drummes, at 12d. per diem -	0	1	0	403	4	0
144	Chirurgeons, at 12d. per diem le peece	0	1	0	201	12	0
					3326	8	0

The 144 companyes of 150 men a peece,
whereof 3 gentlemen and 3 corporalls,
at 12d. per diem, and the other 144
at 8d. per diem, le peece -

- - 20563 4 0

Memorandum, that the 12 regiments be-
fore-mentioned, do make but 24000,
whose monthly pays are above speci-
fied; the other 1000 men are left to
be disposed of by the lord general, for
his owne guard, and to such other prin-
cipal officers and men of quality in the
army, as he shall think fit; and they
and their officers being rated as com-
panyes of 200 men, their monthly payes
to amount to the sume of -

- - 1102 10 0

Summa totalis to the officers and bands of 25000 footmen for
their entertaynment for one month of 28 dayes, amounteth to
the sum of 29352l. 4s.

		Per mensem.		
		l.	s.	d.
Officers generall for the horse.				
Lord general of the horse, at 4l. per diem	-	-	112	0 0
Lieutenant general of the horse at 2l. per diem	-	-	56	0 0
		Serjeant		

	l.	s.	d.
Serjeant major at 30s. per diem - - -	42	0	0
Quarter master generall of horſe, at 6s. 8d. per diem	9	6	8
Provost, at 5s. per diem - - -	7	0	0
Carriage master, at 3s. 4d. per diem - - -	4	13	4
Preacher, at 4s. per diem - - -	5	12	0
Chief chirurgeon, at 4s. per diem - - -	5	12	0
	242	4	0

Officers to 50 troops of horſes of 100 horſes in every
troope, amounting in all to 5000 horſe.

50 { Captaynes, at 8s. per diem - - -	560	0	0
50 { Lieutenants, at 5s. per diem - - -	350	0	0
50 { Cornets, at 4s. per diem - - -	280	0	0
150 Corporals, at 2s. 6d. per diem, le peece -	525	0	0
100 Trumpets, at 2s. 6d. per diem, le peece	350	0	0
50 { Quarter maſters, at 2s. 6d. per diem, le peece	175	0	0
50 { Chirurgeons, at 2s. 6d. per diem, le peece	175	0	0
3500 Curaziers, at 2s. per diem, le peece -	9800	0	0
1500 Carbines, at 18d. per diem, le peece -	3150	0	0

Summa totalis of the officers and troopes of horſemen,
for their entertainment for one moneth of 28 dayes, } 15607 4 0
amounteth to the ſum of - - -

Officers, artificers and attendants to the trayne of artillery, viz.

	Per diem.			Per menſem.		
	l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.
The maſter of the ordnance, at 3l. per diem, amounting for one month of 28 dayes to the ſum of - - -	3	0	0	84	0	0
The lieutenant, at - - -	1	0	0	28	0	0
				A ſurveyor		

			Per diem.			Per mensem.		
			l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.
A surveyor	-	-	0	6	8	9	6	8
Two clarkes le peece	-	-	0	2	0	5	12	0
One auditor	-	-	0	6	8	9	6	8
Two clarks, at	-	-	0	2	0	5	12	0
Aray master, at	-	-	0	6	8	9	6	8
Two clerks, at	-	-	0	2	0	5	12	0
A trench master general	-	-	0	10	0	14	0	0
Six engineers for fortifications, approach-	ings, and quarteringe the regiments, at		0	6	8	56	0	0
le peece			0	6	8	56	0	0
One clarke and 3 guides or conductors of	the works for approaches, at le peece		0	2	6	14	8	0
			0	2	6	14	8	0
The clarke of the ordinance, at	-	-	0	6	8	9	6	8
Four clerks under him, at	-	-	0	2	6	14	0	0
Nine gentlemen of the ordnance	-	-	0	3	0	37	16	0
Thirty herquebushiers to guard the master,	at le peece		0	1	0	63	0	0
			0	1	0	63	0	0
A quarter master at	-	-	0	5	8	7	0	0
Eight halberteers to guard the master, le peece	-	-	0	0	10	9	6	8
Four horsemen to attend the quarter master	at le peece		0	1	6	8	8	0
			0	1	6	8	8	0
Three fourryers, or harbingers, likewise	under him, at le peece		0	2	0	8	8	0
			0	2	0	8	8	0
Three under fourryers, le peece	-	-	0	1	0	4	4	0
A commissary to distribute the victuals	-	-	0	5	0	7	0	0
Two clerkes, under him, at the peece	-	-	0	2	0	5	12	0
A master for the horses, carts, muster and	pyoneirs, &c.		0	6	8	9	6	8
			0	6	8	9	6	8
Two clerks to attend him, at	-	-	0	2	0	5	12	0
A purveyor general both for munition, vic-	tuall, and all other necessaryes belonginge		0	6	0	8	8	0
			0	6	0	8	8	0
to the ordinance	-	-						

Two horse-

THE ENGLISH ARMY.

361

		Per diem.			Per mensem.		
		l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.
Two horsemen allowed him, at	-	0	1	6	4	4	0
A master of the carriages for the artillery, at	0	6	0		8	8	0
2 Halberteers to attend him, at	-	0	1	0	2	16	0
3 Overseers of the carriages, at	-	0	3	0	12	12	0
The master of the myeners, at	-	0	5	0	7	0	0
25 Other myeners, at the peece	-	0	2	0	70	0	0
3 Captaines to 450 pyoners, at	-	0	4	0	16	16	0
3 Lieutenants, at	-	0	2	0	8	8	0
3 Overseers of the pyoner's work	-	0	1	6	6	6	0
2 Chief petarders, at	-	0	6	8	18	13	4
To each of them 10 attendants, at	-	0	1	6	42	0	0
1 Master gunner, at	-	0	6	0	6	6	0
3 Master gunner's mates, at	-	0	2	6	10	10	0
3 Constables, or quarter gunners, at	-	0	2	0	8	8	0
124 Other gunners, at	-	0	1	6	260	8	0
212 Labourers, at	-	0	1	0	296	16	0
1 Provost marshall of the artillery	-	0	5	0	7	0	0
3 Provosts or jealers for punyishment of all offenders under the charge of the master of the ordnance	-	0	1	6	6	6	0
3 Under goalers, at	-	0	1	0	4	4	0
1 Founder of brafs ordinance	-	0	3	0	5	12	0
His man at	-	0	2	0	2	16	0
Master of the fire-workes	-	0	4	0	5	12	0
A chaplain	-	0	5	0	7	0	0
An ensigne	-	0	2	0	2	16	0
1 Drummer, at	-	0	1	0	1	8	0
1 Trumpetter, at	-	0	2	0	2	16	0
1 Barber surgeon	-	0	2	6	3	10	0
2 Under barber surgeons	-	0	1	0	2	16	0
1 Master carpenter	-	0	3	0	4	8	0
A a a					2 Mates		

	Per diem.	Per mensem.
	l. s. d.	l. s. d.
Ffor hay, or grasse, or provender for 200 horses, which are to be kept in readines for all occasions, rated at 12d. a peece, per diem - - -	0 1 0	280 0 0
Ffor 100 carters to keepe and drive them at 12d. a peece, per diem - -	0 1 0	140 0 0
Ffor the hire of 100 waggons to be con- tinually kept in pay for the carrying of victualls and sicke men, and for all other occasions, rated at 6s. per diem, for every waggon - -	0 6 0	840 0 0
Summa total to the officers, artificers, and attendants on the artillary, for their en- tertainment for one month of 28 dayes, and for the charge of the faid horses and waggons, amounting to the sum of	- -	3351 18 4

For the rayfing of the horses of currafeers and carbynes, we conceive some good number may be had in this kingdome, and the rest in the low countries; and the lieutenants or deputy lieutenants may, if it please his majesty, be required to certifie what proportion of horses fitt for service each shire or countye can afforde.

For victualls, his majesty is not to be at any charge more than for such waggons as in some cafes of necessity shall be requisite; for all men's dyetts must be defrayed by their own payes and entertainments.

CONCERNINGE the provision of powder, muskets, caleveers, and other municions and armes fit for such an army, we have called unto us both Mr. Edward Evelyn, the powder maker, and the chief company of armourers, gun-makers and cuttlers in and about the city of London, and wee do find them able to supplie foe little

in any kind upon so short a warning as 3 moneths, that the greatest parte of powder and of armes for horse and foote, must be provided in the lowe countrey, where (wee conceive) it may be best had.

AND for such provision as can be made here, the artificers doe desire to receive speedy directions, that they may set themselves on worke accordingly.

AND lastly for the tyme when it would be meete that these fforges should be in readines, we are of opinion that it is presently necessarie to use all expedition to make readie the same, for that the great quantities both of powder and armes of all sortes might bee provided in fforraigne partes.

The total charge of rayinge arminge and clothinge the whole army as aforesaid, with 200 cart-horses only, to be bought for the use of the artillary, all the rest to be hired as their shall be occasion, will amount to the sume of	1.	s.	d.
	207736	8	0
The total charge of the transportation of the whole army, and of all the trayne and provisions afore- said, will amount to the sume of	10369	5	0
The total charge of all the provisions of powder, match, shott, lead, ffield carriages, and all other munition, habilliments and utensills of warre belonginge to the trayne of the artillery, and for supply of the army in some few particulars which are to be provided here, will amount to the sume of	40254	7	0
The total charge of rayfinge all the said army of horse, foote, and of 200 cart-horses for the artil- lery, and for all the provisions of powder, armes, and habillaments of warre aforesaid, and of the transportacion of the same will amount to the sume of	258370	0	0

Besides

Besides the charge of rayling 9912 cart horses at 9l. a peece, if they be bought

The totall of the monthly payes, as well of all the officers, bands and troops both of horse and foote, as of all the officers and trayne of artillary with the standinge charge of 200 cart-horses for the artillary, and a 100 waggons, and for other necessary occasions, will amount to the sum of	l. s. d.
	48311 5 8

Besides the hyer of 9912 horses, if they be hyred at 2s. per diem, le peece, which for a month of 28 dayes will amount to	27753 12 0
---	------------

Soe the total of monthly payes, including the hyer of horses, amounts to the sume of	76064 17 8
--	------------

THERE bee diverse other contyngent charges, which cannot fall into any certain rate, as namely

Ffirst. Allowance for the waste of munition and armes.

2dly. Rewards for intelligences and approaches.

3dly. For diverse small materials and tools, necessary for amourers, gun-makers, ffurbishers, and diverse other artificers.

AND lastly, for all such provisions necessary for the trayne of the artillary, or for any parte of the army which are mentioned in the schedule hereunto annexed; and (for saving the charge of transportation and carriage) are directed to be provided beyond the seas as occasions shall require.

FOR all which services and occasions, moneyes must be advanced to the treasurer, by way of imprest, to be yssued by him as he shall receive order by warrant from the lord generall, for which the said treasurer must account.

THE proportion of expence above-mentioned will bee in some measure eased by the convenience of these provicions which are best to be hadd in the lowe countryes, and much more may well bee

bee faved when the army shall arrive in the Palatinate, but can hardly suffer any signall abatement for the first five months.

Hen. Oxenford	H. Danvers.
Rob. Essex	Toby Caufeild
Leicester	E. Sackvile
Willmott	Ed. Cecill
R. Lesley	Rich. Morrison

John Bingham.

A SCHEDULE, or a view of the proportion of utenfills and habillaments of warre to attend the 20 peeces of ordinance for battery and field before-mentioned, for the list of the army of thirtie thousand men, with a small proportion of spare provisions for supplie of the army upon occasion.

Provisions to be sent from hence.

Ffield carriages with faire wheels	{	Mortar peeces of brasse, 2	
	{	Stocks for mortar peece, 2, at 4l. 10s.	
	{	Cannone of the furhes, 4 at 28l.	
	{	Di cannons	4 at 28l. } 1e peece
Lymmers fully compleate, viz.	{	Culverings	6 at 25l.
	{	Di culverings	4 at 22l.
	{	Sakers	2 at 16l.
Spare field car- riages, framed	{	Canons of 7 inches, 4	
but not sett	{	Di cannons	4
together, viz.	{	Culverings	6 } at 46s. 8d. 1e peece
	{	Di culverings	4
	{	Sakers	2 }

Spare carriages compleate, at 11l. 6s. 8d. 1e peece

Spare

Spare wheels } viz. { Canons of 7 inches, 4 pre } at 48s. 8d. a pre
 } for { Di canons 4 pre } 20s. a pre for dowledging
 { Culverings 6 pre } in all 43l. 6s. and 8d.
 { Di culverings 4 pre }
 Sakers - - 2 pre—att 33s. 4d. le pre,
 13s. 4d. for dowledging,
 in all 46s. 8d. le pre.

Lynch pynnes, 20 pre, at 8d. le pre

Washers, 20, at 10d. le peece

Entryes, whereof 13 barred with iron, 20, at 5s. le peece for the wheele, and 20s. le peece for lesmith, in all 25s.

Woodhookes, staved, 30 at 20d. }

Cole chizells, - 12 at 16d. } le peece

Cole presses all pouches, 12 at 12d. }

Copper ladles } Canons of 7 inches, 8 } at 13s. 4d.
 furnished with } Dy canons 8 }
 sponges and } Ffor { Culverings 12 at 13s. 4d. } le peece
 rammers } { Di culverings 8 at 12s. 10d. }
 { Sakers - 4 at 9s. 4d. }

Ladle staves spare, 5 dozen at 13 le dozen

Heads of rammers of all fort, spare 5 dozen, at 9d. le pre, one with another

Fformers of } Ffor { Canons of 7 inches, 2 }
 all forts } { Dy canons 2 } at 12d. le peece, one
 { Culverynes 2 } with another.
 { Dy culverings 2 }
 { Sakers - 2 }

Coynes, 10 doz. at 8s. le doz.

Winches, 5 pre, at 50s. le pre

Handspykes, 1200, at 33s. le C.

Comaundes, 10 doz. at 14s. le doz.

Gynnes

Gynnes with rammer heads, }
 Shives of brasse and walnut } at 4l. 10s. le peece
 Ropes fully complete, 20 }
 Rammer heads with shivers of brasse, spare 6, at 35s. le p.
 Gynne rope, spare 2000 cwt. at 37s. 4d. le cwt.
 Hand and draught 1200 wt. 37s. 4d. le cwt.
 Sheet lead for covers to the ordnance 300 weight, at 12 le cwt.
 Iron in barres, 6 tunne, at 16l. le tunne
 Shovells and spades 40000, at 20d. le peece
 Spikes of iron 3000, by estimation 1000 weight, at 28s. le cwt.
 Pick-axes, helved, 40, at 2s. 6d. le peece
 Felling axes helved 300, at 13d. le p.
 Hedging bills, helved, 500, at 16d. le p.
 Steele 600 weight, at 50s. le cwt.
 Hatchets, helved, 40, at 2s. le p.
 Sledges helved 40, at 7s. le p.
 Piercers 6 doz. at 12s. le doz.
 Augers, greate, with handles, 5 doz. at 30s. le doz.
 Augers, small, with handles, 5 doz. at 22s. le doz.
 Whappfawes 50, with boxes and tillers, at 8s. le p.
 Tennant sawes 70, at 12d. le p.
 Gouges 30, at 3s. le p.
 Chezills, broad, 30 at 22d. le p.
 Chezills, narrow, 30, at 8d. le p.
 Broad axes, helved, 30, at 4s. le peece
 Spoke shares with stocke 23, at 18d. le p.
 Adzes 12, at 3s. le p.
 Spare barres 8, at 4s. le p.
 Wheeler's axes 24, at 5s. le peece
 Gryndstones with troughes and winches, 3, at 10s. le peece
 Nayles of all sorts 6 barr, at 4l. 3s. 4d. le barr
 Melting ladles, greate, 30, at 4s. le peece
 Melting ladles, small, 8 doz. at 6s. le doz.

- Bare hides, 12, at 2l. 10s. le peece
 Tanned hydes, 60, at 22s. le peece
 Tilts of canvas to cover the carts of powder and
 match, 680 - - - - - } at 10s. le peece
 Sheepe skins, 12 doz. at 24s. le doz.
 Lanthornes, large, 200, at 16d. le p.
 Soutage for blynders, 6 ells, at 8d. per ell
 Copper nayles for ladles, 1500, at 16d. le C.
 Canvas for cartouches, 1000 ells, at 16d. le ell
 Boxes, square, bound with iron, to carry shot for any peece of
 ordinance, 70, at 6s. 8d. le p.
 Leather bagges to carry powder, 40 at 6d. le p.
 Small caske for bullets, 600, at 12d. le p.
 Budge barrels, with leather baggs, 9 dozen, at 14s. le doz.
 Soape, 1000 weight, at 4d. le lib.
 Tallow, 1000 weight, at 5d. le lib.
 Candles, 3000 weight, at 5d. le lib.
 Maundes for lanthornes packing, 24, at 5s. le p.
 Small caske for soape and tallow, 20, at 14d. le p.
 Frernd barrels for packing of candles, 24, at 2s. 4d. le p.
 Spare hoopes, 40 peeces, at 12d. le peece
 Smith's forges with tooles compleat, 3, at 12l. le p.
 Scales with beames of the greater sort for weighing }
 of powder, 6 pair - - - - - } at 20s. le pair
 Lead cast in weights, 600 weight, at 15s. 6d. le cwt.
 Trussing canvass, an 100 ells, at 6d. le ell
 Trussing coard, 150 rowles, at 14d. le rowle
 Packthread and twyne, 100 wt. at 8s. le lib.
 Needles, 60 doz. at 6d. le doz.
 Paper, 20 reams, at 26s. 8d. le reame
 Inke, 9 gallons, at 2s. le gallon
 Browne thread, 30 pound, at 2s. le lib.
 Pullyes of wood, 20 payre, at 2s. 6d. le paire

Scaling lathers, 20, at 40s. le peece
 Iron wedges, 20, at 18d. le p.
 Brasse morters with pestelles for fire-workes, 4, at 20s. le peece
 Sives of hayre and leather, narrow and large, 20, at 5s. le peece
 Boulters fine, 20, at 2s. 6d. le p.
 Kettles of copper, 2, at 40s. le p.
 Buckets of leather to carry water, 10 doz. as 36s. le doz.
 Bagges of stronge canvas }
 Of facking to carry earth } 300 ells, at 20d. le ell
 Colltroppes, 10,000, at 16d. le C.
 Small scales to weigh powder, 6 pair, at 6s. le peece
 Large tents for munition, 3, at 40l. le peece
 Cressetts stained, 50, at 7s. le p.
 Cressett lights, 600 weight, at 10s. le cwt.
 Horse-shoes, 1000, at 6d. le p.
 Horse-shoe nayles, 10,000, at 2d. le C.
 Horse harnesse with traces, 100, at 13s. 4d. le p.
 Iron rodde for horse-shoe nayles, 300 weight, at 19s. le cwt.
 White leather hides for the faide harnes, 70, at 9s. le peece
 Funnells of plate, 20, at 4s. le peece

Receipts for fire-workes.

Trunkes for fire-workes, 40, at 4s. le peece, being of the largest sort
 Salt peter mealed, 400 weight, at 4l. mealed
 Sulphure mealed, 600 weight, at 18s. le C.
 Camphire, 40 pounds, at 20s. le pound
 Roseaker, 12 pounds, at 2s. le pound
 Affafettida, 12 pounds, at 3s. le pound
 Sal armoniache, 12 pounds, at 5s. 6d. le pound
 Linseed oyle, 6 gallons, at 4s. le gallon
 Turpentine, 120 pound, at 4d. le lib.
 Verdigreese, 12 pound, at 5s. le pound
 Rosen, 300 weight, at 10s. le cwt.
 Marlyn, 240 pounds, at 5d. le lib.

Tyne, 28 pound, at 8d. le lib.

Pitch, 3 barrils, at 11s. le barrell

Tallow, 26 hundred weight, at 5d. le lib.

Canvaffe, 60 ells, at 16d. le ell.

PROVISIONS to bee made in the Low Countryes, or else where
beyond the Seas.

Oaken plank for platformes	-	-	20 tunnes
Oaken tymber for joyfts	-	-	10 tunnes
Fyrre poles	-	-	1000
Skyddes for ordinance	-	-	20
Deales for gabyons	-	-	1000
Hand basketts	-	-	1500
Square basketts	-	-	1000
Sea coals	-	-	18 chauldrons
Wooden troughes	-	-	6
Cables for 14 boates for bridges of 30 fathoms	}	28	
apeece			
Anchors for the same use	-	-	28
Boates for bridges	-	-	14
Planks	}	for the same use	
Tymber			
Firr poles			
Tumbrells to carry earth fhotts	-	-	50
Hampers for the tents	-	-	8
Hurdles	-	-	
Towe for y ^e ordinance and y ^e boates, 300 weight	-	-	
Dragges	-	-	6
Wheel-barrowes	-	-	100
Hand-barrowes	-	-	100
Gabyons	-	-	100

SPARE PROVISIONS to supply the Army upon occasion, valued by Estimation.

Muskets with bandaleers and rests, 400 at 20s. 8d. le peece
 Calcevers with bandaliers, 200 at 14s. 10d. le peece
 Petrinells with firelockes } 100 at 28s. le peece
 Fflashes, touch boxes and cases }
 Long pistolls with firelocks } 100 at 30s. le peece
 Fflashes, touch boxes and cases }
 Swordes 300, at 6s. le peece
 White halberts 100, at 4s. le peece
 Longe pikes 400, at 4s. 2d. le peece
 Short pikes 200, at 2s. le peece
 Black bills 250, at 2s. le peece.

SUMMA Total. of all the provisions contained in this schedule, besides those which are to be made beyond the seas 4455l. 17s.

F I N I S.

RUSHWORTH has preserved an account of the established pay for the army raised by King Charles I. against the Scotch, in the year 1639, which here follows.

A LIST of the severall ENTERTAINMENTS of the Officers General of the Field, the Lord General his Train; Officers of four Regiments of Foot Bands, and Companies of Footmen; Officers General of the Horse, and Twelve Troops of Horse.

Officers gen. of the field.	Per diem.	Per mensem.	Per annum.
N.B. 28 days the month.	l. s. d.	l. s. d.	l. s. d.
The lord general -	10 0 0	280 0 0	3065 0 0
The lieutenant general	6 0 0	168 0 0	2190 0 0
			Serjeant

	Per diem.			Per mensem.			Per annum.		
	l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.
Serjeant major general	2	0	0	56	0	0	730	0	0
Qr. master general -	1	0	0	28	0	0	365	0	0
Provost marshal general	0	6	8	9	6	8	121	13	4
Waggon or carriage } master - -	0	6	8	9	6	8	121	13	4
Four corporals of the } field, at 6s. 8d. each	1	6	8	37	6	8	486	13	4
							7665 0 0		

The Lord General's Train.

Treasurer at war -	2	0	0	56	0	0	730	0	0
Muste-master general	1	0	0	28	0	0	365	0	0
Commissary general of } the victuals - -	0	10	0	14	0	0	128	10	0
Judge marshal -	0	10	0	14	0	0	128	10	0
Two chaplains, at 6s. } 8d. each - -	0	13	4	18	13	4	243	6	8
Two physicians, at 6s. } 8d. each - -	0	13	4	18	13	4	243	6	8
Two apothecaries at } 3s. 4d. each - -	0	6	8	9	6	8	121	13	4
Secretary to the coun- } cil of war - -	0	10	0	14	0	0	182	0	0
Two chirurgeons, at } 4s. each - - -	0	8	0	11	4	0	146	0	0
Fifty halberdiers, at 1s. } each - - -	2	10	0	70	0	0	912	10	0
							73309 6 8		
							Four		

	Per diem.	Per menssem.	Per annum.
	l. s. d.	l. s. d.	l. s. d.
Four colonels of four regiments of foot, each regiment con- sisting of 1500 men, at 1l. each colonel per diem - -	4 0 0	112 0 0	1460 0 0
Four lieutenant colo- nals, at 10s. each	2 0 0	56 0 0	730 0 0
Four serjeant majors, at 6s. each - -	1 4 0	33 12 0	438 0 0
Four quarter masters, at 5s. each - - -	1 0 0	28 0 0	365 0 0

A LIST of the TRAIN of ARTILLERY, according to his Ma-
jesty's Direction, reduced to such a Number of Officers and other
Ministers as will be meerly necessary for a mean Train of 30 or
40 Pieces of Ordnance, viz.

	Per diem.	Per menssem.	Per annum.
	l. s. d.	l. s. d.	l. s. d.
The general of the ordnance - -	4 0 0	112 0 0	1460 0 0
Lieutenants - - -	1 0 0	28 0 0	365 0 0

Sundry other Officers, Artificers, and Attendants upon the Ord-
nance and Train of Artillery, viz.

	l. s. d.
A comptroller, per diem - - -	0 10 0
Two commissaries of the two magazines of municion, viz. one for the train, at - - -	0 6 0

The

	l.	s.	d.
The other for the army, at	0	5	0
Four clerks under them, each	0	2	0
Two engineers, one at	0	8	0
And the other at	0	6	0
Two clerks for them, each	0	2	0
Six conductors of the trenches and fortifications, each at	0	2	0
One fireworker	0	3	0
His assistant	0	1	8
One petardier	0	2	6
Twelve assistants, each	0	1	0
One master gunner	0	6	8
Four gentlemen, each	0	4	0
Gunner's mates, each	0	2	6
Thirty gunners, each	0	1	6
A paymaster	0	5	0
Captain of the pioneers	0	5	0
Quarter master	0	4	0
Four conductors of the matrozes	0	2	6
Forty matrozes, each	0	1	0
A purveyor	0	3	0
One master smith	0	3	0
Six servants under him, each	0	1	0
One master wheelwright, at	0	2	6
Four servants under him, each	0	1	0
One tent maker	0	2	8
Two servants, each	0	1	0
A tent keeper, at	0	1	6
One assistant to him	0	0	8
A master carpenter	0	3	0
Six servants under him, each	0	1	0
One cordage maker	0	2	0

Two

			l.	s.	d.
Two servants under him, each	-	-	0	1	0
One saddle maker	-	-	0	1	6
One servant under him	-	-	0	1	0
One cooper	-	-	0	2	0
Two servants under him, each	-	-	0	1	0
Four armorers, each	-	-	0	2	6
Four servants under them, each	-	-	0	1	0
Two gunsmiths, each	-	-	0	2	6
Four servants, each	-	-	0	1	0
One harness maker, at	-	-	0	1	6
Two servants under him, each	-	-	0	1	0
One farrier, at	-	-	0	2	6
Two servants under him, at each	-	-	0	1	0
One bridgemaker	-	-	0	2	6
Six servants, each	-	-	0	1	0
One provost marshal	-	-	0	2	0
Two servants under him, each	-	-	0	1	0
One chirurgeon	-	-	0	4	0
One servant under him	-	-	0	1	0
One waggoner for the train	-	-	0	5	0
One assistant to him	-	-	0	2	6
Two principal conductors, viz. one for the munition of the army, the other for the munition of the ar- tillery, each	-	-	0	3	0
Forty conductors, viz. 20 for the waggons and 20 for the ordnance, each	-	-	0	2	6
One commissary for the draught horses, at	-	-	0	4	0
Two assistants to him, each	-	-	0	2	6
In all per diem	-	-	21	7	6
Per mensem	-	-	598	10	0
Per annum	-	-	7182	0	0
					Sum

Sum total of the officers, artificers, and other attendants :

					l.	s.	d.
Per diem	-	-	-	-	26	7	6
Per mensem	-	-	-	-	678	10	0
Per annum	-	-	-	-	8820	10	0

	Per diem.	Per mensem.	Per annum.
	l. s. d.	l. s. d.	l. s. d.
Four provost marshals, } at 5s. each - -	1 0 0	28 0 0	365 0 0
Four carriage masters, } at 3s. each -	0 12 0	16 16 0	219 0 0
Four preachers, at 3s. } each - -	0 12 0	16 16 0	219 0 0
Four chirurgeons, at 4s. } each - -	0 16 0	22 8 0	292 0 0

The PAY of a COLONEL'S COMPANY of 200 Men in each of the four Regiments.

A CAPTAIN per diem 8s. lieutenant 4s. ensign 2s. 6d. three serjeants at 1s. 2d. each, three drums at 1s. each ; three corporals at 10d. each ; 188 souldiers at 8d. each.

BEING in all for one colonel's company of 200 men :

				l.	s.	d.
Per diem	-	-	-	7	8	10
Per mensem	-	-	-	208	7	4
Per annum	-	-	-	2717	4	2

The PAY of a LIEUTENANT COLONEL'S Company of 150 Men in each of the four Regiments.

A CAPTAIN per diem 8s. a lieutenant 4s. ensign 2s. 6d. two serjeants

			l.	s.	d.
Two servants under him, each	-	-	0	1	0
One saddle maker	-	-	0	1	6
One servant under him	-	-	0	1	0
One cooper	-	-	0	2	0
Two servants under him, each	-	-	0	1	0
Four armorers, each	-	-	0	2	6
Four servants under them, each	-	-	0	1	0
Two gunsmiths, each	-	-	0	2	6
Four servants, each	-	-	0	1	0
One harness maker, at	-	-	0	1	6
Two servants under him, each	-	-	0	1	0
One farrier, at	-	-	0	2	6
Two servants under him, at each	-	-	0	1	0
One bridgemaker	-	-	0	2	6
Six servants, each	-	-	0	1	0
One provost marshal	-	-	0	2	0
Two servants under him, each	-	-	0	1	0
One chirurgeon	-	-	0	4	0
One servant under him	-	-	0	1	0
One waggoner for the train	-	-	0	5	0
One assistant to him	-	-	0	2	6
Two principal conductors, viz. one for the munition of the army, the other for the munition of the ar- tillery, each	-	-	0	3	0
Forty conductors, viz. 20 for the waggons and 20 for the ordnance, each	-	-	0	2	6
One commissary for the draught horses, at	-	-	0	4	0
Two assistants to him, each	-	-	0	2	6
In all per diem	-	-	21	7	6
Per mensem	-	-	598	10	0
Per annum	-	-	7182	0	0
					Sum

Sum total of the officers, artificers, and other attendants :

					l.	s.	d.
Per diem	-	-	-	-	26	7	6
Per mensem	-	-	-	-	678	10	0
Per annum	-	-	-	-	8820	10	0

	Per diem.	Per mensem.	Per annum.
	l. s. d.	l. s. d.	l. s. d.
Four provost marshals,	1 0 0	28 0 0	365 0 0
at 5s. each - -			
Four carriage masters,	0 12 0	16 16 0	219 0 0
at 3s. each - -			
Four preachers, at 3s.	0 12 0	16 16 0	219 0 0
each - -			
Four chirurgeons, at 4s.	0 16 0	22 8 0	292 0 0
each - -			

The PAY of a COLONEL'S COMPANY of 200 Men in each of the four Regiments.

A CAPTAIN per diem 8s. lieutenant 4s. ensign 2s. 6d. three serjeants at 1s. 2d. each, three drums at 1s. each ; three corporals at 10d. each ; 188 souldiers at 8d. each.

BEING in all for one colonel's company of 200 men :

				l.	s.	d.
Per diem	-	-	-	7	8	10
Per mensem	-	-	-	208	7	4
Per annum	-	-	-	2717	4	2

The PAY of a LIEUTENANT COLONEL'S Company of 150 Men in each of the four Regiments.

A CAPTAIN per diem 8s. a lieutenant 4s. ensign 2s. 6d. two
Vol. I. C c c ferjeants

			l.	s.	d.
Two servants under him, each	-	-	0	1	0
One saddle maker	-	-	0	1	6
One servant under him	-	-	0	1	0
One cooper	-	-	0	2	0
Two servants under him, each	-	-	0	1	0
Four armorers, each	-	-	0	2	6
Four servants under them, each	-	-	0	1	0
Two gunsmiths, each	-	-	0	2	6
Four servants, each	-	-	0	1	0
One harness maker, at	-	-	0	1	6
Two servants under him, each	-	-	0	1	0
One farrier, at	-	-	0	2	6
Two servants under him, at each	-	-	0	1	0
One bridgemaker	-	-	0	2	6
Six servants, each	-	-	0	1	0
One provost marshal	-	-	0	2	0
Two servants under him, each	-	-	0	1	0
One chirurgeon	-	-	0	4	0
One servant under him	-	-	0	1	0
One waggoner for the train	-	-	0	5	0
One assistant to him	-	-	0	2	6
Two principal conductors, viz. one for the munition of the army, the other for the munition of the ar- tillery, each	-	-	0	3	0
Forty conductors, viz. 20 for the waggons and 20 for the ordnance, each	-	-	0	2	6
One commissary for the draught horses, at	-	-	0	4	0
Two assistants to him, each	-	-	0	2	6
In all per diem	-	-	21	7	6
Per mensem	-	-	598	10	0
Per annum	-	-	7182	0	0
					Sum

Sum total of the officers, artificers, and other attendants :

					l.	s.	d.
Per diem	-	-	-	-	26	7	6
Per mensem	-	-	-	-	678	10	0
Per annum	-	-	-	-	8820	10	0

	Per diem.	Per mensem.	Per annum.
	l. s. d.	l. s. d.	l. s. d.
Four provost marshals, } at 5s. each - -	1 0 0	28 0 0	365 0 0
Four carriage masters, } at 3s. each - -	0 12 0	16 16 0	219 0 0
Four preachers, at 3s. } each - - -	0 12 0	16 16 0	219 0 0
Four chirurgeons, at 4s. } each - - -	0 16 0	22 8 0	292 0 0

The PAY of a COLONEL'S COMPANY of 200 Men in each of the four Regiments.

A CAPTAIN per diem 8s. lieutenant 4s. ensign 2s. 6d. three ferjeants at 1s. 2d. each, three drums at 1s. each ; three corporals at 10d. each ; 188 souldiers at 8d. each.

BEING in all for one colonel's company of 200 men :

				l.	s.	d.
Per diem	-	-	-	7	8	10
Per mensem	-	-	-	208	7	4
Per annum	-	-	-	2717	4	2

The PAY of a LIEUTENANT COLONEL'S Company of 150 Men in each of the four Regiments.

A CAPTAIN per diem 8s. a lieutenant 4s. ensign 2s. 6d. two ferjeants

			l.	s.	d.
Two servants under him, each	-	-	0	1	0
One saddle maker	-	-	0	1	6
One servant under him	-	-	0	1	0
One cooper	-	-	0	2	0
Two servants under him, each	-	-	0	1	0
Four armorers, each	-	-	0	2	6
Four servants under them, each	-	-	0	1	0
Two gunsmiths, each	-	-	0	2	6
Four servants, each	-	-	0	1	0
One harness maker, at	-	-	0	1	6
Two servants under him, each	-	-	0	1	0
One farrier, at	-	-	0	2	6
Two servants under him, at each	-	-	0	1	0
One bridgemaker	-	-	0	2	6
Six servants, each	-	-	0	1	0
One provost marshal	-	-	0	2	0
Two servants under him, each	-	-	0	1	0
One chirurgeon	-	-	0	4	0
One servant under him	-	-	0	1	0
One waggoner for the train	-	-	0	5	0
One assistant to him	-	-	0	2	6
Two principal conductors, viz. one for the munition of the army, the other for the munition of the ar- tillery, each	-	-	0	3	0
Forty conductors, viz. 20 for the waggons and 20 for the ordnance, each	-	-	0	2	6
One commissary for the draught horses, at	-	-	0	4	0
Two assistants to him, each	-	-	0	2	6
In all per diem	-	-	21	7	6
Per mensem	-	-	598	10	0
Per annum	-	-	7182	0	0
					Sum

Sum total of the officers, artificers, and other attendants :

					l.	s.	d.
Per diem	-	-	-	-	26	7	6
Per menfem	-	-	-	-	678	10	0
Per annum	-	-	-	-	8820	10	0

	Per diem.	Per menfem.	Per annum.
	l. s. d.	l. s. d.	l. s. d.
Four provost marshals, } at 5s. each - -	1 0 0	28 0 0	365 0 0
Four carriage masters, } at 3s. each -	0 12 0	16 16 0	219 0 0
Four preachers, at 3s. } each - -	0 12 0	16 16 0	219 0 0
Four chirurgeons, at 4s. } each - -	0 16 0	22 8 0	292 0 0

The PAY of a COLONEL'S COMPANY of 200 Men in each of the four Regiments.

A CAPTAIN per diem 8s. lieutenant 4s. ensign 2s. 6d. three serjeants at 1s. 2d. each, three drums at 1s. each ; three corporals at 10d. each ; 188 souldiers at 8d. each.

BEING in all for one colonel's company of 200 men :

				l.	s.	d.
Per diem	-	-	-	7	8	10
Per menfem	-	-	-	208	7	4
Per annum	-	-	-	2717	4	2

The PAY of a LIEUTENANT COLONEL'S Company of 150 Men in each of the four Regiments.

A CAPTAIN per diem 8s. a lieutenant 4s. ensign 2s. 6d. two
VOL. I. C c c ferjeants

ferjeants at 1s. 2d. apiece; two drums at 1s. apiece; three corporals at 10d. apiece, and 140 soldiers at 8d. apiece.

			l.	s.	d.
In all per diem	-	-	-	5	14 8
Per mensem	-	-	-	160	10 8
Per annum	-	-	-	2092	13 4

And for four LIEUTENANT COLONEL'S Companies of 150 Men:

			l.	s.	d.
Per diem	-	-	-	22	18 8
Per mensem	-	-	-	642	2 8
Per annum	-	-	-	8370	13 4

FOUR REGIMENTS of FOOT, containing in Officers and Soldiers 6000 Men, being 1500 Men in each Regiment, viz.

The PAY of a Company of 115 Men, viz.

A CAPTAIN per diem 8s. lieutenant 4s. ensign 2s. 6d. two ferjeants at 14d. each; three corporals at 10d. each; and 105 soldiers at 8d. each per diem.

In all for one company of 115 men:

			l.	s.	d.
Per diem	-	-	-	4	11 4
Per mensem	-	-	-	127	17 4
Per annum	-	-	-	1666	6 8

AND so for forty companies of 115 men the piece, being ten companies in each of the four regiments, besides the colonel's and lieutenant colonel's companies:

			l.	s.	d.
Per diem	-	-	-	182	13 4
Per mensem	-	-	-	5114	13 4
Per annum	-	-	-	66673	6 8

OFFICERS

OFFICERS GENERAL of the HORSE.

	Per diem.			Per menssem.			Per annum.		
	l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.
The general of the horse	5	0	0	140	0	0	1825	0	0
The lieutenant general	2	0	0	56	0	0	730	0	0
Serjeant major or commissary general -	1	10	0	42	0	0	548	10	0
Quarter master general									
Provost marshal -	0	6	8	9	6	8	121	13	4
Waggon or carriage master -	0	5	0	7	0	0	91	5	0
Preacher -	0	3	4	4	13	4	60	16	8
Chirurgeon -	0	4	0	5	12	0	73	0	0
	0	4	0	5	12	0	73	0	0

The PAY of a Troop of a hundred horse, viz.

A CAPTAIN per diem 8s.* (a) a lieutenant 5s. a coronet 4s. three corporals at 2s. each; two trumpeters, one quarter master, a chirurgeon and 80 horsemen, at 2s. 6d. each per diem. After which rates, the pay of a troop of 100 horsemen, with their officers, is

	l.	s.	d.
Per diem	13	1	0
Per menssem	365	8	0
Per annum	4763	5	0

(a) THE above marginal note is in Rushworth: probably the allowance for horses is omitted; the pay here stated being the same as that of a captain of infantry.

AND so the pay for 12 troops of 100 horse the piece, with their officers, is

				l.	s.	d.
Per diem	-	-	-	156	12	0
Per menssem	-	-	-	4384	16	0
Per annum	-	-	-	57159	0	0
Sum total of the entertainment aforesaid is						
Per diem	-	-	-	442	17	8
Per menssem	-	-	-	12420	14	8
Per annum	-	-	-	161652	8	4

Dated 19th March,
1639.

AFTER the breaking out of the troubles between K. Charles I. and his parliament, several alterations were from time to time made by the latter in their military establishments. And, according to Rushworth, an ordnance was also passed, September 1643, wherein it was enacted, that all officers of Lord Essex's army, whose pay amounted to ten shillings a day or upwards, should regularly receive only half their pay, the other half to be respited till the troubles were over. All officers whose daily pay was less than ten shillings, to receive only two thirds thereof. When three months respited pay became due, the general was authorized to grant certificates thereof to the different officers.

APRIL 13th, A. D. 1647. The following entry appears on the journals of the House of Commons, shewing the pay of the officers of the parliamentary troops, serving in England; and the manner in which that of the cavalry was computed.

RESOLVED, &c. That the proportions following are fit proportions of pay for the officers of horse that are to continue in this kingdom. (b)

Colonel

(b) APRIL 9th, 1647. Resolved, &c. That the pay of such commanders and officers as shall be employed in the service of Ireland, shall be higher than such as shall be employed in England.

				l.	s.	d.	Per diem.
Colonel	{	As colonel	-	0	12	0	l. s. d.
		Four horses	-	0	8	0	1 10 0
		As captain	-	0	10	0	
Major	{	As major	-	0	5	0	
		Three horses	-	0	6	0	1 1 0
		As captain	-	0	10	0	
Captain	{	Captain	-	0	10	0	0 14 0
		Two horses	-	0	4	0	
Lieutenant	{	Lieutenant	-	0	5	0	0 9 0
		Two horses	-	0	4	0	
Cornet	{	Cornet	-	0	4	0	0 8 0
		Two horses	-	0	4	0	
	{	Quarter master	-	0	4	0	0 6 0
		One horse	-	0	2	0	
Provost marshal			-	0	3	4	0 7 4
Two men			-	0	4	0	
Corporals and trumpets, each			-	0	2	6	0 5 0

RESOLVED, That the proportions following are fit proportions for the officers of foot that are to continue in this kingdom.

						Per diem.
						l. s. d.
Captains	-	-	-	-	-	0 8 0
Lieutenants	-	-	-	-	-	0 4 0

12. RESOLVED, &c. That this House doth agree with the Committee, that the establishment for the officers and soldiers, now in Ireland, and to go over thither, shall be the same with that of Sir Thomas Fairfax's army: and that the same proportion of pay, which was respited upon the public faith, to Sir Thomas Fairfax's army, shall now also be respited for the present, and made good unto them out of the rebels lands, by English measure, according to the rates and proportions settled by act of parliament, upon the finishing of the war, after satisfaction shall be first given to the adventurers. Resolved, &c. That coats and knapsacks shall be provided, over and above their pay, for the foot soldiers of the army that are to go for Ireland, for their better encouragement.

Ensigns

					Per diem.		
					l.	s.	d.
Ensigns	-	-	-	-	0	2	6
Serjeants	-	-	-	-	0	8	12
Drummers	-	-	-	-	0	0	12
Corporals	-	-	-	-	0	0	12

RESOLVED, &c. That there shall be no officer within any garrison, above a captain, but only the governor.

RESOLVED, &c. That there shall be no company in any garrison, under the number of one hundred, where there is above one company in that garrison.

RESOLVED, That the governors of Pendennis, Chester, Plymouth, Hull, Gloucester, Leverpoole, Lynn, Newcastle, Portsmouth, shall have for their pay, twelve shillings as governor, and eight shillings as captain.

RESOLVED, &c. That the governors of Weymouth, Tynmouth castle, the castle and great fort of Bristol, shall have each of them seven shillings as governor; eight shillings as captain.

RESOLVED, &c. That all such garrisons as have fifty foot, and under, their governors to have five shillings per diem only: the rest of the garrisons not named, that have above fifty, the governor to have ten shillings per diem as governor and captain.

RESOLVED, &c. that as many of the dragoons of the army as can be persuaded to go for the service of Ireland may receive order for that purpose.

RESOLVED, &c. That the officers, &c. that shall go for Ireland, may have their debentures for their arrears; and that their accounts shall be made up, according to their musters, in their absence.

Among the manuscripts in the Harleian Library is one marked No. 6844, entitled "An Establishment of the Forces in England and Wales, as the same stood the 27th February, 1659," wherein the pay of every officer and soldier is stated as follows.

General

General officers.

			Per diem.			Per menssem.		
			l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.
Commander in chief	-	-	10	0	0	280	0	0
Lieutenant general of the army	-		1	0	0	28	0	0
Lieutenant general of the horse	-		1	0	0	28	0	0
Major general of the foot	-		1	0	0	28	0	0
Commissary general of the horse	-		0	15	0	21	0	0
Scout master general	-	-	1	0	0	28	0	0
Quarter master general	-	-	1	3	0	32	4	0
Judge advocate to the army, at 15s. and his clerk, at 3s. 4d.	-	-	0	18	4	25	13	4
One adjutant general of horse and foot			0	15	0	21	0	0
One adjutant general of horse and foot who hath command of a troop of horse	-	-	0	5	0	7	0	0
Commissary general of the musters 15s. ten deputies each at 5s. and one clerk at 2s. 6d.	-	-	3	7	6	94	10	0
Surgeon to the commander in chief and his mates	-	-	0	8	0	11	4	0
Marshall general of the army 10s. and six men and horses, each at 2s. 6d.			1	5	0	35	0	0
			22	16	10	639	11	4

Field

Field and Staff Officers to a Regiment of Horse.

			Per diem.			Per mensem.		
			l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.
Colonel, as colonel	-	-	0	12	0	16	16	0
Major, as major	-	-	0	5	8	7	18	8
Surgeon 4s. and one horse to carry his chest 2s.	-	-	0	6	0	8	8	0
			1	3	8	33	2	8

Colonel's Troop.

Colonel, as captain, 10s. and two horses each at 2s.	-	-	0	14	0	19	12	0
Lieutenant 6s. and two horses, each at 2s.			0	10	0	14	0	0
Cornet 5s. and two horses, each 2s.			0	9	0	12	12	0
Quarter master 4s. and one horse at 2s.			0	6	0	8	8	0
Two trumpeters, each at 2s. 8d.	-		0	5	4	7	9	4
Two corporals, above trooper's pay each 5d.	-	-	0	0	10	1	3	4
Eighty fouldiers, each at 2s. 3d.	-		9	0	0	252	0	0
			11	5	2	315	4	0

Major's Troop.

Major, as captain, 10s. and two horses, each at 2s.	-	-	0	14	0	19	12	0
Lieutenant 6s. and 2 horses, each at 2s.			0	10	0	14	0	0
Cornet 5s. and two horses each at 2s.			0	9	0	12	12	0
Quarter master 4s. and one horse at 2s.			0	6	0	8	8	0
One trumpeter	-	-	0	2	8	3	14	8
Two corporals, above trooper's pay, 5d. each	-	-	0	0	10	1	3	4
Eighty foldiers, each at 2s. 3d.	-		9	0	0	252	0	0
			11	2	6	311	10	0

The

	Per diem.	Per mensem.
	l. s. d.	l. s. d.
The pay of four troops more to complete a regiment of horse, at the same rates and numbers which are mentioned in the major's troop	44 10 0	1246 0 0
In all for one regiment consisting of 480 souldiers besides officers	68 1 4	1905 17 4
In all for nine such regiments	612 12 0	17152 16 0

Field and Staff Officers of a Regiment of Foot.

Colonel, as colonel	-	-	0 12 0	16 16 0
Lieutenant colonel, as lieutenant colonel	-	-	0 7 0	9 16 0
Major, as major	-	-	0 5 0	7 0 0
Preacher	-	-	0 6 8	9 6 0
Surgeon 4s. and one mate 2s. 6d.	-	-	0 6 6	9 2 0
Quarter master and provost marshal, to be executed by one person (c)	-	-	0 4 0	5 12 0
			2 12 2	57 12 8

(c) At present the office of provost marshal is executed by the adjutant, whose duty it is to see all sentences of regimental courts martial inflicted.

A Company of Foot.

	Per diem.	Per mensem.
	l. s. d.	l. s. d.
Captain - - -	0 8 0	11 4 0
Lieutenant - - -	0 4 0	5 12 0
Ensigne - - -	0 3 0	4 4 0
Two ferjeants, each at 18d. -	0 3 0	4 4 0
Three corporals, at 3d. per diem each above fouldiers pay -	0 0 9	1 1 0
One drumm - - -	0 1 0	1 8 0
One hundred and twenty fouldiers, each at 9d. - - -	4 10 0	126 0 0
	5 9 9	153 13 0
The pay of nine such companys more to compleat a regiment of ffoot, consisting of 1200 fouldiers besides officers -	49 7 9	1382 17 0
	54 17 6	1536 10 0
In all for one regiment -		
In all for twelve regiments of foot, consisting of 14400 fouldiers be- sides officers - - -	683 4 0	19129 12 0
	51 8 11	1440 9 8
A regiment of foot more, consisting of nine companys and 1100 foul- diers besides officers - - -		
In all for two regiments -	102 17 10	2880 19 4
	24 5 9	680 1 0
Ffive companys of foot, consisting of 500 fouldiers besides officers, colonel's pay included -		

Three

THE ENGLISH ARMY.

385

	Per diem.	Per mensem.
	l. s. d.	l. s. d.
Three companys more, consisting of } 300 souldiers besides officers -	14 4 3	397 19 0
In all for fourteen regiments and } eight companys as above -	824 11 10	23088 11 4

Life Guard.

Captain	-	-	-	0 19 8	27 10 8
Lieutenant	-	-	-	0 14 0	19 12 0
Cornet	-	-	-	0 12 0	16 16 0
Quarter master	-	-	-	0 9 0	12 12 0
Four corporals, at 5s. each	-	-	-	1 0 0	28 0 0
Two trumpeters, each at 3s. 4d.	-	-	-	0 6 8	9 6 8
Two other trumpeters, each at 3s. 6d.	-	-	-	0 7 0	9 16 0
One hundred. and fixty souldiers, } each at 3s. 6d. - -	-	-	-	28 0 0	784 0 0
				32 8 4	907 13 4

Trayne	Engineer general	-	0 10 0	14 0 0
	Comissary of ammunition	-	0 5 0	7 0 0
	Quarter master of the trayne	-	0 4 0	5 12 0
	A tent maker	-	0 2 6	3 10 0
	Three mattsossies, each at 12d.	-	0 3 0	4 4 0
			1 4 6	34 6 0

The ISLE of WIGHT, viz. Carisbrook Castle, Sandham Castle, Bryn Bridge and Nettleseigh Forts, Cowes Castle and Guenarde Fort, Yarmouth and Caries Sconce.

			Per diem.			Per mensem.		
			l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.
Governor	-	-	0	12	0	16	16	0
Commissary and marshall, to be executed by one person	-	-	0	2	6	3	10	0
Surgeon	-	-	0	3	0	4	4	0
Master gunner	-	-	0	2	6	3	10	0
Four gunners, each at 20d.	-	-	0	6	8	9	6	0
Four mattsos, each at 16d.	-	-	0	5	4	7	9	4
Ten mattsos, each at 10d.	-	-	0	8	4	11	13	4
Fire and candle for the guards in Carisbrook Castle	-	-	0	1	6	2	2	0
Fire and candle for the guards in Cowes Castle and Guernards Fort	-	-	0	1	0	1	8	0
Fire and candle for the guards in Sandham Castle, Bryn Bridge and Nettleseigh Fort	-	-	0	1	4	1	17	4
Fire and candle for the guards in Yarmouth and Caries Sconce	-	-	0	1	0	1	8	0
Two companys as of foot, for the guard of the said castle and forts, viz.	-	-						
One company of foot, consisting of a captain at 8s. lieutenant and major 7s. ensigne at 3s. three serjeants, each at 18d. four corporals, each at 12d. two drums, each at 12d. and 140 private soldiers, each at 8d.	-	-	6	1	10	170	11	4

	Per diem.	Per mensem.
	l. s. d.	l. s. d.
One other company of foot, consisting of a captain at 8s. lieutenant 4s. ensign 3s. three serjeants, each 1s. 6d. four corporals, each 1s. and 100 private soldiers, each at 8d.	4 12 2	129 0 8
	12 19 2	362 16 8

THE officers, soldiers, gunners, &c. above mentioned, to be from time to time distributed and placed in the said respective castles and forts, as the governor, or in his absence, the deputy governor, shall think fit and appoint.

GUERNSEY.

	Per diem.	Per mensem.
	l. s. d.	l. s. d.
Governor, besides captain's pay -	0 10 0	14 0 0
Preacher - - -	0 6 8	9 6 8
Surgeon, who is also to be commissary of provision -	0 5 0	7 0 0
One company of foot, consisting of a captain at 8s. lieutenant 4s. ensign 3s. two serjeants, each 1s. 6d. three corporals and one drum, each at 1s. and 100 soldiers, each at 8d. - - -	4 8 8	124 2 8
	5 10 4	154 9 4

Governor

JERSEY.		Per diem.			Per mensem.		
		l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.
Governor, besides captain's pay	-	0	10	0	14	0	0
Preacher	-	0	6	8	9	6	8
Master gunner, and store-keeper	-	0	3	0	4	4	0
Two gunner's-mates, each 1s. 4d.	-	0	2	8	3	14	0
Eight mattsos, each 10d.	-	0	6	8	9	6	8
Commissary of provisions and marshall to be executed by one person	}	0	3	6	4	18	0
Surgeon	-	0	4	0	5	12	0
A boatman	-	0	1	0	1	8	0
Fire and candle for the guards	-	0	2	0	2	16	0
One corporall of horse	-	0	3	0	4	4	0
Quarter master, 4s. and one horse 2s.	-	0	6	0	8	8	0
One trumpeter, above soldier's pay, 6d.	-	0	0	6	0	14	0
Twenty horsemen, whereof the trum- peter to be one, at 2s.	}	2	0	0	56	0	0
Two companys of foot, consisting of two captains, each 8s. two lieute- nants, each 4s. two ensigns, each 3s. four serjeants, each 1s. 6d. six corporals and two drums, each at 12d. and 180 souldiers at 8d.	}	8	4	0	229	12	0
		12	13	0	354	4	0

SCILLY ISLANDS.

Governour, besides captain's pay	-	0	10	0	14	0	0
Preacher	-	0	6	8	9	6	8
Comissary and marshall, to be execu- cuted by one person	}	0	3	0	4	4	0
					Surgeon		

	Per diem.	Per mensem.
	l. s. d.	l. s. d.
Surgeon	0 3 0	4 4 0
Master gunner	0 2 6	3 10 0
One gunner	0 1 8	2 6 8
Two gunner's mates, each at 16d.	0 2 8	3 14 8
Ten mattsrosses, each at 10d.	0 8 4	11 13 4
A gun smith	0 1 0	1 8 0
Fire and candle for the guards	0 3 4	4 13 4
Two companys of foot, consisting of two captains, each at 8s. two lieutenants, each at 4s. four ser- jeants, each 18d. six corporalls and two drums, each at 1s. and 160 soldiers, each at 8d.	7 4 8	202 10 8
	9 6 10	261 11 4

The ISLE of MAN.

Governour, besides captain's pay	0 6 0	8 8 0
Surgeon	0 3 0	4 4 0
Master gunner, to be also store-keeper	0 2 6	3 10 0
One gunner's mate	0 1 8	2 6 8
Four mattsrosses, each 10d.	0 3 4	4 13 4
Fire and candle for the guards	0 4 0	5 12 0
Two companys of foot, consisting of two captains, each at 8s. two lieutenants, each 4s. four serjeants, each at 18d. four corporals and two drums, each 1s. and 140 soldiers, each at 8d.	6 9 4	181 1 4
	7 9 10	209 15 4

MOUNT

MOUNT, viz.					Per diem.			Per menssem.		
					l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.
Governor	-	-	-	-	0	3	0	4	4	0
A gunner	-	-	-	-	0	1	8	2	6	0
This guard is reduced.	}	A serjeant	-	-	0	1	6	2	2	0
		Thirty-two souldiers,	-	-	1	1	4	29	17	4
		each at 8d.	-	-						
					1	7	6	38	10	0

PENDENNIS CASTLE and MAUDES, viz.

Governor	-	-	0	6	0	8	8	0
Marshall and store-keeper, to be executed by one person	-	-	0	2	6	3	10	0
A boatman	-	-	0	1	0	1	8	0
Two gunners, each 20d.	-	-	0	3	4	4	13	4
Two gunners mates, each 16d.	-	-	0	2	8	3	14	8
Six mattsosles, each at 10d.	-	-	0	5	0	7	0	0
Fire and candle for the guards	-	-	0	2	8	3	14	8
The governor of Maudes	-	-	0	4	0	5	12	0
A gunner	-	-	0	1	8	2	6	8
A mate	-	-	0	1	4	1	17	4
Two mattsosles, each at 10d.	-	-	0	1	8	2	6	8

For

THE ENGLISH ARMY.

391

	Per diem.	Per mensem.
	l. s. d.	l. s. d.
For the guards of Pendennis Castle and Maudes, two companys of foot, consisting of two cap- tains, at 8s. each ; two lieutenants, each at 4s. two ensigns, each at 3s. four serjeants, each at 18d. six corporals and two drums, each at 12d. and 160 souldiers, each at 8d.	7 10 8	210 18 8
	9 2 6	255 10 6

PLYMOUTH CASTLE, and ISLAND, viz.

Governour	-	-	-	0 8 0	11 4 0
Storekeeper	-	-	-	0 2 0	2 16 0
Master gunner	-	-	-	0 2 0	2 16 0
Two gunners, each at 20d.	-	-	-	0 3 4	4 13 4
Three gunners mates, each at 16d.	-	-	-	0 4 0	5 12 0
Eight mattsosses, each at 10d.	-	-	-	0 6 8	9 6 8
A boatman	-	-	-	0 1 0	1 8 0
Fire and candle for the guards	-	-	-	0 3 4	4 13 4
Two companys of foot, consisting of two captains, each at 8s. two lieutenants, each at 4s. two en- signs, each at 3s. four serjeants, each at 18d. six corporals and two drums, at 12d. and 200 souldiers, each 8d.	-	-	-	8 17 4	248 5 4
				10 7 8	290 14 8

PORTLAND, WEYMOUTH and SANDFORD CASTLES, viz.

Governor	-	-	-	0 6 8	9 6 8
A serjeant	-	-	-	0 1 6	2 2 0
One corporall	-	-	-	0 1 0	1 8 0
Thirty-six foldiers, each 8d.	-	-	-	1 4 0	33 12 0
A gunner	-	-	-	0 1 8	2 6 8
Two mattsosses, each 10d.	-	-	-	0 1 8	2 6 8
Fire and candle for the guards	-	-	-	0 1 4	1 17 4
VOL. I.			E e e		FOR

For WEYMOUTH and SANDFOOT CASTLE.

	Per diem.			Per mensem.		
	l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.
A gunner - - -	0	1	8	2	6	8
Two mattsos, each at 10d. -	0	1	8	2	6	8
	2	1	2	57	12	8

BROWN SEA CASTLE, viz.

Governour - - -	0	3	4	4	13	4
A gunner - - -	0	1	8	2	6	8
Two mattsos, each at 10d. -	0	1	8	2	6	8
Fire and candle for the guards being } to be kept by the army - - -	0	0	8	0	18	8
	0	7	4	10	5	4

CALSHOT CASTLE.

Governor - - -	0	5	0	7	0	0
Two corporalls, each at 12d. -	0	2	0	2	16	0
Eighteen souldiers, each at 8d. -	0	12	0	16	16	0
A gunner - - -	0	1	8	2	6	8
Two mattsos, each at 10d. -	0	1	8	2	6	8
Fire and candle for the guards -	0	0	8	0	18	8
	1	3	0	32	4	0

HURST CASTLE, viz.

	Per diem.			Per mensem.		
	l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.
Governor - - -	0	5	0	7	0	0
Two corporals and one drum, each at 12d. - - -	0	3	0	4	4	0
Thirty-six souldiers, each at 8d. -	1	4	0	33	12	0
A gunner - - -	0	1	8	2	6	8
A mate - - -	0	1	4	1	17	4
Two mattsos, each at 10d. -	0	1	8	2	6	8
Fire and candle for the guards -	0	1	0	1	8	0
	1	17	8	52	14	8

PORTSMOUTH and SOUTHSEA CASTLE.

Governour - - -	0	8	0	11	4	8
Deputy governor - - -	0	3	0	4	4	0
Storekeeper and provost marshall, to be executed by one person -	0	1	6	2	2	0
Surgeon - - -	0	3	0	4	4	0
Master gunner - - -	0	2	6	3	10	0
Two gunners each, at 20d. -	0	3	4	4	13	4
Two gunners mates, each at 16d. -	0	2	8	3	14	8
Eight mattsos, each at 10d. -	0	6	8	9	6	8
Clerk of reports - - -	0	0	6	0	14	0
Porter - - -	0	0	6	0	14	0
Fire and candle for the guard -	0	4	0	5	12	0
Three companys of foot, consisting of three captains, each at 8s. three lieutenants each at 4s, three en- signs, each at 3s. * SIX SERVANTS, each at 18d. nine corporals and three drums, each at 12d. and 240 seamen and souldiers, each at 8d. - - -	11	0	8	322	18	8
Memorandum, that those three companys are taken off here, and are included in one of the foot re- giments.						
	13	6	4	372	17	4

DOVER CASTLE, MOATS BULLWERK, ARTLIFE
FORT and SANDGATE CASTLE.

				Per diem.			Per mensem.		
				l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.
Governor	-	-	-	0	8	0	11	4	0
Preacher	-	-	-	0	4	0	5	12	0
Master gunner and storekeeper	-	-	-	0	2	0	2	16	0
A gunner	-	-	-	0	1	8	2	6	8
A mate	-	-	-	0	1	4	1	17	4
Four mattsos, each at 10d.				0	3	4	4	13	4
Marshall	-	-	-	0	1	6	2	2	0
Fire and candle for the garde				0	2	0	2	16	0
One company of foot, consisting of a captain, at 8s. lieutenant 4s. ensign 3s. two servants, each 18d. three corporals and one drum, each 12d. and 70 souldiers, each at 8d.				3	8	8	96	2	8
One other company of foot consisting of a captain, at 8s. lieutenant 4s. ensign 3s. two servants, each at 18d. three corporalls (above souldier's pay, each 4d.) one drummer, 12d. and 80 souldiers, (the three corporals included,) each at 8d.				3	13	4	102	13	4

SANDGATE CASTLE.

Governour	-	-	-	0	3	0	4	4	0
Two corporalls, each at 12d.	-	-	-	0	2	0	2	16	0
Twenty souldiers, each at 8d.	-	-	-	0	13	4	18	13	4
A gunner	-	-	-	0	1	8	2	6	8
Two mattsos, each at 10d.	-	-	-	0	1	8	2	6	8
Fire and candle for the guard	-	-	-	0	0	8	0	18	8
				9	8	2	263	8	8

WALMER CASTLE.

			Per diem.			Per mensem.		
			l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.
Governor	-	-	0	5	0	7	0	0
Two corporalls, each at 12d.	-		0	2	0	2	16	0
Twenty fouldiers, each at 8d.	-		0	13	4	18	13	4
A gunner	-	-	0	1	8	2	6	8
Two mattroffes, each at 10d.	-		0	1	8	2	6	8
Fire and candle for the guards	-		0	0	8	0	18	8
			1	4	4	34	1	4

DEALE CASTLE.

Governour	-	-	0	5	0	7	0	0
A gunner	-	-	0	1	8	2	6	8
A mate	-	-	0	1	4	1	17	4
Two mattroffes, each at 10d.	-		0	1	8	2	6	8
Two corporalls, each at 12d.	-		0	2	0	2	16	0
Thirty fouldiers, each at 8d.	-		1	0	0	28	0	0
Fire and candle for the guards	-		0	0	8	0	18	8
			1	2	4	45	5	4

SANDOWN CASTLE.

Governour	-	-	0	5	0	7	0	0
Two corporals, each 12d.	-		0	2	0	2	16	0
Twenty fouldiers, each at 8d.	-		0	13	4	18	13	4
A gunner	-	-	0	1	8	2	6	8
Two mattroffes, each at 10d.	-		0	1	8	2	6	8
Fire and candle for the guard	-		0	0	8	0	18	8
			1	4	4	34	1	4

UPNER

UPNER CASTLE.

				Per diem.			Per mensem.		
				l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.
Governour	-	-	-	0	5	0	7	0	0
A gunner	-	-	-	0	1	8	2	6	8
A fervant	-	-	-	0	1	6	2	2	0
Two corporals and one drum, each at 12d.	-	-	-	0	3	0	4	4	0
Thirty souldiers each at 8d.	-			1	0	0	28	0	0
Fire and candle for the guards	-			0	1	0	1	8	0
				1	12	2	45	0	8

TILBURY FORT.

Governour	-	-		0	6	0	8	8	0
A gunner	-	-		0	1	8	2	6	8
Two mates, each at 16d.	-			0	2	8	3	14	8
Four mattsos, each at 10d.	-			0	3	4	4	13	4
A lieutenant	-	-		0	3	0	4	4	0
Two corporalls and one drum, at 12d. each	-	-	-	0	3	0	4	4	0
Thirty-four souldiers, each at 8d.	-			1	2	8	31	14	8
Fire and candle for the guards	-			0	2	8	3	14	8
				2	5	0	63	0	0

LAND.

LANDGUARD FORT.

			Per diem.			Per menssem.		
			l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.
Governour	-	-	0	2	0	2	16	0
Preacher	-	-	0	4	0	5	12	0
Marshall and storekeeper united	-	-	0	1	6	2	2	0
A gunner	-	-	0	1	8	2	6	8
A gunner's mate	-	-	0	1	4	1	17	4
Two mattsos, each at 10d.	-	-	0	1	8	2	6	8
Two boatmen, each at 12d.	-	-	0	2	0	2	16	0
Fire and candle for the guards	-	-	0	1	4	1	17	4
One company of foot, consisting of a captain, at 8s. who is to be governor; a lieutenant, 4s. two serjeants, each at 18d. two corporals and one drum, each at 12d. and sixty souldiers each at 8d.			2	18	0	8	1	4
			3	13	6	102	18	0

YARMOUTH, viz.

Gunner	-	-	0	1	8	2	6	8
Four mattsos, each at 10d.	-	-	0	3	4	4	13	4
Fire and candle for the guards being to be kept by the army	-	-	0	2	0	2	16	0
			0	7	0	9	16	0

HULL.

HULL.

			Per diem.			Per mensem.		
			l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.
Governour	-	-	0	8	0	11	4	0
Store-keeper and marshall, to be executed by one	-	-	0	3	0	4	4	0
Preacher	-	-	0	6	8	9	6	8
Surgeon	-	-	0	3	0	4	4	0
Master gunner	-	-	0	2	0	2	16	0
Two gunners, each at 20d.	-	-	0	3	4	4	13	4
Two gunners mates, each at 16d.	-	-	0	2	8	3	14	8
Six mattsolles, each at 10d.	-	-	0	5	0	7	0	0
A boatman	-	-	0	1	0	1	8	0
Fire and candles for the guards	-	-	0	4	0	5	12	0
Four companys as of foot, consisting of four captains, each at 8s. four lieutenants, at 4s. four ensigns, each 3s. eight serjeants 18d. twelve corporals and four drums, each at 12d. and 272 fouldiers, at 8d.	-	-	13	9	4	377	1	4
			15	8	0	431	4	0

CLIFFORD's TOWER, viz.

Gunner	-	-	0	1	8	2	6	8
A mate	-	-	0	1	4	1	17	4
Two mattsolles, each at 10d.	-	-	0	1	8	2	6	8
Fire and candle for the guards being to be kept by the army	-	-	0	0	8	0	18	8
			15	13	4	438	13	4

SCAR-

SCARBOROUGH, viz.

	Per diem.	Per mensem.
	l. s. d.	l. s. d.
A gunner - - -	0 1 8	2 6 8
A mate - - -	0 1 4	1 17 4
Two mattsos, each 10d. -	0 1 8	2 6 8
A storekeeper - - -	0 1 0	1 8 0
Fire and candle for the guard -	0 1 6	2 2 0
One company of foot, consisting of, viz.	l. s. d.	
A captain, at - - -	0 8 0	94 5 4
Lieutenant - - -	0 4 0	
Ensign - - -	0 3 0	
Two serjeants, each 18d. -	0 3 0	
Three corporals, and one drum -	0 4 0	
Sixty-eight souldiers, at 8d. -	2 5 4	
	3 14 6	104 6 0

TINMOUTH CASTLE.

Governour - - -	0 4 0	5 12 0
Storekeeper and marshall executed by one person }	0 2 0	2 16 0
A boatman - - -	0 1 0	1 8 0
Master gunner - - -	0 2 0	2 16 0
A gunner - - -	0 1 8	2 6 8
Two gunners mates, each at 16d. -	0 2 8	3 14 8
Four mattsos, each at 10d. -	0 3 4	4 13 4
Fire and candle for the guard -	0 2 0	2 16 0
One company of foot, consisting of one major, 5s. one captain, one lieutenant, one ensign, two serjeants, three corporals, one drummer, 120 soldiers. }	5 7 0	149 16 0
Another company, one captain, one lieutenant, one ensign, two serjeants, three corporalls, one drum- mer, eighty privates - - - }	3 13 4	102 13 4
	9 19 0	278 12 0

BERWICK.

	Per diem.			Per mensem.				
	l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.		
Governor, besides lieutenant colonel's and captain's pay - - -	}	0	5	0	7	0	0	
Store-keeper and marshall, to be exe- cuted by one person -		}	0	3	4	4	13	4
Master gunner - - -			0	2	0	2	16	0
Two gunners each, at 20d. -		0	3	4	4	13	4	
Two gunners mates, each at 16d.		0	2	8	3	14	8	
Eight mattsos, each at 10d. -		0	6	8	9	6	8	
A preacher - - -		0	6	8	9	6	8	
A surgeon 4s. a mate 2s. 6d. -		0	6	6	9	2	0	
Fire and candle for the guard -		0	4	0	5	12	0	
Five companys of foot, consisting of a lieutenant colonel, 7s. five captains, each at 8s. five lieute- nants, at 4s. five ensigns, at 3s. ten serjeants, at 18d. each; fifteen corporals and five drums at 12d. each; and 430 soldiers at 8d. -	}	20	3	8	56	5	2	8
Another company consisting of one captain, one lieutenant, one ensign, two serjeants, three cor- porals, one drummer, 86 privates, pay as above		}	3	19	4	111	1	4

HOLY ISLAND.

A gunner 20d. a gunner's mate 16d.	0	3	0	4	4	0
Two mattsos, each at 10d. -	0	1	8	2	6	8
Fire and candle for the guards -	0	0	8	0	18	8
	26	8	6	739	18	0

CARLISLE.

CARLISLE.

	Per diem.			Per mensem.		
	l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.
The colonel who is to be governor	0	12	0	16	6	0
Master gunner - - -	0	2	0	2	16	0
A gunner - - -	0	1	8	2	6	8
Four mattsos, each at 10d. -	0	3	4	4	13	4
A gunner's mate - - -	0	1	4	1	17	4
Fire and candle for the guard -	0	3	6	4	18	0
Three companys of foot, three captains, three lieutenants, three ensigns, six serjeants, nine corporals, three drummers, 310 privates - - -	13	12	8	38	1	8
	14	16	6	41	5	2

SHREWSBURY.

Governor besides captain's pay -	0	2	0	2	16	0
Master gunner and storekeeper to be executed by one person }	0	2	0	2	16	0
One mattsos - - - -	0	0	10	1	3	4
Fire and candle for the guard -	0	1	0	1	8	0
One company of one captain, one lieutenant, one ensign, two serjeants, three corporals, one drummer, 100 privates - - - -	4	8	8	12	4	8
	4	14	6	13	2	6

WARWICK.

Governor - - - -	0	5	0	7	0	0
Lieutenant - - - -	0	3	0	4	4	0
Two corporalls, each 12d. -	0	2	0	2	16	0
Sixty souldiers, at 8d. each -	2	0	0	56	0	0
Fire and candles for the guard -	0	1	0	1	8	0
	2	11	0	71	8	0

WINDSOR.				Per diem.			Per menssem.		
				l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.
Governour	-		-	0	2	0	2	16	0
A gunner	-		-	0	1	8	2	6	8
A mate	-	-	-	0	1	0	1	8	0
Two matts, each at 10d.			-	0	1	8	2	6	8
Fire and candle for the guard				0	1	6	2	2	0
One company of foot, one captain, one lieutenant, one ensign, four serjeants, four corporals, two drummers, 120 privates, pay as above			-	5	7	0	149	16	0
				5	14	10	160	15	4

CHEPSTOW.

Governor (besides captain's pay)				0	2	0	2	16	0
A gunner	-	-		0	1	8	2	6	8
A matts	-	-		0	0	10	1	3	4
Fire and candle for the guards				0	0	8	0	18	8
One company of foot, one captain, one lieutenant, two serjeants, three corporals, one drummer, 62 privates, pay as before				3	0	4	84	9	4
				3	5	6	91	14	0

HEREFORD.

Governour, besides captain's pay	-			0	2	0	2	16	0
Fire and candle for the guard	-			0	1	0	1	8	0
One company of foot, one captain, one lieutenant, two serjeants, three corporals, one drummer, 120 privates	-	-	-	4	19	0	138	12	0
				5	2	0	142	16	0
TOWER—Fire and candle for the guards	-	-		0	4	0	5	12	0

CARDIFF.

CARDIFF.

	Per diem.			Per mensem.		
	l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.
Gunner and storekeeper to be executed } by one - - - - -	0	1	8	2	6	8
One mattsosse - - - - -	0	0	10	1	3	4
Fire and candle for the guards -	0	1	8	2	6	8
One company of foot, one captain, one lieutenant, one serjeant, two corporals, one drummer, 48 privates - - - - -	2	8	6	67	18	0
	2	12	8	73	14	8

BEAUMARES.

Governour, besides captain's pay -	0	2	0	2	16	0
A gunner - - - - -	0	1	8	2	6	8
A mattsosse - - - - -	0	0	10	1	3	4
Fire and candle for the guard -	0	1	0	1	8	0
One company of foot, one captain, one lieutenant, two serjeants, two corporals, one drummer, 80 privates - - - - -	3	11	4	99	17	4
	3	16	10	107	11	4

HOLY HEAD.

Governour - - - - -	0	5	0	7	0	0
A serjeant - - - - -	0	1	6	2	2	0
One drum and two corporals at 1s.	0	3	0	4	4	0
Thirty-four souldiers, at 8d. -	1	2	8	31	14	8
A gunner - - - - -	0	1	8	2	6	8
A mattsosse - - - - -	0	0	10	1	3	4
Fire and candles for the guards -	0	0	8	0	18	8
	1	15	4	49	9	4

TYNBEY.

TYNBEEY.

	Per diem.			Per mensem.		
	l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.
Gunner - - -	0	1	8	2	6	8
A mattsos - - -	0	0	10	1	3	4
Fire and candle for the guards -	0	1	0	1	8	0
One captain, one lieutenant, (N. B. lieutenant, 3s.) two serjeants, two corporals, one drummer, 50 privates	2	10	4	71	9	4
	2	13	10	76	7	4

RED CASTLE.

Governor - - -	0	5	0	7	0	0
Forty-five soldiers, each at 8d. -	1	10	0	42	0	0
	1	15	0	49	0	0

CHESTER.

One company, one captain, one lieutenant, one en- sign, two serjeants, three corporals, one drum- mer, 69 privates, - - -	3	8	0	95	4	0

EXON.

Fire and candle for the guards to be kept by the army - - -	0	0	4	0	9	4

LUDLOW.

Fire and candle for the guards to be kept by the army - - -	0	1	0	1	8	0

TOTAL

TOTAL CHARGE of this ESTABLISHMENT.

	Per diem.			Per menssem.		
	l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.
General officers - -	22	16	10	639	11	4
Nine regiments of horse -	612	12	0	17152	16	0
Fourteen regiments and eight com- panies of foot - -	824	11	10	23088	11	4
Life guard of horse -	32	8	4	907	13	4
Trayn - - -	1	4	6	34	6	0
Guarrifons - -	205	15	2	5761	4	8
Contingencies - -	-	-	-	1500	0	0
Totall per menssem - -	-	-	-	49084	2	8
Totall for a year at thirteen months	-	-	-	638093	14	8

	Men.
This establishment consists of nine regiments of horse, with a troop of guards, officers included -	4870
Fourteen regiments of foot, with the officers -	18732
The souldiers, gunners, mattsosses, and officers em- ployed in the garrifons - -	4740
The whole army of horse and foot as above expressed, besides the general officers, officers of the trayne of artillery and staff officers, containeth in all -	28342

Whereof the annual charge of their pay, with the pay of the general officers, trains of artil- lery and contingencies doth amount to the sum of - - - -	l. s. d. 638093 14 8
--	-------------------------

IN

IN the Journals of the House of Commons of the 1st of King William III. in the estimate of the charge of diverse regiments of horse, dragoons and foot to be employed in the service of Ireland, the following sums were allowed for the pay of the officers and private men.

H O R S E.				Per diem.		
				l.	s.	d.
Colonel, as colonel 12s. as captain 10s. and two } horses, at 2s. each - - - - -				1	6	0
Lieutenant colonel, as lieutenant colonel 8s. as cap- } tain, 10s. and two horses, each 2s. - - -				1	2	0
Major, as major (N. B. No troop) - - - - -				1	0	0
Captain, as captain, 10s. and two horses at 2s. each				0	14	0
Lieutenant 6s. and two horses, each 2s. - - -				0	10	0
Cornet 5s. and two horses, each 2s. - - - - -				0	9	0
Quarter master 4s. and one horse 2s. - - - - -				0	6	0
Corporal 3s. - - - - -				0	3	0
Trumpeter 2s. 8d. - - - - -				0	2	8
Private trooper - - - - -				0	2	6

D R A G O O N S.

Colonel, as colonel 15s. as captain 8s. and three horses, } at 1s. each - - - - -				1	6	0
Lieutenant colonel, as lieutenant colonel 9s. as captain } 8s. and three horses 2s. - - - - -				1	0	0
Major, who has no troop - - - - -				1	0	0
Captain 8s. and three horses, at 1s. each - - -				0	11	0
Lieutenant 4s. and two horses - - - - -				0	6	0
Cornet 3s. and two horses - - - - -				0	5	0
Quarter master, for himself and horse - - - - -				0	4	0
Serjeant 1s. 6d. and 1s. for his horse - - - - -				0	2	6
Corporal 1s. and 1s. for his horse - - - - -				0	2	0
						Drummer

					Per diem.		
					l.	s.	d.
Drummer 1s. and 1s. for his horse	-	-	-	-	0	2	0
Hautboy 1s. and 1s. for his horse	-	-	-	-	0	2	0
Private dragoon 1s. 6d. for himself and horse	-	-	-	-	0	1	6
Adjutant	-	-	-	-	0	5	0
Surgeon	-	-	-	-	0	6	0
Chaplain	-	-	-	-	0	6	8
Gunsmith and his servant	-	-	-	-	0	5	0

FOOT.

Colonel, as colonel 12s. as captain 8s.	-	-	-	-	1	0	0
Lieutenant colonel, as lieutenant colonel 7s. as captain 8s.	-	-	-	-	0	15	0
Major, as major 5s. as captain 8s.	-	-	-	-	0	13	0
Captain	-	-	-	-	0	8	0
Lieutenant	-	-	-	-	0	4	0
Ensign	-	-	-	-	0	3	0
Adjutant	-	-	-	-	0	4	0
Quarter master	-	-	-	-	0	4	0
Surgeon 4s. and mate 2s. 6d.	-	-	-	-	0	6	6
Chaplain 6s. 8d.	-	-	-	-	0	6	8
Serjeant	-	-	-	-	0	1	6
Corporal	-	-	-	-	0	1	0
Drummer	-	-	-	-	0	1	0
Private soldier	-	-	-	-	0	0	8

IN addition to the daily pay here stated, the officers of the different corps of the army had the following allowance of servants, whose pay they were permitted to receive. At what time it was first granted, I have not been able to discover, but in the year 1697-8, being the 10th of the reign of King William III. it was allowed in the computation of the half pay, then first established,

by the King's warrant (a) given in the note below, from the Votes of the House of Commons. It seems as if this allowance was not at that time made to the whole army, for it is said in the report from the committee appointed to consider the state of the land forces and marines in 1746, that "the first increase in the charge of the land forces,

(a) WILLIAM R.

WHEREAS our regiments of foot commanded by our right trusty and right entirely beloved cousin and counsellor, Charles Duke of Bolton, and our trusty and well beloved Colonel Richard Coote, Colonel Thomas Brudenell, Colonel Thomas Saunderson, Major General Thomas Erle, Colonel John Gibson, Colonel William Northcote, and Colonel Thomas Farrington, together with the independent companies commanded by Lieutenant Colonel Rouse and Captain John Pitt, have been lately disbanded; and we being graciously pleased to allow half pay to the officers of our said regiments and companies for their support untill they shall be fully paid off and cleared, and be otherwise provided for; our will and pleasure is, that out of such monies as are or shall come to your hands, for the use of our forces, you pay unto the several officers of our said regiments and companies, the respective allowances mentioned in the list and establishment hereunto annexed, being the half pay of themselves and servants, respectively; to commence from the 1st day of April next, and to be paid unto them by monthly or quarterly payments, upon certificates from our commissary general or deputy commissary general of the musters, of their being alive and qualified as aforementioned: and for so doing, this with the acquittances of the said officers, or of their assigns, shall be from time to time your sufficient warrant and discharge.

Given at our court at Kensington, the 16th of March 1697-8, in the tenth of our reign,

By his Majesty's command.

CHA. MONTAGUE
STE. FOX
THO. LITTLETON
T. PELHAM.

To our right trusty and right well beloved cousin
and counsellor, Richard Earl of Ranelagh,
Paymaster General of our forces.

VOL. 12. 567.

H O R S E.

forces, (since the year 1700) was by virtue of an establishment signed the 15th of June, 1713, to take place from the 24th of that month; so that it did not commence till almost three months after the

H O R S E.

					Per diem.					
					l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.
Colonel, as colonel and captain	-	-	-	-	0	13	0			
For six servants, at 15d. each	-	-	-	-	0	7	6			
								1	0	6
Lieutenant colonel, as lieutenant colonel and captain	-	-	-	-	0	11	0			
For three servants, each at 15d.	-	-	-	-	0	3	9			
								0	14	9
Major, as major and captain	-	-	-	-	0	9	9			
For three servants, each 15d.	-	-	-	-	0	3	9			
								0	13	6
Captain	-	-	-	-	0	7	0			
For three servants, at 15d. each	-	-	-	-	0	3	9			
								0	10	9
Captain lieutenant	-	-	-	-	0	5	0			
For two servants, 15d. each	-	-	-	-	0	2	6			
								0	7	6
The lieutenant the same.										
Cornet	-	-	-	-	0	4	6			
For two servants, at 15d. each	-	-	-	-	0	2	6			
								0	7	0
Quarter-master	-	-	-	-	0	3	0			
One servant at 15d.	-	-	-	-	0	1	3			
								0	4	3

Chaplain 3s. 4d.

N. B. No adjutant mentioned.

the peace of Utrecht; and this first addition to the national expence consisted entirely of allowances to Commission Officers in lieu of their servants: this was afterwards twice encreased, once by an establishment

D R A G O O N S.

					Per diem.		
					l.	s.	d.
Colonel, as colonel and captain	-	-	-	-	0	13	0
For six servants, at 9d. per diem each	-	-	-	-	0	4	6
					0 17 6		
Lieutenant colonel, as lieutenant colonel and captain	-	-	-	-	0	10	0
For three servants, at 9d. each	-	-	-	-	0	2	3
					0 12 3		
Major, as major and captain	-	-	-	-	0	8	0
For three servants, at 9d. each	-	-	-	-	0	2	3
					0 10 3		
Captain	-	-	-	-	0	5	6
For three servants, at 9d. each	-	-	-	-	0	2	3
					0 7 9		
Captain lieutenant	-	-	-	-	0	3	0
For two servants, at 9d. each	-	-	-	-	0	1	6
					0 4 6		
Other lieutenants the same							
Cornet	-	-	-	-	0	2	6
For two servants, at 9d. each	-	-	-	-	0	1	6
					0 4 0		
Quarter-master	-	-	-	-	0	2	0
For one servant at 9d.	-	-	-	-	0	0	9
					0 2 9		
Chaplain 3s. 4d.							
N. B. Adjutant not mentioned.							

FOOT.

THE ENGLISH ARMY.

411

establishment signed the 29th of April, 1714, to commence from the 25th of December 1713, when a further charge was introduced

FOOT.

				Per diem.					
				l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.
Colonel, as colonel and captain	-	-	-	0	10	0			
For six servants, at 4d. each				0	2	0			
							0	12	0
Lieutenant, colonel as lieutenant colonel and captain	-			0	7	6			
For three servants, at 4d. each	-	-	-	0	1	0			
							0	8	6
Major, as major and captain	-	-	-	0	6	6			
For three servants, at 4d. each	-	-	-	0	1	0			
							0	7	6
Captain	-	-	-	0	4	0			
For three servants, at 4d. each	-	-	-	0	1	0			
							0	5	0
Captain lieutenant	-	-	-	0	2	0			
One servant, at 4d.	-	-	-	0	0	4			
							0	2	4
Lieutenant	-	-	-	0	2	0			
One servant	-	-	-	0	0	4			
							0	2	4
Ensign	-	-	-	0	1	6			
One servant at 4d.	-	-	-	0	0	4			
							0	1	10
Chaplain	-	-	-	0	3	4			
Quarter-master	-	-	-	0	2	4			
							0	5	8

and

for servants to officers and quarter-masters of horse and dragoons; and a second time by an establishment signed the 24th of June, 1718, when a further increase was made for servants to the quarter-masters of thirty battalions of foot. Although those allowances has continued ever since, it was not consolidated to their pay in Ireland till the year 1728, when it was done by the warrant transcribed in the note below from an authentic MS. establishment for that country. (b)

Two other small additions were likewise made to the pay of the army, one in the seventh year of King George I. when three-pence was added to the pay of the serjeants, corporals and private men of the dragoons, and four-pence per day to the pay of the serjeants and corporals of the three regiments of foot guards; but at what particular time the last addition took place, the committee before mentioned reported they were not able to learn. (c) Some farther

(b) WHEREAS we have thought fit in the foregoing establishment to add to the personal pay of the officers of our army, the number of servants which have been usually allowed them, whereby the effective men do more plainly appear, and our said officers are more regularly entitled to the pay of their servants than formerly. Our will and pleasure therefore is, and we do hereby strictly require and command, that all the officers of our said army, now and for the time being, do make their care, that their respective companies are kept complete, and that they do contain the number of effective men settled by our said establishment, under pain of our displeasure; and hereof our muster masters are to take particular notice from time to time, in the mustering of our said forces, that the officers neglecting the same may be known.

(c) THERE appears to have been great irregularity in the payment of the army during the latter end of the reign of K. James II. and that of the reign of K. William III. insomuch that the publicans of several towns where the troops were quartered, were not only obliged to trust them for their diet, but also to advance them part of their pay. Of this we have an instance among many of the publicans of Royston, in Lincolnshire, who January 12th, 1694, petitioned the parliament, setting forth, that Capt. Henry Cartwright's company in Colonel Hasting's regiment of foot being quartered on them, demanded over and above their lodgings, and other necessaries directed by law, the following subsistence to be

farther little addition has within five or six years been made to the pay of the private men, by returning them the deduction of one shilling in the pound made out of their full pay, and likewise abolishing the weekly stoppage of 2d. per week from each serjeant, 1½d.

be paid them weekly, viz. to the lieutenant 17s. 6d. the ensign 14s. the serjeant 6s. every corporal 4s. 6d. and every private centinel 3s. 6d. threatening in case of non payment to take the petitioners goods. That the petitioners were willing to give them such subsistence as they were able to do, and as the law directs, but were not able to bear a grievance of this nature, having formerly been great sufferers by quartering two companies of Sir John Edgworth's regiment, from the 12th of February 1688, to the 15th of April 1689, for which they were never paid one farthing. They therefore prayed that the house would take the premises into their consideration. On this the officers in question, and the agents of that, and several other regiments, were ordered to attend the house, and were examined; in consequence whereof on the 26th of February, 1694, the commons caused a representation thereof to be made to his majesty, complaining of it as a violation of the liberty and property of the subject, and stating that it was in a great measure caused by the extortions of the agents and impositions of the colonel, who had also been guilty of diverse acts of tyranny and oppression therein stated, for which he was by the King dismissed the service. About the same time various petitions for long arrears of pay to the widows and representatives of particular officers occur in the journals of the House of Commons.

ANOTHER instance in the same reign occurs in Ireland, respecting the Iniskilling regiment of dragoons, who for a long time received no pay, but subsisted themselves at their own expence. At length, A. D. 1694, a great number of both officers and soldiers, unable to procure any payment, though repeatedly promised by General Ginkle, surrounded the coach of the Lord Lieutenant Capel, when going in state to St. Patrick's church, and declared that if they did not in a few days receive what was due to them, they would use force to obtain it. The Lord Lieutenant promised them redress, and threw out his purse with thirty guineas in it, to one of the soldiers, who contemptuously threw it back into the coach through the glass of the window. Queen Mary was then regent, the King being in Flanders, an account of this matter was sent to her, whereupon she ordered a thousand pounds to be paid to the officers and men, out of her privy purse, promising that the remainder should be shortly paid, their demands being then settling by a board of officers. In the year 1702, 2000l. more was paid, which was all they got for their pay, from the year 1689, a very small portion considering they were then a regiment of nine troops. This anecdote was communicated to me by an old officer, who had it from his grandfather. The same gentleman gave me the following account of a like irregularity, so late as the latter end of the reign of King George I.

ABOUT

1½d. from each corporal and drum, and 1d. per week from each private man, in the regiments of infantry, for the use of the paymaster and surgeon.

THE present pay of the different corps of the army with their full pay, subsistence and nett arrears, are given under their different establishments.

THE following computation gives the pay of the staff officers, with the different deductions to which they are subjected.

ABOUT the year 1718 or 1719, the 7th regiment of foot, with another, whose number is forgotten, were put on board Admiral Byng's fleet, after the action off Messina; they were landed and quartered at the Devizes in Wiltshire, Taunton in Somersetshire, and the neighbouring towns, at which time there was four years pay due to most of the officers and men, some excepted, who held employments about the court. Although no money was issued for the above time, a kind of commissary, by the connivance of the colonel, attended the regiment, occasionally furnishing necessaries to the different officers, and even sometimes paying their tavern bills, taking usurious assignments on their pay for such goods and disbursements. After some time, the officers presented a memorial to Lord Tyrawley their colonel; he referred them to Mr. Ford their agent, who said he had not received any money from the treasury for six years. On this they memorial'd the colonel anew and also the War-office; and after a course of time were promised to be paid in the following proportions, till money could be raised to pay them in full; a captain to receive lieutenant's pay, a lieutenant that of an ensign, and an ensign one half of his daily subsistence; but this promise was not kept. In the mean time the officers paid none of their bills, and kept together in bodies, armed, to prevent arrests, and finally embarked for Ireland, without clearing any of their scores.

ON their arrival in Ireland their pay being greatly diminished, by the difference of the establishments, it caused the officers more earnestly to solicit for their arrears of pay, and they accordingly filed a bill in Chancery against Mr. Ford, who in his answer deposed, that Lord Tyrawley had for twenty years charged certain sums against each officer's pay on their first appointment or promotion, viz. to a captain 120l. a lieutenant 70l. and an ensign 40l. some more some less; on complaint being made of this to my Lord, he pleaded the custom of the army, and said it was not unknown to the King. After many years these particulars were laid before King George II. who paid my informant, then a midshipman, 100l. as some compensation for the demands of his father, on account of his pay of lieutenant and adjutant.

THE ENGLISH ARMY.

415

COMPUTATION OF THE PAY OF THE STAFF OFFICERS IN GREAT BRITAIN FOR 182 DAYS, EXHIBITING THE SEVERAL DEDUCTIONS.

Observations.	Quality.	Pay per diem.	For 182 days.	Poundage at 12d. per pound.	Poundage at 6d. per pound.	Hospital.	Net.
		l. s. d.	l. s. d.	l. s. d.	l. s. d.	l. s. d.	l. s. d.
Capt. general when upon service has 10l. per diem.	Capt. general —	—	—	—	—	—	—
	Four aids de camp to do. at 10s. per diem each	2 0 0	364 0 0	18 4 0	9 2 0	1 0 0	335 14 0
	Secretary to ditto	0 10 0	91 0 0	4 11 0	2 5 6	0 5 0	83 18 6
	Lieut. gen. in S. Britain, and two aids de camp	5 0 0	910 0 0	45 10 0	22 15 0	2 10 0	839 5 0
	Major gen. in do. and 1 aid de camp	2 10 0	455 0 0	22 15 0	11 7 6	1 5 0	419 12 6
	One major gen. more, the like	2 10 0	455 0 0	22 15 0	11 7 6	1 5 0	419 12 6
	Commander in chief in No. Britain, at 4l. per diem, and for his aids de camp and secretary at 10s. per diem each	5 10 0	1001 0 0	50 1 0	25 0 6	2 15 0	923 3 6
	Major gen. in N. Brit. and 1 aid de camp	2 10 0	455 0 0	22 15 0	11 7 6	1 5 0	419 12 6
	Major of brigade in N. Brit.	0 10 0	91 0 0	4 11 0	2 5 6	0 5 0	83 18 6
	Paymaster gen. of the forces	1 0 0	182 0 0	9 2 0	4 11 0	0 10 0	167 17 0
	Secretary to the forces	1 0 0	182 0 0	9 2 0	4 11 0	0 10 0	167 17 0
	Comptroller of the accounts of the army	2 1 1 $\frac{1}{8}$	373 19 0	18 14 0	9 7 0	1 0 7	344 17 5
	One comptroller more, the like	2 1 1 $\frac{1}{8}$	373 19 0	18 14 0	9 7 0	1 0 7	344 17 5
	Comissary general of the musters	0 17 6	159 5 0	7 19 3	3 19 8	0 8 9	146 17 4
	Deputy comissary general of the musters	1 3 0	209 6 0	10 9 4	5 4 8	0 11 6	193 0 6
	One deputy comissary of the musters	0 10 0	91 0 0	4 11 0	2 5 6	0 5 0	83 18 6
	Five dep. comiss. more at the same rate	2 10 0	455 0 0	22 15 0	11 7 6	1 5 0	419 12 6
	Dep. comiss. of the musters, North Brit.	0 10 0	91 0 0	4 11 0	2 5 6	0 5 0	83 18 6
	Ditto in Guernsey and Jersey	0 2 6	22 15 0	1 2 9	—	0 1 3	21 11 0
	Ditto at Scilly	0 1 4	12 2 8	0 12 2	—	0 0 8	11 9 10
	Commis. gen. 2 clerks at 2s. 6d. each, per diem	0 5 0	45 10 0	2 5 6	—	0 2 6	43 2 0
	Judge advocate general for himself	0 15 0	136 10 0	6 16 6	3 8 3	0 7 6	125 17 9
	And for his clerk at 2s. 6d. per diem, and for his deputy at Guernsey and Jersey, at 2s. 6d. per diem	0 5 0	45 10 0	2 5 6	—	0 2 6	43 2 0
	Adjutant general	1 0 0	182 0 0	9 2 0	4 11 0	0 10 0	167 17 0
	Quarter master general	1 0 0	182 0 0	9 2 0	4 11 0	0 10 0	167 17 0
	Dep. quarter master general	0 10 0	91 0 0	4 11 0	2 5 6	0 5 0	83 18 6
	Dep. quarter master gen. in North Britain	0 5 0	45 10 0	2 5 6	1 2 9	0 2 6	41 19 3
	Physician general	0 10 0	91 0 0	4 11 0	2 5 6	0 5 0	83 18 6
	Surgeon general	0 10 0	91 0 0	4 11 0	2 5 6	0 5 0	83 18 6
	Apothecary general	0 10 0	91 0 0	4 11 0	2 5 6	0 5 0	83 18 6
	Secretary to the comptroller of the accounts of the army	0 16 5 $\frac{1}{4}$	149 11 7	7 9 7	3 14 10	0 8 3	137 18 11
	Secretary to the forces in N. Britain	1 0 0	182 0 0	9 2 0	3 14 10	0 10 0	167 17 0
	Dep. judge advocate, and clerk of the courts martial in N. Britain	0 10 0	91 0 0	4 11 0	2 5 6	0 5 0	83 18 6
	Baggage master and inspector of the roads in N. Britain	0 5 0	45 10 0	2 5 6	—	0 2 6	43 2 0
	One aid de camp to his majesty	0 10 11 $\frac{1}{2}$	100 0 0	5 0 0	2 10 0	0 5 6	92 4 6
	Five aids de camp to his majesty more	2 14 9 $\frac{1}{2}$	500 0 0	25 0 0	12 10 0	1 7 6	461 2 6
		44 3 8 $\frac{1}{2}$	8343 8 3				
	Marshal to the horse grenadier guards	0 7 0	63 14 0	3 3 9	—	0 3 6	60 6 9
	Provost marshal to the foot guards	0 3 0	27 6 0	1 7 4	—	0 1 6	25 17 2
	Surveyor of the guards	0 2 6	22 15 0	1 2 9	—	0 1 3	21 11 0
	Fire master to the grenadiers	0 3 0	27 6 0	1 7 4	—	0 1 6	25 17 2
	Messenger to the secretary of the forces	0 1 7 $\frac{3}{4}$	14 19 0	0 15 0	—	0 0 10	14 3 2
	Messenger to the paymaster gen. of the forces	0 1 7 $\frac{3}{4}$	14 19 0	0 15 0	—	0 0 10	14 3 2
	Drum major general	0 1 7 $\frac{3}{4}$	14 19 0	0 15 0	—	0 0 10	14 3 2
	Provost marshal general	0 5 0	45 10 0	2 5 6	—	0 2 6	43 2 0
	Barrack master general, No. Britain	1 0 0	182 0 0	9 2 0	4 11 0	0 10 0	167 17 0
	Surveyor of the barracks in the Savoy	0 4 0	36 8 0	1 16 5	—	0 2 0	34 9 7
	Barrack master to the Savoy	0 3 3 $\frac{1}{2}$	29 18 0	1 19 11	—	0 1 8	28 6 5
	Five men attending the judge advocate gen. at 1s. 6d. per diem	0 4 6	40 19 0	2 1 0	—	0 2 3	38 15 9
		47 0 11 $\frac{1}{4}$	8564 1 3	428 4 7	201 7 2	23 10 9	7910 18 9
	Poundage, at 12d. per pound			—	—	—	428 4 7
	Ditto at 6d. per pound			—	—	—	201 7 2
	Hospital			—	—	—	23 10 9
							8564 1 3

THE FIRST TROOP OF HORSE GUARDS ACCORDING
TO THE ESTABLISHMENT OF 1753.

	Full pay Per diem.			Subsistence Per diem.			Arrears per ann.		
	l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.
Captain and col.	1	16	0	1	7	0	129	12	0
First lieutenant and lieut. col. }	1	11	0	1	3	3	111	12	0
Second lieut. and lieut. colonel }	1	7	0	1	0	6	92	12	9
Cornet and major	1	6	0	0	19	6	93	12	0
Guidon and major	1	4	0	0	18	0	86	8	0
4 Exempts and captains, each }	0	16	0	0	12	1 $\frac{5}{7}$	54	19	10 $\frac{2}{7}$
4 Brigadiers and lieut. each }	0	11	0	0	8	2 $\frac{4}{7}$	40	5	0 $\frac{3}{7}$
4 Sub brigad. and cornets each }	0	6	0	0	4	8 $\frac{4}{7}$	17	13	9 $\frac{3}{7}$
Chaplain	0	6	8	0	5	0	24	0	0
Adjutant	0	11	0	0	8	6	35	0	9
Surgeon	0	8	0	0	6	0	28	16	0
4 Trumpeters, each	0	5	0	0	4	0	13	8	9
Kettle drummer	0	5	0	0	4	0	13	8	9
150 Private gentle- men, each }	0	4	0	0	2	10 $\frac{2}{7}$			
1 do. superannuated	0	4	0	0	2	10 $\frac{2}{7}$			
2 ditto widows	0	8	0						
2 ditto agent	0	8	0	0	5	8 $\frac{4}{7}$			
1 ditto riding master	0	4	0	0	2	10 $\frac{2}{7}$	17	0	1 $\frac{5}{7}$

181

(d) THE difference between the full pay of each officer and the sum of the subsistence and arrears added together, is deducted for poundage, at 1s. in the pound. One day's full

FIRST TROOP OF GRENADIER GUARDS ACCORD-
ING TO THE ESTABLISHMENT OF 1753.

	Full pay			Subsistence			Net arrears.		
	Per diem.			Per diem.					
	l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.
1 Captain and colonel	1	10	0	1	2	6	108	0	0
1 Lieutenant and lieutenant col.	1	2	6	0	17	6	69	11	10½
1 Major	1	0	0	0	15	0	72	0	0
2 Lieutenants and captains, each	0	17	0	0	13	0	56	12	9
1 Guidon and captain	0	16	0	0	12	0	57	12	0
2 Sub lieutenants, each	0	10	0	0	7	6	36	0	0
1 Chaplain	0	6	8	0	5	0	24	0	0
1 Surgeon	0	8	0	0	6	0	28	16	0
1 Adjutant	0	7	0	0	5	6	20	12	9
6 Serjeants each	0	4	0	0	3	6	5	5	6
6 Corporals each	0	3	0	0	2	6			
4 Drummers each	0	2	6	0	2	0			
4 Hautbois each	0	2	6	0	2	0	6	14	4½
115 Privates each	0	2	6	0	2	0			

29 Warrant men, viz.

- 6 Captains and colonel
- 3 Lieutenant colonel
- 2 Major
- 2 Lieutenant and captain
- 1 Guidon
- 2 Sub lieutenants
- 1 Adjutant
- 2 Riding master
- 1 Widows
- 3 Agent
- 6 Recruiting horses
- 1 Private man
- 1 To the clerk

176

full pay to Chelsea Hospital, agency and contingencies. The arrears are not paid at any stated time, but as it suits the conveniency of government. Exact distributions, with each particular deduction, will be given in the appendix. The other troop is paid in the same proportion. In the establishment of the first troop of horseguards for 1759, there are four quarter masters, whose full pay is each 6s. and subsistence 4s. 9d. per diem; there are also four corporals at 5s. each full pay, subsistence 3s. 9d. with an allowance for the purveyor of 1s. per diem, and the same to the rough rider.

H h h 2

FULL

FULL PAY, SUBSISTENCE AND ARREARS OF THE
ROYAL REGIMENT OF HORSE GUARDS BLUE, CON-
FORMABLE TO THE ESTABLISHMENT OF THE
YEAR 1753. (e)

	Full pay Per diem.			Full pay Subsistence.			Net Clearings.		
	l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.
1 Colonel and captain	2	1	0	1	11	0	143	0	9
1 Lieutenant Colonel and captain }	1	9	6	1	2	6	99	7	1 $\frac{1}{2}$
1 Major and captain	1	7	0	1	1	6	74	7	9
1 Chaplain	0	6	8	0	5	0	24	0	0
1 Surgeon	0	6	0	0	4	6	21	12	0
1 Adjutant	0	5	0	0	4	6	4	6	3
6 Captains, each	1	1	6	0	16	6	70	11	1 $\frac{1}{2}$
9 Lieutenants, each	0	15	0	0	11	6	49	8	9
9 Cornets, each	0	14	0	0	11	0	41	5	6
9 Quarter masters, each	0	8	6	0	6	6	28	6	4 $\frac{1}{2}$
1 Kettle drummer	0	3	0	0	2	6	6	4	9
18 Corporals, each	0	3	0	0	2	6			
9 Trumpeters, each	0	2	8	0	2	0	9	12	0
270 Private men, each	0	2	6	0	2	0			
Allowance to widows	2	5	0						
Allowance to col. for clothing }	1	16	0	0	18	0			
Allowance to the captains }	1	16	0	1	16	0			
Allowance to the agent }	0	18	0	0	18	0			
337	73	12	8	56	6	6			

(e) A PARTICULAR account of all the deductions made from the full pay of the horse and grenadier guards, horse, dragoons, foot guards, and foot, as well as the regulations for the regimental stoppages from the non commission officers, and privates, and payments, will be given in the appendix.

FULL

THE ENGLISH ARMY.

419

FULL PAY, SUBSISTENCE AND ARREARS OF THE
FIRST REGIMENT OF DRAGOON GUARDS, CON-
FORMABLE TO THE ESTABLISHMENT OF THE
YEAR 1753.

	Full pay Per diem.			Subsistence Per diem.			Net arrears Per ann.		
	l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.
1 Col. and captain	1	15	0	1	6	6	121	8	9
1 Lieutenant col. and captain }	1	4	6	0	18	6	85	18	4 $\frac{1}{2}$
1 Major and captain	1	0	6	0	15	6	71	10	4 $\frac{1}{2}$
1 Chaplain	0	6	8	0	5	0	24	0	0
1 Adjutant	0	5	0	0	4	6	4	6	3
1 Surgeon	0	6	0	0	4	6	21	12	0
6 Captains, each	0	15	6	0	11	6	58	1	7 $\frac{1}{2}$
9 Lieutenants, each	0	9	0	0	7	0	27	16	9
9 Cornets, each	0	8	0	0	6	0	28	16	0
9 Quarter masters, each }	0	5	6	0	4	0	22	1	7 $\frac{1}{2}$
18 Serjeants, each	0	2	9	0	2	3			
18 Corporals, each	0	2	3	0	1	9			
18 Drummers, each	0	2	3	0	1	9			
9 Hautbois, each	0	2	0	0	1	6			
324 Privates. each	0	1	9	0	1	5			
Allowance to widows }	0	18	0						
Allow. to the col. for clothes lost by deserters }	1	2	6	0	10	6			
Allowance to the captain for re- cruiting }	1	1	0	1	1	0			
Allowance to the agent }	0	10	6	0	10	6			

PAY OF THE FIRST REGIMENT OF FOOT GUARDS
ACCORDING TO THE ESTABLISHMENT OF THE
YEAR 1753.

	Full pay Per diem.			Subsistence Per diem.			Net arrears Per ann.		
	l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.
1 Col. and captain	1	19	0	1	10	0	126	14	3
1 Lieutenant col. and captain }	1	8	6	1	1	6	100	6	4 $\frac{1}{2}$
2 Majors and cap- tains, each }	1	4	6	0	18	6	85	18	4 $\frac{1}{2}$
1 Chaplain	0	6	8	0	5	0	24	0	0 $\frac{1}{2}$
1 Surgeon	0	4	0	0	3	0	24	8	0 $\frac{1}{2}$
4 Mates, each	0	2	6	0	2	0	6	14	4 $\frac{1}{2}$
3 Adjutants, each	0	4	0	0	3	0	14	8	0 $\frac{1}{2}$
2 Quarter mas- ters, each }	0	4	0	0	3	0	14	8	0 $\frac{1}{2}$
1 Solicitor	0	4	0	0	3	0	14	8	0 $\frac{1}{2}$
1 Drum major	0	1	6	0	1	0	7	13	7 $\frac{1}{2}$
1 Deputy marshall	0	1	0	0	0	9	3	12	0
3 Hautbois, each	0	1	6	0	1	0	7	13	0
24 Captains, each	0	16	6	0	12	6	57	2	4 $\frac{1}{2}$
32 Lieutenants, each	0	7	10	0	6	0	25	18	4 $\frac{1}{2}$
24 Ensigns, each	0	5	10	0	4	6	18	14	4 $\frac{1}{2}$
56 Serjeants, each	0	1	10	0	1	4			
84 Corporals, each	0	1	2	0	0	10 $\frac{4}{7}$			
56 Drummers	0	1	0	0	0	8 $\frac{4}{7}$			
1344 Privates, each	0	10	0	0	0	6 $\frac{6}{7}$			
1641									
Allowance to widows }	2	6	8						
Ditto to the col.	2	6	1						
Ditto to cap- tains for re- cruiting }	1	11	6						
Ditto to agent	0	15	9						

N. B. This regiment consists of 28 companies including four companies of grenadiers, in each of which is, two serjeants, three corporals, two drums, and 40 private men.

A DISTRIBUTION OF THE FULL PAY, SUBSISTENCE
AND ARREARS OF A REGIMENT OF FOOT OF EIGHT
COMPANIES, AGREEABLE TO THE ESTABLISHMENT
COMMENCING 25th DEC. 1783.

	Full pay Per diem.			Subsistence Per diem.			Net clearings Per ann.		
	l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.
1 Colonel and captain	1	4	0	0	18	0	82	15	0
1 Lieutenant colonel and captain }	0	17	0	0	13	0	54	1	0
1 Major and captain	0	15	0	0	11	6	47	3	1
5 Captains, each	0	10	0	0	7	6	34	9	7
1 Captain lieutenant	0	4	8	0	3	6	16	1	9
9 Lieutenants, each	0	4	8	0	3	6	16	1	9
6 Ensigns, each	0	3	8	0	3	0	8	1	7
1 Chaplain	0	6	8	0	5	0	22	19	9
1 Quarter master	0	4	8	0	3	6	16	1	9
1 Adjutant	0	4	0	0	3	0	13	15	10
1 Surgeon	0	4	0	0	3	0	13	15	10
1 Surgeons mate	0	3	6	0	3	0	5	4	6
16 Serjeants, each	0	1	6	0	1	0			
24 Corporals	0	1	0	0	0	8			
18 Drummers and fifers, each }	0	1	0	0	0	8			
384 Privates, each	0	0	8	0	0	6			
Allowance to the widows }	0	10	8						
Ditto to the capt. at 8s. per diem }									
Ditto to the colo- nel 9s. 4d. }									
Do. to the agent 4s.									

PAY

PAY OF THE GENERAL AND STAFF OFFICERS ON
THE IRISH ESTABLISHMENT OF THE YEAR 1728.

	Per diem.			Per ann.		
	l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.
Lord lieutenant, deputy justices, or other chief governor, or governors general of Ireland for all their al- lowances and entertainments	18	1	$3\frac{3}{8}$	6593	6	8
Two aids de camp each, 10s.	1	0	0	365	0	0
Lieutenant general and commander in chief under the government	4	0	0	1460	0	0
One aid de camp	0	10	0	182	10	0
One lieutenant general	2	13	$1\frac{3}{4}$	970	0	0
Three major generals, 1l. 6s. $6\frac{7}{8}$ d. each	3	19	$8\frac{5}{8}$	1455	0	0
Eight brigadiers, 20s. each	8	0	0	2920	0	0
Muster master general and clerk of the cheques in full of all allowances and not to receive the day's pay	1	7	$4\frac{3}{4}$	500	0	0
Six deputy commissarys, 8s. each	2	8	0	876	0	0
Quarter-master general	1	0	0	365	0	0
Adjutant general	1	0	0	365	0	0
Judge advocate general	0	6	8	121	13	4
Chyrurgeon general	0	6	8	121	13	4
Provost marshal general	0	4	0	73	0	0
Physician general	0	10	0	182	10	0
Total	45	6	$9\frac{1}{2}$	16550	13	4

FULL PAY AND SUBSISTENCE OF A REGIMENT OF HORSE, A
REGIMENT OF DRAGOONS, AND A REGIMENT OF FOOT, ON
THE IRISH ESTABLISHMENT OF THE YEAR 1738.

	HORSE.		DRAGOONS.		FOOT.	
	Full pay per diem.	Subsist- ence per diem.	Full pay per diem.	Subsist- ence per diem.	Full pay per diem.	Subsist- ence per diem.
	l. s. d.	l. s. d.	l. s. d.	l. s. d.	l. s. d.	l. s. d.
Colonel and captain	1 18 0	1 8 9	1 11 4	1 3 8	1 4 6	0 18 4
Lieutenant colonel and captain }	1 5 0	0 19 1	0 19 4	0 14 7	0 16 6	0 12 7
Major and captain	1 2 6	0 17 11	0 17 4	0 13 1	0 13 6	0 10 4
Captain	0 17 0	0 13 0	0 12 4	0 9 2	0 9 6	0 7 1
Captain lieutenant and lieutenant }	0 10 6	0 8 0	0 6 2	0 4 9	0 4 6	0 3 4
Cornet and ensign	0 8 6	0 6 8	0 5 2	0 3 10	0 3 6	0 2 10
Quarter master	0 5 0	0 4 8	0 3 0	0 2 9	-	-
Adjutant	-	-	-	-	0 4 0	0 3 0
Surgeon	0 4 0	0 3 0	0 4 0	0 3 0	0 4 0	0 3 0
Surgeon's mate	-	-	-	-	0 2 6	0 2 4
Chaplain	0 6 8	0 5 0	0 6 8	0 5 0	0 6 8	0 5 0
Kettle drummer	0 2 6	0 2 4	-	-	-	-
Trumpeter	0 2 6	0 1 11	-	-	-	-
Hautbois	-	-	0 1 6	0 1 0	-	-
Drummer	-	-	0 1 6	0 1 0	0 1 0	0 0 8
Serjeant	-	-	0 2 6	0 1 7	0 1 6	0 1 0
Corporal	0 2 6	0 1 11	0 1 8	0 1 1	0 1 0	0 0 9
Private (g)	0 1 10	0 1 4	0 1 10	0 1 4	0 0 7	0 0 5

THE officer appointed to pay the troops was styled treasurer of war, he had under him diverse clerks who paid particular bodies; their pay in the time of Edward I. was 1s. per diem. What was the pay of the treasurer is not mentioned, the clerks paying artificers had only 6d.

IN the 6th of Henry IV. the Lord Furnivall, and Sir John Pelham were treasurers of the wars, and certain persons were appointed to audit their accounts. (h)

A. D. 1548, 1st of Edward VI. from Patin's account of the expedition to Muffelborough in Scotland under the duke of Somer-

(g) Of the private men in the foot regiments, 40 men received 6d. per diem full pay, and 4d. per diem subsistence; 340 seven pence per diem full pay, and five pence per diem subsistence.

IN the establishment of the year 1728, the offices of adjutant and quarter master were held by one person, who had 4s. per diem full pay. || (h) Rot. Parl. in anno.

set, we learn that Syr Raufe Sadelyr, knight, was treasurer of the army, but what were his allowances for that office, is not there mentioned.

A. D. 1587, 29th Elizabeth, Sir Thomas Shirley, knight, was appointed treasurer of the army in the Low Countries, with allowance of 1l. 6s. 8d. per diem, for his own diet. For his vice treasurer 10s. and for three paymasters 6s. 8d. per diem each, with allowance for portage of ten pounds in the thousand, out of all such sums as should come into his hands, with all such profits and advantages as were enjoyed by the late treasurer, Richard Huddleston, Esq. (i) In the 39th of the same reign, William Meredith, Gent. was appointed to the same office, under the title of paymaster, he was bound to find security for the sums with which he should be entrusted. (k)

IN Rymer A. D. 1638, 14 Charles I. is the king's commission, appointing Sir William Uvedale, knight, treasurer of war for the army intended against the Scots, with an allowance of 40s. per diem for his own diet, and for all such sums of money as should pass through his hands, the hundredth penny to be paid by those who received money of him, for a deputy 6s. 8d. per diem, four clerks, each 2s. and one messenger at 12d. per diem.

THE next year another commission was issued, when the allowance for money passing through the hands of the paymaster was raised, from the hundredth penny, or 1l. in the hundred to 12l. 10s. for every thousand pounds coming into his hands; for portage money. His own daily pay for diet was the same as before, but he was allowed two deputies, six clerks, and one messenger, all paid as before.

(i) RYMER vol. 16. p. 5.

(k) SEE Rymer in anno. By the above commission Sir Thomas Shirley was to receive and issue all such our treasure, as shall be ymployed about the chardges of coates, conduct money, transportation, and the monthlye payment of suche soldiers as are, and shall be transported out of this our realme, and such others as doe or shall serve in the said Lowe Countryes under our paye.

THE salaries and allowances of the paymaster general of the year 1782, are stated in the sixth report of the commissioners appointed to examine the public accounts of the kingdom, presented in that year.

THE paymaster general (it is there said) is appointed by letters patent under the great seal, during pleasure; he receives four annual allowances as paymaster general of the forces, and one as treasurer of Chelsea hospital: The four are, three thousand pounds as the particular salary belonging to his office; one thousand seven hundred and sixty pounds for the payment of clerks; six hundred pounds for contingent expences of his office, and twenty shillings a day as one of the staff upon the establishment; the other allowance is twenty shillings a day as treasurer of Chelsea hospital. The amount of these allowances is six thousand and ninety-two pounds: out of which he paid for himself and officers in taxes, nine hundred and sixty-two pounds, nineteen shillings and nine-pence; to clerks one thousand seven hundred and seven pounds; and for the contingent disbursements of his office, three hundred and sixty pounds, seven shillings and eight pence; making together three thousand and thirty pounds, seven shillings and five pence; which reduced his clear receipt to three thousand and sixty-one pounds, twelve shillings and seven-pence."

AMPLE as this allowance may appear, it makes but a small part of the emoluments of a paymaster general, in comparison with those accruing from the large sums constantly remaining in their hands, and the vast balances retained by them for many years, even after they have resigned their offices. "We procured, (say the commissioners before mentioned) from the Pay-office, accounts of the balances and sums received and paid every year by each of these paymasters (1) since they went out of office; a com-

(1) LORD HOLLAND resigned this office, in 1765; Mr. Charles Townshend in 1766; Lord North and Mr. Cooke in 1767; Mr. Cooke and Mr. Thomas Townshend, in 1768.

putation of interest, at 4 per cent. per annum, upon these balances every year, from six months after they severally resigned the office, proves that the loss by the money left in the hands of Lord Holland, amounts at simple interest to 248,394l. 13s. of Mr. Charles Townshend, to 24,247l. 3s. of Lord North and Mr. Cooke to 18,775l. 3s. of Mr. Cooke and Mr. Tho. Townshend 3,419l. 15s. Total 249,836l. 14s.

THE deputy paymaster has a clear yearly income of 962l. 10s. He is appointed by the paymaster general, who has the nomination of all the officers and clerks employed in his office.

THERE are besides in the paymaster general's office, the six following lucrative departments, whose net annual emoluments are thus stated in the before cited report. (m)

	l.	s.	d.
The cashier - - - - -	8,389	15	6
The accountant - - - - -	2,715	3	9
The ledger keeper - - - - -	529	16	0
The computer of off-reckonings - - - - -	1,038	5	6
The cashier of half pay - - - - -	583	5	0
The entering clerk - - - - -	1,498	5	4

THE deputy paymasters abroad are paid an allowance; six of them thirty shillings a day, and three of them three pounds a day. They have besides many very considerable known fees and emoluments, besides private advantages.

(m) FROM the account in the appendix, it appears that the gross amount of the emoluments received in this office, was 25,108l. 19s. 1d. The nett amount 23,561l. 1s. 8d. The sum of 13,450l. received for salaries and allowances was paid by the public: The sum of 11,573l. 19s. 1d. for fees and gratuities, was paid by individuals.

Sixth Report, p. 85.

END of the FIRST VOLUME.

I N D E X

T O T H E

F I R S T V O L U M E.

A

ABBEY of Holm Coltram repaired, 327
 Account of Roger de Waltham, keeper of
 the great wardrobe, temp. Ed. II. 328
 Adjutant or aide major, when introduced,
 316—his duties, 317
 Aketon, 125
 Anspesade, lancespata, or lance corporal,
 the origin of, 312.
 Archers on horseback, their pay, 330—
 Ditto on foot, *ibid.*—Dress of the ancient
 archers, p. 147—Earl of Essex attempts
 to raise a corps of archers, 149—To
 protect them from the cavalry, the ancient
 archers carried pointed stakes, which they
 placed slopingly before them, *ibid.*
 Armies, Saxon, how formed, 2.—Armed
 3.—Saxon punishment for cowardice,
ibid.
 Army sent to Ireland, 36 Edward III.
 pay of, 332—Ditto of the army, and
 artillery, and artificers, raised A.D. 1639,
 by King Charles I. against the Scots,
 370, and 372

Vol. I.

Armour and weapons directed by law,
 temp. Hen. II. to be kept by persons of
 different degrees, with regulations made
 respecting them, 11—Assize of, 13 Ed-
 ward I. called statute of Winchester, 12—
 Repealed 1st. of Philip and Mary with re-
 gulations then made, 13, &c.—Different
 sorts of armour and weapons explained,
 see notes, 13, &c.—Armour plate, when
 first in general use, 105
 Armourers, pay of, 330
 Arms, men at, their pay, 338
 Arms spare, to supply an army, valued by
 estimation, 370
 Array, writ of, 67
 Arrayers, their office, 204
 Arrows, of what wood, 144—How fea-
 thered, *ibid.*
 Arrow heads, to be made of the flocks of
 anchors, 144—To be marked with the
 names of the makers, 145
 Artillery company, account of, 150, 193
 Assembling the national forces, mode of, 65
 Atillator, 328
 Auditor general, 270

K k k

BACI-

B

BACINET, 125.

Banneret, 206—Pay of, 324

Barded horses, what, the term explained, 105

Bayonets, when first introduced, 181—Anecdote respecting them, 182

Bell, the best in any town, taken from the enemy, the perquisite of the master gunner and his company, 237

Bever, 105

Bishop of Norwich, indents to serve King Richard II. a whole year in France, with 2500 men at arms and 2500 archers, 58

Bishops, frequently commanded armies, and fought like private troopers in the ranks, using the mace, in order to evade the prohibition of the sword—Story of Philip de Dreux bishop of Beauvais, 70

Black or brown bill, 129

Bow, long, when first introduced into the English army, 140—Laws and regulations respecting it, 141, &c.—Prices of bows, 143—Range of an arrow shot from a long bow, 143—Force with which it will strike an object, *ib.*—Two commissions granted by King Charles I. for enforcing the use of the long bow, 148—An archer having pronounced the word **FAST**, before he shot, was not liable to any punishment although he should by accident kill a man, 152

Brabançons, Provençales, Coterelli and Flemmings, mercenary troops frequently hired by our Kings, 56

Brigadeer or corporal, 322.

C

CALIVER, a lighter kind of musket fired without a rest, 164

Captain general, his suite, &c. 241

Captain and keeper of the marches of Cumberland, his pay, 328.

Carriage master general, his duty, 259

Carpenter, pay of, 327

Cartridges, when introduced, 178

Cavalry, ancient, divided into constabularies, and commanded by officers stiled constables, 205

Cavalry, officers of, commanded the infantry in the field, 243—Regulations between the officers of cavalry and those of infantry respecting command, 243

Chafron or Chamfrein, its use, 101—Contrived to prevent horses seeing right before them, *ibid.*

Charges made by the provost marshal Van Velthovens, for executing raparees in Ireland, 252, 253—Objections to the said accounts, and depositions respecting them, 256, *n.*

City trained bands, their origin, 193—Account of them, 196, 197

Clergy of all denominations directed by the king's writ to be arrayed, armed, and regimented, 67—Forbidden to hold a convocation when the king was with the army, and they summoned to perform their feudal service, 6—Their livings assessed to find armour, 80, *n.*—Queen Elizabeth, by her letter directed to the bishop of Chester to contribute to the raising of horse for the assistance of the Hollanders, 80

Clerk of a company, 316

Combustible compositions for burning houses or ships, fixed on the heads of arrows, and shot with long bows, 146

Commons petition that the Sire de Fournivall may be repaid the money advanced to preserve the credit of Prince John, and to pay his troops, 334

Constable, high, his allowances, 217—Of France, his privileges, &c. *ibid.* and 221

Constable,

Constable, pay of, &c. 217, 323, 325
 Conduct money, 324
 Constitutional force soon after the conquest, 8
 Crests, 103
 Criminals, pardoned on condition of serving in the king's army abroad, 74
 Criniere or main faire, 105
 Cross bow, its origin, 155—Different sorts, 157.
 Cross bow men, how dressed and armed, 157—Their pay, 126
 Croupieres and flancois, 105
 Cuirasse, what, 106
 Curaisier, how armed, 107, 318, 319
 Centenary, pay of, 329—Not having a war horse, *ibid.*
 Chaplains, pay of, 329, &c.
 Corporals of the field, their duty, 269
 Corporal or caporal, his title, whence derived, 311—A corporal might correct the soldiers with his sword or musket rest, his duty, *ibid.*—Lance corporal, 312
 Courtezans of the duke of Alva's army, divided into several squadrons, under captainesses and alferas or she cornets, and according to their beauty allotted to the officers of different ranks, 262
 Coustrel, etymology of, 116, *n.* (a)
 Cryers, pay of, 329

D

DEMI-LAUNCE, pay of, 337
 Different kinds of troops of which our armies consisted, soon after the conquest, 101, &c.
 Ditchers and their vingteners, pay of, 327—Pay of the women assisting the ditchers, *ibid.*
 Dragoons, the captain, lieutenant, and guidon, how armed and mounted, 319—

Difference between the cornet and guidon, *ibid.*
 Draughting of regiments detrimental to the service, 185, *n.*
 Dress of ancient archers, 147
 Dreux, Philip de, bishop of Beauvais, a story told of him by Mathew Paris, 70
 Droits and fees of the marischall as claimed by Thomas de Brotherton, 225—Ditto from a MS. in the Cotton library, 225, *n.* (1)—His charge over the harlots of the court, and remarkable punishment inflicted on interlopers, 230, *n.* (m)
 Drum major, 313—Drum major general of the king's forces, his commission, 314, *n.* (s)—Drummer not originally employed to inflict the sentences of courts martial, 315, and *n.* (u)
 Duke of Alva's arrangement of the courtezans following his army in the Netherlands, 262
 Durham, bishop of, his pay, 330

E

EARL, pay of, 330
 Elizabeth, Queen, her instructions for the execution of a commission directed to the justices of the peace, for a general muster and trayning of all manner of persons liable for the wars to serve as well on horseback as on foot, 81—Her regulation respecting the proportions of harquebusiers and archers in every hundred footmen, 90
 Engineer, pay of, 326—Master engineer, 327
 Ensigns (colours), disgraces that may happen to them, 229—Of the right use and ordering of them, with the postures and flourishes thereunto belonging, 303
 Ensigns, Vere, on their dignity, 296
 Esquire, pay of, 325, 329, 330

Estimate

Estimate for the raising, equipment and pay of a royal army, to be raised for the recovery of the Palatinate, A. D. 1620. 351, &c.

F

FEE, a knight's, 5

Fencible corps, 192—Their rank, *ibid.*

Feudal services, regulations respecting them, 7, 8.

Fifers different from whiflers, 314—Long laid aside, and revived about the year, 1745, 316.

Firelock or snaphance, when introduced, 175

Forage master general, 269

Foot armed with acketons and bacinets, pay of, 329

Full pay, subsistence, and arrears of the horse and grenadier guards, 416, 417—Of the horse guards blue, 418—Dragoons, 419—Foot guards, 420—And foot on the English establishment, 421—Full pay, subsistence, and arrears of a regiment of horse, one of dragoons, and one of foot on the Irish establishment, 423—The staff officers on the English establishment, 415—Ditto Irish, 422—Fusileers, what, 177

G

GAMBESONS what, 101

Gentlemen pensioners, ordinances and statutes made for their government by King Henry VIII. 115—Their oath, 119—Pay for selves and retinue, 117—Disbanded and re-established on a smaller pay, 121—Suspended and re-embodied, 122—New orders by King James II. *ibid.*—Gentlemen pensioners to be advanced to commissions in the army preferable to all other persons whatsoever, 214—Present uniform and establishment, *ibid.*

Gentlemen of a company, 312

Gisarme, 126

Grenadiers, when first instituted, 180

Goujats or soldiers boys, 261, *n.*

Gunpowder sprinkled with aqua vitæ or claret wine, 171

Gunners, pay of, 330

H

HALBERT, 136

Hand guns, or hange guns, first introduced into England, their length settled by act of parliament, 162

Harbinger or herberger, his duty, 249

Harquebus, pistol, petrinial, and musket described, 162, *n.*

Harquebusiers, how defensively armed, 165

Hauberk in France peculiarly appropriated to persons possessed of certain seignuries called fiefs d'haubert, 101

Helmet, 102

High constable, his power and allowances, 217—High constable of France his privileges, &c. *ibid.*, and 221

Highland or 42d regiment, its origin and story, 183

Hobiler, 107—Error respecting their first institution, 109—The name lost, *ibid.*—Arms and appointments, *ibid.*—Pay of, 326, 329

Horses for public service, to be kept by persons of different degrees or estates, 11, 12, 13, &c.

I

JACK, acketon, and bacinet, what, 125

Jewels of the crown pledged by King Henry V. as security for the regular payment of his troops, 73

Indenture, a mode of raising troops, 57—Form of one, 72, *n.* (c)—Bishop of Norwich

Norwich indents with King Richard II.
58—Another indenture, between King
Henry V. and the duke of Clarence, 335
—Henry Le Scroope, 336—Henry VII.
and George earl of Kent, 337
Infantry, at and soon after the conquest, how
formed and armed, 125
Invalids, 191
Judge advocate general, for the kingdoms of
Suez, Fez, and Morocco, his commission,
272
Judge marshal or auditor general, 270

K

KING James I. his ironical praise of
armour, 104, *n.* (e)
Knight, his fee, 5—Armour, 101—Pay,
330—Ancient knights frequently carried
two swords, 104, *n.* (f)

L

LAUNCE 106—Launciers or demi-
launce, arms, and appointments of, 109
Lance corporal or lancepafata, 312
Leaders and sub leaders of Welch foot, pay
of, 329, 330
Lieutenants appointed to the different coun-
ties, 80
Light dragoons, the first regiment of, raised
1746, 114—A light troop added to each
regiment of dragoons, *ibid.*

M

MALLET or mell of arms, 131—
Used by the English archers, 132—Me-
morable combat fought in Bretagne, be-
tween thirty English champions and the
like number of Frenchmen, 133
Mare, to be mounted on one held dishonor-
able, 107, *n.* (n)

Marines, their institution, 187
Masons, pay of, 330
Match cases, 170
Marischal or marshal, antiquity of that of-
fice, 224—Droits and fees claimed by
Thomas de Brotherton, 225—Ditto
from a MS. in the Cotton library, 225,
n. (1)—Marischals charge over the harlots
at court, and remarkable punishment of
intruders, 230, *n.* (m)
Masters general of the ordnance, succession
of, 239
Militia instituted by Charles II. laws and
regulations thereof, 20, &c.—How ar-
med, 27—Proportions of the assessment
for their pay, 29—Militia, new, number
of men to be raised in the different coun-
ties, 35, and note—Laws respecting it,
45, &c.—Notion that the embodied mili-
tia were not liable to be commanded by
any officer of the regular forces under the
rank of a general, considered and con-
futed, 52 *n.* (h)
Miners, pay of, 330
Misericorde, 104
Morris or moorish pike, the invention of
it falsely attributed to prince Maurice, 135
Mutiny act first passed, A. D. 1689—Not
always immediately renewed, 65, *n.* (o)

N

NAKED or unarmed foot, pay of, 329
Navy of Queen Elizabeth, 130, &c. and
note (x)
Norman laws respecting feudal service, 4

O

ORDNANCE, Rauf Bigod first mas-
ter of, 231—Different officers of the ord-
nance, temp. Richard III. 232—Esa-
blishment of ditto, A. D. 1557, 232,
n. (r)

n. (r)—Master of the ordnance, his duty, 233—King William III. his letter respecting certain perquisites of the commanding officer of the ordnance, 237—Succession of masters general, 231
Ordonnance of the King of France when he goes with the army, 221

PAGES, 330

Pay of, earls, barons, bannerets, knights, esquires, paunceners, centenaries, vintners, archers on horseback and foot, with the other officers, soldiers, and artificers of an army, temp. Edward I. 330
Pay of an army of King Edward II. raised against the Scots, A. D. 329, 330—Of the army of King Edward III. before Calais, *ibid.* and 331—Of the army sent to Ireland 36 Edward III. 332—Of the army at St. Quintyn's, A. D. 1557, temp. Philip and Mary, 339—Pay of the officers of the companies appointed for service in the year 1588, 347—Of the army in Ireland under the earl of Essex, A. D. 1598, 349—Estimate of the expences of an army to be raised for the recovery of the Palatinate, temp. James I. 1620, 351—Of the army raised by Charles I. A. D. 1639 against the Scots, 370—Pay of the parliamentary troops, A. D. 1647, 378—Pay of the army, garrisons, &c. A. D. 1659, 381.
Paymaster general, 425,—His office, 426
Pay of the first troop of horse-guards, 416—First troop of grenadier guards, 417—Horse-guards, blue, 418—First regiment of dragoon guards, 419—First regiment of foot guards, 420—A regiment of foot 421.
Physicians, pay of, 329

Pioneers, captain of, his duty, 263—Soldiers made to serve as pioneers, as a punishment for misbehaviour, passage in Shakespeare respecting pioneers explained, *ibid.*

Pikemen how armed, 138—Established prices of pikemens armour and weapons, 139

Plan of this work, see advertisement

Plastron, 101

Poitrinal, 105

Pole-ax, 128

Posse comitatus, what, 9

Pressing for soldiers, practised under Queen Elizabeth, 100—Argument against it as usually executed, 100, *n.* (t)

Prick spur, 103

Prince, pay of, 330

Printer of the London evening post corrected, 114, *n.* (x)

Proviand master, his office, custom of paying by proviand, Sir John Smythe's objections to it, 266

Provost marshal, his duty, 249—Provost marshal, Van Velthoven's charges for executing raparees in Ireland, 252 *note*—For a new gallows, 253—for whipping, *ibid.*—This account objected to, deposition of Johannes Hoffelingh respecting Velthoven's troop, 256, *n.*—Of Zyrach Gout and John Goedort respecting the same, and his gift to his concubine Mrs. Valentine, *ibid.*

Punishment of appearing at a tournament with false proofs of nobility, 109, *n.* (n)

Q

QUINTYN, St. list of the army that served there A. D. 1557, with their pay, 339

Quarrels

Quarrels shot from cross bows and guns,
157

Quartermaster of horse, 319—Should understand castrametation, *ibid.*

R

RAISING forces at the county's charge, 75

Reformadoes, 312

Regards, 336.

Regiments, parliamentary, disbanded and raised for the service of King Charles II. 60, *n.* (q)

Royal or 1st regiment of foot, history of, 61, *n.* (r) stiled Pontius Pilate's guards, 61

Royal Irish or 18th regiment, a singular story of them, 63, *n.* (t)

Ruptarii, routers or ryters, foreign cavalry occasionally hired by our kings, 56

S

SAXON laws respecting persons obliged to bear arms, and perform public services, 1
Schedule or proportion of utensils, &c. to attend the 20 pieces of ordnance for the army to be raised for the recovery of the Palatinate, 366

Scout master, his duty, 258

Serjeant, the description and duty of, 308
—A serjeant may correct the soldiers with his halbert and sword, *ibid.*

Serjeants at arms raised by King Richard I. as his body guard, 199—How armed, their pay and allowances, *ibid.*—Complained of by the commons, 200—Numbers have varied, 202—Present number, 202—Pay, 326

Serjeant major, duties of, 244

Servientes, 101

Shief of arrows, 144

Shield, 102

Silk gown, French hood, velvet bonnet, &c. worn by the wives of under a certain rank or estate, subjected their husbands to find a horse for the service of the country, 17

Simnel Dominical, 217, *n.* (p)—Salted Simnel, *ibid.*

Smiths, pay of, 330

Soldario ad arma, pay of, 330

Soldier, 325—Enlisted for three years only, in the army serving under the duke of Marlborough, 99—Clause in the mutiny act authorising such inlisting, 100, *n.* (s)—Soldiers of the garrison of the castles on the frontiers of Picardy, petition that they may be paid at the exchequer at Calais, and not be obliged to come over to England to receive their pay, 335—Soldier departing from the army in time of war without the king's licence, felony, without benefit of clergy, and may be tried by the justices of every shire, 65

Standing army, growth of, 56, *n.* (k)—Mercenary troops always found in the English armies and garrisons, 56

Staff or suite of a captain general, the high marischall, general of horsemen, and general of footmen, 341

Spears, see gentlemen pensioners

Sprites short wooden arrows used on ship-board, 165

Staff officers, 316—Staff and general officers on the English establishment, 415—On the Irish, 422

Stakes, sharp pointed, carried by archers, 149.

Surgeons, very few in ancient armies, 275—Only thirteen with that of King Henry V. in France, their pay, 275—Low state of surgery in the 16th century, 273 *n.* (u)—Orders for pressing—surgeons and

and artificers to make their instruments,
275

Swines or Sweedish feather, a contrivance to
defend musketeers against cavalry, 165

T.

TENT-Makers, pay of, 330

Treasurer of the army, his duty, 246

Trench master, his duty, 258

Troops paid in advance, 337

Trophy-money, 32, and *n.* (b)

Trumpeter, formerly not allowed to wear
any offensive arms, unless a sword with
the point broken; the form of his trum-
pet, banner and furniture, 318, 319

Turner, Sir James, his list of officers of a
troop of horse, 319

V.

VALENTINE, Mrs. lady of plea-
sure to Affarias Velthoven, his gifts to
her, 256, *n.*

Valets, young gentlemen of rank and for-
tune, not knighted, 325

Vingtner, what, pay, 329, 330—Vingtner
of cross bows, pay of, 326

Visor, 105

W.

WELCH foot, pay of, 329, 330

Whiffers, 241, *n.* (a) —Different from
fifers, 314

Women employed to assist the ditchers,
327—Their pay, *ibid.*—Women follow-
ing the army, how ranged or ordered on
a march, 261—Women riding on horse-
back, sometimes divided into companies
commanded by female marshals, called
in Germany, Hureweibles, or marshals
of the whores, with a standard carried
before them, *ibid.*

Y.

YEOMAN of the guard, when first
established, their size and quality, 202—
Dress and arms, 203—Sometimes car-
ried bows and arrows, sometimes fire-
arms, occasionally mounted on horseback.
see a print of one, 203—Their duty, 204
—Present number, officers, arms, pay,
and clothing, *ibid.*

D I R E C T I O N S to the B I N D E R.

Norman soldier	—	Page 101
Horsemen's arms and accoutrements	—	107
Ancient Dragoon	—	112
Horse guard and light horsemen	—	114
Officer of pike men	—	138
Men at arms and archer (put as a frontispiece)	—	147
Caliver	—	148

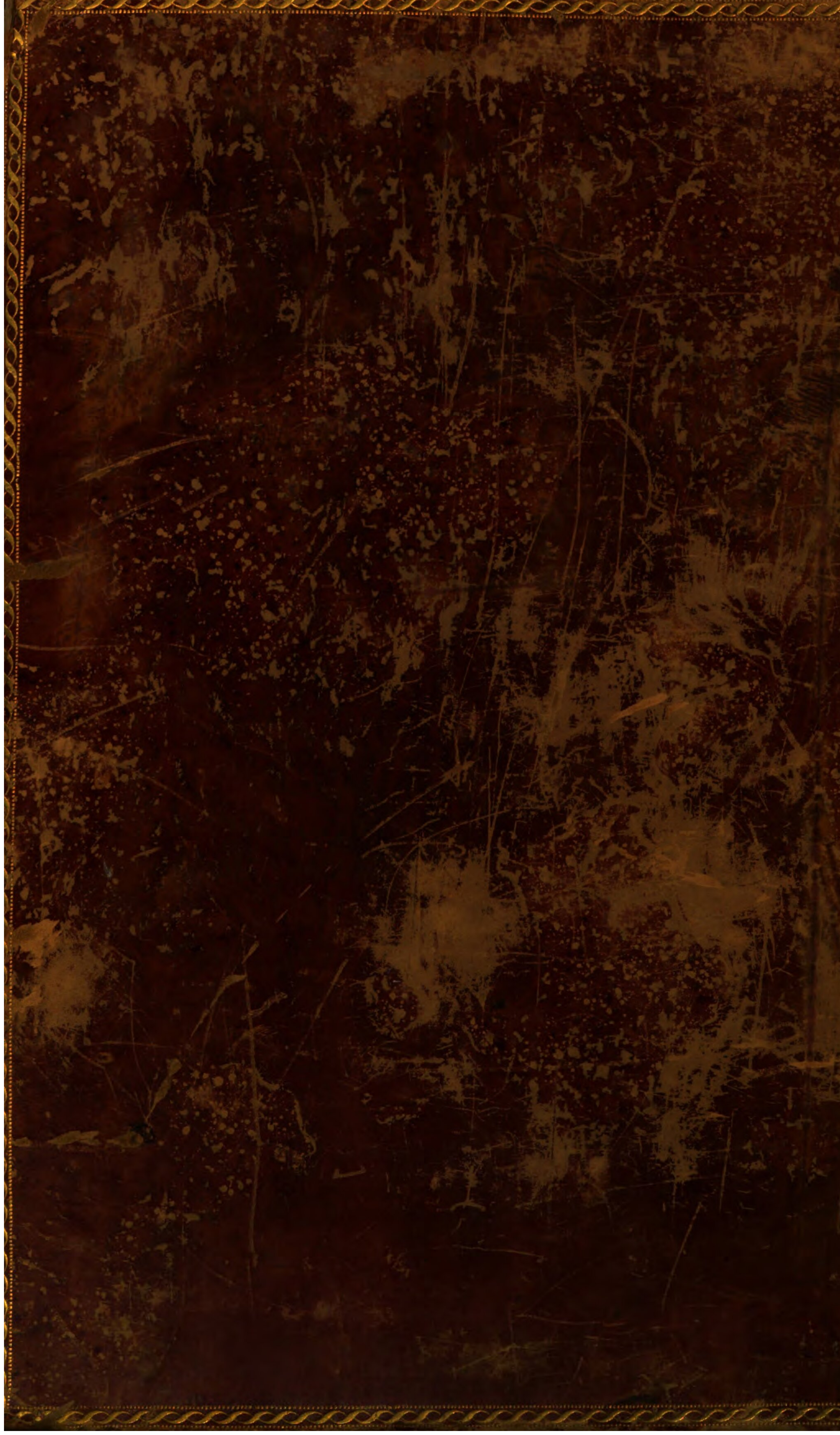
Crosse bowe	—	—	Page 155
Infantry	—	—	165
Musketeers	—	—	172
Highland officers and serjeants	—	—	183
Highland soldiers	—	—	184
— piper	—	—	185
Yeoman of the guards on horseback	—	—	203















Grose, Francis, 1731-1791

Military antiquities

Bd.: 1

London 1786

Res/4 Brit. 46 c-1

urn:nbn:de:bvb:12-bsb10887937-8